

Spec. No. VOLUME 4
CUP UPG. DIV. 1-16
Proj. No. 593CA2202



Specifications

For: CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS SPECIFICATIONS
VA MEDICAL CENTER - PHASE V
Administration Bldg. & Education
Ctr. Addition

At: New VA Medical Center
VA Southern Nevada Healthcare System

Issue June 15, 2012

Open Bids N/A

Amendment

No.	Date

Property of Department of Veterans Affairs

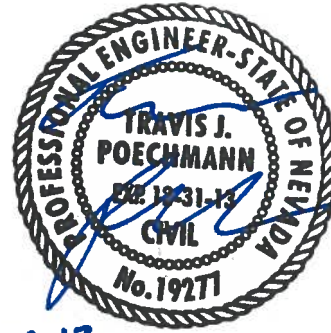
WITHIN 10 DAYS AFTER DATE OF OPENING BIDS, RETURN
THIS SPECIFICATION TOGETHER WITH DRAWINGS, POSTAGE
PREPAID TO:

VA MEDICAL CENTER – PHASE V, VA SOUTHERN NEVADA HEALTHCARE SYSTEM
ADMINISTRATION BUILDING & EDUCATION CENTER ADDITION

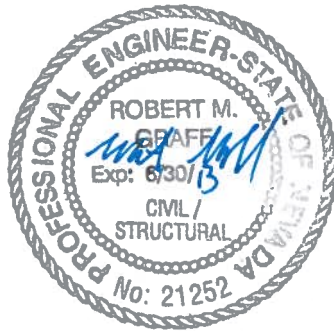
June 15, 2012



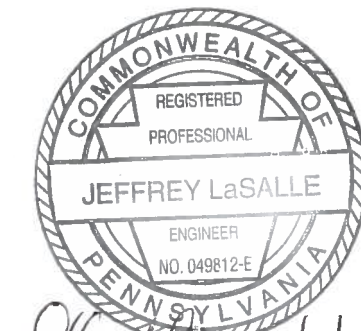
Architect
SYLVIA KIM
Nevada Lic. No. 5207



Civil
TRAVIS POECHMANN
Nevada Lic. No. 19277



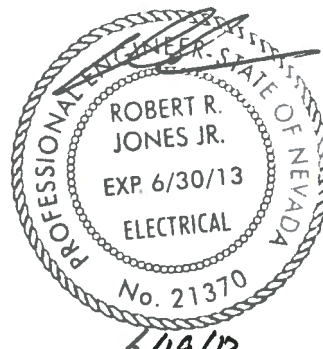
Structural
ROBERT GRAFF
Nevada Lic. No. 21252



Fire Protection
JEFF LASALLE
Penn. Lic. No. PE049812E



Mechanical/Plumbing
MATTHEW T. DOLAN
Nevada Lic. No. 021622



Electrical
ROBERT R. JONES, JR.
Nevada Lic. No. 021370

DEPARTMENT OF VETERANS AFFAIRS
VAMC PHASE V -
ADMINISTRATION BUILDING & EDUCATION CENTER
SPECIFICATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS
Section 00 01 10

	DIVISION 00 - SPECIAL SECTIONS	DATE
00 01 15	List of Drawing Sheets	9-11
00 11 21	Request for Proposal (not included VA to provide)	
VOLUME 1	ADMIN BLDG & EDUCATION CENTER DIVISIONS 01 THROUGH 08	
	DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS	
01 00 00	General Requirements (not included VA to provide)	
01 32 16.13	Network Analysis Schedules	05-09M
01 33 23	Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples	11-08
01 36 00	Blast Resistant Design	Non VA
01 42 19	Reference Standards	09-11
01 45 29	Testing Laboratory Services	05-09M
01 57 19	Temporary Environmental Controls	1-11
01 60 00	Product Requirements	Non VA
01 74 19	Construction Waste Management	09-10
01 79 00	Demonstration and Training	Non VA
01 81 09	Testing For Indoor Air Quality	Non VA
01 81 11	Sustainable Design Requirements	03-11
01 91 00	General Commissioning Requirements	03-11
	DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS	
02 21 00	Site Surveys	08-11
02 41 00	Demolition	06-10
	DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE	
03 30 00	Cast-in-Place Concrete	03-11
	DIVISION 04 - MASONRY	
04 05 13	Masonry Mortaring	09-11
04 05 16	Masonry Grouting	09-11
04 20 00	Unit Masonry	09-11
	DIVISION 05 - METALS	
05 12 00	Structural Steel Framing	07-11
05 31 00	Steel Decking	11-08M
05 36 00	Composite Metal Decking	07-11
05 40 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing	07-11
05 50 00	Metal Fabrications	10-07M
05 51 00	Metal Stairs	10-07M

[illegible]

	DIVISION 06 - WOOD,PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES	
06 10 00	Rough Carpentry	09-11
06 16 63	Cementitious Sheathing	09-11
06 20 00	Finish Carpentry	05-10
	DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION	
07 08 00	Facility Exterior Closure Commissioning	07-10
07 11 13	Bituminous Dampproofing	10-08M
07 13 00	Sheet Water/Air Barrier	06-10
07 13 52	Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing	09-11
07 18 13	Pedestrian Traffic Coatings	09-11
07 21 13	Thermal Insulation	03-09M
07 22 00	Roof and Deck Insulation	10-10
07 42 00	Polymer Based Wall Panels	Non VA
07 42 13	Metal Wall Panels (Solid Phenolic)	Non VA
07 51 00	Built-Up Bituminous Roofing	03-09M
07 60 00	Flashing and Sheet Metal	10-10
07 71 00	Roof Specialties	10-07M
07 72 00	Roof Accessories	04-08M
07 81 00	Applied Fireproofing	11-11
07 84 00	Firestopping	10-11
07 92 00	Joint Sealants	02-11
07 95 00	Pre-Formed, Self Expanding, Exterior Sealant, Expansion Joint System	Non VA
07 95 13	Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies	10-11
	DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS	
08 11 13	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames	02-09M
08 14 00	Interior Wood Doors	02-09M
08 17 10	Integrated Door Assemblies	12-09
08 30 00	Fire and Smoke Rated Curtains with Egress	Non VA
08 31 13	Access Doors and Frames	10-11
08 34 53	Security Doors and Frames	12-09
08 41 00	Exterior Swing and Slide Aluminum Entrances	Non-VA
08 41 13	Interior Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts	10-11
08 44 13	Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls	08-08
08 51 13	Aluminum Windows	03-10
08 56 53	Security Blast Resistant Windows	12-08M
08 62 70	Tubular Daylight System	Non-VA
08 71 00	Door Hardware	09-11
08 71 13	Automatic Door Operators	12-09
08 71 13.11	Low Energy Door Operators	01-11
08 80 00	Glazing	12-10
08 90 00	Louvers and Vents	10-11

The "M" after the date denotes that the document is now in dual Metric/English.
VAMC Phase V Admin Building 00 01 10 RTKL/JMA A JOINT VENTURE
Construction Documents Page 2 of 8

VOLUME 2	ADMIN BLDG & EDUCATION CENTER DIVISIONS 09 THROUGH 23	
	DIVISION 09 - FINISHES	
09 06 00	Schedule for Finishes	10-11
09 22 16	Non-Structural Metal Framing	07-10M
09 29 00	Gypsum Board	09-10
09 30 13	Ceramic/Porcelain Tiling	03-09M
09 51 00	Acoustical Ceilings	10-10
09 51 26	Wood Panel Ceilings	Non-VA
09 64 00	Wood Strip Flooring	Non-VA
09 65 13	Resilient Base, Stair Treads and Accessories	04-08M
09 65 19	Resilient Tile Flooring	03-11
09 66 16	Terrazzo Floor Tile	10-11
09 68 00	Carpeting	10-11
09 72 16	Vinyl-Coated Fabric Wall Coverings	11-11
09 84 39	Acoustical Ceiling Clouds	Non-VA
09 91 00	Painting	04-09M
	DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES	
10 11 23	Tackboards and Whiteboards	11-11
10 13 00	Directories	11-11
10 14 00	Signage	11-11
10 21 13	Toilet Compartments	11-11
10 22 27	Operable Panel Partitions	Non-VA
10 25 13	Patient Bed Service Walls	11-11
10 26 00	Wall and Door Protection	01-11
10 28 00	Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories	11-11
10 44 13	Fire Extinguisher Cabinets	11-11
10 51 13	Metal Lockers	Non VA
10 71 13	Exterior Sun Control Devices	Non VA
10 71 13	Exterior Sun Control Devices	Non VA
	DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT	
11 05 12	General Motor Requirements for Equipment	11-11
	DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS	
12 22 16	Drapery Track and Accessories	11-11
12 24 00	Window Shades	11-11
12 24 21	Lightproof Shades	11-11
12 26 00	Optical Side-Daylighting System	Non VA
12 32 00	Manufactured Wood Casework	11-11
12 36 00	Countertops	05-10
12 48 13	WALK-OFF MATS	Non VA
12 93 00	Site Furnishings	Non VA
	DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION	
13 05 41	Seismic Restraint Requirements for Non-Structural Components	12-07M

The "M" after the date denotes that the document is now in dual Metric/English.
VAMC Phase V Admin Building 00 01 10 RTKL/JMA A JOINT VENTURE
Construction Documents Page 3 of 8

	DIVISION 14- CONVEYING EQUIPEMENT	
14 21 00	Electric Traction Elevators	09-11
	DIVISION 21- FIRE SUPPRESSION	
21 05 11	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression	11-09
21 08 00	Commissioning of Fire Protection System	07-10
21 12 00	Fire-Suppression Standpipes	12-05M
21 13 13	Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems	05-08M
	DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING	
22 05 11	Common Work Results for Plumbing	04-11
22 05 12	General Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment	12-09
22 05 19	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping	02-10
22 05 23	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping	12-09
22 08 00	Commissioning of Plumbing System	07-10
22 11 00	Facility Water Distribution	05-11
22 11 23	Domestic Water Pumps	11-10
22 13 00	Facility Sanitary and Vent Piping	12-09
22 13 29	Sanitary Sewerage Pumps	11-10
22 13 33	Packaged, Submersible Sewerage Pump Units	11-10
22 13 36	Packaged, Wastewater Pump Units	01-11
22 14 00	Facility Storm Drainage	12-09
22 14 29	Sump Pumps	01-11
22 35 00	Domestic Water Heat Exchangers	02-10
22 40 00	Plumbing Fixtures	03-11
	DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, & AIR COND. (HVAC)	
23 05 11	Common Work Results for HVAC	11-10
23 05 12	General Motor Requirements for HVAC and Steam Generation Equipment	11-10
23 05 41	Noise and Vibration Control for HVAC Piping and Equipment	11-10
23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	05-11
23 07 11	HVAC and Plumbing Insulation	05-11
23 08 00	Commissioning of HVAC System	07-10
23 09 23	Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC	04-11
23 09 93	Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls	Non-VA
23 21 13	Hydronic Piping	03-10
23 21 23	Hydronic Pumps	02-10
23 22 13	Steam and Condensate Heating Piping	03-10
23 22 23	Steam Condensate Pumps	02-10
23 25 00	HVAC Water Treatment	02-10
23 31 00	HVAC Ducts and Casings	04-11
23 34 00	HVAC Fans	11-09
23 36 00	Air Terminal Units	03-10
23 37 00	Air Outlets and Inlets	11-09
23 40 00	HVAC Air Cleaning Devices	05-11
23 73 00	Indoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units	04-11
23 81 23	Computer-Room Air-Conditioners	04-11
23 82 16	Air Coils	04-11
23 82 19	Fan Coil Units	Non-VA

VOLUME 3	ADMIN BLDG & EDUCATION CENTER DIVISIONS 25 THROUGH 34	
	DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION	
25 10 10	Advanced Utility Metering System	02-10
	DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL	
26 05 11	Requirements for Electrical Installations	09-10
26 05 13	Medium-Voltage Cables	09-10
26 05 21	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables (600 Volts and Below)	09-10
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	09-10
26 05 33	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems	09-10
26 05 41	Underground Electrical Construction	09-10
26 05 71	Electrical System Protective Device Study	09-10
26 08 00	Commissioning of Electrical Systems	07-10
26 09 23	Lighting Controls	09-10
26 11 16	Secondary Unit Substations	04-09
26 18 41	Medium-Voltage Switches	09-10
26 22 00	Low-Voltage Transformers	09-10
26 24 11	Distribution Switchgear	04-09
26 24 16	Panelboards	09-10
26 27 26	Wiring Devices	04-09
26 29 11	Motor Starters	09-10
26 29 21	Disconnect Switches	09-10
26 36 23	Automatic Transfer Switches	09-10
26 41 00	Facility Lightning Protection	04-09
26 43 13	Transient-Voltage Surge Suppression	04-09
26 51 00	Interior Lighting	04-09
26 56 00	Exterior Lighting	09-10
	DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS	
27 05 11	Requirements for Communications Installations	11-09
27 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems	10-06M
27 05 33	Raceways and Boxes for Communications Systems	12-05M
27 08 00	Commissioning of Communications Systems	07-10
27 10 00	Structured Cabling	12-05M
27 11 00	Communications Equipment Room Fittings	10-06M
27 15 00	Communications Horizontal Cabling	10-06M
27 40 00	Audio Video Systems	Non-VA
27 54 01	Sustainability Management System	Non-VA
	DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY	
28 05 00	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security	09-11
28 05 13	Conductors & Cables for Electronic Safety and Security	12-05M
28 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security	10-06M
28 05 28.33	Conduits and Backboxes for Electronic Safety and Security	09-11
28 13 16	Access Control System and Database Management	11-09
28 23 00	Video Surveillance	11-09
28 31 00	Fire Detection and Alarm	09-05M

The "M" after the date denotes that the document is now in dual Metric/English.
VAMC Phase V Admin Building 00 01 10 RTKL/JMA A JOINT VENTURE
Construction Documents Page 5 of 8

	DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK	
31 08 00	Commissioning of Utility Systems	07-10
31 20 00	Earth Moving	10-06M
31 23 23.33	Flowable Fill	04-05M
	DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS	
32 05 23	Cement and Concrete for Exterior Improvements	04-10
32 12 16	Asphalt Paving	10-09
32 17 23	Pavement Markings	04-10
32 31 13	Chain Link Fences and Gates	02-10
32 31 19	Decorative Metal Fences and Gates	Non-VA
32 84 00	Planting Irrigation	10-11
32 90 00	Planting	10-11
	DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES	
33 10 00	Water Utilities	12-05M
33 30 00	Sanitary Sewerage Utilities	10-06M
33 40 00	Storm Drainage Utilities	10-11
	DIVISION 34 - TRANSPORTATION	
34 71 13	Vehicle Barriers	10-07M
VOLUME 4	CENTRAL UTILITY PLANT UPGRADE DIVISIONS 2 THROUGH 16	
	DIVISION 2 - SITEWORK	
02200	Building Earthwork	5-05-11
02205	Site Earthwork	5-05-11
02513	Asphalt Concrete Paving	5-05-11
02514	Site Work Concrete	5-05-11
	DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE	
03301	Cast-In-Place Concrete	5-05-11
	DIVISION 4 - MASONRY	
04100	Mortar and Grout	5-05-11
04200	Unit Masonry	5-05-11
04230	Reinforced Unit Masonry	5-05-11
	DIVISION 5 - METALS	
05120	Structural Steel	5-05-11
05321	Steel Decking Composite	5-05-11
05400	Cold Formed Metal Framing	5-05-11
05500	Metal Fabrications	5-05-11
	DIVISION 6 - WOOD AND PLASTIC	
06100	Rough Carpentry	5-05-11

	DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION	
07113	Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing	5-05-11
07210	Building Insulation	5-05-11
07220	Roof and Deck Insulation	5-05-11
07410	Preformed Wall Panels	5-05-11
07510	Bituminous Built-Up Roofing	5-05-11
07600	Flashing and Sheet Metal	5-05-11
07700	Roof Specialties and Accessories	5-05-11
07920	Sealants and Caulking	5-05-11
	DIVISION 8 - DOORS AND WINDOWS	
08110	Steel Doors and Frames	5-05-11
08305	Access Doors	5-05-11
08331	Overhead Roll-Up Doors	5-05-11
08710	Builders Hardware	5-05-11
08750	Installation of Doors and Hardware	5-05-11
	DIVISION 9 - FINISHES	
09050	Interior/Exterior Finishes, Materials, and Finish Schedule	5-05-11
09100	Non-Load Bearing Framing Systems	5-05-11
09260	Gypsum Board System	5-05-11
09900	Painting	5-05-11
	DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES	
10200	Louvers and Wall Vents	5-05-11
10260	Wall Guards and Corner Guards	5-05-11
10430	Exterior Signs	5-05-11
10440	Interior Signs	5-05-11
10522	Fire Extinguisher Cabinets	5-05-11
	DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION	
13081	Seismic Restraint Requirements for Non-Structural Components	5-05-11
13850	Fire Alarm Systems	5-05-11
13930	Wet Sprinklers	5-05-11

**SECTION 02200
BUILDING EARTHWORK**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

- A. This section specifies the requirements for furnishing all equipment, materials, labor, tools, and techniques for earthwork including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Site preparation.
 2. Excavation.
 3. Underpinning.
 4. Filling and backfilling.
 5. Grading.
 6. Soil Disposal.
 7. Clean Up.

1.2 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Unsuitable Materials:
1. Fills: Topsoil; frozen materials; construction materials and materials subject to decomposition; clods of clay and stones larger than 75 mm (3 inches); organic material, including silts, which are unstable; and inorganic materials, including silts, too wet to be stable.
 2. Existing Subgrade (Except Footings): Same materials as above paragraph, that are not capable of direct support of slabs, pavement, and similar items with possible exception of improvement by compaction, proofrolling, or similar methods.
 3. Existing Subgrade (Footings Only): Same as paragraph 1, but no fill or backfill. If materials differ from reference borings and design requirements, excavate to acceptable strata as per geotechnical report and subject to Resident Engineer's approval.
- B. Building Earthwork: Earthwork operations required in area enclosed by a line located 1500 mm (5 feet) outside of principal building perimeter. It also includes earthwork required for auxiliary structures and buildings.
- C. Trench Earthwork: Trenchwork required for utility lines.
- D. Degree of compaction: Degree of compaction is expressed as a percentage of maximum density obtained by laboratory test procedure. This percentage of maximum density is obtained through use of data provided

from results of field test procedures presented in ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, and ASTM D2922.

- E. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades. In the Construction Documents, the term "fill" means fill or backfill as appropriate.
- F. Backfill: Soil materials used to fill an excavation.
- G. Unauthorized excavation: Removal of materials beyond indicated sub-grade elevations or dimensions without written authorization by the Resident Engineer. No payment will be made for unauthorized excavation or remedial work required to correct unauthorized excavation.
- H. Authorized additional excavation: Removal of additional material authorized by the Resident Engineer based on the determination by the Government's soils testing agency that unsuitable bearing materials are encountered at required sub-grade elevations. Removal of unsuitable material and its replacement as directed will be paid on basis of Conditions of the Contract relative to changes in work.
- I. Subgrade: The undisturbed earth or the compacted soil layer immediately below granular sub-base, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- J. Structure: Buildings, foundations, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- K. Borrow: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- L. Drainage course: Layer supporting slab-on-grade used to minimize capillary flow of pore water.
- M. Bedding course: Layer placed over the excavated sub-grade in a trench before laying pipe.
- N. Utilities include on-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.
- O. Debris: Debris includes all materials located within the designated work area not covered in the other definitions and shall include but not be limited to items like vehicles, equipment, appliances, building materials or remains thereof, tires, any solid or liquid chemicals or products stored or found in containers or spilled on the ground.

1.3 RELATED WORK:

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Safety requirements and blasting operations: Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, Article, ACCIDENT PREVENTION.

- C. Protection of existing utilities, fire protection services, existing equipment, roads, and pavements: Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- D. Subsurface Investigation: Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Article, PHYSICAL DATA.
- E. Erosion Control: Section 01568, ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION, and Section 02480, LANDSCAPING.
- F. Foundation system requirements: Section 02411: Foundation Drainage.
- G. Site Earthwork: Section 02205

1.4 CLASSIFICATION OF EXCAVATION:

- A. Classified Excavation: Removal and disposal of all material except that material not defined as Rock.
- B. Rock Excavation:
 - 1. Trenches and Pits: Removal and disposal of solid, homogenous, interlocking crystalline material with firmly cemented, laminated, or foliated masses or conglomerate deposits that cannot be excavated with a late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 1050 mm (42 inch) wide, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 89 kW (120 hp) flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 111 kN (25,000 lbf) and stick-crowd force of not less than 83 kN (18,700 lbf); measured according to SAE J-1179. Trenches in excess of 3000 mm (10 feet) wide and pits in excess of 9000 mm (30 feet) in either length or width are classified as open excavation.
 - 2. Open Excavation: Removal and disposal of solid, homogenous, interlocking crystalline material firmly cemented, laminated, or foliated masses or conglomerate deposits that cannot be dislodged and excavated with a late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 157 kW (210 hp) flywheel power and developing a minimum of 200 kN (45,000 lbf) breakout force; measured according to SAE J-732.
 - 3. Other types of materials classified as rock are boulders of rock material exceeding 0.76 m³ (1 cubic yard) for open excavation, or 0.57 m³ (3/4 cubic yard) for footing and trench excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the above in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted.

1.5 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT FOR ROCK EXCAVATION:

- A. Measurement: Cross section and measure uncovered and separated materials, and compute quantities by Registered Professional Land Surveyor or Registered Civil Engineer, specified in Section 01010,

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS. Do not measure quantities beyond the following limits:

1. 600 mm (24 inches) from outside face of concrete work for which forms are required, except for footings.
 2. 300 mm (12 inches) from outside of perimeter of formed footings.
 3. 150 mm (6 inches) below bottom of pipe and not more than pipe diameter plus 600 mm (24 inches) in width for pipe trenches.
 4. From outside dimensions of concrete work for which no forms are required (trenches, conduits, and similar items not requiring forms).
- B. Payment: No separate payment shall be made for rock excavation quantities shown. Contract price and time will be adjusted for overruns or underruns in accordance with Articles, DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS, CHANGES and CHANGES-SUPPLEMENT of the GENERAL CONDITIONS as applicable.

1.6 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Rock Excavation Report:
1. Certification of rock quantities excavated.
 2. Excavation method.
 3. Labor.
 4. Equipment.
 5. Land Surveyor's or Civil Engineer's name and official registration stamp.
 6. Plot plan showing elevation.
- C. Furnish to Resident Engineer, soil samples, suitable for laboratory tests, of proposed off site or on site fill material.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- D448-03.....Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction
- D698-00.....Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft. lbf/ft³ (600 kN m/m³))
- D1556-00.....Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method

D1557-02.....Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil
Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (2700
kN m/m³))

D2922-01.....Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and
Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods
(Shallow Depth)

D2940-03.....Graded Aggregate Material for Bases or Subbases
for Highways or Airports

D4829-03.....Standard Test Method for Expansion Index of
Soils

C. American Water Works Association (AWWA):

SM 2540x.....Total Soluble Salts (Total Solubility)

D. Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE):

J732-92.....Specification Definitions Loaders

J1179-90.....Hydraulic Excavator and Backhoe Digging Forces

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

- A. Structural Fill and Backfill: Structural fill and backfill soils should not contain organic matter, debris, other deleterious matter or rocks or hard chunks larger than approximately 6 inches nominal diameter. The material should have a low solubility potential (3 percent or less), as evaluated by American Water Works Association (AWWA) SM 2540x (Total Soluble Salts) and a very low to low expansion potential (EI less than 50), as evaluated by ASTM D 4829 (Expansion Index Test)
- B. Import Soil: Import soil should consist of coarse-grained (50 percent or more retained on No. 200 sieve) material with a low solubility potential (1.0 percent or less), as evaluated by American Water Works Association (AWWA) SM 2540x (Total Soluble Salts), a low sulfate content (less than 0.1 percent), and a very low to low expansion potential (EI less than 50), as evaluated by ASTM D 4829 (Expansion Index Test). The import material shall be evaluated by the testing laboratory at the borrow site for its suitability prior to importation to the project site.
- C. Bedding: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940; except with 100 percent passing a 25 mm (1 inch) sieve and not more than 10 percent passing a 75-µm (No. 200) sieve.
- D. Drainage Fill: Washed, narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D448; coarse-aggregate grading Size

57; with 100 percent passing a 37.5 mm (1 1/2-inch) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a 2.36 mm (No. 8) sieve.

E. Granular Fill:

1. Under concrete slab, crushed stone or gravel graded from 25 mm (1 inch) to 4.75 mm (No. 4).
2. Bedding for sanitary and storm sewer pipe, crushed stone or gravel graded from 12 mm (1 inch) to 4.75 mm (No 4).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 BUILDING PREPARATION:

- A. Clearing: Clear within limits of earthwork operations as shown. Work includes removal of trees, shrubs, fences, foundations, incidental structures, paving, debris, trash, and other obstructions. Remove materials from Medical Center.
- B. Grubbing: Remove stumps and roots 75 mm (3 inch) and larger diameter. Undisturbed sound stumps, roots up to 75 mm (3 inch) diameter, and nonperishable solid objects a minimum of 900 mm (3 feet) below subgrade or finished embankment may be left.
- C. Trees and Shrubs: Trees and shrubs, not shown for removal, may be removed from areas within 4500 mm (15 feet) of new construction and 2250 mm (7.5 feet) of utility lines when removal is approved in advance by Resident Engineer. Remove materials from Medical Center. Box, and otherwise protect from damage, existing trees and shrubs which are not shown to be removed in construction area. Immediately repair damage to existing trees and shrubs by trimming, cleaning and painting damaged areas, including roots, in accordance with standard industry horticultural practice for the geographic area and plant species. Do not store building materials closer to trees and shrubs, that are to remain, than farthest extension of their limbs.
- D. Stripping Topsoil: Strip topsoil from within limits of earthwork operations as specified. Topsoil shall be a fertile, friable, natural topsoil of loamy character and characteristic of locality. Topsoil shall be capable of growing healthy horticultural crops of grasses. Stockpile topsoil and protect as directed by Resident Engineer. Eliminate foreign materials, such as weeds, roots, stones, subsoil, frozen clods, and similar foreign materials larger than 0.014 m³ (1/2 cubic foot) in volume, from soil as it is stockpiled. Retain topsoil on station. Remove foreign materials larger than 50 mm (2 inches) in any dimension from topsoil used in final grading. Topsoil work, such as stripping, stockpiling, and similar topsoil work shall not, under any

circumstances, be carried out when soil is wet so that tilth of soil will be destroyed.

- E. Concrete Slabs and Paving: Score deeply or saw cut to insure a neat, straight cut, sections of existing concrete slabs and paving to be removed where excavation or trenching occurs.
- F. Lines and Grades: Registered Professional Land Surveyor or Registered Civil Engineer, specified in Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, shall establish lines and grades.
 - 1. Grades shall conform to elevations indicated on plans within the tolerances herein specified. Generally grades shall be established to provide a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Grading shall comply with compaction requirements and grade cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated. Where spot grades are indicated the grade shall be established based on interpolation of the elevations between the spot grades while maintaining appropriate transition at structures and paving and uninterrupted drainage flow into inlets.
 - 2. Locations of existing and proposed elevations indicated on plans, except spot elevations, from a site survey that measured spot elevations and subsequently generated existing contours and spot elevations. Contractor is responsible to notify Resident Engineer of any differences between existing elevations shown on plans and those encountered on site by Surveyor/Engineer described above. Notify Resident Engineer of any differences between existing or constructed grades, as compared to those shown on the plans.
 - 3. Subsequent to establishment of lines and grades, Contractor will be responsible for any additional cut and/or fill required to ensure that site is graded to conform to elevations indicated on plans.
- G. Disposal: All materials removed from the property shall be disposed of at a legally approved site, for the specific materials, and all removals shall be in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and local regulations. No burning of materials is permitted onsite.

3.2 EXCAVATION:

- A. Shoring, Sheet piling and Bracing: Shore, brace, or slope, to it's angle of repose, banks of excavations to protect workmen, banks, adjacent paving, structures, and utilities.
 - 1. Extend shoring and bracing to bottom of excavation. Shore excavations that are carried below elevations of adjacent existing foundations.

2. If bearing of any foundation is disturbed by excavating, improper shoring or removal of shoring, placing of backfill, and similar operations, provide a concrete fill support under disturbed foundations, as directed by Resident Engineer, at no additional cost to the Government. Do not remove shoring until permanent work in excavation has been inspected and approved by Resident Engineer.
- B. Excavation Drainage: Operate pumping equipment as required to keep excavation free of water and subgrade dry, firm, and undisturbed until approval of permanent work has been received from Resident Engineer. Approval by the Resident Engineer is also required before placement of the permanent work on all subgrades. When subgrade for foundations has been disturbed by water, remove disturbed material to firm undisturbed material after water is brought under control. Replace disturbed subgrade in trenches with mechanically tamped sand or gravel.
- C. Blasting: Blasting of materials classified as rock shall be permitted only when authorized by Resident Engineer. Contractor shall meet all federal, state, and local requirements. Blasting shall be done with explosives of quantity and power, and fired in such sequence and locations as to not injure personnel, damage or crack rock against which concrete is to be placed, damage property, or damage existing work or other portions of new work. Contractor shall be responsible for damage caused by blasting operations.
- D. Proofrolling:
1. After rough grade has been established in cut areas and prior to placement of fill in fill areas under building and pavements, proofroll exposed subgrade with a fully loaded dump truck to check for pockets of soft material.
 2. Proofrolling shall consist of at least two complete passes with one pass being in a direction perpendicular to preceding one. Remove any areas that deflect, rut, or pump excessively during proofrolling, or that fail to consolidate after successive passes to suitable soils and replaced with compacted fill. Maintain subgrade until succeeding operation has been accomplished.
- E. Building Earthwork:
1. Excavation shall be accomplished as required by drawings, specifications and geotechnical report.
 2. Excavate foundation excavations to solid undisturbed subgrade.
 3. If hydro-collapsible clay is encountered, excavate 30 inches below the foundation bottom and replace with adequately compacted structural fill as per geotechnical report.

3. Remove loose or soft materials to a solid bottom.
4. Fill excess cut under footings or foundations with 25 MPa (3000 psi) concrete poured separately from the footings.
5. Do not tamp earth for backfilling in footing bottoms, except as specified.

F. Trench Earthwork:

1. Utility trenches (except sanitary and storm sewer):
 - a. Excavate to a width as necessary for sheeting and bracing and proper performance of the work.
 - b. Grade bottom of trenches with bell holes scooped out to provide a uniform bearing.
 - c. Support piping on undisturbed earth unless a mechanical support is shown.
 - d. Length of open trench in advance of piping laying shall not be greater than is authorized by Resident Engineer.
2. Sanitary and storm sewer trenches:
 - a. Trench width below a point 150 mm (6 inches) above top of pipe shall be 600 mm (24 inches) maximum for pipe up to and including 300 mm (12 inches) diameter, and four-thirds diameter of pipe plus 200 mm (8 inches) for pipe larger than 300 mm (12 inches). Width of trench above that level shall be as necessary for sheeting and bracing and proper performance of the work.
 - b. Bed bottom quadrant of pipe on undisturbed soil or granular fill.
 - 1) Undisturbed: Bell holes shall be no larger than necessary for jointing. Backfill up to a point 300 mm (12 inches) above top of pipe shall be clean earth placed and tamped by hand.
 - 2) Granular Fill: Depth of fill shall be a minimum of 75 mm (3 inches) plus one sixth of pipe diameter below pipe to 300 mm (12 inches) above top of pipe. Place and tamp fill material by hand.
 - c. Place and compact as specified remainder of backfill using acceptable excavated materials. Do not use unsuitable materials.
 - d. Use granular fill for bedding where rock or rocky materials are excavated.

G. Site Earthwork: See Section 02205.

3.3 FILLING AND BACKFILLING:

- A. General: Do not fill or backfill until all debris, unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials have been removed from excavation. For fill and backfill use excavated materials and

borrow meeting the criteria specified herein, as applicable. Borrow will be supplied at no additional cost to the Government. Do not use unsuitable excavated materials. Do not backfill until foundation walls have been completed above grade and adequately braced, waterproofing or dampproofing applied, foundation drainage, and pipes coming in contact with backfill have been installed and work inspected and approved by Resident Engineer.

- B. Placing: Place materials in horizontal layers not exceeding 200 mm (8 inches) in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 100 mm (4 inches) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers and then compacted. Place backfill and fill materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure. Place no material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost.
- C. Compaction: Compact with approved tamping rollers, sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic tired rollers, steel wheeled rollers, vibrator compactors, or other approved equipment (hand or mechanized) well suited to soil being compacted. Do not operate mechanized vibratory compaction equipment within 3000 mm (10 feet) of new or existing building walls without prior approval of Resident Engineer. Moisten or aerate material as necessary to provide moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining specified compaction with equipment used. Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry density, according to ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 as specified below:
 - 1. Fills, Embankments, and Backfill
 - a. Under proposed structures, building slabs, steps, and paved areas, scarify and recompact top 300 mm (12 inches) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 90 percent relative compaction in accordance with ASTM D 1557.
 - 2. Natural Ground (Cut or Existing)
 - a. Under building slabs, steps and paved areas, compact top 150 mm (12 inches) to 90 percent relative compaction in accordance with ASTM D1557.

3.4 GRADING:

- A. General: Uniformly grade the areas within the limits of this section, including adjacent transition areas. Smooth the finished surface within specified tolerance. Provide uniform levels or slopes between points where elevations are indicated, or between such points and existing

finished grades. Provide a smooth transition between abrupt changes in slope.

- B. Cut rough or sloping rock to level beds for foundations. In pipe spaces or other unfinished areas, fill low spots and level off with coarse sand or fine gravel.
- C. Slope backfill outside building away from building walls for a minimum distance of 1800 mm (6 feet).
- D. Finish grade earth floors in pipe basements as shown to a level, uniform slope and leave clean.
- E. Finished grade shall be at least 150 mm (6 inches) below bottom line of window or other building wall openings unless greater depth is shown.
- F. Place crushed stone or gravel fill under concrete slabs on grade, tamped, and leveled. Thickness of fill shall be 150 mm (6 inches) unless otherwise shown.
- G. Finish subgrade in a condition acceptable to Resident Engineer at least one day in advance of paving operations. Maintain finished subgrade in a smooth and compacted condition until succeeding operation has been accomplished. Scarify, compact, and grade subgrade prior to further construction when approved compacted subgrade is disturbed by Contractor's subsequent operations or adverse weather.
- H. Grading for Paved Areas: Provide final grades for both subgrade and base course to +/- 6 mm (0.25 inches) of indicated grades.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF UNSUITABLE AND EXCESS EXCAVATED MATERIAL:

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Medical Center property.
 - 1. Remove waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Medical Center property.
- C. Place excess excavated materials suitable for fill and/or backfill on site where directed.
- D. Remove from site and dispose of any excess excavated materials after all fill and backfill operations have been completed.
- E. Segregate all excavated contaminated soil designated by the Resident Engineer from all other excavated soils, and stockpile on site on two 0.15 mm (6 mil) polyethylene sheets with a polyethylene cover. A designated area shall be selected for this purpose. Dispose of excavated contaminated material in accordance with State and Local requirements.

3.7 CLEAN UP:

Upon completion of earthwork operations, clean areas within contract limits, remove tools, and equipment. Provide site clear, clean, free of debris, and suitable for subsequent construction operations. Remove all debris, rubbish, and excess material from Medical Center Property.

----- E N D -----

**SECTION 02205
SITE EARTHWORK**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. This section specifies the requirements for furnishing all equipment, materials, labor, tools, and techniques for site earthwork including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Site preparation.
2. Excavation.
3. Filling and backfilling.
4. Grading.
5. Soil Disposal.
6. Clean Up.

1.2 DEFINITIONS:

A. Unsuitable Materials:

1. Fills: Topsoil; frozen materials; construction materials and materials subject to decomposition; clods of clay and stones larger than 75 mm (3 inches); organic material, including silts, which are unstable; and inorganic materials, including silts, too wet to be stable.
2. Existing Subgrade (Except Footings): Same materials as above paragraph, that are not capable of direct support of slabs, pavement, and similar items with possible exception of improvement by compaction, proof rolling, or similar methods.

B. Trench Earthwork: Trench work required for utility lines.

C. Site Earthwork: Earthwork operations required in area outside of a line located 1500 mm (5 feet) outside of principal building perimeter and within new construction area with exceptions noted above.

D. Degree of compaction: Degree of compaction is expressed as a percentage of maximum density obtained by laboratory test procedure. This percentage of maximum density is obtained through use of data provided from results of field test procedures presented in ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, and ASTM D2922.

E. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades. In the Construction Documents, the term "fill" means fill or backfill as appropriate.

F. Backfill: Soil materials used to fill an excavation.

- G. Unauthorized excavation: Removal of materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without written authorization by the Resident Engineer. No payment will be made for unauthorized excavation or remedial work required to correct unauthorized excavation.
- H. Authorized additional excavation: Removal of additional material authorized by the Resident Engineer based on the determination by the VA's soils testing agency that unsuitable bearing materials are encountered at required subgrade elevations. Removal of unsuitable material and its replacement as directed will be paid on basis of Conditions of the Contract relative to changes in work.
- I. Subgrade: The undisturbed earth or the compacted soil layer immediately below granular subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- J. Structure: Buildings, foundations, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- K. Borrow: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- L. Drainage course: Layer supporting slab-on-grade used to minimize capillary flow of pore water.
- M. Bedding course: Layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- N. Subbase Course: Layer placed between the subgrade and base course for asphalt paving or layer placed between the subgrade and a concrete pavement or walk.
- O. Utilities include on-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.
- P. Debris: Debris includes all materials located within the designated work area not covered in the other definitions and shall include but not be limited to items like vehicles, equipment, appliances, building materials or remains thereof, tires, any solid or liquid chemicals or products stored or found in containers or spilled on the ground.

1.3 RELATED WORK:

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Protection of existing utilities, fire protection services, existing equipment, roads, and pavements: Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

C. Subsurface Investigation: Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Article, PHYSICAL DATA.

D. Erosion Control: Section 01568, ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION.

E. Paving subgrade requirements: Section 02513, ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVING.

F. Earthwork: Section 02200, BUILDING EARTHWORK.

1.4 CLASSIFICATION OF EXCAVATION:

A. Classified Excavation: Removal and disposal of all material except that material not defined as Rock.

B. Rock Excavation:

1. Trenches and Pits: Removal and disposal of solid, homogenous, interlocking crystalline material with firmly cemented, laminated, or foliated masses or conglomerate deposits that cannot be excavated with a late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 1050 mm (42-inch) wide, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 89 kW (120 hp) flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 111 kN (25,000 lbf) and stick-crowd force of not less than 83 kN (18,700 lbf); measured according to SAE J-1179. Trenches in excess of 3000 mm (10 feet) wide and pits in excess of 9000 mm (30 feet) in either length or width are classified as open excavation.
2. Open Excavation: Removal and disposal of solid, homogenous, interlocking crystalline material firmly cemented, laminated, or foliated masses or conglomerate deposits that cannot be dislodged and excavated with a late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 157 kW (210 hp) flywheel power and developing a minimum of 200 kN (45,000 lbf) breakout force; measured according to SAE J-732.
3. Other types of materials classified as rock are boulders of rock material exceeding 0.76 m³ (1 cubic yard) for open excavation, or 0.57 m³ (3/4 cubic yard) for footing and trench excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the above in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted.

1.5 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT FOR ROCK EXCAVATION:

A. Measurement: Cross section and measure uncovered and separated materials, and compute quantities by Registered Professional Land Surveyor or Registered Civil Engineer, specified in Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS. Do not measure quantities beyond the following limits:

1. 600 mm (24 inches) from outside face of concrete work for which forms are required, except for footings.
 2. 300 mm (12 inches) from outside of perimeter of formed footings.
 3. 150 mm (6 inches) below bottom of pipe and not more than pipe diameter plus 600 mm (24 inches) in width for pipe trenches.
 4. From outside dimensions of concrete work for which no forms are required (trenches, conduits, and similar items not requiring forms).
- B. Payment: No separate payment shall be made for rock excavation. Contract price and time will be adjusted for overruns or underruns in accordance with Articles, DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS, CHANGES and CHANGES-SUPPLEMENT of the GENERAL CONDITIONS as applicable.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. Uniform Standard Specifications: *Uniform Standard Specifications for Public Works' Construction, Off-Site Improvements, Clark County Area, Nevada*, most recent edition.
1. Comply with referenced sections and subsections.
 2. Contractual, measurement, and payment provisions do not apply.
 3. Applicable sections:
 - a. Section 203.
 - b. Section 208.
- C. ASTM International (ASTM) standards, most recent editions:
- D448.....Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction
- D698.....Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft. lbf/ft³ (600 kN m/m³))
- D1556.....Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
- D1557.....Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (2700 kN m/m³))
- D2167.....Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method

D2922.....Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and
Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods
(Shallow Depth)

D2940.....Graded Aggregate Material for Bases or Subbases
for Highways or Airports

D4829.....Standard Test Method for Expansion Index of
Soils

D. American Water Works Association (AWWA), most recent edition(s):

SM 2540x.....Total Soluble Salts (Total Solubility)

E. Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE), most recent editions:

J-732.....Specification Definitions Loaders

J-1179.....Hydraulic Excavator and Backhoe Digging Forces

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

A. Structural Fill and Backfill: Structural fill and backfill soils should not contain organic matter, debris, other deleterious matter or rocks or hard chunks larger than approximately 6 inches nominal diameter. The material should have a low solubility potential (3 percent or less), as evaluated by American Water Works Association (AWWA) SM 2540x (Total Soluble Salts) and a very low to low expansion potential (EI less than 50), as evaluated by ASTM D 4829 (Expansion Index Test)

B. Import Soil: Import soil should consist of coarse-grained (50 percent or more retained on No. 200 sieve) material with a low solubility potential (1.0 percent or less), as evaluated by American Water Works Association (AWWA) SM 2540x (Total Soluble Salts), a low sulfate content (less than 0.1 percent), and a very low expansion potential (EI less than 50), as evaluated by ASTM D 4829 (Expansion Index Test). The import material shall be evaluated by the testing laboratory at the borrow site for its suitability prior to importation to the project site.

C. Bedding: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940; except with 100 percent passing a 25 mm (1 inch) sieve and not more than 10 percent passing a 75-µm (No. 200) sieve.

D. Drainage Fill: Washed, narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D448; coarse-aggregate grading

Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 37.5 mm (1-1/2-inch) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a 2.36 mm (No. 8) sieve.

E. Granular Fill:

1. Under concrete slab, crushed stone or gravel graded from 25 mm (1 inch) to 4.75 mm (No. 4).
2. Bedding for sanitary and storm sewer pipe, crushed stone or gravel graded from 12 mm (1/2 inch) to 4.75 mm (No 4).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SITE PREPARATION:

A. Clearing: Clear within limits of earthwork operations as shown. Work includes removal of trees, shrubs, fences, foundations, incidental structures, paving, debris, trash, and other obstructions. Remove materials from Medical Center Property. Contractor shall obtain and follow the requirements of the Clark County Dust Control Permit.

B. Grubbing: Remove stumps and roots 75 mm (3-inch) and larger diameter. Undisturbed sound stumps, roots up to 75 mm (3-inch) diameter, and nonperishable solid objects a minimum of 900 mm (3 feet) below subgrade or finished embankment may be left.

C. Trees and Shrubs:

1. Trees and shrubs, not shown for removal, may be removed from areas within 4500 mm (15 feet) of new construction and 2250 mm (7.5 feet) of utility lines when removal is approved in advance by Resident Engineer.
2. Remove materials from Medical Center property.
3. Box, and otherwise protect from damage, existing trees and shrubs which are not shown to be removed in construction area.
4. Immediately repair damage to existing trees and shrubs by trimming, cleaning and painting damaged areas, including roots, in accordance with standard industry horticultural practice for the geographic area and plant species.
5. Do not store building materials closer to trees and shrubs, that are to remain, than farthest extension of their limbs.

D. Stripping Topsoil:

1. Strip topsoil from within limits of earthwork operations as specified and if found.
2. Topsoil shall be a fertile, friable, natural topsoil of loamy character and characteristic of locality.

3. Topsoil shall be capable of growing healthy horticultural crops of grasses.
 4. Stockpile topsoil and protect as directed by Resident Engineer and as required to meet County dust control standards.
 5. Eliminate foreign materials, such as weeds, roots, stones, subsoil, frozen clods, and similar foreign materials larger than 0.014 m³ (1/2 cubic foot) in volume, from soil as it is stockpiled. Retain topsoil on station.
 6. Remove foreign materials larger than 50 mm (2 inches) in any dimension from topsoil used in final grading.
 7. Topsoil work, such as stripping, stockpiling, and similar topsoil work shall not, under any circumstances, be carried out when soil is wet so that tilth of soil will be destroyed.
- E. Lines and Grades: Registered Professional Land Surveyor or Registered Civil Engineer, specified in Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, shall establish lines and grades.
1. Grades shall conform to elevations indicated on Drawings within the tolerances herein specified. Generally grades shall be established to provide a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Grading shall comply with compaction requirements and grade cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated. Where spot grades are indicated the grade shall be established based on interpolation of the elevations between the spot grades while maintaining appropriate transition at structures and paving and uninterrupted drainage flow into inlets.
 2. Locations of existing elevations indicated on Drawings, except spot elevations, from a site survey that measured spot elevations and subsequently generated existing contours and spot elevations. Contractor is responsible to notify Resident Engineer of any differences between existing elevations shown on Drawings and those encountered on-site by Surveyor/Engineer described above. Notify Resident Engineer of any differences between existing or constructed grades, as compared to those shown on the Drawings.
 3. Subsequent to establishment of lines and grades, Contractor will be responsible for any additional cut and/or fill required to ensure that site is graded to conform to elevations indicated on Drawings.
 4. Finish grading shall be as specified on the Drawings.

F. Disposal: All materials removed from the property shall be disposed of at a legally approved site, for the specific materials, and all removals shall be in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and local regulations. No burning of materials is permitted on-site.

3.2 EXCAVATION:

A. Shoring, Sheet piling and Bracing: Shore, brace, or slope, to its angle of repose, banks of excavations to protect workmen, banks, adjacent paving, structures, and utilities.

1. Extend shoring and bracing to bottom of excavation. Shore excavations that are carried below elevations of adjacent existing foundations.
2. If bearing of any foundation is disturbed by excavating, improper shoring or removal of shoring, placing of backfill, and similar operations, provide a concrete fill support under disturbed foundations, as directed by Resident Engineer, at no additional cost to the VA. Do not remove shoring until permanent work in excavation has been inspected and approved by Resident Engineer.

B. Excavation Drainage: Operate pumping equipment as required to keep excavation free of water and subgrade dry, firm, and undisturbed until approval of permanent work has been received from Resident Engineer. Approval by the Resident Engineer is also required before placement of the permanent work on all sub-grades. When sub-grade for foundations has been disturbed by water, remove disturbed material to firm undisturbed material after water is brought under control. Replace disturbed subgrade in trenches with mechanically tamped sand or gravel.

C. Proofrolling:

1. After rough grade has been established in cut areas and prior to placement of fill in fill areas under building and pavements, proofroll exposed subgrade with a fully loaded dump truck to check for pockets of soft material.
2. Proofrolling shall consist of at least two complete passes with one pass being in a direction perpendicular to preceding one. Remove any areas that deflect, rut, or pump excessively during proofrolling, or that fail to consolidate after successive passes to suitable soils and replaced with compacted fill. Maintain subgrade until succeeding operation has been accomplished.

D. Trench Earthwork:

1. Utility trenches (except sanitary and storm sewer):

- a. Excavate to a width as necessary for sheeting and bracing and proper performance of the work.
 - b. Grade bottom of trenches with bell holes scooped out to provide a uniform bearing.
 - c. Support piping on undisturbed earth unless a mechanical support is shown.
 - d. Length of open trench in advance of piping laying shall not be greater than is authorized by Resident Engineer.
2. Sanitary and storm sewer trenches:
- a. Trench width below a point 150 mm (6 inches) above top of pipe shall be 600 mm (24 inches) maximum for pipe up to and including 300 mm (12 inches) diameter, and four-thirds diameter of pipe plus 200 mm (8 inches) for pipe larger than 300 mm (12 inches). Width of trench above that level shall be as necessary for sheeting and bracing and proper performance of the work.
 - b. Bed bottom quadrant of pipe on undisturbed soil or granular fill.
 - 1) Undisturbed: Bell holes shall be no larger than necessary for jointing. Backfill up to a point 300 mm (12 inches) above top of pipe shall be clean earth placed and tamped by hand.
 - 2) Granular Fill: Depth of fill shall be a minimum of 75 mm (3 inches) plus one sixth of pipe diameter below pipe to 300 mm (12 inches) above top of pipe. Place and tamp fill material by hand.
 - c. Place and compact as specified remainder of backfill using acceptable excavated materials. Do not use unsuitable materials.
 - d. Use granular fill for bedding where rock or rocky materials are excavated.
- E. Site Earthwork: Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation. Excavation shall be accomplished as required by drawings and specifications. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 25 mm (1 inch). Extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, complying with OSHA requirements, and for inspections. Remove subgrade materials

that are determined by Resident Engineer or in accordance with the Geotechnical Report (Ninyo & Moore, Geotechnical Report No. 30169905, Section 8.1.1) as unsuitable, and replace with acceptable material. Testing of the soil shall be performed by the VA Testing Laboratory. When unsuitable material is encountered and removed, contract price and time will be adjusted in accordance with Articles, DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS, CHANGES and CHANGES-SUPPLEMENT of the GENERAL CONDITIONS as applicable. Adjustments to be based on volume in cut section only.

1. Site Grading:

- a. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
- b. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- c. Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponds from forming where not designed. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
 - 1) Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 25 mm (1 inch).
 - 2) Walks: Plus or minus 25 mm (1 inch).
 - 3) Pavements: Plus or minus 13 mm (1 inch).

3.3 FILLING AND BACKFILLING:

- A. General: Do not fill or backfill until all debris, unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials have been removed from excavation. For fill and backfill use excavated materials and borrow meeting the criteria specified herein, as applicable. Borrow will be supplied at no additional cost to the VA. Do not use unsuitable excavated materials. Do not backfill until foundation walls have been completed above grade and adequately braced, waterproofing or dampproofing applied, foundation drainage, and pipes coming in contact with backfill have been installed and work inspected and approved by Resident Engineer.
- B. Placing: Place materials in horizontal layers not exceeding 200 mm (8 inches) in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 100 mm (4 inches) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers and then compacted. Place backfill and fill materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each

structure. Place no material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost.

C. Compaction: Compact with approved tamping rollers, sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic tired rollers, steel wheeled rollers, vibrator compactors, or other approved equipment (hand or mechanized) well suited to soil being compacted. Do not operate mechanized vibratory compaction equipment within 3000 mm (10 feet) of new or existing building walls without prior approval of Resident Engineer. Moisten or aerate material as necessary to provide moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining specified compaction with equipment used. Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry density, according to ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 as specified below:

1. Fills, Embankments, and Backfill

- a. Under paved areas, scarify and recompact top 300 mm (12 inches) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material in accordance with ASTM D1557, Method A, 95 percent.
- b. Curbs, curbs and gutters, ASTM D1557, Method A, 95 percent.
- c. Under Sidewalks, scarify and recompact top 300 mm (12 inches) below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material in accordance with ASTM D1557, Method A, 95 percent.
- d. Landscaped areas, top 400 mm (16 inches), 85 percent.
- e. Landscaped areas, below 400 mm (16 inches) of finished grade, ASTM D1557, Method A, 90 percent.

2. Natural Ground (Cut or Existing)

- a. Curbs, curbs and gutters, top 300 mm (12 inches), ASTM D1557, Method A, 95 percent.
- b. Under sidewalks, top 300 mm (12 inches), ASTM D1557, Method A, 95 percent.

3.4 GRADING:

A. General: Uniformly grade the areas within the limits of this section, including adjacent transition areas. Smooth the finished surface within specified tolerance. Provide uniform levels or slopes between points where elevations are indicated, or between such points and existing finished grades. Provide a smooth transition between abrupt changes in slope.

- B. Cut rough or sloping rock to level beds for foundations. In pipe spaces or other unfinished areas, fill low spots and level off with coarse sand or fine gravel.
- C. Slope backfill outside building away from building walls for a minimum distance of 1800 mm (6 feet).
- D. Finish grade earth floors in pipe basements as shown to a level, uniform slope and leave clean.
- E. Finished grade shall be at least 150 mm (6 inches) below bottom line of window or other building wall openings unless greater depth is shown.
- F. Place crushed stone or gravel fill under concrete slabs on grade, tamped, and leveled. Thickness of fill shall be 150 mm (6 inches) unless otherwise shown.
- G. Finish subgrade in a condition acceptable to Resident Engineer at least one day in advance of paving operations. Maintain finished subgrade in a smooth and compacted condition until succeeding operation has been accomplished. Scarify, compact, and grade subgrade prior to further construction when approved compacted subgrade is disturbed by Contractor's subsequent operations or adverse weather.
- H. Grading for Paved Areas: Provide final grades for both subgrade and base course to +/- 6 mm (0.25 inches) of indicated grades.

3.5 DISPOSAL OF UNSUITABLE AND EXCESS EXCAVATED MATERIAL:

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Medical Center property.
- B. Disposal: Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Medical Center property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Resident Engineer. Disturbed materials shall be protected so as to produce no dust in compliance with the Clark County air quality standards.
 - 1. Remove waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Medical Center property.
- C. Place excess excavated materials suitable for fill and/or backfill on-site where directed for future use. Contractor shall stabilize to prevent dust from exiting the site and meet Clark County Dust Control standards.
- D. Remove from site and dispose of any excess excavated materials after all fill and backfill operations have been completed.

E. Segregate all excavated contaminated soil designated by the Resident Engineer from all other excavated soils, and stockpile on-site on two 0.15 mm (6 mil) polyethylene sheets with a polyethylene cover. A designated area shall be selected for this purpose. Dispose of excavated contaminated material in accordance with state and local requirements.

3.6 CLEAN UP:

Upon completion of earthwork operations, clean areas within contract limits, remove tools, and equipment. Provide site clear, clean, free of debris, and suitable for subsequent construction operations. Remove all debris, rubbish, and excess material from Medical Center Property.

- - - END - - -

**SECTION 02513
ASPHALT CONCRETE PAVING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This work shall cover the composition, mixing, construction upon the prepared subgrade, and the protection of hot asphalt concrete pavement.
- B. The hot asphalt concrete pavement shall consist of an aggregate or asphalt base course and asphalt surface course constructed in conformity with the lines, grades, thickness, and cross sections as shown.
- C. Each course shall be constructed to the depth, section, or elevation required by the Drawings and shall be rolled, finished, and approved before the placement of the next course.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Laboratory and field testing requirements: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Subgrade Preparation: Paragraph 3.3 and Section 02205, SITE EARTHWORK.
- C. Pavement Markings: Section 02577, PAVEMENT MARKING.

1.3 INSPECTION OF PLANT AND EQUIPMENT

- A. The Resident Engineer shall have access at all times to all parts of the material producing plants for checking the mixing operations and materials and the adequacy of the equipment in use.

1.4 ALIGNMENT AND GRADE CONTROL

- A. The Contractor's Registered Professional Land Surveyor specified in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS shall establish and control the pavement (aggregate or asphalt base course and asphalt surface course) alignments, grades, elevations, and cross sections as shown on the Drawings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS, furnish the following:
- B. Data and Test Reports:
 - 1. Aggregate Base Course: Sources, gradation, liquid limit, plasticity index, percentage of wear, and other tests required by Uniform Standard Specifications.

2. Asphalt Base/Surface Course: Aggregate source, gradation, soundness loss, percentage of wear, and other tests required by the Uniform Standard Specifications.

3. Job-mix formula.

C. Certifications:

1. Asphalt prime and tack coat material certificate of conformance to Uniform Standard Specifications requirements.

2. Asphalt cement certificate of conformance to Uniform Standard Specifications requirements.

3. Job-mix certification - Submit plant mix certification that mix equals or exceeds the Uniform Standard Specifications.

D. One copy of Uniform Standard Specifications.

E. Provide MSDS (Material Safety Data Sheets) for all chemicals used on ground.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

A. Uniform Standard Specifications: *Uniform Standard Specifications for Public Works' Construction, Off-Site Improvements, Clark County Area, Nevada*, most recent edition.

1. Comply with referenced sections and subsections.

2. Contractual, measurement, and payment provisions do not apply.

3. Applicable sections:

a. Section 401.

b. Section 402.

c. Section 405.

d. Section 406.

e. Section 407.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Aggregate base and asphalt concrete materials shall conform to the requirements of the following and other appropriate sections of the latest version of the Uniform Standard Material Specifications, including amendments, addenda and errata. Where the term "Engineer" or "Contracting Agency" is referenced in the Uniform Standard Specifications, it shall mean the VA Resident Engineer or VA Contracting Officer.

2.2 AGGREGATES

A. Provide aggregates consisting of crushed stone, gravel, sand, or other sound, durable mineral materials processed and blended, and naturally combined.

- B. Subbase aggregate (where required) maximum size: 38 mm (1-1/2-inch).
- C. Base aggregate maximum size:
 - 1. Base course over 152 mm (6-inch) thick: 38 mm (1-1/2-inch);
 - 2. Other base courses: 19 mm (3/4-inch).
- D. Asphaltic base course:
 - 1. Maximum particle size not to exceed 25.4 mm (1-inch).
 - 2. Where conflicts arise between this specification and the requirements in the latest version of the Uniform Standard Specifications, the Uniform Standard Specifications shall control.
- E. Aggregates for asphaltic concrete paving: Provide a mixture of sand, mineral aggregate, and liquid asphalt mixed in such proportions that the percentage by weight will be within:

<u>Sieve Sizes</u>	<u>Percentage Passing</u>
19 mm (3/4")	100
9.5 mm (3/8")	67 to 85
6.4 mm (1/4")	50 to 65
2.4 mm (No. 8 mesh)	37 to 50
600 µm (No. 30 mesh)	15 to 25
75 µm (No. 200 mesh)	3 to 8

plus 50/60 penetration liquid asphalt at 5 percent to 6-1/2 percent of the combined dry aggregates.

2.3 ASPHALTS

- A. Comply with provisions of Asphalt Institute Specification SS2:
 - 1. Asphalt cement: Penetration grade 50/60
 - 2. Prime coat: Cut-back type, grade MC-70
 - 3. Tack coat: Uniformly emulsified, grade SS-1H

2.4 SEALER

- A. Provide a sealer consisting of suitable fibrated chemical type asphalt base binders and fillers having a container consistency suitable for troweling after thorough stirring, and containing no clay or other deleterious substance.
- B. Where conflicts arise between this specification and the requirements in the latest version of the Uniform Standard Specifications, the Uniform Standard Specifications shall control.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Asphalt Concrete Paving equipment, weather limitations, job-mix formula, mixing, construction methods, compaction, finishing, tolerance, and protection shall conform to the requirements of the appropriate sections of the Uniform Standard Specifications for the type of material specified.

3.2 MIXING ASPHALTIC CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Provide hot plant-mixed asphaltic concrete paving materials in compliance with Subsection 401.02.01 of the Uniform Standard Specifications.

3.3 SUBGRADE

- A. Shape to line and grade and compact with self-propelled rollers.
- B. All depressions that develop under rolling shall be filled with acceptable material and the area re-rolled.
- C. Soft areas shall be removed and filled with acceptable materials and the area re-rolled.
- D. Should the subgrade become rutted or displaced prior to the placing of the subbase, it shall be reworked to bring to line and grade.
- E. Proof-roll the subgrade with maximum 45 tonne (50 ton) gross weight dump truck as directed by VA Resident Engineer or VA Contracting Officer. If pumping, pushing, or other movement is observed, rework the area to provide a stable and compacted subgrade.

3.4 BASE COURSES

- A. Subbase (when required):
 - 1. Spread and compact to the thickness shown on the Drawings.
 - 2. Rolling shall begin at the sides and continue toward the center and shall continue until there is no movement ahead of the roller.
 - 3. After completion of the subbase rolling there shall be no hauling over the subbase other than the delivery of material for the top course.
- B. Base
 - 1. Spread and compact to the thickness shown on the Drawings.
 - 2. Rolling shall begin at the sides and continue toward the center and shall continue until there is no movement ahead of the roller.
 - 3. After completion of the base rolling there shall be no hauling over the base other than the delivery of material for the top course.
- C. Thickness tolerance: Provide the compacted thicknesses shown on the Drawings within a tolerance of minus 0.0 mm (0.0 inch) to plus 12.7 mm (0.5 inch).

- D. Smoothness tolerance: Provide the lines and grades shown on the Drawings within a tolerance of 5mm in 3m (3/16 inch in ten feet).
- E. Moisture content: Use only the amount of moisture needed to achieve the specified compaction.

3.5 PLACEMENT OF ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVING

- A. Remove all loose materials from the compacted base.
- B. Apply the specified prime coat, and tack coat where required, and allow to dry in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations as approved by the Architect or Engineer.
- C. Receipt of asphaltic concrete materials:
 - 1. Do not accept material unless it is covered with a tarpaulin until unloaded, and unless the material has a temperature of not less than 130 degrees C (280 degrees F).
 - 2. Do not commence placement of asphaltic concrete materials when the atmospheric temperature is below 10 degrees C (50 degrees F), not during fog, rain, or other unsuitable conditions.
- D. Spreading:
 - 1. Spread material in a manner that requires the least handling.
 - 2. Where thickness of finished paving will be 76 mm (3 inches) or less, spread in one layer.
- E. Rolling:
 - 1. After the material has been spread to the proper depth, roll until the surface is hard, smooth, unyielding, and true to the thickness and elevations shown on the Drawings.
 - 2. Roll in at least two directions until no roller marks are visible.
 - 3. Finished paving smoothness tolerance:
 - a. No depressions which will retain standing water.
 - b. No deviation greater than 3 mm in 1.8 m (1/8 inch in six feet).

3.6 APPLICATION OF SEAL COAT

- A. Prepare the surfaces, mix the seal coat material, and apply in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Apply one coat of the specified sealer.
- C. Achieve a finished surface seal which, when dry and thoroughly set, is smooth, tough, resilient, of uniform black color, and free from coarse textured areas, lap marks, ridges, and other surface irregularities.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect the asphaltic concrete paved areas from traffic until the sealer is set and cured and does not pick up under foot or wheeled traffic.

3.8 FINAL CLEAN-UP

- A. Remove all debris, rubbish, and excess material from the work area.

- - - END - - -

**SECTION 02514
SITE WORK CONCRETE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section shall cover site work concrete constructed upon the prepared subgrade and in conformance with the lines, grades, thickness, and cross sections shown. Construction shall include the following:
1. Curb and combination curb and gutter.
 2. Pedestrian Pavement: Walks, grade slabs, lawn mower strips, crossings, wheelchair curb ramps, and steps.
 3. Vehicular Pavement: Service courts and driveways.
 4. Equipment Pads: Oxygen storage, transformers, propane tanks, and so forth.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Laboratory and Field Testing Requirements: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Subgrade Preparation: Section 02205, SITE EARTHWORK.
- C. Concrete Materials, Quality, Mixing, Design and Other Requirements: Section 03301, CAST-IN-PLACE-CONCRETE.
- D. Metal Components of Steps (Nosing and Railing): Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS.

1.3 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design all elements with the latest published version of applicable codes.

1.4 WEATHER LIMITATIONS

- A. Placement of concrete shall be as specified under Article 3.8, COLD WEATHER and Article 3.7, HOT WEATHER of Section 03301, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS, furnish the following submittals.
- B. Manufacturers' Certificates and Data certifying that the following materials conform to the requirements specified.
1. Expansion joint filler
 2. Hot poured sealing compound
 3. Reinforcement
 4. Curing materials
- C. Data and Test Reports: Select subbase material.

1. Job-mix formula.
2. Source, gradation, liquid limit, plasticity index, percentage of wear, and other tests as specified and in referenced publications.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. Refer to the latest edition of all referenced Standards and codes.
- B. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO):
 - M31.....Deformed and Plain Billet Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement (ASTM A615)
 - M42.....Rail-Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
 - M55.....Welded Steel Wire Fabric for Concrete Reinforcement (ASTM A185)
 - M148.....Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete (ASTM C309)
 - M171.....Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete (ASTM C171)
 - M182.....Burlap Cloth Made from Jute or Kenaf
 - M213.....Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Non-extruding and Resilient Bituminous Type) (ASTM D1751)
- C. ASTM International ASTM):
 - C94.....Ready-Mixed Concrete
 - C143.....Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Concrete shall be Type V, air-entrained as specified in Section 03301, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE, with the following exceptions:

<u>TYPE</u>	<u>MAXIMUM SLUMP*</u>
Curb & Gutter	75 mm (3")
Pedestrian Pavement	75 mm (3")
Vehicular Pavement	50 mm (2") (Machine Finished) 100 mm (4") (Hand Finished)

<u>TYPE</u>	<u>MAXIMUM SLUMP*</u>
Equipment Pad	75 to 100 mm (3" to 4")
* For concrete to be vibrated: Slump as determined by ASTM C143. Tolerances as established by ASTM C94.	

2.2 REINFORCEMENT

- A. The type, amount, and locations of steel reinforcement shall be as shown on the drawings and in the specifications.
- B. Welded wire-fabric shall conform to AASHTO M55.
- C. Dowels shall be plain steel bars conforming to AASHTO M31 or M42. Tie bars shall be deformed steel bars conforming to AASHTO M31 or M42.

2.3 SELECT SUBBASE (WHERE REQUIRED)

- A. Subbase material shall consist of select granular material composed of sand, sand-gravel, crushed stone, crushed or granulated slag, with or without soil binder, or combinations of these materials conforming to the Uniform Standard Specifications.
- B. Materials meeting other gradations than that noted will be acceptable whenever the gradations are within a tolerance of 3 to 5 percent, plus or minus, of the single gradation established by the job-mix formula.
- C. Subbase material shall produce a compacted, dense-graded course, meeting the density requirement specified herein.

2.4 FORMS

- A. Use metal or wood forms that are straight and suitable in cross-section, depth, and strength to resist springing during depositing and consolidating the concrete, for the work involved.
- B. Do not use forms if they vary from a straight line more than 3 mm (1/8 inch) in any 3000 mm (ten foot) long section, in either a horizontal or vertical direction.
- C. Wood forms should be at least 50 mm (2 inches) thick (nominal). Wood forms shall also be free from warp, twist, loose knots, splits, or other defects. Use approved flexible or curved forms for forming radii.

2.5 CONCRETE CURING MATERIALS

- A. Concrete curing materials shall conform to one of the following:
 - 1. Burlap conforming to AASHTO M182 having a weight of 233 grams (7 ounces) or more per square meter (yard) when dry.
 - 2. Impervious Sheeting conforming to AASHTO M171.

3. Liquid Membrane Curing Compound conforming to AASHTO M148 (ASTM C309), Type 1 and shall be free of paraffin or petroleum.

2.6 EXPANSION JOINT FILLERS

- A. Material shall conform to AASHTO M213.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SUBGRADE PENETRATION

- A. Prepare, construct, and finish the subgrade as specified in Section 02205, SITE EARTHWORK.
- B. Maintain the subgrade in a smooth, compacted condition, in conformance with the required section and established grade until the succeeding operation has been accomplished.

3.2 SETTING FORMS

- A. Base Support:
 1. Compact the base material under the forms true to grade so that, when set, they will be uniformly supported for their entire length at the grade as shown.
 2. Correct imperfections or variations in the base material grade by cutting or filling and compacting.
- B. Form Setting:
 1. Set forms sufficiently in advance of the placing of the concrete to permit the performance and approval of all operations required with and adjacent to the form lines.
 2. Set forms to true line and grade and use stakes, clamps, spreaders, and braces to hold them rigidly in place so that the forms and joints are free from play or movement in any direction.
 3. Forms shall conform to line and grade with an allowable tolerance of 3 mm (1/8 inch) when checked with a straightedge and shall not deviate from true line by more than 6 mm (1/4 inch) at any point.
 4. Do not remove forms until removal will not result in damaged concrete or at such time to facilitate finishing.
 5. Clean and oil forms each time they are used.
- C. The Contractor's Registered Professional Land Surveyor, specified in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, shall establish and control the alignment and the grade elevations of the forms or concrete slipforming machine operations.
 1. Make necessary corrections to forms immediately before placing concrete.

2. When any form has been disturbed or any subgrade or subbase has become unstable, reset and recheck the form before placing concrete.

3.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. The Resident Engineer shall approve equipment and tools necessary for handling materials and performing all parts of the work prior to commencement of work.
- B. Maintain equipment and tools in satisfactory working condition at all times.

3.4 PLACING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcement shall be free from dirt, oil, rust, scale or other substances that prevent the bonding of the concrete to the reinforcement.
- B. Before the concrete is placed, the Resident Engineer shall approve the reinforcement, which shall be accurately and securely fastened in place with suitable supports and ties. The type, amount, and position of the reinforcement shall be as shown.

3.5 PLACING CONCRETE - GENERAL

- A. Obtain approval of the Resident Engineer before placing concrete.
- B. Remove debris and other foreign material from between the forms before placing concrete. Obtain approval of the Resident Engineer before placing concrete.
- C. Before the concrete is placed, uniformly moisten the subgrade, base, or subbase appropriately, avoiding puddles of water.
- D. Convey concrete from mixer to final place of deposit by a method which will prevent segregation or loss of ingredients. Deposit concrete so that it requires as little handling as possible.
- E. While being placed, spade or vibrate and compact the concrete with suitable tools to prevent the formation of voids or honeycomb pockets. Vibrate concrete well against forms and along joints. Over-vibration or manipulation causing segregation will not be permitted. Place concrete continuously between joints without bulkheads.
- F. Install a construction joint whenever the placing of concrete is suspended for more than 30 minutes and at the end of each day's work.
- G. Workmen or construction equipment coated with foreign material shall not be permitted to walk or operate in the concrete during placement and finishing operations.

3.6 PLACING CONCRETE FOR CURB AND GUTTER, PEDESTRIAN PAVEMENT, AND EQUIPMENT PADS

- A. Place concrete in the forms in one layer of such thickness that, when compacted and finished, it will conform to the cross section as shown.

- B. Deposit concrete as near to joints as possible without disturbing them but do not dump onto a joint assembly.
- C. After the concrete has been placed in the forms, use a strike-off guided by the side forms to bring the surface to the proper section to be compacted.
- D. Consolidate the concrete thoroughly by tamping and spading, or with approved mechanical finishing equipment.
- E. Finish the surface to grade with a wood or metal float.
- F. All concrete pads and pavements shall be constructed with sufficient slope to drain properly.

3.7 PLACING CONCRETE FOR VEHICULAR PAVEMENT

- A. Deposit concrete into the forms as close as possible to its final position.
- B. Place concrete rapidly and continuously between construction joints.
- C. Strike off concrete and thoroughly consolidate by a finishing machine, vibrating screed, or by hand-finishing.
- D. Finish the surface to the elevation and crown as shown.
- E. Deposit concrete as near the joints as possible without disturbing them but do not dump onto a joint assembly. Do not place adjacent lanes without approval by the Resident Engineer.

3.8 CONCRETE FINISHING - GENERAL

- A. The sequence of operations, unless otherwise indicated, shall be as follows:
 - 1. Consolidating, floating, straight-edging, troweling, texturing, and edging of joints.
 - 2. Maintain finishing equipment and tools in a clean and approved condition.

3.9 CONCRETE FINISHING CURB AND GUTTERS

- A. Round the edges of the gutter and top of the curb with an edging tool to a radius of 6mm (1/4 inch) or as otherwise detailed.
- B. Float the surfaces and finish with a smooth wood or metal float until true to grade and section and uniform in textures.
- C. Finish the surfaces, while still wet, with a bristle type brush with longitudinal strokes.
- D. Immediately after removing the front curb form, rub the face of the curb with a wood or concrete rubbing block and water until blemishes, form marks, and tool marks have been removed. Brush the surface, while still wet, in the same manner as the gutter and curb top.

- E. Except at grade changes or curves, finished surfaces shall not vary more than 3 mm (1/8 inch) for gutter and 6 mm (1/4 inch) for top and face of curb, when tested with a 3000 mm (10 foot) straightedge.
- F. Remove and reconstruct irregularities exceeding the above for the full length between regularly scheduled joints.
- G. Correct any depressions which will not drain.
- H. Visible surfaces and edges of finished curb, gutter, and combination curb and gutter shall be free of blemishes, form marks, and tool marks, and shall be uniform in color, shape, and appearance.

3.10 CONCRETE FINISHING PEDESTRIAN PAVEMENT

- A. Walks, Grade Slabs, Lawn Mower Crossings, Wheelchair Curb Ramps:
 - 1. Finish the surfaces to grade and cross section with a metal float, troweled smooth and finished with a broom moistened with clear water.
 - 2. Brooming shall be transverse to the line of traffic.
 - 3. Finish all slab edges, including those at formed joints, carefully with an edger having a radius as shown on the Drawings.
 - 4. Unless otherwise indicated, edge the transverse joints before brooming. The brooming shall eliminate the flat surface left by the surface face of the edger. Execute the brooming so that the corrugation, thus produced, will be uniform in appearance and not more than 2 mm (1/16 inch) in depth.
 - 5. The completed surface shall be uniform in color and free of surface blemishes, form marks, and tool marks. The finished surface of the pavement shall not vary more than 5 mm (3/16 inch) when tested with a 3000 mm (10 foot) straightedge.
 - 6. The thickness of the pavement shall not vary more than 6 mm (1/4 inch).
 - 7. Remove and reconstruct irregularities exceeding the above for the full length between regularly scheduled joints.
- B. Steps: The method of finishing the steps and the sidewalls is similar to above except as herein noted.
 - 1. Remove the riser forms one at a time, starting with the top riser.
 - 2. After removing the riser form, rub the face of the riser with a wood or concrete rubbing block and water until blemishes, form marks, and tool marks have been removed. Use an outside edger to round the corner of the tread; use an inside edger to finish the corner at the bottom of the riser.
 - 3. Give the risers and sidewall a final brush finish. The treads shall have a final finish with a stiff brush to provide a non-slip surface.

4. The texture of the completed steps shall present a neat and uniform appearance and shall not deviate from a straightedge test more than 5 mm (3/16 inch).

3.11 CONCRETE FINISHING FOR VEHICULAR PAVEMENT

- A. Accomplish longitudinal floating with a longitudinal float not less than 3000 mm (10 feet) long and 150 mm (6 inches) wide, properly stiffened to prevent flexing and warping. Operate the float from foot bridges in a sawing motion parallel to the direction in which the pavement is being laid from one side of the pavement to the other, and advancing not more than half the length of the float.
- B. After the longitudinal floating is completed, but while the concrete is still plastic, eliminate minor irregularities in the pavement surfaces by means of metal floats, 1500 mm (5 feet) in length, and straightedges, 3000 mm (10 feet) in length. Make the final finish with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
- C. Test the surface for trueness with a 3000 mm (10 foot) straightedge held in successive positions parallel and at right angles to the direction in which the pavement is being laid and the entire area covered as necessary to detect variations. Advance the straightedge along the pavement in successive stages of not more than one half the length of the straightedge. Correct all irregularities and refinish the surface.
- D. The finished surface of the pavement shall not vary more than 6 mm (1/4 inch) in both longitudinal and transverse directions when tested with a 3000 mm (10 foot) straightedge.
- E. The thickness of the pavement shall not vary more than 6 mm (1/4 inch).
- F. When most of the water glaze or sheen has disappeared and before the concrete becomes nonplastic, give the surface of the pavement a broomed finish with an approved fiber broom not less than 450 mm (18 inches) wide. Pull the broom gently over the surface of the pavement from edge to edge. Brooming shall be transverse to the line of traffic and so executed that the corrugations thus produced will be uniform in character and width, and not more than 3 mm (1/8 inch) in depth. Carefully finish the edge of the pavement along forms and at the joints with an edging tool. The brooming shall eliminate the flat surface left by the surface face of the edger.
- G. The finish surfaces of new and existing abutting pavements shall coincide at their juncture.

3.12 CONCRETE FINISHING EQUIPMENT PADS

- A. After the surface has been struck off and screeded to the proper elevation, give it a smooth dense float finish, free from depressions or irregularities.
- B. Carefully finish all slab edges with an edger having a radius as shown in the Drawings.
- C. After removing the forms, rub the faces of the pad with a wood or concrete rubbing block and water until blemishes, form marks, and tool marks have been removed. The finish surface of the pad shall not vary more than 3 mm (1/8 inch) when tested with a 3000 mm (10 foot) straightedge.
- D. Correct irregularities exceeding the above including removal and replacement.

3.13 JOINTS - GENERAL

- A. Place joints, where shown, conforming to the details as shown, and perpendicular to the finished grade of the concrete surface.
- B. Joints shall be straight and continuous from edge to edge of the pavement.

3.14 CONTRACTION JOINTS

- A. Cut joints to depth as shown with a grooving tool or jointer of a radius as shown or by sawing with a blade producing the required width and depth.
- B. Finish edges of all joints with an edging tool having the radius as shown.
- C. Score pedestrian pavement with a standard grooving tool or jointer.

3.15 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Use a preformed expansion joint filler material of the thickness as shown to form expansion joints.
- B. Material shall extend the full depth of concrete, cut and shaped to the cross section as shown, except that top edges of joint filler shall be below the finished concrete surface where shown to allow for sealing.
- C. Anchor with approved devices to prevent displacing during placing and finishing operations.
- D. Round the edges of joints with an edging tool.
- E. Form expansion joints as follows:
 - 1. Without dowels, about structures and features that project through, into, or against any site work concrete construction.
 - 2. Using joint filler of the type, thickness, and width as shown.

3. Installed in such a manner as to form a complete, uniform separation between the structure and the site work concrete item.

3.16 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

- A. Locate construction joints between slabs of vehicular pavement as shown.
- B. Place transverse construction joints of the type shown, where indicated and whenever the placing of concrete is suspended for more than 30 minutes.
- C. Use a butt-type joint with dowels in curb and gutter if the joint occurs at the location of a planned joint.
- D. Use keyed joints with tiebars if the joint occurs in the middle third of the normal curb and gutter joint interval.

3.17 FORM REMOVAL

- A. Forms shall remain in place at least 12 hours after the concrete has been placed. Remove forms without injuring the concrete.
- B. Do not use bars or heavy tools against the concrete in removing the forms. Promptly repair any concrete found defective after form removal to the satisfaction of the Owner.

3.18 CURING OF CONCRETE

- A. Cure concrete by one of the following methods appropriate to the weather conditions and local construction practices, against loss of moisture, and rapid temperature changes for at least seven days from the beginning of the curing operation. Protect unhardened concrete from rain and flowing water. All equipment needed for adequate curing and protection of the concrete shall be on hand and ready to install before actual concrete placement begins. Provide protection as necessary to prevent cracking of the pavement due to temperature changes during the curing period. If any selected method of curing does not afford the proper curing and protection against concrete cracking, remove and replace the damaged pavement and employ another method of curing as directed by the Resident Engineer.
- B. Burlap Mat: Provide a minimum of two layers kept saturated with water for the curing period. Mats shall overlap each other at least 150 mm (6 inches).
- C. Impervious Sheeting: Use waterproof paper, polyethylene-coated burlap, or polyethylene sheeting. Polyethylene shall be at least 0.1 mm (4 mils) in thickness. Wet the entire exposed concrete surface with a fine spray of water and then cover with the sheeting material. Sheets shall overlap each other at least 300 mm (12 inches). Securely anchor sheeting.

D. Liquid Membrane Curing:

1. Apply pigmented membrane-forming curing compound in two coats at right angles to each other at a rate of 5 m²/L (200 square feet per gallon) for both coats.
2. Do not allow the concrete to dry before the application of the membrane.
3. Cure joints designated to be sealed by inserting moistened paper or fiber rope or covering with waterproof paper prior to application of the curing compound, in a manner to prevent the curing compound entering the joint.
4. Immediately re-spray any area covered with curing compound and damaged during the curing period.

3.19 CLEANING

A. After completion of the curing period:

1. Remove the curing material (other than liquid membrane).
2. Sweep the concrete clean.
3. After removal of all foreign matter from the joints, seal joints as herein specified.
4. Clean the entire concrete of all debris and construction equipment as soon as curing and sealing of joints has been completed.

3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Contractor shall protect the concrete against all damage prior to final acceptance by the Government. Remove concrete containing excessive cracking, fractures, spalling, or other defects and reconstruct the entire section between regularly scheduled joints, when directed by the Resident Engineer, and at no additional cost to the VA. Exclude traffic from vehicular pavement until the concrete is at least seven days old, or for a longer period of time if so directed by the Resident Engineer.

3.21 FINAL CLEAN-UP

- A. Remove all debris, rubbish and excess material from the Station.

- - - END - - -

**Section 03301
CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies cast-in-place structural concrete, and material and mixes for other concrete.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Concrete roads, walks, and similar exterior site work: Section 02514, SITE WORK CONCRETE.

1.3 TOLERANCES:

- A. ACI 117.
- B. Slab Finishes: ACI 117, F-number method in accordance with ASTM E1155.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS:

- A. ACI 315 - Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete Structures.
- B. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
- C. ACI 301 - Standard Specifications for Structural Concrete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Concrete Mix Design.
- C. Shop Drawings: Reinforcing steel: Complete shop drawings.
- D. Mill Test Reports:
 - Reinforcing steel.
 - Cement.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificates:
 - Aggregates
 - Air-entraining admixture.
 - Chemical admixtures, including chloride ion content.
 - Waterproof paper for curing concrete.
 - Liquid membrane-forming compounds for curing concrete.
 - Non-shrinking grout.
 - Liquid hardener.
 - Waterstops.
 - Expansion joint filler.
 - Adhesive binder.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
- 117-10.....Standard Tolerances for Concrete Construction
and Materials
 - 301-10.....Specification for Structural Concrete for
Buildings
 - 305R-10.....Hot Weather Concreting
 - 306R-10.....Cold Weather Concreting
 - 315-99.....Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement
 - 318-08.....Building Code Requirements for Reinforced
Concrete
 - 34704.....Guide to Formwork for Concrete
- C. American Society For Testing And Materials (ASTM):
- A185/A185M-07.....Steel Welded Wire, Fabric, Plain for Concrete
Reinforcement
 - A615/A615M-09.....Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for
Concrete Reinforcement
 - A706/A706M-09b.....Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel
Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete
Reinforcement
 - C31/C31M-2010.....Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the
Field
 - C33/C33M-08.....Concrete Aggregates
 - C39/C39M-09.....Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete
Specimens
 - C94/C94M-09.....Ready-Mixed Concrete
 - C143/C143M-2010a.....Slump of Portland Cement Concrete
 - C150/C150M-2009..Portland Cement
 - C171-07.....Sheet Material for Curing Concrete
 - C17/C172M2-08.....Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
 - C173/C173M-10b.....Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the
Volumetric Method
 - C192/C192M-07.....Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the
Laboratory
 - C231/C231M-09.....Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the
Pressure Method
 - C260/C260M-06.....Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete

2.1 FORMS:

2.2 MATERIALS:

- 03301
Page 3 of 9

Q. Grout, Non-Shrinking: ASTM C1107, premixed, mixed and applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Grout shall show no settlement or vertical drying shrinkage at 3 days or thereafter based on initial measurement made at time of placement, and produce a compressive strength of at least 35mpa (5000 psi) at 3 days.

R. Adhesive Binder: ASTM C881.

2.3 MIXES:

- A. Design of concrete mixes using materials specified shall be the responsibility of the Contractor as set forth under Option C of ASTM C94.
- B. Compressive strength at 28 days shall be not less than 32 MPa (4500 psi), except for lightweight concrete, 30 MPa (4000 psi)
- C. Establish strength of concrete by testing prior to beginning concreting operation. Test consists of average of three cylinders made and cured in accordance with ASTM C192 and tested in accordance with ASTM C39.
- D. Maximum slump for vibrated concrete is 100 mm (4 inches) tested in accordance with ASTM C143. Slump may be increased by the use of the approved high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer). Tolerances as established by ASTM C94. Concrete containing the high-range-water-reducing admixture may have a maximum slump of 225 mm (9 inches). The concrete shall arrive at the job site at a slump of 50 mm to 75 mm (2 inches to 3 inches), and 75 mm to 100 mm (3 inches to 4 inches) for lightweight concrete. This should be verified, and then the high-range-water-reducing admixture added to increase the slump to the approved level.
- E. Water cement ratio: Maintain minimum factors in Table I regardless of compressive strength developed above minimums. Fly ash may be substituted for up to 25 percent of the cement at option of Contractor.

TABLE I - CEMENT AND WATER FACTORS FOR CONCRETE

Concrete: Strength	Non-Air-Entrained		Air-Entrained	
Min. 28 Day Comp. Strength. MPa (psi)	Min. Cement kg/m ³ (lbs/c. yd)	Max. Water Cement Ratio	Min. Cement kg/m ³ (lbs/c. yd)	Max. Water Cement Ratio
32 (4500)	325 (550)	0.45	340 (570)	0.45
30 (4000)	325 (550)	0.45	340 (570)	0.45

F. Air-entrainment is required for all exterior concrete and as required for Section, SITE WORK CONCRETE. Air content shall conform with the following table:

**TABLE I - TOTAL AIR CONTENT
FOR VARIOUS SIZES OF COARSE AGGREGATES (NORMAL CONCRETE)**

Nominal Maximum Size of Coarse Aggregate	Total Air Content Percentage by Volume
10 mm (3/8 in)	6 to 10
13 mm (1/2 in)	5 to 9
19 mm (3/4 in)	4 to 8
25 mm (1 in)	3 1/2 to 6 1/2
40 mm (1 1/2 in)	3 to 6

2.4 MIXING:

- A. Store, batch, and mix materials as specified in ASTM C94.
1. Job-Mixed: Concrete mixed at job site shall be mixed in a batch mixer in manner specified for stationary mixers in ASTM C94.
 2. Ready-Mixed: Ready-mixed concrete comply with ASTM C94, except use of non-agitating equipment for transporting concrete to the site will not be permitted. With each load of concrete delivered to project, ready-mixed concrete producer shall furnish, in duplicate, certification as required by ASTM C94.
 3. Mixing structural lightweight concrete: Charge mixer with 2/3 of total mixing water and all of the aggregate. Mix ingredients for not less than 30 seconds in a stationary mixer or not less than 10 revolutions at mixing speed in a truck mixer. Add remaining mixing water and other ingredients and continue mixing. Above procedure may be modified as recommended by aggregate producer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK:

- A. Installation conform to ACI 347. Sufficiently tight to hold concrete without leakage, sufficiently braced to withstand vibration of concrete, and to carry, without appreciable deflection, all dead and live loads to which they may be subjected.
- B. Treating and Wetting: Treat or wet contact forms as follows:
1. Coat plywood and board forms with non-staining form sealer. In hot weather cool forms by wetting with cool water just before concrete is placed.
 2. Clean and coat removable metal forms with light form oil before reinforcement is placed. In hot weather cool metal forms by thoroughly wetting with water just before placing concrete.
 3. Use sealer on reused plywood forms as specified for new material.

C. Inserts, sleeves, and similar items: Flashing reglets, masonry ties, anchors, inserts, wires, hangers, sleeves, boxes for floor hinges and other items specified as furnished under this and other sections of specifications and required to be in their final position at time concrete is placed shall be properly located, accurately positioned and built into construction, and maintained securely in place.

D. Construction Tolerances:

1. Contractor is responsible for setting and maintaining concrete formwork to assure erection of completed work within tolerances specified to accommodate installation of other rough and finish materials. Remedial work necessary for correcting excessive tolerances is the responsibility of the Contractor. Erected work that exceeds specified tolerance limits shall be remedied or removed and replaced, at no additional cost to the Government.
2. Permissible surface irregularities for various classes of materials are defined as "finishes" in specification sections covering individual materials. They are to be distinguished from tolerances specified which are applicable to surface irregularities of structural elements.

3.2 REINFORCEMENT:

Details of concrete reinforcement, unless otherwise shown, in accordance with ACI 318 and 315. Support and securely tie reinforcing steel to prevent displacement during placing of concrete.

3.3 VAPOR BARRIER:

Except where membrane waterproofing is required, place interior concrete slabs on a continuous vapor barrier.

- A. Place 100 mm (4 inches) of fine granular fill over the vapor barrier to act as a blotter for concrete slab.
- B. Lap joints 150 mm (6 inches) and seal with a compatible pressure-sensitive tape.
- C. Patch punctures and tears.

3.4 PLACING CONCRETE:

- A. Remove water from excavations before concrete is placed. Remove hardened concrete, debris and other foreign materials from interior of forms, and from inside of mixing and conveying equipment. Obtain approval of Resident Engineer before placing concrete. Provide screeds at required elevations for concrete slabs.
- B. Before placing new concrete on or against concrete which has set, existing surfaces shall be roughened to 1/4-inch amplitude and cleaned free from all laitance, foreign matter, and loose particles.

- C. Convey concrete from mixer to final place of deposit by method which will prevent segregation or loss of ingredients. Do not deposit in work concrete that has attained its initial set or has contained its water or cement more than 1 1/2 hours. Do not allow concrete to drop freely more than 1500 mm (5 feet) in unexposed work nor more than 900 mm (3 feet) in exposed work. Place and consolidate concrete in horizontal layers not exceeding 300 mm (12 inches) in thickness. Consolidate concrete by spading, rodding, and mechanical vibrator. Do not secure vibrator to forms or reinforcement. Vibration shall be carried on continuously with placing of concrete.
- D. Hot weather placing of concrete follow recommendations of ACI 305 to prevent problems in the manufacturing, placing, and curing of concrete that can adversely affect the properties and serviceability of the hardened concrete.
- E. Cold weather placing of concrete follow recommendations of ACI 306, to prevent freezing of thin sections less than 300 mm (12 inches) and to permit concrete to gain strength properly, except that use of calcium chloride shall not be permitted without written approval from Resident Engineer.

3.5 PROTECTION AND CURING:

Conform to ACI 308: Initial curing shall immediately follow the finishing operation. Protect exposed surfaces of concrete from premature drying, wash by rain and running water, wind, mechanical injury, and excessively hot or cold temperatures. Keep concrete not covered with membrane or other curing material continuously wet for at least 7 days after placing, except wet curing period for high-early-strength concrete shall be not less than 3 days. Keep wood forms continuously wet to prevent moisture loss until forms are removed. Cure exposed concrete surfaces as described below. Other curing methods may be used if approved by Resident Engineer.

3.6 FORM REMOVAL:

Forms remain in place until concrete has a sufficient strength to carry its own weight and loads supported. Removal of forms at any time is the Contractor's sole responsibility.

3.7 SURFACE PREPARATION:

Immediately after forms have been removed and work has been examined and approved by Resident Engineer, remove loose materials, and patch all stone pockets, surface honeycomb, or similar deficiencies with cement mortar made with 1 part portland cement and 2 to 3 parts sand.

3.8 FINISHES:

A. Vertical and Overhead Surface Finishes:

1. Unfinished Areas: Vertical and overhead concrete surfaces exposed in unfinished areas, above suspended ceilings in manholes, and other unfinished areas exposed or concealed will not require additional finishing.

B. Slab Finishes:

1. Scratch Finish: Slab surfaces to receive a bonded applied cementitious application shall all be thoroughly raked or wire broomed after partial setting (within 2 hours after placing) to roughen surface to insure a permanent bond between base slab and applied cementitious materials.
2. Floating: Allow water brought to surface by float used for rough finishing to evaporate before surface is again floated or troweled. Do not sprinkle dry cement on surface to absorb water.
3. Float Finish: Ramps, stair treads, and platforms, both interior and exterior, equipment pads, and slabs to receive non-cementitious materials, except as specified, shall be screened and floated to a smooth dense finish. After first floating, while surface is still soft, surfaces shall be checked for alignment using a straightedge or template. Correct high spots by cutting down with a trowel or similar tool and correct low spots by filling in with material of same composition as floor finish. Remove any surface projections on floated finish by rubbing or dry grinding. Refloat the slab to a uniform sandy texture.
4. Steel Trowel Finish: Applied toppings, concrete surfaces to receive resilient floor covering or carpet, future floor roof and all monolithic concrete floor slabs exposed in finished work and for which no other finish is shown or specified shall be steel troweled. Final steel troweling to secure a smooth, dense surface shall be delayed as long as possible, generally when the surface can no longer be dented with finger. During final troweling, tilt steel trowel at a slight angle and exert heavy pressure on trowel to compact cement paste and form a dense, smooth surface. Finished surface shall be free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance.
5. Broom Finish: Finish all exterior slabs, ramps, and stair treads with a bristle brush moistened with clear water after the surfaces have been floated.
6. Finished slab flatness (FF) and levelness (FL) values comply with the following minimum requirements:

Slab on grade:		Unshored suspended slabs	
Specified overall value	$F_F 25/F_L 20$	Specified overall value	$F_F 25$
Minimum local value	$F_F 17/F_L 15$	Minimum local value	$F_F 17$

3.9 SURFACE TREATMENTS:

- A. Surface treatments shall be mixed and applied in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Liquid Densifier/Sealer: Use on all exposed concrete floors and concrete floors specified to receive non-slip finish.
- C. Non-Slip Finish: Except where safety nosing and tread coverings are shown, apply non-slip abrasive aggregate to treads and platforms of all concrete steps and stairs, and to surfaces of exterior concrete ramps and platforms. Aggregate shall be broadcast uniformly over concrete surface. Trowel concrete surface to smooth dense finish. After curing, rub the treated surface with abrasive brick and water sufficiently to slightly expose abrasive aggregate.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 04100
MORTAR AND GROUT**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

Section specifies mortar and grout materials and mixes.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

A. Mortar used in Section:

1. Section 04200, UNIT MASONRY.
2. Section 04230, REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY.

B. Mortar Color: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULE.

1.3 TESTING LABORATORY:

- A. Engage a commercial testing laboratory approved by Resident Engineer to perform tests specified below.
- B. Submit information regarding testing laboratory's facilities and qualifications of technical personnel to Resident Engineer.

1.4 TESTS:

- A. Test mortar, grout, and materials specified.
- B. Certified test reports.
- C. Identify materials by type, brand name and manufacturer or by origin.
- D. Do not use materials until laboratory test reports are approved by Resident Engineer.
- E. After tests have been made and materials approved, do not change without additional test and approval of Resident Engineer.
- F. Testing:
 1. Test materials proposed for use for compliance with specifications in accordance with test methods contained in referenced specifications and as follows:
 2. Mortar:
 - a. Test for compressive strength and water retention; ASTM C780.
 - b. Mortar compressive strengths 28 days as follows:
Type S: Minimum 12400 kPa (1800 psi) at 28 days.
 3. Grout:
 - a. Test for compressive strength; ASTM C1019.
 - b. Grout compressive strength of 13790 kPa (2000 psi) at 28 days.
 4. Cement:
 - a. Test for water soluble alkali (nonstaining) when nonstaining cement is specified.

- b. Nonstaining cement shall contain not more than 0.03 percent water soluble alkali.
- 5. Sand: Test for deleterious substances, organic impurities, soundness and grading.
- G. During progress of work, testing laboratory specified in Section TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES, takes and tests samples as specified in that section. Testing procedures and test methods in ASTM C780.

1.5 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Certificates:
 - 1. Testing laboratory's facilities and qualifications of its technical personnel.
 - 2. Indicating that following items meet specifications:
 - a. Portland cement
 - b. Hydrated lime
 - c. Fine aggregate (sand).
 - d. Coarse aggregate for grout.
- C. Laboratory Test Reports:
 - 1. Mortar, each type.
 - 2. Grout, each type.
 - 3. Admixtures.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Cement, each kind.
 - 2. Hydrated lime.
 - 3. Admixtures.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Deliver masonry materials in original sealed containers marked with name of manufacturer and identification of contents.
- B. Store masonry materials under waterproof covers on planking clear of ground, and protect damage from handling, dirt, stain, water and wind.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - C40-04.....Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregates for
Concrete
 - C91-05.....Masonry Cement
 - C109/C109M-08.....Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars
(Using 2-in. or 50-MM Cube Specimens)

C144-04.....	Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
C150/C150M-05.....	Portland Cement
C207-06.....	Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
C270-07.....	Mortar for Unit Masonry
C307-03.....	Tensile Strength of Chemical - Resistant Mortar, Grouts, and Monolithic Surfacing
C321-00(2005).....	Bond Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars
C348-02.....	Flexural Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars
C404-07.....	Aggregate for Masonry Grout
C476-07.....	Grout for Masonry
C595-08.....	Blended Hydraulic Cement
C780-07.....	Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry
C979/C979M-05.....	Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete
C1019-05.....	Sampling and Testing Grout
C1329-05.....	Mortar Cement

1.8 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTING:

In addition the requirements of these specifications, inspection and testing of masonry shall comply with Level 2 Special Inspection and Level 2 Quality Assurance requirements in IBC.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRATED LIME:

ASTM C207, Type S.

2.2 AGGREGATE FOR MASONRY MORTAR:

A. ASTM C144 and as follows:

1. Light colored sand for mortar for laying face brick.
2. White plastering sand meeting sieve analysis for mortar joints for pointing.

B. Test sand for color value in accordance with ASTM C40. Sand producing color darker than specified standard is unacceptable.

2.3 AGGREGATE FOR MASONRY GROUT:

ASTM C404, Size 8.

2.4 PORTLAND CEMENT:

A. ASTM C150, Type I, except where exposed to soil or within 12 inches of soil, use Type V.

B. Use white Portland cement wherever white mortar is specified.

2.5 WATER:

Potable, free of substances that are detrimental to mortar, masonry, and metal.

2.6 GROUT:

- A. Conform to ASTM C476 except as specified.
- B. Grout type proportioned by volume as follows:
 - 1. Coarse Grout:
 - a. Portland cement or blended hydraulic cement: one part.
 - b. Hydrated lime: 0 to 1/10 part.
 - c. Fine aggregate: 2-1/4 to three times sum of volumes of cement and lime used.
 - d. Coarse aggregate: one to two times sum of volumes of cement and lime used.
 - 3. Sum of volumes of fine and coarse aggregates: Do not exceed four times sum of volumes of cement and lime used.

2.7 COLOR ADMIXTURE:

- A. Pigments: ASTM C979.
- B. Use mineral pigments only. Organic pigments are not acceptable.
- C. Pigments inert, stable to atmospheric conditions, nonfading, alkali resistant and water insoluble.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MIXING:

- A. Mix in a mechanically operated mortar mixer.
 - 1. Mix mortar for at least three minutes but not more than five minutes.
- B. Measure ingredients by volume. Measure by the use of a container of known capacity.
- C. Mix water with dry ingredients in sufficient amount to provide a workable mixture which will adhere to vertical surfaces of masonry units.
- D. Mix water with grout dry ingredients in sufficient amount to bring grout mixture to a pouring consistency.
- E. Mortar that has stiffened because of loss of water through evaporations:
 - 1. Re-tempered by adding water to restore to proper consistency and workability.
 - 2. Discard mortar that has reached its initial set or has not been used within two hours.
- F. Pointing Mortar:
 - 1. Mix dry ingredients with enough water to produce a damp mixture of workable consistency which will retain its shape when formed into a ball.
 - 2. Allow mortar to stand in dampened condition for one to 1-1/2 hours.
 - 3. Add water to bring mortar to a workable consistency prior to application.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 04200
UNIT MASONRY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies requirements for construction of masonry unit walls.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Mortars and grouts: Section 04100, MORTAR AND GROUT.
- B. Steel reinforcement: Section 04230, REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY.
- C. Steel lintels and shelf angles: Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- D. Color and texture of masonry units: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULE.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Samples:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units, when exposed in finish work.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Special masonry shapes.
 - 2. Drawings, showing reinforcement, applicable dimensions and methods of hanging soffit or lintel masonry and reinforcing masonry for embedment of anchors for hung fixtures.
- D. Certificates:
 - 1. Certificates signed by manufacturer, including name and address of contractor, project location, and the quantity, and date or dates of shipment of delivery to which certificate applies.
 - 2. Indicating that the following items meet specification requirements:
 - a. Solid and load-bearing concrete masonry units, including fire-resistant rated units.
 - 3. Testing laboratories facilities and qualifications of its principals and key personnel to perform tests specified.
- E. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Anchors, ties, and reinforcement.
 - 2. Reinforcing bars.

1.4 WARRANTY

Warranty exterior masonry walls against moisture leaks and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction" article in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, except that warranty period shall be five years.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A82-02.....Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
 - A615/A615M-07.....Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for
Concrete Reinforcement
 - A706/A706M-03.....Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for
Concrete Reinforcement
 - C34-03.....Structural Clay Load Bearing Wall Tile
 - C55-06.....Concrete Building Brick
 - C56-05.....Structural Clay Nonloadbearing Tile
 - C62-05.....Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From
Clay or Shale)
 - C67-07.....Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay
Tile
 - C90-06.....Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units
 - C126-99.....Ceramic Glazed Structural Clay Facing Tile,
Facing Brick, and Solid Masonry Units
 - C216-07.....Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From Clay
or Shale)
 - C612-04.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
 - C744-05.....Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry
Units.
 - D1056-07.....Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded
Rubber
 - D2000-06.....Rubber Products in Automotive Applications
 - D2240-05.....Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness
 - D3574-05.....Flexible Cellular Materials-Slab, Bonded, and
Molded Urethane Foams
 - F1667- 05.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples
- C. Masonry Industry Council:
- All Weather Masonry Construction Manual, 2000.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
- FF-S-107C.....Screws, Tapping and Drive
- E. Brick Industry Association - Technical Notes on Brick Construction (BIA):
- 11-1986.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry, Part I
 - 11A-1988.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry, Part II

11B-1988.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry, Part III
Execution

11C-1984.....Guide Specification for Brick Masonry Engineered
Brick Masonry, Part IV

11D-1988.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry
Engineered Brick Masonry, Part IV continued

F. Masonry Standards Joint Committee; Specifications for Masonry Structures
(ACI 530.1-99/ASCE 6-99/TMS 602-99) (MSJC).

1.6 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTING:

In addition the requirements of these specifications, inspection and testing of masonry shall comply with Level 2 Special Inspection and Level 2 Quality Assurance requirements in IBC.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. Hollow and Solid Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C90.

1. Unit Weight: medium weight.
2. Fire rated units for fire rated partitions.
3. Sizes: Modular
4. For molded faces used as a finished surface, use concrete masonry units with uniform fine to medium surface texture unless specified otherwise.
5. Use concrete masonry units exposed in finished work with 25 mm (one inch) minimum radius rounded vertical exterior corners.
6. Customized units:
 - a. Sound-Absorbing Units:
 - 1) Vertical slots in face to core areas.
 - 2) Acoustical absorption insert: Mineral fiber and metal septum, providing unit with NRC rating of 0.70.
 - b. Split-face Units:
 - 1) Split-Rib Units: Rib shapes as shown.
 - 2) Ground Face Units:
 - c. Glazed Face Units: Facing conform to ASTM C744.

B. Concrete Brick: ASTM C55, Grade N.

2.2 REINFORCEMENT

A. Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615, deformed, Grade 60. ASTM A706, deformed, Grade 60, for reinforcing steel to be welded.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Masonry Cleaner:

1. Detergent type cleaner selected for each type masonry used.
2. Acid cleaners are not acceptable.

3. Use soapless type specially prepared for cleaning brick.

B. Fasteners:

1. Concrete Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, Style 11, 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum length.

2. Masonry Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, Style 17, 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum length.

3. Screws: FS-FF-S-107, Type A, AB, SF thread forming or cutting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Protection:

1. Cover tops of walls with nonstaining waterproof covering, when work is not in progress. Secure to prevent wind blow off.

2. On new work protect base of wall from mud, dirt, mortar droppings, and other materials that will stain face, until final landscaping or other site work is completed.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

A. Lay masonry units plumb, level and true to line within the tolerances as per MSJC requirements and as follows:

B. Maximum variation from plumb:

1. In 3000 mm (10 feet) - 6 mm (1/4 inch).

2. In 6000 mm (20 feet) - 10 mm (3/8 inch).

3. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 13 mm (1/2 inch).

C. Maximum variation from level:

1. In any bay or up to 6000 mm (20 feet) - 6 mm (1/4 inch).

2. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 13 mm (1/2 inch).

D. Maximum variation from linear building lines:

1. In any bay or up to 6000 mm (20 feet) - 13 mm (1/2 inch).

2. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 19 mm (3/4 inch).

E. Maximum variation in cross-sectional dimensions of columns and thickness of walls from dimensions shown:

1. Minus 6 mm (1/4 inch).

2. Plus 13 mm (1/2 inch).

F. Maximum variation in prepared opening dimensions:

1. Accurate to minus 0 mm (0 inch).

2. Plus 6 mm (1/4 inch).

3.3 INSTALLATION GENERAL

A. Keep finish work free from mortar smears or spatters, and leave neat and clean.

B. Tooling Joints:

1. Do not tool until mortar has stiffened enough to retain thumb print when thumb is pressed against mortar.
2. Tool while mortar is soft enough to be compressed into joints and not raked out.
3. Finish joints in exterior face brick work with a jointing tool, and provide smooth, water-tight concave joint unless specified otherwise.
4. Tool Exposed interior joints in finish work concave unless specified otherwise.

C. Lintels:

1. Lintels are not required for openings less than 1000 mm (3 feet 4 inches) wide that have hollow metal frames.
2. Openings 1025 mm (3 feet 5 inches) wide to 4300 mm (14 feet) wide with no structural steel lintel or frames, require a lintel formed of concrete masonry lintel or bond beam units and reinforced with 1-#20m (1-#6) reinforcing bar top and bottom for each 100 mm (4 inches) of nominal thickness unless shown otherwise.
3. Doors having overhead concealed door closers require a steel lintel, and a pocket for closer box.
4. Length for minimum bearing of 200 mm (8 inches) at ends.
5. Build masonry openings or arches over wood or metal centering and supports when steel lintels are not used.

D. Wall, Furring, and Partition Units:

1. Lay out field units to provide for running bonding of walls and partitions, with vertical joints in second course centering on first course units unless specified otherwise.
2. Align head joints of alternate vertical courses.
3. At sides of openings, balance head joints in each course on vertical centerlines of openings.
4. Use no piece shorter than 100 mm (4 inches) long.

3.4 REINFORCEMENT

A. Steel Reinforcing Bars:

1. Install in cells of hollow masonry units where required for vertical reinforcement and in bond beam units for lintels and bond beam horizontal reinforcement. Install in wall cavities of reinforced masonry walls where shown.
2. Use grade 60 bars if not specified otherwise.
3. Bond Beams:
 - a. Form Bond beams of load-bearing concrete masonry units filled with 25 MPa (3000 psi) masonry grout and reinforced with 2-#20m (#6) reinforcing bars top and bottom unless shown otherwise.

- b. Brake bond beams only at expansion joints and at control joints, if shown.
- 4. Grout openings:
 - a. Locate clean-out holes at location of vertical reinforcement.
 - b. Keep grout space clean of mortar accumulation and sand debris.

Clean the grout space every day using a high pressure jet stream of water, or compressed air, or industrial vacuum, or by laying wood strips on the metal ties as the wall is built. If wood strips are used, lift strips with wires as the wall progresses and before placing each succeeding course of wall ties.

3.5 CMU CONTROL JOINTS.

- A. Provide CMU control (CJ) joints where shown on drawings.
- B. Keep joint free of mortar and other debris.
- C. Where joints occur in masonry walls.
 - 1. Install cross shaped shear keys in concrete masonry unit wythe with preformed compressible joint filler on each side of shear key.
 - 2. Install filler, backer rod, and sealant on exposed faces.
- D. Use standard notched concrete masonry units (sash blocks) made in full and half-length units where shear keys are used to create a continuous vertical joint.
- E. Provide steel joint reinforcement shown on drawings at expansion and control joints.
- F. Fill opening in exposed face of expansion and control joints with sealant.

3.6 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Laying:
 - 1. Lay concrete masonry units with 10 mm (3/8 inch) joints, with a bond overlap of not less than 1/4 of the unit length, except where stack bond is required.
 - 2. Do not wet concrete masonry units before laying.
 - 3. Bond external corners of partitions by overlapping alternate courses.
 - 4. Lay first course in a full mortar bed.
 - 5. Set anchorage items as work progress.
 - 6. Where ends of anchors, bolts, and other embedded items, project into voids of units, completely fill such voids with mortar or grout.
 - 7. Lay concrete masonry units with full face shell mortar beds and fill head joint beds for depth equivalent to face shell thickness.
 - 8. Lay concrete masonry units so that cores of units, that are to be filled with grout, are vertically continuous with joints of cross

- webs of such cores completely filled with mortar. Unobstructed core openings not less than 50 mm (2 inches) by 75 mm (3 inches).
9. Do not wedge the masonry against the steel reinforcing. Minimum 13 mm (1/2 inch) clear distance between reinforcing and masonry units.
 10. Install deformed reinforcing bars of sizes shown.
 11. Steel reinforcement, at time of placement, free of loose flaky rust, mud, oil, or other coatings that will destroy or reduce bond.
 12. Steel reinforcement in place at the time of grouting.
 13. Minimum clear distance between parallel bars: One bar diameter.
 14. Hold vertical steel reinforcement in place by centering clips, caging devices, tie wire, or other approved methods, vertically at spacings noted.
 15. Support vertical bars near each end and at intermediate intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters.
 16. Set horizontal reinforcement in a full bed of grout or concrete.
 17. Splice reinforcement or attach reinforcement to dowels by placing in contact and wiring together or by placing the reinforcement within 1/5 of the required bar splice length.
 18. Stagger splices in adjacent reinforcing bars. Lap reinforcing bars at splices a minimum of 40 bar diameters.
 19. Grout cells of concrete masonry units, containing the reinforcing bars, solid as specified under grouting.

3.7 POINTING

- A. Fill joints with pointing mortar using rubber float trowel to rub mortar solidly into raked joints.
- B. Wipe off excess mortar from joints of glazed masonry units with dry cloth.
- C. Finish exposed joints in finish work with a jointing tool to provide a smooth concave joint unless specified otherwise.

3.8 GROUTING

- A. Preparation:
 1. Clean grout space of mortar droppings before placing grout.
 2. Close cleanouts with masonry units.
 3. Install vertical solid masonry dams across grout space for full height of wall at intervals of not more than 9000 mm (30 feet). Do not bond dam units into wythes as masonry headers.
 4. Verify reinforcing bars are in cells of units or between wythes as shown.
- B. Placing:

1. Place grout by hand bucket, concrete hopper, or grout pump.
2. Consolidate each lift of grout after free water has disappeared but before plasticity is lost.
3. Do not slush with mortar or use mortar with grout.
4. Interruptions:
 - a. When grouting must be stopped for more than an hour, top off grout 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) below top of last masonry course.
 - b. Grout from dam to dam on high lift method.
 - c. A longitudinal run of masonry may be stopped off only by raking back one-half a masonry unit length in each course and stopping grout 100 mm (4 inches) back of rake on low lift method.

C. Low Lift Method:

1. Double wythe masonry constructed grouted in lifts not to exceed 200 mm (8 inches) or less than 50 mm (2 inches) wide.
2. Consolidate by puddling with a grout stick during and immediately after placing.
3. Grout the cores of concrete masonry units containing the reinforcing bars solid as the masonry work progresses.

D. High Lift Method:

1. Do not pour grout until masonry wall has properly cured a minimum of 72 hours.
2. Place grout in one continuous operation.
3. Complete in one day with no interruptions greater than one hour sections of a wall between control barriers.
4. Grout double wythe walls in a single continuous pour of grout to the top of the wall in 1200 mm (4 foot) layers or lifts in the same working day, with a minimum waiting period of 10 minutes between each 1200 mm (four foot) layer or lift. Vibrate grout layer or lift thoroughly to fill voids.
5. Grout for cavities of double wythe type walls less than 50 mm (2 inches) wide: Do not pour from a height exceeding 300 mm (1 foot).
6. When vibrating succeeding lifts, extend vibrator 300 to 450 mm (12 to 18 inches) into the preceding lift to close any shrinkage cracks or separation from the masonry units.

3.9 CLEANING AND REPAIR

A. General:

1. Clean exposed masonry surfaces on completion.
2. Protect adjoining construction materials and landscaping during cleaning operations.

3. Cut out defective exposed new joints to depth of approximately 19 mm (3/4 inch) and repoint.
4. Remove mortar droppings and other foreign substances from wall surfaces.

B. Concrete Masonry Units:

1. Immediately following setting, brush exposed surfaces free of mortar or other foreign matter.
2. Allow mud to dry before brushing.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 04230
REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies requirements for construction of reinforcement for masonry unit walls.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Unit Masonry: Section 04200, UNIT MASONRY.
- B. Refer to Section 01410 "Testing Laboratory Services" for Testing laboratory facilities and qualifications of its principals and key personnel to perform tests.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Mill Certificates: Submit steel producer's certificates of mill analysis, tensile and bend tests for reinforcement steel required for project.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication, bending, and placement of reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show bar schedules, diagrams of bent bars, stirrup spacing, lateral ties and other arrangements and assemblies as required for fabrication and placement of reinforcement for unit masonry work.
- E. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Strip reinforcement.
 - 2. Reinforcing bars.

1.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

Design all elements with the latest published version of applicable codes.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. Refer to the latest edition of all referenced Standards and codes.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
 - 315.....Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A82.....Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain,
for Concrete Reinforcement

A615/A615M.....Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain
Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

A706/A706M-03.....Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel
Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete
Reinforcement

C476.....Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry

D. American Welding Society (AWS):

D1.4.....Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel

1.6 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTING:

In addition the requirements of these specifications, inspection and testing of masonry shall comply with Level 2 Special Inspection and Level 2 Quality Assurance requirements in IBC.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

General: Refer to Section 04200, UNIT MASONRY for masonry materials and accessories not included in this section.

2.2 REINFORCEMENT:

- A. Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615, deformed bars, 420 MPa (Grade 60) for bars No. 10 to No. 57 (No. 3 to No. 18), except for reinforcing steel to be welded, use ASTM A706.
- B. Shop-fabricate reinforcement bars which are shown to be bent or hooked.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLACING REINFORCEMENT:

- A. General: Clean reinforcement of loose rust, mill scale, earth, ice or other materials which will reduce bond to mortar or grout. Do not use reinforcement bars with kinks or bends not shown on the Contract Drawings or final shop drawings, or bars with reduced cross-section due to excessive rusting or other causes.
- B. Position reinforcement accurately at the spacing indicated. Support and secure vertical bars against displacement. Horizontal reinforcement may be placed as the masonry work progresses. Where vertical bars are shown in close proximity, provide a clear distance between bars of not less than the nominal bar diameter or 25 mm (1 inch), whichever is greater.
- C. For columns, piers and pilasters, provide a clear distance between vertical bars as indicated, but not less than 1 1/2 times the nominal bar diameter or 38 mm (1-1/2 inches), whichever is greater. Provide lateral ties as indicated.
- D. Provide lapped splices, unless otherwise indicated. In splicing vertical bars or attaching to dowels, lap ends, place in contact and wire tie.

- E. Provide not less than minimum lap as indicated on shop drawings, or if not indicated, as required by governing code.
- F. Anchoring: Anchor reinforced masonry work to supporting structure as indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Refer to Section 04200, UNIT MASONRY, for general installation requirements of unit masonry.
- B. Temporary Formwork: Provide formwork and shores as required for temporary support of reinforced masonry elements.
- C. Construct formwork to conform to shape, line and dimensions shown. Make sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar, grout, or concrete (if any). Brace, tie and support as required to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
- D. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and all other reasonable temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF REINFORCED CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

- A. Do not wet concrete masonry units (CMU), unless approved by Resident Engineer.
- B. Lay CMU units with full-face shell mortar beds. Fill vertical head joints (end joints between units) solidly with mortar from face of unit to a distance behind face equal to not less than the thickness of longitudinal face shells. Solidly bed cross-webs of starting courses in mortar. Maintain head and bed joint widths shown, or if not shown, provide 10 mm (3/8 inch) joints.
- C. Where solid CMU units are shown, lay with full mortar head and bed joints.
- D. Walls:
 - 1. Pattern Bond: Lay CMU wall units in 1/2-running bond with vertical joints in each course centered on units in courses above and below, unless otherwise indicated. Bond and interlock each course at corners and intersections. Use special-shaped units where shown, and as required for corners, jambs, sash, control joints, lintels, bond beams and other special conditions.
 - 2. Maintain vertical continuity of core or cell cavities, which are to be reinforced and grouted, to provide minimum clear dimension indicated and to provide minimum clearance and grout coverage for vertical reinforcement bars. Keep cavities free of mortar. Solidly bed webs in mortar where adjacent to reinforced cores or cells.

3. Where horizontal reinforced beams (bond beams) are shown, use special units or modify regular units to allow for placement of continuous horizontal reinforcement bars. Place small mesh expanded metal lath or wire screening in mortar joints under bond beam courses over cores or cells of non-reinforced vertical cells, or provide units with solid bottoms.

E. Columns, Piers and Pilasters:

1. Use CMU units of the size, shape and number of vertical core spaces shown. If not shown, use units which provide minimum clearances and grout coverage for number and size of vertical reinforcement bars shown.
2. Provide pattern bond shown, or if not shown, alternate head joints in vertical alignment.
3. Where bonded pilaster construction is shown, lay wall and pilaster units together to maximum pour height specified.

F. Grouting:

1. Use "Fine Grout" per ASTM C476 for filling spaces less than 100 mm (4 inches) in one or both horizontal directions.
2. Use "Coarse Grout" per ASTM C476 for filling 100 mm (4 inch) spaces or larger in both horizontal directions.
3. Grouting Technique: At the Contractor's option, use either low-lift or high-lift grouting techniques subject to requirements which follow.

G. Low-Lift Grouting:

1. Provide minimum clear dimension of 50 mm (2 inches) and clear area of 5160 mm² (8 square inches) in vertical cores to be grouted.
2. Place vertical reinforcement prior to laying of CMU. Extend above elevation of maximum pour height as required for splicing. Support in position at vertical intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters nor 3 m (10 feet).
3. Lay CMU to maximum pour height. Do not exceed 1.5 m (5 foot) height, or if bond beam occurs below 1.5 m (5 foot) height, stop pour at course below bond beam.
4. Pour grout using chute or container with spout. Rod or vibrate grout during placing. Place grout continuously; do not interrupt pouring of grout for more than one hour. Terminate grout pours 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) below top course of pour.
5. Bond Beams: Stop grout in vertical cells 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) below bond beam course. Place horizontal reinforcement in bond beams; lap

at corners and intersections as shown. Place grout in bond beam course before filling vertical cores above bond beam.

H. High-Lift Grouting:

1. Do not use high-lift grouting technique for grouting of CMU unless minimum cavity dimension and area is 75 mm (3 inches) and 6450 mm² (10 square inches), respectively.
2. Provide cleanout holes in first course at all vertical cells which are to be filled with grout.
3. Use units with one face shell removed and provide temporary supports for units above, or use header units with concrete brick supports, or cut openings in one face shell.
4. Construct masonry to full height of maximum grout pour specified, prior to placing grout.
5. Limit grout lifts to a maximum height of 1.5 m (5 feet) and grout pour to a maximum height of 7.3 m (24 feet), for single wythe hollow concrete masonry walls, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Place vertical reinforcement before grouting. Place before or after laying masonry units, as required by job conditions. Tie vertical reinforcement to dowels at base of masonry where shown and thread CMU over or around reinforcement. Support vertical reinforcement at intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters nor 3 m (10 feet).
7. Where individual bars are placed after laying masonry, place wire loops extending into cells as masonry is laid and loosed before mortar sets. After insertion of reinforcement bar, pull loops and bar to proper position and tie free ends.
8. Where reinforcement is prefabricated into cage units before placing, fabricate units with vertical reinforcement bars and lateral ties of the size and spacing indicated.
9. Place horizontal beam reinforcement as the masonry units are laid.
10. Embed lateral tie reinforcement in mortar joints where indicated. Place as masonry units are laid, at vertical spacing shown.
11. Where lateral ties are shown in contact with vertical reinforcement bars, embed additional lateral tie reinforcement in mortar joints. Place as shown, or if not shown, provide as required to prevent grout blowout or rupture of CMU face shells, but provide not less than 4.1 mm diameter (8 gage) wire ties spaced 400 mm (16 inches) o.c. for members with 500 mm (20 inches) or less side dimensions, and 200 mm (8 inches) o.c. for members with side dimensions exceeding 500 mm (20 inches).

12. Preparation of Grout Spaces: Prior to grouting, inspect and clean grout spaces. Remove dust, dirt, mortar droppings, loose pieces of masonry and other foreign materials from grout spaces. Clean reinforcement and adjust to proper position. Clean top surface of structural members supporting masonry to ensure bond. After final cleaning and inspection, close cleanout holes and brace closures to resist grout pressures.
13. Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist displacement of masonry units and breaking of mortar bond. Install shores and bracing, if required, before starting grouting operations.
14. Place grout by pumping into grout spaces unless alternate methods are acceptable to the Resident Engineer.
15. Limit grout pours to sections which can be completed in one working day with not more than one hour interruption of pouring operation. Place grout in lifts which do not exceed 1.5 m (5 feet). Allow not less than 30 minutes, nor more than one hour between lifts of a given pour. Rod or vibrate each grout lift during pouring operation.
16. Place grout in lintels or beams over openings in one continuous pour.
17. Where bond beam occurs more than one course below top of pour, fill bond beam course to within 25 mm (1 inch) of vertically reinforced cavities, during construction of masonry.
18. When more than one pour is required to complete a given section of masonry, extend reinforcement beyond masonry as required for splicing. Pour grout to within 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) of top course of first pour. After grouted masonry is cured, lay masonry units and place reinforcement for second pour section before grouting. Repeat sequence if more pours are required.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05120
STRUCTURAL STEEL**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies structural steel shown and classified by Section 2, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Painting: Section 09900, PAINTING.
- C. Composite Steel Deck: Section 05321, STEEL DECKING COMPOSITE.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Fabricator and erector shall maintain a program of quality assurance in conformance with Section 8, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges. Work shall be fabricated in an AISC certified Category Conventional Steel Structures fabrication plant.
- B. Before authorizing the commencement of steel erection, the controlling contractor shall ensure that the steel erector is provided with the written notification required by 29 CFR 1926.752. Provide copy of this notification to the Resident Engineer.
- C. Quality assurance is testing and inspection by the Testing Agency and Special Inspectors to aid the Resident Engineer in evaluating the Contractor's performance. It is not a substitute for the testing and inspection which is required as part of the Contractor's quality control system.
- D. Review welding procedures, welders' qualifications, and welding operations in accordance with the governing building code and AWS D1.1.
- E. Verify the work is performed in accordance with AWS D1.1 and the following:
 - 1. Verify that all welders on the project understand and follow the requirements of the written WPS.
 - 2. Verify that all welders have the applicable WPS document and drawings for each connection or weld, joint and assembly at their station.

1.4 TOLERANCES:

Fabrication tolerances for structural steel shall be held within limits established by ASTM A6, by Section 7, Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges, and by Standard Mill Practice - General Information (AISC Manual, Thirteenth Edition), except as follows:

- A. Elevation tolerance for column splice points at time member is erected is 10 mm (3/8 inch).
- B. Elevation tolerance for top surface of steel beams and girders at connections to columns at time floor is erected is 13 mm (1/2 inch).
- C. Elevation tolerance for closure plates at the building perimeter and at slab openings prior to concrete placement is 6 mm (1/4 inch).

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS:

- A. AISC: Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.
- B. AISC: Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.

1.6 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop and Erection Drawings:
 - 1. Include complete details, schedules, procedures and diagrams for fabrication and assembly of structural steel members.
 - 2. Include all dimensional and geometric information, grade of steel, shop surface treatments and shop connections in the shop and erection drawings.
 - 3. Include details of cuts, connections, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 4. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Clearly distinguish between shop and field welds.
 - 5. Provide setting drawings, templates, and directions for installation of anchor bolts and other anchorage.
 - 6. Reproductions of the Contract Drawings are not allowed for shop drawings.
 - 7. Indicate profiles, sizes, spacing, lengths and locations of structural members, indicating stiffener and continuity plates, bolts, fasteners, welds and attachments.
- C. Certificates of Compliance, Test Reports, and Product Data, all written in English:
 - 1. Structural steel. Steel mill test reports: include chemical and physical properties for all structural steel members including but not limited to: rolled structural steel bars, plates, shapes, and sheet piling, pipe, tubes, bar.
 - 2. Steel for all connections.
 - 3. Welding materials.
 - 4. Shop coat primer paint.
 - 5. Shear Connectors:
 - a. Certified Test Reports for in-plant quality control mechanical tests for diameter supplied that indicate minimum requirements for

- physical properties, inspection, marking and tests for structural steel as defined by ASTM, including, but not limited to ASTM A6.
- b. Manufacturer's Certification that shear connectors meet AWS D.1, Sections 7.2 and 7.3. requirements.
- c. Certified material test reports indicating diameter, chemical properties and grade on each heat number supplied.
- 6. Current valid certificates issued by an independent testing agency for all welders, welding operators, and tack welders. Submit recertification data for each welder required to rectify.
- 7. Contractor's Fabrication/Erection Inspector qualifications.
- D. Test Reports:
 - 1. Welders' qualifying tests.
- E. Record Surveys.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
 - 1. Specification for Structural Steel Buildings (Thirteenth Edition, 2005)
 - 3. Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges (March 2005), modified as follows:
 - a. Section 3. Design Drawings and Specifications, Paragraph 3.3, Discrepancies: Delete the second paragraph: "When discrepancies exist between the Design Drawings and Specifications, the Design Drawings shall govern. ...".
 - b. Section 4 - Approval, Paragraph 4.4.1; Delete subparagraph (b) " Confirmation that the Owner's Designated Representative for Design has reviewed and approved the Connection details shown on the Shop and Erection Drawings..."
 - 4. Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - B18.22.1-98.....Plain Washers
 - B18.22M-00.....Metric Plain Washers
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A6/A6M-02.....Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling
 - A36/A36M-01.....Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

- A53/A53M-01.....Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black
and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless
- A123/A123M-02.....Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip
Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
- A242/A242M-01.....Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-
Alloy Structural Steel
- A283/A283M-00.....Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate
Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates
- A307-00.....Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts
and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile Strength
- A325-02.....Standard Specification for Structural Bolts,
Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile
Strength
- A490-02.....Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Steel
Structural Bolts 150 ksi Minimum Tensile
Strength
- A500-01.....Standard Specification for Cold Formed Welded
and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in
Rounds and Shapes
- A501-01.....Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and
Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing
- A572/A572M-01.....Standard Specification for High-Strength
Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel
- A992/A992M-02.....Standard Specification for Structural Steel
Shapes
- F1554-04.....Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel,
36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength
- E. American Welding Society (AWS):
D1.1-02.....Structural Welding Code-Steel
- F. Research Council on Structural Connections (RCSC) of The Engineering
Foundation:
Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts
- G. Military Specifications (Mil. Spec.):
MIL-P-21035.....Paint, High Zinc Dust Content, Galvanizing,
Repair
- H. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
29 CFR Part 1926-2001...Safety Standards for Steel Erection

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A36, A572 Grade 50, A992.

- B. Structural Tubing: ASTM A500, Grade B.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Grade B.
- D. Bolts, Nuts and Washers:
 - 1. High-strength bolts, including nuts and washers: ASTM A325.
 - 2. Bolts and nuts, other than high-strength: ASTM A307, Grade A.
 - 3. Plain washers, other than those in contact with high-strength bolt heads and nuts: ANSI Standard B18.22.1.
 - 4. Anchor rods cast in concrete: ASTM F1554
- E. Zinc Coating: ASTM A123.
- F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: Mil. Spec. MIL-P-21035.
- G. Welding Electrode: Low hydrogen type E70XX minimum.
- H. Non-Shrink Grout beneath base plates: See Section 03301 - Cast-In-Place Concrete.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONNECTIONS (SHOP AND FIELD):

- A. Welding: Welding in accordance with AWS D1.1. Welds shall be made only by welders and welding operators who have been previously qualified by tests as prescribed in AWS D1.1 to perform type of work required.
- B. High-Strength Bolts: High-strength bolts tightened to a bolt tension not less than proof load given in Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts. Tightening done with properly calibrated wrenches, by turn-of-nut method or by use of direct tension indicators (bolts or washers).

3.2 FABRICATION:

Fabrication in accordance with Chapter M, Specification for Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design and Load and Resistance Factor Design.

3.3 SHOP PAINTING:

- A. General: Shop paint steel with primer in accordance with Section 6, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.
- B. Shop paint for steel surfaces is specified in Section 09900, PAINTING.
- C. Do not apply paint to following:
 - 1. Surfaces within 50 mm (2 inches) of joints to be welded in field.
 - 2. Surfaces which will be encased in concrete.
 - 3. Surfaces which will receive sprayed on fireproofing.
 - 4. Top flange of members which will have shear connector studs applied.
- D. Zinc Coated (Hot Dip Galvanized) per ASTM A123 (after fabrication):
Touch-up after erection: Clean and wire brush any abraded and other spots worn through zinc coating, including threaded portions of bolts and welds and touch-up with galvanizing repair paint.

3.4 ERECTION:

A. General:

1. Erection in accordance with Section 7, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.
2. Conform to IBC and the AISC Specifications for Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings for the workmanship and details of structural steel work, unless otherwise specified. Conform to AWS D1.1 for the quality of materials and the fabrication of all welded connections, unless otherwise specified.

B. Temporary Supports: Temporary support of structural steel frames during erection in accordance with Section 7, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.

3.5 FIELD PAINTING:

- A. After erection, touch-up steel surfaces specified to be shop painted. After welding is completed, clean and prime areas not painted due to field welding.
- B. Finish painting of steel surfaces is specified in Section 09900, PAINTING.

3.6 SURVEY:

Upon completion of finish bolting or welding on any part of the work, and prior to start of work by other trades that may be supported, attached, or applied to the structural steel work, submit a certified report of survey to Resident Engineer for approval. Reports shall be prepared by Registered Land Surveyor or Registered Civil Engineer as specified in Section, 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS. Report shall specify that location of structural steel is acceptable for plumbness, level and alignment within specified tolerances specified in the AISC Manual.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05321
STEEL DECKING COMPOSITE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies material and services required for installation of composite steel decking including shear connector studs and miscellaneous closures required to prepare deck for concrete placement as shown and specified.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.

1.3 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Design steel decking in accordance with American Iron And Steel Institute publication "Specifications for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members", except as otherwise shown or specified.
- B. Design all elements with the latest published version of applicable codes.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings: Shop and erection drawings showing decking unit layout, connections to supporting members, and information necessary to complete the installation as shown and specified, including supplementary framing, cant strips, cut openings, special jointing or other accessories. Show welding, side lap, closure, deck reinforcing and closure reinforcing details. Show openings required for work of other trades, including openings not shown on structural drawings. Indicate where temporary shoring is required to satisfy design criteria.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Showing steel decking section properties and specifying structural characteristics as specified herein.
- D. Test Report - Stud base qualification.
- E. Welding power setting recommendation by shear stud manufacturer.
- F. Shear Stud Layouts: Submit drawings showing the number, pattern, spacing and configuration of the shear studs for each beam and girder.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Underwriters' Label: Provide metal floor deck units listed in Underwriters' Laboratories "Fire Resistance Directory", with each deck unit bearing the UL label and marking for specific system detailed.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only. Refer to the latest edition of all referenced Standards and codes.
- B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
Specification and Commentary for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members (Latest Edition).
- C. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A36/A36M.....Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
A108.....Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Cold Finished, Standard Quality
A653/A653M.....Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process
- D. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
1. Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design (Latest Edition)
2. Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings (Latest Edition)
- E. American Welding Society (AWS):
D1.1.....Structural Welding Code - Steel
D1.3.....Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel
- E. Military Specifications (Mil. Spec.):
MIL-P-21035B.....Paint, High Zinc Dust Content, Galvanizing Repair

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MATERIALS:**

- A. Steel Decking and all Flashings: ASTM A653, Structural Quality suitable for shear stud weld-through techniques.
- B. Galvanizing: ASTM A653, G60.
- C. Shear connector studs: ASTM A108, Grades 1015-1020, yield 350 Mpa (50,000 psi) minimum, tensile strength - 400 Mpa (60,000 psi) minimum, reduction of area 50 percent minimum. Studs of uniform diameter; heads shall be concentric and normal to shaft; stud, after welding free from any substance or defect which would interfere with its function as a shear connector. Studs shall not be painted or galvanized. Size of studs shall be as shown on drawings. Studs manufactured by a company normally engaged in the manufacture of shear studs and can furnish equipment suitable for weld-through installation of shear studs.

- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: Mil. Spec. MIL-P-21035B.
- E. Miscellaneous Steel Shapes: ASTM A36.
- F. Welding Electrode: E60XX minimum.
- G. Sheet Metal Accessories: ASTM A653, galvanized, unless noted otherwise.
Provide accessories of every kind required to complete the installation of metal decking in the system shown. Finish sheet metal items to match deck including, but not limited to, the following items:
 - 1. Metal Cover Plates: For end-abutting deck units, to close gaps at changes in deck direction, columns, walls and openings. Same quality as deck units but not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) sheet steel.
 - 2. Continuous sheet metal edging: at openings and concrete slab edges. Same quality as deck units but not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) steel. Side and end closures supporting concrete and their attachment to supporting steel shall be designed by the manufacturer to safely support the wet weight of concrete and construction loads. The deflection of cantilever closures shall be limited to 3 mm (1/8 inch) maximum.
 - 3. Metal Closure Strips: For openings between decking and other construction, of not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) sheet steel of the same quality as the deck units. Form to the configuration required to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of flutes and sides of decking. Closures are not to interrupt concrete in low flutes.
 - 4. Seat angles for deck: Where a beam does not frame into a column.

2.2 REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Steel decking depth, gage, and section properties to be as shown.
Provide edges of deck with vertical interlocking male and female lip providing for a positive mechanical connection. Steel decking to be factory vented.
- B. Fabricate deck units with integral embossments to provide mechanical bond with concrete slab. In combination with concrete slab, capable of supporting total design loads on spans shown.
- C. Steel decking capable of safely supporting total, normal construction service loads without damage to decking unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ERECTION:

- A. Do not start installation of metal decking until corresponding steel framework has been plumbed, aligned and completed and until temporary shoring, where required, has been installed. Remove any oil, dirt, paint, ice, water and rust from steel surfaces to which metal decking will be welded.

- B. Coordinate and cooperate with structural steel erector in locating decking bundles to prevent overloading of structural members.
- C. Do not use floor deck units for storage or working platforms until permanently secured. Do not overload deck units once placed. Replace any deck units that become damaged after erection and prior to casting concrete at no cost to the Government.
- D. Erect steel deck in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- E. Ship steel deck units to project in standard widths and cut to proper length.
- F. Provide steel decking in sufficient lengths to extend over 3 or more spans, except where structural steel layout does not permit.
- G. Place steel decking units on supporting steel framework and adjust to final position before being permanently fastening. Bring each unit to proper bearing on supporting beams. Place deck units in straight alignment for entire length of run of flutes and with close registration of flutes of one unit with those of abutting unit. Maximum space between ends of abutting units is 13 mm (1/2 inch). If space exceeds 13 mm (1/2 inch), install closure plates at no additional cost to Government.
- H. Ceiling hanger loops, if used, must be flattened or removed to obtain bearing of units on structural steel.
- I. Fastening Deck Units: As shown on the structural drawings.
- J. Welding to conform to AWS D1.3 and done by competent experienced welding mechanics.
- K. Areas scarred during erection and welds shall be thoroughly cleaned and touched-up with zinc rich galvanizing repair paint. Paint touch-up is not required for welds or scars that are to be in direct contact with concrete.
- L. Provide metal concrete stops at edges of deck as required.
- M. Cutting and Fitting:
 - 1. Cut all metal deck units to proper length in the shop prior to shipping.
 - 2. Field cutting by the metal deck erector is restricted to bevel cuts, notching to fit around columns and similar items, and cutting openings that are located and dimensioned on the structural drawings.
 - 3. Other penetrations shown on the approved metal deck shop drawings but not shown on the structural drawings are to be located, cut and reinforced by the trade requiring the opening.
 - 4. Make all cuts neat and trim using a metal saw, drill or punchout device; cutting with torches is expressly prohibited.

5. Do not make any cuts in the metal deck that are not shown on the approved metal deck drawings. If an additional opening not shown on the approved shop drawings is required, submit a sketch, to scale, locating the required new opening and any other openings and supports in the immediate area. Do not cut the opening until the sketch has been reviewed and accepted by the Resident Engineer. Provide any additional reinforcing or framing required for the opening at no cost to the Government. Failure to comply with these requirements is cause for rejection of the work and removal and replacement of the affected metal deck.
 6. Reinforcement at Openings: Provide additional metal reinforcement and closure pieces as required for strength, continuity of decking and support of other work shown.
- N. Installation of shear connector studs through previously installed metal deck to conform to AWS D1.1, Section 7, except all studs will be installed with automatically timed welding equipment and as specified below:
1. Do not place reinforcing steel temperature mesh or other materials and equipment which will interfere with stud installation on steel deck until shear connector studs are installed.
 2. Steel deck sheets shall be free of oil, rust, dirt, and paint. Release water in deck's valley so that it does not become entrapped between deck and beam. Surface to which stud is to be welded shall be clean and dry.
 3. Rest metal deck tightly upon top flange of structural member with bottom of deck rib in full contact with top of beam flange.
 4. Weld studs only through a single thickness of deck. Place decking so that a butt joint is obtained. Place studs directly over beam web, where one row of studs are required.
 5. Ferrules specially developed for the weld-through technique must be used. Ferrules shall be appropriate for size of studs used and be removed after welding.
 6. Submit report of successful test program for stud base qualification as required by AWS D1.1, Appendix K.

3.2 CLEANING:

Clean deck in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation before concrete placement.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05400
COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

A. This section specifies materials and services required for installation of cold-formed steel, including tracks and required accessories as shown and specified. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior non-load-bearing steel stud curtain wall.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

A. Structural steel framing: Section 05120, STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING.

B. Non-load-bearing metal stud framing assemblies: Section 092216, NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING.

C. Gypsum board assemblies: Section 09290, GYPSUM BOARD.

D. Exterior finish systems: Section 07480

E. Cement board sheathing: Section 07481

1.3 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS:

A. Design steel in accordance with American Iron and Steel Institute Publication "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members", except as otherwise shown or specified.

B. Structural Performance: Engineer, fabricate, and erect cold-formed metal framing to withstand design loads within limits and under conditions required.

1. Design Loads: As indicated.

2. Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:

a. Exterior Non-load-Bearing Curtain wall: Lateral deflection of 1/360 of the wall height.

b. Exterior Curtain wall supporting CMU veneer out of plane: Lateral deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.

3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change (range) of 67 degrees C (120 degrees F).
4. Design framing system to accommodate deflection of primary building structure and construction tolerances, and to maintain clearances at openings.
5. Design exterior non-load-bearing curtain wall framing to accommodate lateral deflection without regard to contribution of sheathing materials.
6. Design studs framing with a maximum stud spacing of 16-inches on center.
7. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a fabricator who assumes undivided responsibility for engineering cold-formed metal framing by employing a qualified professional engineer to prepare design calculations, shop drawings, and other structural data.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 013323, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: Shop and erection drawings showing steel unit layout, connections to supporting members, and information necessary to complete installation as shown and specified.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Showing steel component sections and specifying structural characteristics.
- D. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with certain design loadings, include structural analysis data sealed and signed by the registered professional engineer who was responsible for its preparation.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):

North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel
Structural Members (2001, including 2004 Supplement)

C. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM):

A36/A36M(REV. A)-2003...Standard Specifications for Carbon Structural
Steel

A123/A123M-2002.....Standard Specifications for Zinc (Hot-Dip
Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

A153/A153M-2003.....Standard Specifications for Zinc Coating (Hot-
Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

A307-2002.....Standard Specifications for Carbon Steel Bolts
and Studs

A653/A653M-2003.....Standard Specifications for Steel Sheet, Zinc-
Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated
(Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

C955-2003.....Standard Specifications for Load-Bearing
(Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners
(Tracks), and Bracing or Bridging for Screw
Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal
Plaster Bases

C1107-2002.....Standard Specifications for Packaged Dry,
Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink)

E488-96(Reapproved 2003)Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors
in Concrete and Masonry Elements

E1190-95(Reapproved 2000)Standard Test Methods for Strength of Power-
Actuated Fasteners Installed in Structural
Members

D. American Welding Society (AWS):

D1.3-(98).....Structural Welding Code-Sheet Steel

E. Military Specifications (Mil. Spec.):

MIL-P-21035B(Reinst. Notice 2) Paint, High Zinc Dust Content,
Galvanizing Repair

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

- A. Sheet Steel for joists, studs and accessories 16 gage and heavier: ASTM A653, structural steel, zinc coated G90, with a yield of 50 ksi minimum.
- B. Sheet Steel for joists, studs and accessories 18 gage and lighter: ASTM A653, structural steel, zinc coated G90, with a yield of 33 ksi minimum.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MIL-P-21035B.
- D. Nonmetallic, Non-shrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, Portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C1107, with fluid consistency and a 30 minute working time.

2.2 WALL FRAMING:

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs of web depth indicated, with lipped flanges, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0598 inch)
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches)
 - 3. Web: Unpunched .
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, unpunched, of web depths indicated, with straight flanges, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: Matching steel studs.

2. Flange Width: Manufacturer's standard deep flange where indicated, standard flange elsewhere.

2.3 FRAMING ACCESSORIES:

- A. Fabricate steel framing accessories of the same material and finish used for framing members, with a minimum yield strength of 33 ksi.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:

1. Supplementary framing.
2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
3. Web stiffeners.
4. Gusset plates.
5. Deflection track and vertical slide clips.
6. Stud kickers and girts.
7. Joist hangers and end closures.
8. Reinforcement plates.

2.4 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS:

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A36, zinc coated by the hot-dip process according to ASTM A123.
- B. Cast-in-Place Anchor Bolts and Studs: ASTM A307, Grade A, zinc coated by the hot-dip process according to ASTM A153.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

- E. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant coated, self-drilling, self-threading steel drill screws. Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

2.5 REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Welding in accordance with AWS D1.3
- B. Furnish members and accessories by one manufacturer only.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FABRICATION:

- A. Framing components may be preassembled into panels. Panels shall be square with components attached.
- B. Cut framing components squarely or as required for attachment. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
- C. Hold members in place until fastened.
- D. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding or screw fastening, as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - 1. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 2. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to cold-formed metal framing manufacturer's instructions with screw penetrating joined members by not less than 3 exposed screw threads.

3.2 ERECTION:

- A. Handle and lift prefabricated panels in a manner as to not distort any member.
- B. Securely anchor tracks to supports as shown.
- C. At butt joints, securely anchor two pieces of track to same supporting member or butt-weld or splice together.
- D. Plumb, align, and securely attach studs to flanges or webs of both upper and lower tracks.

- E. All axially loaded members shall be aligned vertically to allow for full transfer of the loads down to the foundation. Vertical alignment shall be maintained at floor/wall intersections.
- F. Install jack studs above and below openings and as required to furnish support. Securely attach jack studs to supporting members.
- G. Install headers in all openings that are larger than the stud spacing in that wall.
- H. Attach bridging for studs in a manner to prevent stud rotation. Space bridging rows as shown.
- I. Studs in one piece for their entire length, splices will not be permitted.
- J. Provide temporary bracing and leave in place until framing is permanently stabilized.
- K. Do not bridge building seismic joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- L. Fasten reinforcement plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.

3.3 TOLERANCES:

- A. Vertical alignment (plumbness) of studs shall be within 1/960th of the span.
- B. Horizontal alignment (levelness) of walls shall be within 1/960th of their respective lengths.
- C. Spacing of studs shall not be more than 1/8 inch +/- from the designed spacing providing that the cumulative error does not exceed the requirements of the finishing materials.
- D. Prefabricated panels shall be not more than 1/8 inch +/- out of square within the length of that panel.

3.4 FIELD REPAIR:

- A. Touch-up damaged galvanizing with galvanizing repair paint.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05500
METAL FABRICATIONS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies items and assemblies fabricated from structural steel shapes and other materials as shown and specified.
- B. Items specified.
 - 1. Support for Wall and Ceiling Mounted Items:
 - 2. Frames:
 - 3. Guards
 - 4. Covers and Frames for Pits and Trenches.
 - 5. Gratings
 - 6. Loose Lintels
 - 7. Shelf Angles
 - 8. Plate Door Sill
 - 9. Safety Nosings
 - 10. Ladders
 - 11. Railings:
 - 12. Catwalks and Platforms

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Railings attached to steel stairs: Section 05510, METAL STAIRS.
- B. Colors, finishes, and textures: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULE.
- C. Prime and finish painting: Section 09900, PAINTING.
- D. Stainless steel corner guards: Section 10260, WALL GUARDS AND CORNER GUARDS.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:

Grating, each type

Ceiling hatch

Manhole Covers

Floor plate

Sidewalk Access door

Safety nosing

- C. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Each item specified, showing complete detail, location in the project, material and size of components, method of joining various

- components and assemblies, finish, and location, size and type of anchors.
- 2. Mark items requiring field assembly for erection identification and furnish erection drawings and instructions.
- 3. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificates:
 - 1. Anodized finish as specified.
 - 2. Live load designs as specified.
- E. Design Calculations for specified live loads including dead loads.
- F. Furnish setting drawings and instructions for installation of anchors to be preset into concrete and masonry work, and for the positioning of items having anchors to be built into concrete or masonry construction.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Each manufactured product shall meet, as a minimum, the requirements specified, and shall be a standard commercial product of a manufacturer regularly presently manufacturing items of type specified.
- B. Each product type shall be the same and be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Assembled product to the greatest extent possible before delivery to the site.
- D. Include additional features, which are not specifically prohibited by this specification, but which are a part of the manufacturer's standard commercial product.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
 - B18.6.1-81(R97).....Wood Screws
 - B18.2.2-87(R93).....Square and Hex Nuts
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A36/A36M-04.....Structural Steel
 - A47-99.....Malleable Iron Castings
 - A48-03.....Gray Iron Castings
 - A53-02.....Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated
Welded and Seamless
 - A123-02.....Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

RR-T-650E.....Treads, Metallic and Nonmetallic, Nonskid

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. In addition to the dead loads, design fabrications to support the following live loads unless otherwise specified.
- B. Ladders and Rungs: 120 kg (250 pounds) at any point.
- C. Railings and Handrails: 900 N (200 pounds) in any direction at any point.
- D. Floor Plates, Gratings, Covers, Trap Doors, and Platforms: 500 kg/m² (100 pounds per square foot). And 900 kg (2000 pounds) for concentrated loads. Catwalks: kg/m² (40 pounds per square foot) and 900 kg (2000 pounds) for concentrated loads.
- E. Manhole Covers: 1200 kg/m² (250 pounds per square foot).

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A36.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304.
- C. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5 unless otherwise specified. For structural shapes use alloy 6061-T6 and alloy 6061-T4511.
- D. Floor Plate:
 - 1. Steel ASTM A786.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B632.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53.
 - 1. Galvanized for exterior locations.
 - 2. Type S, Grade A unless specified otherwise.
 - 3. NPS (inside diameter) as shown.
- F. Cast-Iron: ASTM A48, Class 30, commercial pattern.
- G. Malleable Iron Castings: A47.
- H. Primer Paint: As specified in Section 09900, PAINTING.
- I. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269, type 302 or 304.
- J. Modular Channel Units:
 - 1. Factory fabricated, channel shaped, cold formed sheet steel shapes, complete with fittings bolts and nuts required for assembly.
 - 2. Form channel with in turned pyramid shaped clamping ridges on each side.
 - 3. Provide case hardened steel nuts with serrated grooves in the top edges designed to be inserted in the channel at any point and be

- given a quarter turn so as to engage the channel clamping ridges.
Provide each nut with a spring designed to hold the nut in place.
4. Factory finish channels and parts with oven baked primer when exposed to view. Channels fabricated of ASTM A525, G90 galvanized steel may have primer omitted in concealed locations. Finish screws and nuts with zinc coating.
 5. Fabricate snap-in closure plates to fit and close exposed channel openings of not more than 0.3 mm (0.0125 inch) thick stainless steel.
- K. Grout: ASTM C1107, pourable type.
- L. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656.

2.3 HARDWARE

- A. Rough Hardware:
1. Furnish rough hardware with a standard plating, applied after punching, forming and assembly of parts; galvanized, cadmium plated, or zinc-coated by electro-galvanizing process. Galvanized G-90 where specified.
 2. Use G90 galvanized coating on ferrous metal for exterior work unless non-ferrous metal or stainless is used.
- B. Fasteners:
1. Bolts with Nuts:
 - a. ASME B18.2.2.
 - b. ASTM A307 for 415 MPa (60,000 psi) tensile strength bolts.
 - c. ASTM F468 for nonferrous bolts.
 - d. ASTM F593 for stainless steel.
 2. Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
 3. Washers: ASTM F436, type to suit material and anchorage.
 4. Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, style 6 or 14 for finish work.

2.4 FABRICATION GENERAL

- A. Material
1. Use material as specified. Use material of commercial quality and suitable for intended purpose for material that is not named or its standard of quality not specified.
 2. Use material free of defects which could affect the appearance or service ability of the finished product.
- B. Size:
1. Size and thickness of members as shown.
 2. When size and thickness is not specified or shown for an individual part, use size and thickness not less than that used for the same

component on similar standard commercial items or in accordance with established shop methods.

C. Connections

1. Except as otherwise specified, connections may be made by welding, riveting or bolting.
2. Field riveting will not be approved.
3. Design size, number and placement of fasteners, to develop a joint strength of not less than the design value.
4. Holes, for rivets and bolts: Accurately punched or drilled and burrs removed.
5. Size and shape welds to develop the full design strength of the parts connected by welds and to transmit imposed stresses without permanent deformation or failure when subject to service loadings.
6. Use Rivets and bolts of material selected to prevent corrosion (electrolysis) at bimetallic contacts. Plated or coated material will not be approved.
7. Use stainless steel connectors for removable members machine screws or bolts.

D. Fasteners and Anchors

1. Use methods for fastening or anchoring metal fabrications to building construction as shown or specified.
2. Where fasteners and anchors are not shown, design the type, size, location and spacing to resist the loads imposed without deformation of the members or causing failure of the anchor or fastener, and suit the sequence of installation.
3. Use material and finish of the fasteners compatible with the kinds of materials which are fastened together and their location in the finished work.
4. Fasteners for securing metal fabrications to new construction only, may be by use of threaded or wedge type inserts or by anchors for welding to the metal fabrication for installation before the concrete is placed or as masonry is laid.
5. Fasteners for securing metal fabrication to existing construction or new construction may be expansion bolts, toggle bolts, power actuated drive pins, welding, self drilling and tapping screws or bolts.

E. Workmanship

1. General:
 - a. Fabricate items to design shown.
 - b. Furnish members in longest lengths commercially available within the limits shown and specified.

- c. Fabricate straight, true, free from warp and twist, and where applicable square and in same plane.
 - d. Provide holes, sinkages and reinforcement shown and required for fasteners and anchorage items.
 - e. Provide openings, cut-outs, and tapped holes for attachment and clearances required for work of other trades.
 - f. Prepare members for the installation and fitting of hardware.
 - g. Cut openings in gratings and floor plates for the passage of ducts, sumps, pipes, conduits and similar items. Provide reinforcement to support cut edges.
 - h. Fabricate surfaces and edges free from sharp edges, burrs and projections which may cause injury.
2. Welding:
- a. Weld in accordance with AWS.
 - b. Welds shall show good fusion, be free from cracks and porosity and accomplish secure and rigid joints in proper alignment.
 - c. Where exposed in the finished work, continuous weld for the full length of the members joined and have depressed areas filled and protruding welds finished smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces.
 - d. Finish welded joints to match finish of adjacent surface.
3. Joining:
- a. Miter or butt members at corners.
 - b. Where frames members are butted at corners, cut leg of frame member perpendicular to surface, as required for clearance.
4. Anchors:
- a. Where metal fabrications are shown to be preset in concrete, weld 32 x 3 mm (1-1/4 by 1/8 inch) steel strap anchors, 150 mm (6 inches) long with 25 mm (one inch) hooked end, to back of member at 600 mm (2 feet) on center, unless otherwise shown.
 - b. Where metal fabrications are shown to be built into masonry use 32 x 3 mm (1-1/4 by 1/8 inch) steel strap anchors, 250 mm (10 inches) long with 50 mm (2 inch) hooked end, welded to back of member at 600 mm (2 feet) on center, unless otherwise shown.
5. Cutting and Fitting:
- a. Accurately cut, machine and fit joints, corners, copes, and miters.
 - b. Fit removable members to be easily removed.
 - c. Design and construct field connections in the most practical place for appearance and ease of installation.
 - d. Fit pieces together as required.

- e. Fabricate connections for ease of assembly and disassembly without use of special tools.
- f. Joints firm when assembled.
- g. Conceal joining, fitting and welding on exposed work as far as practical.
- h. Do not show rivets and screws prominently on the exposed face.
- i. The fit of components and the alignment of holes shall eliminate the need to modify component or to use exceptional force in the assembly of item and eliminate the need to use other than common tools.

F. Finish:

- 1. Finish exposed surfaces in accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual.
- 2. Aluminum: NAAMM AMP 501.
 - a. Mill finish, AA-M10, as fabricated, use unless specified otherwise.
 - b. Clear anodic coating, AA-C22A41, chemically etched medium matte, with Architectural Class 1, 0.7 mils or thicker.
 - c. Colored anodic coating, AA-C22A42, chemically etched medium matte with Architectural Class 1, 0.7 mils or thicker.
 - d. Painted: AA-C22R10.
- 3. Steel and Iron: NAAMM AMP 504.
 - a. Zinc coated (Galvanized): ASTM A123, G90 unless noted otherwise.
 - b. Surfaces exposed in the finished work:
 - 1) Finish smooth rough surfaces and remove projections.
 - 2) Fill holes, dents and similar voids and depressions with epoxy type patching compound.
 - c. Shop Prime Painting:
 - 1) Surfaces of Ferrous metal:
 - a) Items not specified to have other coatings.
 - b) Galvanized surfaces specified to have prime paint.
 - c) Remove all loose mill scale, rust, and paint, by hand or power tool cleaning as defined in SSPC-SP2 and SP3.
 - d) Clean of oil, grease, soil and other detrimental matter by use of solvents or cleaning compounds as defined in SSPC-SP1.
 - e) After cleaning and finishing apply one coat of primer as specified in Section 099100 PAINTING.
 - 2) Non ferrous metals: Comply with MAAMM-500 series.

4. Stainless Steel: NAAMM AMP-504 Finish No. 4.
5. Chromium Plating: ASTM B456, satin or bright as specified, Service Condition No. SC2.

G. Protection:

1. Insulate aluminum surfaces that will come in contact with concrete, masonry, plaster, or metals other than stainless steel, zinc or white bronze by giving a coat of heavy-bodied alkali resisting bituminous paint or other approved paint in shop.
2. Spot prime all abraded and damaged areas of zinc coating which expose the bare metal, using zinc rich paint on hot-dip zinc coat items and zinc dust primer on all other zinc coated items.

2.5 SUPPORTS

A. General:

1. Fabricate ASTM A36 structural steel shapes as shown.
2. Use clip angles or make provisions for welding hangers and braces to overhead construction.
3. Field connections may be welded or bolted.

B. For Ceiling Hung Toilet Stall:

1. Use a continuous steel channel above pilasters with hangers centered over pilasters.
2. Make provision for installation of stud bolts in lower flange of channel.
3. Provide a continuous steel angle at wall and channel braces spaced as shown.
4. Use threaded rod hangers.
5. Provide diagonal angle brace where the suspended ceiling over toilet stalls does not extend to side wall of room.

C. For Wall Mounted Items:

1. For items supported by metal stud partitions.
2. Steel strip or hat channel minimum of 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick.
3. Steel strip minimum of 150 mm (6 inches) wide, length extending one stud space beyond end of item supported.
4. Steel hat channels where shown. Flange cut and flattened for anchorage to stud.
5. Structural steel tube or channel for grab bar at water closets floor to structure above with clip angles or end plates formed for anchors.
6. Use steel angles for thru wall counters. Drill angle for fasteners at ends and not over 100 mm (4 inches) on center between ends.

D. For Trapeze Bars:

1. Construct assembly above ceilings as shown and design to support not less than a 340 kg (750 pound) working load at any point.
2. Fabricate trapeze supports as shown, with all exposed members, including screws, nuts, bolts and washers, fabricated of stainless steel.
3. Fabricate concealed components of structural steel shapes unless shown otherwise.
4. Stainless steel ceiling plate drilled for eye bolt.
5. Continuously weld connections where welds shown.
6. Use modular channel where shown with manufacturers bolts and fittings.
 - a. Weld ends of steel angle braces to steel plates and secure to modular channel units as shown. Drill plates for anchor bolts.
 - b. Fabricate eye bolt, special clamp bolt, and plate closure full length of modular channel at ceiling line and secure to modular channel unit with manufacturers standard fittings.

2.6 FRAMES

A. Channel Door Frames:

1. Fabricate of structural steel channels of size shown.
2. Miter and weld frames at corners.
3. Where anchored to masonry or embedded in concrete, weld to back of frame at each jamb, 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick by 44 mm (1-3/4 inch) wide steel strap anchors with ends turned 50 mm (2 inches), and of sufficient length to extend at least 300 mm (12 inches) into wall. Space anchors 600 mm (24 inches) above bottom of frame and 600 mm (24 inches) o.c. to top of jamb. Weld clip angles to bottom of jambs and provide holes for expansion bolts.
4. Where anchored to concrete or masonry in prepared openings, drill holes at jambs for anchoring with expansion bolts. Weld clip angles to bottom of frame and provide holes for expansion bolt anchors as shown. Drill holes starting 600 mm (24 inches) above bottom of frame and 600 mm (24 inches) o.c. to top of jamb and at top of jamb. Provide pipe spacers at holes welded to channel.
5. Where closure plates are shown, continuously weld them to the channel flanges.
6. Weld continuous 19 x 19 x 3 mm (3/4 x 3/4 x 1/8 inch) thick steel angles to the interior side of each channel leg at the head and jambs to form a caulking groove.

7. Prepare frame for installation of hardware specified in Section 087000, BUILDER'S HARDWARE.
 - a. Cut a slot in the lock jamb to receive the lock bolt.
 - b. Where shown use continuous solid steel bar stops at perimeter of frame, weld or secure with countersunk machine screws at not more than 450 mm (18 inches) on center.
- C. Frames for Breech Opening:
 1. Fabricate from steel channels, or combination of steel plates and angles to size and contour shown.
 2. Weld strap anchors on back of frame at not over 600 mm (2 feet) on centers for concrete or masonry openings.

2.7 GUARDS

- A. Structural Column Corner Guards:
 1. Fabricate 4 x 4 steel corner guards from steel angles and furnish with anchors as shown.
 2. Continuously weld anchor to angle.
- B. Guard Angles for Overhead Doors:
 1. Cut away top portion of outstanding leg of angle and extend remaining portion of angle up wall.
 2. Weld filler piece across head of opening to jamb angles.
 3. Make provisions for fasteners and anchorage.
- C. Channel Guard at Loading Platform:
 1. Fabricate from steel channel of size shown.
 2. Weld anchors to channels as shown.
 3. Drill channel for bumper anchor bolts.
- D. Edge Guard Angles for Openings in slabs.
 1. Fabricate from steel angles of sizes and with anchorage shown.
 2. Where size of angle is not shown, provide 50 x 50 x 6 mm (2 x 2 x 1/4 inch) steel angle with 32 x 5 mm (1-1/4 x 3/16 inch) strap anchors, welded to back.
 3. Miter or butt angles at corners and weld.
 4. Use one anchor near end and three feet on centers between end anchors.
- E. Wheel Guards:
 1. Construct wheel guards of not less than 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick cast iron.
 2. Provide corner type, with flanges for bolting to walls.

2.8 COVERS AND FRAMES FOR PITS AND TRENCHES

- A. Fabricate covers to support live loads of 200 lbs PSF (2,000 pounds concentrate load)
- B. Aluminum Covers:
 - 1. Provide clearance at all sides to permit easy removal of covers.
 - 2. Make cutouts within 6 mm (1/4 inch) of penetration for passage of pipes and ducts.
 - 3. Drill covers for flat head countersunk screws.
 - 4. Make cover sections not to exceed 2.3 m² (25 square feet) in area and 90 kg (200 pounds) in weight.
 - 5. Fabricate trench cover sections not be over 900 mm (3 feet) long and if width of trench is more than 900 mm (3 feet) or over, equip one end of each section with an angle or "T" bar stiffener to support adjoining plate.
 - 6. Trench Covers shall be aluminum, ASTM B 209, alloy 6061-T651 for plate; Frames shall be aluminum, ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions.
 - 7. Fastners, accessories, and other materials required for complete installation to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 8. Trench Covers shall have a smooth surface.
 - 9. Finish to be aluminum:
 - a. Exposed aluminum surfaces shall be [mill finish]
 - b. Aluminum surfaces in contact with concrete shall be prime painted.
 - 10. Contractor shall verify that field measurements are as shown on shop drawings prior to releasing materials for fabrication by the manufacturer
 - 11. Trench Covers shall cover the trench completely and shall be flush with surrounding finish floor surfaces to allow unrestricted pedestrian traffic.
 - 12. Allowable load on Trench Cover shall be 200 psf (or 2,000 pounds concentrated for heavy-duty models) with 1/4 inch deflection.
 - 13. Trench liners shall be water-resistant (leak resistant).
 - 14. Manufacturer shall be ISO 9001:2000 Certified.

2.9 GRATINGS

- A. Fabricate gratings to support live loads specified and a concentrated load as specified.
- B. Provide clearance at all sides to permit easy removal of grating.

- C. Make cutouts in gratings with 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum to 25 mm (one inch) maximum clearance for penetrations or passage of pipes and ducts. Edge band cutouts.
- D. Fabricate in sections not to exceed 2.3 m² (25 square feet) in area and 90 kg (200 pounds) in weight.
- E. Fabricate sections of grating with end-banding bars.
- F. Fabricate angle frames and supports, including anchorage as shown.
 - 1. Fabricate intermediate supporting members from "T's" or angles.
 - 2. Locate intermediate supports to support grating section edges.
 - 3. Fabricate frame to finish flush with top of grating.
 - 4. Locate anchors at ends and not over 600 mm (24 inches) o.c.
 - 5. Butt or miter, and weld angle frame at corners.

G. Steel Bar Gratings:

- 1. Fabricate grating using steel bars, frames, supports and other members shown in accordance with Metal Bar Grating Manual.
- 2. Galvanize steel members after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123, G-90 for exterior gratings, gratings in concrete floors, and interior grating where specified.
- 3. Interior gratings: Prime paint unless specified galvanized.
- 4. Use serrated bars for exterior gratings and interior gratings in the following areas:
- 5. Use riveted grating in the following areas:

H. Aluminum Bar Gratings:

- 1. Fabricate grating and frame assembly from aluminum as shown in accordance with Metal Bar Grating Manual.
- 2. Use 25 x 5 mm (1 x 3/16 inch) minimum size bearing bars.
- 3. Mill finish unless specified otherwise.
- 4. Use serrated bars for exterior gratings and interior gratings in the following areas:

I. Plank Gratings:

- 1. Conform to Fed. Spec. RR-G-1602.
- 2. Manufacturers standard widths, lengths and side channels to meet live load requirements.
- 3. Galvanize exterior steel gratings ASTM A123, G-90 after fabrication.
- 4. Fabricate interior steel gratings from galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A525, where bearing on concrete or masonry.
- 5. Fabricate other interior grating from steel sheet and finish with shop prime paint. Prime painted galvanized sheet may be used.

J. Cast Iron Gratings:

1. Fabricate gratings to support a live load of 23940 Pa (500 pounds per square foot).
2. Fabricate gratings and frames for gutter type drains from cast-iron conforming to ASTM A48.
3. Fabricate gratings in section not longer than 1200 mm (4 feet) or over 90 kg (200 pounds) and fit so as to be readily removable.

2.10 LOOSE LINTELS

- A. Furnish lintels of sizes shown. Where size of lintels is not shown, provide the sizes specified.
- B. Fabricate lintels with not less than 150 mm (6 inch) bearing at each end for nonbearing masonry walls, and 200 mm (8 inch) bearing at each end for bearing walls.
- C. Provide one angle lintel for each 100 mm (4 inches) of masonry thickness as follows except as otherwise specified or shown.
 1. Openings 750 mm to 1800 mm (2-1/2 feet to 6 feet) - 100 x 90 x 8 mm (4 x 3-1/2 x 5/16 inch).
 2. Openings 1800 mm to 3000 mm (6 feet to 10 feet) - 150 x 90 x 9 mm (6 x 3-1/2 x 3/8 inch).
- D. For 150 mm (6 inch) thick masonry openings 750 mm to 3000 mm (2-1/2 feet to 10 feet) use one angle 150 x 90 x 9 mm (6 x 3-1/2 x 3/8 inch).
- E. Provide bearing plates for lintels where shown.
- F. Weld or bolt upstanding legs of double angle lintels together with 19 mm (3/4 inch bolts) spaced at 300 mm (12 inches) on centers.
- G. Insert spreaders at bolt points to separate the angles for insertion of metal windows, louver, and other anchorage.
- H. Where shown or specified, punch upstanding legs of single lintels to suit size and spacing of anchor bolts.

2.11 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate from steel angles of size shown.
- B. Fabricate angles with horizontal slotted holes for 19 mm (3/4 inch) bolts spaced at not over 900 mm (3 feet) on centers and within 300 mm (12 inches) of ends.
- C. Provide adjustable malleable iron inserts for embedded in concrete framing.

2.12 PLATE DOOR SILL

- A. Fabricate of checkered plate as detailed.
 1. Aluminum Plate: ASTM B632, 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick.

2. Steel Plate: ASTM A786, 3 mm (0.125 inch thick), galvanized G90.

B. Fabricate for anchorage with flat head countersunk bolts at each end and not over 300 mm (12 inches), o.c.

2.13 SAFETY NOSINGS

A. Fed. Spec. RR-T-650, Type C.

1. Aluminum: Class 2, Style 2.

2. Cast iron: Class 4.

B. Fabricate nosings for exterior use from cast aluminum, and nosings for interior use from either cast aluminum or cast iron. Use one Class throughout.

C. Fabricate nosings approximately 100 mm (4 inches) wide with not more than 9 mm (3/8 inch) nose.

D. Provide nosings with integral type anchors spaced not more than 100 mm (4 inches) from each end and intermediate anchors spaced approximately 375 mm (15 inches) on center.

E. Fabricate nosings to extend within 100 mm (4 inches) of ends of concrete stair treads except where shown to extend full width.

F. Fabricate nosings to extend full width between stringers of metal stairs and full width of door openings.

G. On curved steps fabricate to terminate at point of curvature of steps having short radius curved ends.

2.14 LADDERS

A. Steel Ladders:

1. Fixed-rail type with steel rungs shouldered and headed into and welded to rails.

2. Fabricate angle brackets of 50 mm (2 inch) wide by 13 mm (1/2 inch) thick steel; brackets spaced maximum of 1200 mm (4 feet) apart and of length to hold ladder 175 mm (7 inches) from wall to center of rungs. Provide turned ends or clips for anchoring.

3. Provide holes for anchoring with expansion bolts through turned ends and brackets.

4. Where shown, fabricate side rails curved, twisted and formed into a gooseneck.

5. Galvanize exterior ladders after fabrication, ASTM A123, G-90.

B. Ladder Rungs:

1. Fabricate from 25 mm (one inch) diameter steel bars.

2. Fabricate so that rungs will extend at least 100 mm (4 inches) into wall with ends turned 50 mm (2 inches), project out from wall 175 mm

(7 inches), be 400 mm (16 inches) wide and be designed so that foot cannot slide off end.

3. Galvanized after fabrication, ASTM A123, G-90 rungs for exterior use and for access to pits.

2.15 RAILINGS

A. In addition to the dead load design railing assembly to support live load specified.

B. Fabrication General:

1. Provide continuous welded joints, dressed smooth and flush.
2. Standard flush fittings, designed to be welded, may be used.
3. Exposed threads will not be approved.
4. Form handrail brackets to size and design shown.
5. Exterior Post Anchors.
 - a. Fabricate tube or pipe sleeves with closed ends or plates as shown.
 - b. Where inserts interfere with reinforcing bars, provide flanged fittings welded or threaded to posts for securing to concrete with expansion bolts.
 - c. Provide heavy pattern sliding flange base plate with set screws at base of pipe or tube posts. Base plates are not required on pipe sleeves where ornamental railings occur.

6. Interior Post Anchors:

- a. Provide flanged fittings for securing fixed posts to floor with expansion bolts, unless shown otherwise.
- b. Weld or thread flanged fitting to posts at base.
- c. For securing removable posts to floor, provide close fitting sleeve insert or inverted flange base plate with stud bolts or rivets concrete anchor welded to the base plate.
- d. Provide sliding flange base plate on posts secured with set screws.
- e. Weld flange base plate to removable posts set in sleeves.

C. Handrails:

1. Close free ends of rail with flush metal caps welded in place except where flanges for securing to walls with bolts are shown.
2. Make provisions for attaching handrail brackets to wall, posts, and handrail as shown.

D. Steel Pipe Railings:

1. Fabricate of steel pipe with welded joints.
2. Number and space of rails as shown.

3. Space posts for railings not over 1800 mm (6 feet) on centers between end posts.
4. Form handrail brackets from malleable iron.
5. Fabricate removable sections with posts at end of section.
6. Removable Rails:
 - a. Provide "U" shape brackets at each end to hold removable rail as shown. Use for top and bottom horizontal rail when rails are joined together with vertical members.
 - b. Secure rail to brackets with 9 mm (3/8 inch) stainless steel through bolts and nuts at top rail only when rails joined with vertical members.
 - c. Continuously weld brackets to post.
 - d. Provide slotted bolt holes in rail bracket.
 - e. Weld bolt heads flush with top of rail.
 - f. Weld flanged fitting to post where posts are installed in sleeves.
7. Opening Guard Rails:
 - a. Fabricate rails with flanged fitting at each end to fit between wall opening jambs.
 - b. Design flange fittings for fastening with machine screws to steel plate anchored to jambs.
 - c. Fabricate rails for floor openings for anchorage in sleeves.
8. Gates:
 - a. Fabricate from steel pipe as specified for railings.
 - b. Fabricate gate fittings from either malleable iron or wrought steel.
 - c. Hang each gate on suitable spring hinges of clamp on or through bolted type. Use bronze hinges for exterior gates.
 - d. Provide suitable stops, so that gate will swing as shown.
 - e. Provide padlock eyes where shown.
9. Chains:
 - a. Chains: ASTM A391, Grade 63, straight link style, normal size chain bar 8 mm (5/16 inch) diameter, eight links per 25 mm (foot) and with boat type snap hook on one end, and through type eye bolt on other end.
 - b. Fabricate eye bolt for attaching chain to pipe posts, size not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter.
 - c. Fabricate anchor at walls, for engagement of snap hook of either a 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter eye bolt or punched angle.
 - d. Galvanize chain and bolts after fabrication.

2.16 CATWALKS

- A. Fabricate catwalks including platforms, railings, ladders, supports and hangers, and arrangement of members as shown on drawings.
- B. Fabricate stairs as specified in Section METAL STAIRS.
- C. Fabricate steel ladders as specified under paragraph LADDERS unless shown otherwise.
- D. Fabricate steel pipe railings as specified under paragraph RAILINGS.
- E. Catwalk and platforms floor surfaces as shown.
 - 1. Steel gratings as specified under paragraph gratings, either bar or plank type.
- F. Prime paint catwalk system.

2.17 SCREENED ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Galvanized ASTM A123, G-90 after fabrication.
- B. Wall frame:
 - 1. Fabricate frame from steel angles or channels as shown.
 - 2. Continuously weld 38 x 13 mm (1-1/2 x 1/2 inch) steel channel door stop to angle frame. Cut out lock strike opening in channel.
 - 3. Miter and weld channel frame at corners. Reinforce corner with 3 mm (1/8 inch) plate angle.
 - 4. Reinforce channel frame with 3 x 150 mm (1/8 x 6 inch) long steel plate at channel back to cutout for latch. Cutout lock strike opening in channel face. Drill and tap for hinge anchorage.
 - 5. Drill jambs for 6 mm (1/4 inch) bolt anchors at top and bottom and not over 450 mm (18 inches) between top and bottom.
 - 6. Fabricate frame for door to sit flush with face of frame.
- C. Doors
 - 1. Fabricate door using steel channel frame with 3 mm (1/8 inch) angle plate reinforcing at corners.
 - 2. Miter and weld corners.
 - 3. Fabricate lock box of 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) plate and weld to channel surround.
 - 4. Provide wire mesh constructed of 3.5 mm (0.135 inch) diameter galvanized steel wire crimped and woven into 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) diamond mesh pattern. Fasten the wire mesh to door frames by bending the ends of each strand of wire over through channel clinched and welded to channel door frame.
 - 5. Weld steel plate back-bands to channel door frame at hinge stiles only.

6. Screen on doors in exterior walls.
 - a. Fabricate rewirable frame for screen from either extruded or tubular aluminum.
 - b. Design to allow for removing or replacement frame and screening or adjoining items without damage.
 - c. Use aluminum insect screening specified.
 - d. Use stainless steel fasteners for securing screen to door.

D. Hardware:

1. Install hinged door to fixed frame with two 63 mm (2-1/2 inch) brass or bronze hinges.
2. Install lock or latch specified in Section 08710, BUILDERS HARDWARE in lockbox.

2.18 STEEL COUNTER OR BENCH TOP FRAME AND LEGS

- A. Fabricate channel or angle frame with mitered and welded corners as shown.
- B. Drill top of frame with 6 mm (1/4inch) holes spaced 200 mm (8 inches) on center for securing countertop.
- C. Fabricate legs of angle or pipe shapes and continuously weld to frame.
- D. Finish frame with backed on enamel prime coat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set work accurately, in alignment and where shown, plumb, level, free of rack and twist, and set parallel or perpendicular as required to line and plane of surface.
- B. Items set into concrete or masonry.
 1. Provide temporary bracing for such items until concrete or masonry is set.
 2. Place in accordance with setting drawings and instructions.
 3. Build strap anchors, into masonry as work progresses.
- C. Set frames of gratings, covers, corner guards, trap doors and similar items flush with finish floor or wall surface and, where applicable, flush with side of opening.
- D. Field weld in accordance with AWS.
 1. Design and finish as specified for shop welding.
 2. Use continuous weld unless specified otherwise.
- E. Install anchoring devices and fasteners as shown and as necessary for securing metal fabrications to building construction as specified. Power actuated drive pins may be used except for removable items and where members would be deformed or substrate damaged by their use.

- F. Spot prime all abraded and damaged areas of zinc coating as specified and all abraded and damaged areas of shop prime coat with same kind of paint used for shop priming.
- G. Isolate aluminum from dissimilar metals and from contact with concrete and masonry materials as required to prevent electrolysis and corrosion.
- H. Secure escutcheon plate with set screw.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

- A. Anchorage to structure.
 - 1. Secure angles or channels and clips to overhead structural steel by continuous welding unless bolting is shown.
 - 2. Secure supports to concrete inserts by bolting or continuous welding as shown.
 - 3. Secure supports to mid height of concrete beams when inserts do not exist with expansion bolts and to slabs, with expansion bolts. unless shown otherwise.
 - 4. Secure steel plate or hat channels to studs as detailed.
- B. Ceiling Hung Toilet Stalls:
 - 1. Securely anchor hangers of continuous steel channel above pilasters to structure above.
 - 2. Bolt continuous steel angle at wall to masonry or weld to face of each metal stud.
 - 3. Secure brace for steel channels over toilet stall pilasters to wall angle supports with bolts at each end spaced as shown.
 - 4. Install diagonal angle brace where the suspended ceiling over toilet stalls does not extend to side wall of room.
 - 5. Install stud bolts in lower flange of channel before installing furred down ceiling over toilet stalls.
 - 6. Install support for ceiling hung pilasters at entrance screen to toilet room similar to toilet stall pilasters.
- C. Supports for Wall Mounted items:
 - 1. Locate center of support at anchorage point of supported item.
 - 2. Locate support at top and bottom of wall hung cabinets.
 - 3. Locate support at top of floor cabinets and shelving installed against walls.
 - 4. Locate supports where required for items shown.
- D. Supports for Trapeze Bars:
 - 1. Secure plates to overhead construction with fasteners as shown.
 - 2. Secure angle brace assembly to overhead construction with fasteners as shown and bolt plate to braces.

3. Fit modular channel unit flush with finish ceiling, and secure to plate with modular channel unit manufacturer's standard fittings through steel shims or spreaders as shown.
 - a. Install closure plates in channel between eye bolts.
 - b. Install eyebolts in channel.

E. Support for Communion Rail Posts:

1. Anchor steel plate supports for posts as shown.
2. Use four bolts per plate, locate two at top and two at bottom.
3. Use lag bolts.

3.3 DOOR FRAMES

- A. Secure clip angles at bottom of frames to concrete slab with expansion bolts as shown.
- B. Level and plumb frame; brace in position required.
- C. At masonry, set frames in walls so anchors are built-in as the work progresses unless shown otherwise.
- D. Set frames in formwork for frames cast into concrete.
- E. Where frames are set in prepared openings, bolt to wall with spacers and expansion bolts.

3.4 OTHER FRAMES

- A. Set frame flush with surface unless shown otherwise.
- B. Anchor frames at ends and not over 450 mm (18 inches) on centers unless shown otherwise.
- C. Set in formwork before concrete is placed.

3.5 GUARDS

- A. Steel Angle Corner Guards:
 1. Build into masonry as the work progress.
 2. Set into formwork before concrete is placed.
 3. Set angles flush with edge of opening and finish floor or wall or as shown.
 4. At existing construction fasten angle and filler piece to adjoining construction with 16 mm (5/8 inch) diameter by 75 mm (3 inch) long expansion bolts 450 mm (18 inches) on center.
 5. Install Guard Angles at Edges of Trench, Stairwell Openings in Slab and Overhead Doors where shown.
- B. Channel Guard at Top Edge of Concrete Platforms:
 1. Install in formwork before concrete is placed.
 2. Set channel flush with top of the platform.
- C. Wheel Guards:
 1. Set flanges of wheel guard at least 50 mm (2 inches) into pavement.

2. Anchor to walls as shown, expansion bolt if not shown.

3.6 GRATINGS

- A. Set grating flush with finish floor; top of curb, or areaway wall. Set frame so that horizontal leg of angle frame is flush with face of wall except when frame is installed on face of wall.
- B. Set frame in formwork before concrete is placed.
- C. Where grating terminates at a wall bolt frame to concrete or masonry with expansion bolts unless shown otherwise.
- D. Secure removable supporting members in place with stainless steel bolts.
- E. Bolt gratings to supports.

3.7 STEEL LINTELS

- A. Use lintel sizes and combinations shown or specified.
- B. Install lintels with longest leg upstanding, except for openings in 150 mm (6 inch) masonry walls install lintels with longest leg horizontal.
- C. Install lintels to have not less than 150 mm (6 inch) bearing at each end for nonbearing walls, and 200 mm (8 inch) bearing at each end for bearing walls.

3.8 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Anchor shelf angles with 19 mm (3/4 inch) bolts unless shown otherwise in adjustable malleable iron inserts, set level at elevation shown.
- B. Provide expansion space at end of members.

3.9 PLATE DOOR SILL

- A. Install after roofing base flashing and counter flashing work is completed.
- B. Set in sealant and bolt to curb.

3.10 SAFETY NOSINGS

- A. Except as specified and where preformed rubber treads are shown or specified install aluminum safety nosings at the following:
 - 1. Exterior concrete steps.
 - 2. Door sills of areaway entrances curbs.
 - 3. Exposed edges of curbs of door sills at transformer and service rooms.
 - 4. Interior concrete steps, including concrete filled treads of metal stairs of service stairs.
- B. Install flush with horizontal and vertical surfaces.
- C. Install nosing to within 100 mm (4 inches) of ends of concrete stair treads, except where shown to extend full width.
- D. Extend nosings full width of door openings.

- E. Extend nosings, full width between stringers of metal stairs, and terminate at point of curvature of steps having short radius curved ends.

3.11 LADDERS

- A. Anchor ladders to walls and floors with expansion bolts through turned lugs or angle clips or brackets.
- B. In elevator pits, set ladders to clear all elevator equipment where shown on the drawings.
 - 1. Where ladders are interrupted by division beams, anchor ladders to beams by welding, and to floors with expansion bolts.
 - 2. Where ladders are adjacent to division beams, anchor ladders to beams with bent steel plates, and to floor with expansion bolts.
- C. Ladder Rungs:
 - 1. Set ladder rungs into formwork before concrete is placed. // Build ladder rungs into masonry as the work progresses. //
 - 2. Set step portion of rung 150 mm (6 inches) from wall.
 - 3. Space rungs approximately 300 mm (12 inches) on centers.
 - 4. Where only one rung is required, locate it 400 mm (16 inches) above the floor.

3.12 RAILINGS

- A. Steel Posts:
 - 1. Secure fixed posts to concrete with expansion bolts through flanged fittings except where sleeves are shown with pourable grout.
 - 2. Install sleeves in concrete formwork.
 - 3. Set post in sleeve and pour grout to surface. Apply beveled bead of urethane sealant at perimeter of post or under flange fitting as specified in Section SEALANTS AND CAULKING on exterior posts.
 - 4. Secure removable posts to concrete with either machine screws through flanged fittings which are secured to inverted flanges embedded in and set flush with finished floor, or set posts in close fitting pipe sleeves without grout.
 - 5. Secure sliding flanged fittings to posts at base with set screws.
 - 6. Secure fixed flanged fittings to concrete with expansion bolts.
 - 7. Secure posts to steel with welds.
- B. Anchor to Walls:
 - 1. Anchor rails to concrete or solid masonry with machine screws through flanged fitting to steel plate.
 - a. Anchor steel plate to concrete or solid masonry with expansion bolts.

- b. Anchor steel plate to hollow masonry with toggle bolts.
- 2. Anchor flanged fitting with toggle bolt to steel support in frame walls.
- C. Removable Rails:
 - 1. Rest rails in brackets at each end and secure to bracket with stainless steel bolts and nuts where part of a continuous railing.
 - 2. Rest rail posts in sleeves where not part of a continuous railing. Do not grout posts.
- D. Gates:
 - 1. Hang gate to swing as shown.
 - 2. Bolt gate hinges to jamb post with clamp on or through bolts.
- E. Chains:
 - 1. Eye bolt chains to pipe posts.
 - 2. Eye bolt anchoring at walls.
 - a. Expansion bolt to concrete or solid masonry.
 - b. Toggle bolt to hollow masonry of frame wall installed support.
- F. Handrails:
 - 1. Anchor brackets for metal handrails as detailed.
 - 2. Install brackets within 300 mm (12 inches) of return of walls, and at evenly spaced intermediate points not exceeding 1200 mm (4 feet) on centers unless shown otherwise.
 - 3. Expansion bolt to concrete or solid masonry.
 - 4. Toggle bolt to installed supporting frame wall and to hollow masonry unless shown otherwise.

3.13 CATWALK AND PLATFORMS

- A. Expansion bolt members to concrete unless shown otherwise.
- B. Bolt or weld structural components together including ladders and stairs to support system.
- C. Weld railings to structural framing.
- D. Bolt or weld walk surface to structural framing.
- E. Smooth field welds and spot prime damaged prime paint surface.
- F. Fasten removable members with stainless steel fasteners.

3.14 STEEL COMPONENTS FOR MILLWORK ITEMS

Coordinate and deliver to Millwork fabricator for assembly where millwork items are secured to metal fabrications.

3.15 CLEAN AND ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust movable parts including hardware to operate as designed without binding or deformation of the members centered in the opening or frame

and, where applicable, contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping the components.

- B. Clean after installation exposed prefinished and plated items and items fabricated from stainless steel, aluminum and copper alloys, as recommended by the metal manufacture and protected from damage until completion of the project.

3.16 EXPANSION ANCHORS

- A. Install in predrilled holes for the fastening items into concrete.
 - 1. Install expansion bolts according to the manufacturer's instructions as to tools, torque and tightening procedure.
 - 2. Expansion bolt locations and spacing: As shown drawings.
 - 3. Edge distance: Not less than 10 bolt diameters.
 - 4. Install expansion bolts with manufacturer's recommend minimum embedment. Embedment length is exclusive of thickness of floor coverings, grout pads or other overlays.
 - 5. Do not recess expansion bolts more than one-fourth of the nominal bolt diameter. Abandon over drilled holes or partially fill with non-shrink grout and redrill when grout has set.
 - 6. Abandon holes if the axis of a drilled hole deviates more than 5 degrees from normal to the concrete surface.
 - 7. If a concrete reinforcing bar is encountered during drilling, immediately terminate drilling and notify the Resident Engineer. The Resident Engineer may authorize using one of the following procedures.
 - a) If the location may be shifted, fill abandoned hole with non-shrink grout and install expansion bolt with a minimum of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of sound concrete between the expansion bolt and the abandoned hole, or,
 - b) If the location may not be shifted, use a diamond core drill to cut the rebar and drill the hole beyond the reinforcing such that the whole wedge portion of the expansion bolt can be expanded below the bar, or,
 - c) If the location may not be shifted, core an oversize hole at the direction of the Resident Engineer and grout an acceptable anchor in place.
- B. Fasten work tightly to prevent rattle or vibration except where expansion-contraction tolerances are required.

- C. When expansion bolts are installed through metal deck into concrete slab above, do not extend embedment closer than 1-inch to top of concrete. Follow manufacturer's instruction for other requirements.
- D. See drawings for field quality control requirements.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 06100
ROUGH CARPENTRY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

Section specifies wood blocking, furring, nailers.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

A. Cement board sheathing: Section 07481, CEMENT BOARD SHEATING.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings showing framing connection details, fasteners, connections and dimensions.

1.4 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Protect lumber and other products from dampness both during and after delivery at site.
- B. Pile lumber in stacks in such manner as to provide air circulation around surfaces of each piece.
- C. Stack plywood and other board products so as to prevent warping.
- D. Locate stacks on well drained areas, supported at least 150 mm (6 inches) above grade and cover with well ventilated sheds having firmly constructed over hanging roof with sufficient end wall to protect lumber from driving rain.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. American Forest and Paper Association (AFPA):
National Design Specification for Wood Construction
WCD Number 1-01.....Conventional Wood Frame Construction
- C. American Institute of Timber Construction (AITC):
A190.1-92.....Structural Glued Laminated Timber
- D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
B18.2.1A-99.....Square and Hex Bolts and Screws
B18.2.2-87 (R99).....Square and Hex Nuts
B18.6.1-81 (R97).....Wood Screws
B18.6.4-98.....Thread Forming and Thread Cutting Tapping Screws
and Metallic Drive Screws
- E. American Plywood Association (APA):
E30-1996.....Design/Construction Guide - Residential and
Commercial

F. American Society for Testing And Materials (ASTM):

A47-99.....Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
A48-00.....Gray Iron Castings
A653/A653M-00.....Steel Sheet Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dip Process
C954-00.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Board or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 inch (2.24 mm) to 0.112-inch (2.84 mm) in thickness
C1002-01.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases
D143-(R00).....Small Clear Specimens of Timber, Method of Testing
D1760-01.....Pressure Treatment of Timber Products
D2559-00.....Adhesives for Structural Laminated Wood Products for Use Under Exterior (Wet Use) Exposure Conditions
D3498-01.....Adhesives for Field-Gluing Plywood to Lumber Framing for Floor Systems
F844-00.....Washers, Steel, Plain (Flat) Unhardened for General Use
F1667-01.....Nails, Spikes, and Staples

G. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):

MM-L-736C.....Lumber; Hardwood

H. Commercial Item Description (CID):

A-A-55615.....Shield, Expansion (Wood Screw and Lag Bolt Self Threading Anchors)

I. Military Specification (Mil. Spec.):

MIL-L-19140E.....Lumber and Plywood, Fire-Retardant Treated

J. Truss Plate Institute (TPI):

TPI-1 (1995).....Design Specifications for Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses

K. U.S. Department of Commerce Product Standard (PS)

PS 1-95.....Construction and Industrial Plywood
PS 20-70 (R86).....American Softwood Lumber Standard
PS 58-74.....Basic Hardboard

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER:

- A. Unless otherwise specified, each piece of lumber bear grade mark, stamp, or other identifying marks indicating grades of material, and rules or standards under which produced.
 - 1. Identifying marks in accordance with rule or standard under which material is produced, including requirements for qualifications and authority of the inspection organization, usage of authorized identification, and information included in the identification.
 - 2. Inspection agency for lumber approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee, to grade species used.
- B. Structural Members: Species and grade as listed in the AFPA, National Design Specification for Wood Construction having design stresses as shown.
- C. Lumber Other Than Structural:
 - 1. Unless otherwise specified, species graded under the grading rules of an inspection agency approved by Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee.
 - 2. Framing lumber: Minimum extreme fiber stress in bending of 1100.
 - 3. Furring, blocking, nailers and similar items 100 mm (4 inches) and narrower Standard Grade; and, members 150 mm (6 inches) and wider, Number 2 Grade.
- D. Sizes:
 - 1. Conforming to Prod. Std., PS20.
 - 2. Size references are nominal sizes, unless otherwise specified, actual sizes within manufacturing tolerances allowed by standard under which produced.
- E. Moisture Content:
 - 1. At time of delivery and maintained at the site.
 - 2. Boards and lumber 50 mm (2 inches) and less in thickness: 19 percent or less.
 - 3. Lumber over 50 mm (2 inches) thick: 25 percent or less.
- F. Fire Retardant Treatment:
 - 1. Mil Spec. MIL-L-19140 with piece of treated material bearing identification of testing agency and showing performance rating.
 - 2. Treatment and performance inspection, by an independent and qualified testing agency that establishes performance ratings.
- G. Preservative Treatment:
 - 1. Do not treat Heart Redwood and Western Red Cedar.

2. Treat wood members and plywood exposed to weather or in contact with plaster, masonry or concrete, including framing of open roofed structures; sills, sole plates, furring, and sleepers that are less than 600 mm (24 inches) from ground; nailers, edge strips, blocking, crickets, curbs, cant, vent strips and other members used in connection with roofing and flashing materials.
3. Treat other members specified as preservative treated (PT).
4. Preservative treat by the pressure method complying with ASTM D1760, except any process involving the use of Chromated Copper arsenate (CCA) for pressure treating wood is not permitted.

2.2 PLYWOOD

- A. Comply with Prod. Std., PS 1.
- B. Bear the mark of a recognized association or independent inspection agency that maintains continuing control over quality of plywood which identifies compliance by veneer grade, group number, span rating where applicable, and glue type.
- C. Sheathing:
 1. APA rated Exposure 1 or Exterior; panel grade CD or better.
 2. Wall sheathing:
 - a. Minimum 9 mm (11/32 inch) thick with supports 400 mm (16 inches) on center and 12 mm (15/32 inch) thick with supports 600 mm (24 inches) on center unless specified otherwise.
 - b. Minimum 1200 mm (48 inches) wide at corners without corner bracing of framing.

2.3 STRUCTURAL-USE PANELS

- A. Comply with APA.
- B. Bearing the mark of a recognized association or independent agency that maintains continuing control over quality of panel which identifies compliance by end use, Span Rating, and exposure durability classification.
 2. Under resilient floor or carpet.
 - a. APA rated combination subfloor-underlayment grade panels, durability classification of Exposure 1 or Exterior T and G.
 - b. Span Rating of 16 or greater for supports 300 mm (16 inches) on center and 24 or greater for supports 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
- C. Underlayment:
 1. APA rated Exposure 1.
 2. Minimum 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick or greater over subfloor.

D. Wood "I" Beam Members:

1. Size and Shape as shown.
2. Cambered and marked "Top up".
3. Plywood webs: PS-1, minimum 9 mm (3/8 inch) thick, unless shown otherwise.
4. Flanges: Kiln dried stress rated dense lumber minimum 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) thick, width as shown.
5. Plywood web fitted into flanges and joined with ASTM D2559 adhesive to form "I" beam section unless shown otherwise.

G. Laminated Veneer Lumber (LVL):

1. Bonded jointed wood veneers with ASTM D2559 adhesive.
2. Scarf jointed wood veneers with grain of wood parallel.
3. Size as shown.

2.4 ROUGH HARDWARE AND ADHESIVES:

A. Anchor Bolts:

1. ASME B18.2.1 and ANSI B18.2.2 galvanized, 13 mm (1/2 inch) unless shown otherwise.
2. Extend at least 200 mm (8 inches) into masonry or concrete with ends bent 50 mm (2 inches).

B. Miscellaneous Bolts: Expansion Bolts: C1D, A-A-55615; lag bolt, long enough to extend at least 65 mm (2-1/2 inches) into masonry or concrete. Use 13 mm (1/2 inch) bolt unless shown otherwise.

C. Washers

1. ASTM F844.
2. Use zinc or cadmium coated steel or cast iron for washers exposed to weather.

D. Screws:

1. Wood to Wood: ANSI B18.6.1 or ASTM C1002.
2. Wood to Steel: ASTM C954, or ASTM C1002.

E. Nails:

1. Size and type best suited for purpose unless noted otherwise. Use aluminum-alloy nails, plated nails, or zinc-coated nails, for nailing wood work exposed to weather and on roof blocking.
2. ASTM F1667:
 - a. Common: Type I, Style 10.
 - b. Concrete: Type I, Style 11.
 - c. Barbed: Type I, Style 26.
 - d. Underlayment: Type I, Style 25.
 - e. Masonry: Type I, Style 27.

- f. Use special nails designed for use with ties, strap anchors, framing connectors, joists hangers, and similar items. Nails not less than 32 mm (1-1/4 inches) long, 8d and deformed or annular ring shank.
- 2. Framing Angles: Angle designed with bendable legs to provide three way anchors.
- 3. Straps:
 - a. Designed to provide wind and seismic ties with sizes as shown or specified.
 - b. Strap ties not less than 32 mm (1-1/4 inches) wide.
 - c. Punched for fastener.
- 4. Joint Plates:
 - a. Steel plate punched for nails.
 - b. Steel plates formed with teeth or prongs for mechanically clamping plates to wood.
 - c. Size for axial eccentricity, and fastener loads.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF FRAMING AND MISCELLANEOUS WOOD MEMBERS:

- A. Conform to applicable requirements of the following:
 - 1. APA for installation of plywood panels.
 - 2. ASTM F 499 for wood underlayment.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Nails.
 - a. Nail in accordance with the Recommended Nailing Schedule as specified in AFPA Manual for House Framing where detailed nailing requirements are not specified in nailing schedule. Select nail size and nail spacing sufficient to develop adequate strength for the connection without splitting the members.
 - b. Use special nails with framing connectors.
 - c. For sheathing and subflooring, select length of nails sufficient to extend 25 mm (1 inch) into supports.
 - d. Use eight penny or larger nails for nailing through 25 mm (1 inch) thick lumber and for toe nailing 50 mm (2 inch) thick lumber.
 - e. Use 16 penny or larger nails for nailing through 50 mm (2 inch) thick lumber.
 - f. Select the size and number of nails in accordance with the Nailing Schedule except for special nails with framing anchors.
 - g. Nailing Schedule; Using Common Nails:
 - 1) Subflooring:

- a) 150 mm (6 inch) wide or less to each joist face nail two-8d.
 - b) Subflooring, more than 150 mm (6 inches) wide, to each stud or joint, face nail three-8d.
2. Bolts:
- a. Fit bolt heads and nuts bearing on wood with washers.
 - b. Countersink bolt heads flush with the surface of nailers.
 - c. Embed in concrete and solid masonry or use expansion bolts.
Special bolts or screws designed for anchor to solid masonry or concrete in drilled holes may be used.
 - d. Use toggle bolts to hollow masonry or sheet metal.
 - e. Use bolts to steel over 2.84 mm (0.112 inch, 11 gage) in thickness. Secure wood nailers to vertical structural steel members with bolts, placed one at ends of nailer and 600 mm (24 inch) intervals between end bolts. Use clips to beam flanges.
3. Drill Screws to steel less than 2.84 mm (0.112 inch) thick.
- a. ASTM C1002 for steel less than 0.84 mm (0.033 inch) thick.
 - b. ASTM C 954 for steel over 0.84 mm (0.033 inch) thick.
4. Power actuated drive pins may be used where practical to anchor to solid masonry, concrete, or steel.
5. Do not anchor to wood plugs or nailing blocks in masonry or concrete. Use metal plugs, inserts or similar fastening.
6. Screws to Join Wood:
- a. Where shown or option to nails.
 - b. ASTM C1002, sized to provide not less than 25 mm (1 inch) penetration into anchorage member.
 - c. Spaced same as nails.
- C. Set sills or plates level in full bed of mortar on masonry or concrete walls.
- 1. Space anchor bolts 1200 mm (4 feet) on centers between ends and within 150 mm (6 inches) of end. Stagger bolts from side to side on plates over 175 mm (7 inches) in width.
 - 2. Use shims of slate, tile or similar approved material to level wood members resting on concrete or masonry. Do not use wood shims or wedges.
 - 3. Closely fit, and set to required lines.
- D. Blocking Nailers, and Furring:
- 1. Install furring, blocking, nailers, and grounds where shown.
 - 2. Use longest lengths practicable.
 - 3. Use fire retardant treated wood blocking where shown at openings and where shown or specified.

4. Layers of Blocking or Plates:
 - a. Stagger end joints between upper and lower pieces.
 - b. Nail at ends and not over 600 mm (24 inches) between ends.
 - c. Stagger nails from side to side of wood member over 125 mm (5 inches) in width.
5. Fabricate roof edge vent strips with 6 mm by 6 mm (1/4 inch by 1/4 inch) notches, 100 mm (4 inches) on center, aligned to allow for venting and venting base sheet. Option: Texture 1-11 plywood with parallel grooves 100 mm (4 inches) o.c. may be used.
6. Unless otherwise shown, use wall furring 25 mm by 75 mm (1 inch by 3 inch) continuous wood strips installed plumb on walls, using wood shims where necessary so face of furring forms a true, even plane. Space furring not over 400 mm (16 inches) on centers, butt joints over bearings and rigidly secure in place. Anchor furring on 400 mm (16 inches) centers.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07113
MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET WATERPROOFING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies modified bituminous sheet material used for exterior below grade waterproofing and split slab waterproofing.

1.2 MANUFACTURERS QUALIFICATIONS:

- A. Approval by Contracting Officer is required of products and services of proposed manufacturers, and installers, and will be based upon submission by Contractor that:
 - 1. Manufacturer regularly and presently manufactures bituminous sheet waterproofing as one of its principal products.
 - 2. Installer has technical qualifications, experience, trained personnel and facilities to install specified items.
 - 3. Manufacturer's product submitted has been in satisfactory and efficient operation on three similar installations for at least three years.
 - 4. Submit list of installations, include name and location of project and name of owner.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Bituminous sheet.
 - 2. Primer.
 - 3. Mastic.
 - 4. Protection material, temporary and permanent.
 - 5. Printed installation instructions for conditions specified.
- C. Certificates:
 - 1. Indicating bituminous sheet manufacturer's approval of primer, and roof cement.
 - 2. Indicating bituminous sheet waterproofing manufacturer's qualifications as specified.
 - 3. Approval of installer by bituminous sheet manufacturers.
 - 4. Water test report.

1.4 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Deliver materials to job in manufacturer's original unopened container.
- B. Do not store material in areas where temperature is lower than 10 degrees C (50 degrees F,) or where prolonged temperature is above 32 degrees C (90 degrees F).

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS:

Ambient Surface and Material Temperature: Not less than 4 degrees C (40 degrees F), during application of waterproofing.

1.6 WARRANTY:

Warrant bituminous sheet waterproofing installation against moisture leaks and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction" Article in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, except that warranty period is two years.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced by basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
UU-B-790A.....Building Paper, Vegetable Fiber: (Kraft, Water-INT AMD 1 Proof, Water Repellent and Fire Resistant)
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
C578-01.....Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
D41-94 (R2000).....Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing
D2822-91 (R1997).....Asphalt Roof Cement
D6380-02.....Asphalt Roll Roofing (Organic Felt)
- D. American Hardboard Association (AMA):
A135.4-1995.....Basic Hardboard

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BITUMINOUS SHEET:

- A. Cold applied waterproofing membrane composed primarily of modified bituminous material prefabricated in sheet form designed for below grade exterior and split slab waterproofing. Sheet reinforced with fibers at manufacturer's option.
- B. Thickness of Bituminous Sheet: 1.5 mm (60 mils), plus or minus 0.13 mm (5 mils), and bonded to a 0.1 mm (4 mil) thick plastic sheet.
- C. Provide with a release sheet to prevent bonding of bituminous sheet to itself.

2.2 PRIMER AND ROOF CEMENT:

- A. Furnished by manufacturer of bituminous sheet as required for particular application in accordance with sheet manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Primer: ASTM D41.
- C. Roof Cement: ASTM D4586.

2.3 PROTECTION MATERIAL:

- A. Polystyrene: ASTM C578, Type I or VIII, 13 mm (1/2-inch) minimum thickness.
- B. Hardboard: PS-58, Service Type, 6 mm (1/4-inch) thick.

2.4 PATCHING COMPOUND:

A factory prepared, non-shrinking, fast setting, cementitious adhesive compound containing no ferrous metal or oxide.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION:

- A. Surface Condition:
 - 1. Before applying waterproofing materials, ensure concrete and masonry surfaces are fully cured, smooth, clean, dry, and free from high spots, depressions, loose and foreign particles and other deterrents to adhesion.
 - 2. Fill voids, joints, and cracks with patching compound.
- B. Concrete surfaces cured a minimum of seven days, free from release agents, concrete curing agents, and other contaminants.

3.2 APPLICATION:

- A. Priming:
 - 1. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces.
 - 2. Application method, amount of primer and condition or primer before installation of bituminous sheet as recommended by primer manufacturer.
 - 3. Reprime when required in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Bituminous Sheet Installation:
 - 1. Remove release sheet prior to application.
 - 2. Lay bituminous sheet from low point to high point so that laps shed water.
 - 3. Treat expansion, construction and control joints and evident working cracks as expansion joints. Apply bituminous sheet in double thickness over joint by first applying a strip of bituminous sheet not less than 200 mm (8 inches) wide, centered over joint.
 - 4. Lap seams not less than 50 mm (2 inches).
 - 5. Lay succeeding sheet with laps, and roll or press into place.
 - 6. Repair misaligned or inadequately lapped seams in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 7. Seal seams and terminations in accordance with sheet manufacturer's instructions.

C. Corner Treatment:

1. At inside and outside corners apply double cover using an initial strip not less than 280 mm (11 inches) wide, centered along axis of corner.
2. Cover each strip completely by the regular application of bituminous sheet.
3. Provide a fillet or cant on inside corners.
4. Form cants using patching compound
5. Do not use wood, fiber, and insulating materials for cants.

D. Projection Treatment:

1. Apply a double layer of bituminous sheet around pipes and similar projections at least 150 mm (6 inches) wide.
2. At drains, apply a bead of roof cement over a double layer of bituminous sheet under clamping rings.

3.3 PROTECTION:

- A. Protect bituminous sheet before backfill or wearing courses are placed.
- B. Install protection material and hold in place in accordance with instructions of manufacturer of waterproofing materials.

C. Permanent Protection:

1. Vertical Surfaces:

- a. Install hardboard, polystyrene, or roll roofing protection material.
- b. Extend protection full height from footing to top of backfill.
- c. If graded backfill is used, use roll roofing or hardboard.

D. Horizontal Surfaces:

1. Install roll roofing protection under concrete wearing courses.
2. Install roll roofing, hardboard, or polystyrene under earth backfill.
3. Where no concrete wearing course occurs or when surfaces will bear heavy traffic and will not immediately be covered with a wearing course, use protection specified for vertical surfaces.

E. Temporary Protection:

When waterproofing materials are subjected to damage by sunlight and can not be immediately protected as specified, protect waterproofing materials by waterproof building paper or suitable coating approved by manufacturer of waterproofing system used.

- F. Coordinate waterproofing and protection board installation with foundation drain tile and drainage matts. Refer to section 0241.

3.4 PATCHING:

Repair tears, punctures, air blisters, and inadequately lapped seams, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before protection course is applied.

3.5 TESTING:

- A. Before any protection or wearing course is applied, test all horizontal applications of waterproofing with a minimum of 25 mm (1-inch) head of water above highest point and leave for 24 hours.
- B. Mark leaks and repair when waterproofing is dry.
- C. Certify, to Resident Engineer, that water tests have been made and that areas tested were found watertight.

3.6 INSPECTION:

Do not cover waterproofed surfaces by other materials or backfill until work is approved by Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07210
BUILDING INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

- A. This section specifies thermal and acoustical insulation for buildings.
- B. Acoustical insulation is identified by thickness and words "Acoustical Insulation".

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Insulation for insulated wall panels: Section 07410, PREFORMED WALL AND ROOF PANELS.
- B. Insulation in connection with roofing and waterproofing: Section 07220, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Insulation, each type used
 - 2. Adhesive, each type used.
 - 3. Tape
- C. Certificates: Stating the type, thickness and "R" value (thermal resistance) of the insulation to be installed.

1.4 STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Store insulation materials in weathertight enclosure.
- B. Protect insulation from damage from handling, weather and construction operations before, during, and after installation.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - C270-03.....Mortar for Unit Masonry
 - C516-02.....Vermiculite Loose Fill Thermal Insulation
 - C549-02.....Perlite Loose Fill Insulation
 - C552-2000.....Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation.
 - C553-02.....Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for
Commercial and Industrial Applications
 - C578-01.....Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
 - C591-01.....Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocynurate
Thermal Insulation
 - C612-00.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation

C665-01.....Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for
Light Frame Construction and Manufactured
Housing

C728-97.....Perlite Thermal Insulation Board

C954-00.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum
Panel Products or Metal Plaster Base to Steel
Studs From 0.033 (0.84 mm) inch to 0.112 inch
(2.84 mm) in thickness

C1002-01.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the
Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal
Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs

D312-00.....Asphalt Used in Roofing

E84-03.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

F1667-02.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION - GENERAL:

- A. Where thermal resistance ("R" value) is specified or shown for insulation, the thickness shown on the drawings is nominal. Use only insulation with actual thickness that is not less than that required to provide the thermal resistance specified.
- B. Where "R" value is not specified for insulation, use the thickness shown on the drawings.
- C. Where more than one type of insulation is specified, the type of insulation for each use is optional, except use only one type of insulation in any particular area.
- D. Insulation Products shall comply with following minimum content standards for recovered materials:

Material Type	Percent by Weight
Rigid foam	9 percent recovered material
Foam-in-place	5 percent recovered material
Glass fiber reinforced	6 percent recovered material
Phenolic rigid foam	5 percent recovered material
Rock wool material	75 percent recovered material

The minimum-content standards are based on the weight (not the volume) of the material in the insulating core only.

2.2 MASONRY CAVITY WALL INSULATION:

- A. Polystyrene Board: ASTM C578, Type X. (R-Value = 5 per inch - see drawings)
- B. Perlite Board: ASTM C728. (R-Value = .41 per inch - see drawings)

2.3 PERIMETER INSULATION IN CONTACT WITH SOIL:

- A. Polystyrene Board: ASTM C578, Type IV, V, VI, VII, or IX where covered by soil or concrete.

2.4 ACOUSTICAL INSULATION:

- A. Mineral Fiber boards: ASTM C553, Type II, flexible, or Type III, semirigid (4.5 pound nominal density).
- B. Mineral Fiber Batt or Blankets: ASTM C665. Maximum flame spread of 25 and smoke development of 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Thickness as shown; of widths and lengths to fit tight against framing.

2.5 SOUND DEADENING BOARD:

- A. Mineral Fiber Board: ASTM C612, Type IB, 13 mm (1/2 inch thick).
- B. Perlite Board: ASTM C728, 13 mm (1/2 inch thick).

2.6 RIGID INSULATION:

- A. On the inside face of exterior walls, spandrel beams, floors, bottom of slabs, and where shown.
- B. Mineral Fiber Board: ASTM C612, Type IB or 2.
- C. Perlite Board: ASTM C728.

2.7 MASONRY FILL INSULATION:

- A. Vermiculite Insulation: ASTM C516, Type II.
- B. Perlite Insulation: ASTM C549, Type IV.

2.8 FASTENERS:

- A. Staples or Nails: ASTM F1667, zinc-coated, size and type best suited for purpose.
- B. Screws: ASTM C954 or C1002, size and length best suited for purpose with washer not less than 50 mm (two inches) in diameter.
- C. Impaling Pins: Steel pins with head not less than 50 mm (two inches) in diameter with adhesive for anchorage to substrate. Provide impaling pins of length to extend beyond insulation and retain cap washer when washer is placed on the pin.

2.9 ADHESIVE:

- A. As recommended by the manufacturer of the insulation.
- B. Asphalt: ASTM D312, Type III or IV.
- C. Mortar: ASTM C270, Type 0.

2.10 TAPE:

- A. Pressure sensitive adhesive on one face.

- B. Perm rating of not more than 0.50.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install insulation with the vapor barrier facing the heated side, unless specified otherwise.
- B. Install rigid insulating units with joints close and flush, in regular courses and with cross joints broken.
- C. Install batt or blanket insulation with tight joints and filling framing void completely. Seal cuts, tears, and unlapped joints with tape.
- D. Fit insulation tight against adjoining construction and penetrations, unless specified otherwise.

3.2 MASONRY CAVITY WALLS:

- A. Mount insulation on exterior faces of inner wythes of masonry cavity walls and brick faced concrete walls. Fill joints with same material used for bonding.
- B. Bond polystyrene board to surfaces with adhesive or Portland cement mortar mixed and applied in accordance with recommendations of insulation manufacturer.
- C. Bond mineral fiberboard, polyurethane or polyisocyanurate board, and perlite board to surfaces with adhesive as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- D. Bond cellular glass insulation to surfaces with hot asphalt or adhesive cement.

3.3 PERIMETER INSULATION:

- A. Vertical insulation:
 - 1. Fill joints of insulation with same material used for bonding.
 - 2. Bond polystyrene board to surfaces with adhesive or Portland cement mortar mixed and applied in accordance with recommendations of insulation manufacturer.
 - 3. Bond cellular glass insulation to surfaces with hot asphalt or adhesive cement.
- B. Horizontal insulation under concrete floor slab:
 - 1. Lay insulation boards and blocks horizontally on level, compacted and drained fill.
 - 2. Extend insulation from foundation walls towards center of building not less than 600 mm (24 inches) or as shown.

3.4 RIGID INSULATION ON SURFACE OF EXTERIOR WALLS, FLOORS, AND UNDERSIDE OF FLOORS:

- A. On the interior face of solid masonry and concrete walls, beams, beam soffits, underside of floors, and to the face of studs for interior wall finish where shown.
- B. Bond to solid vertical surfaces with adhesive as recommended by insulation manufacturer. Fill joints with adhesive cement.
- C. Use impaling pins for attachment to underside of horizontal surfaces. Space fastenings as required to hold insulation in place and prevent sagging.
- D. Fasten board insulation to face of studs with screws, nails or staples. Space fastenings not more than 300 mm (12 inches) apart. Stagger fasteners at joints of boards. Install at each corner.
- E. Floor insulation:
 - 1. Bond insulation to concrete floors in attic by coating surfaces with hot steep asphalt applied at rate of not less than 11.5 Kg per m² (25 lbs/100 sq. ft.), and firmly bed insulation therein.
 - 2. When applied in more than one layer, bed succeeding layers in hot steep asphalt applied at the rate of not less than 11.5 Kg per m² per m² lbs/100 sq. ft.).
 - 3. Contractors option: Insulation may be installed with nonflammable adhesive in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions when a separate vapor retarder is used.

3.5 MASONRY FILL INSULATION:

- A. Pour fill insulation in cavity voids of masonry units from tops of walls, or from sill where windows or other openings occur.
- B. Pour in lifts of not more than 6 m (20 feet).

3.6 ACOUSTICAL INSULATION:

- A. Fasten blanket insulation between metal studs and wall furring with continuous pressure sensitive tape along edges or adhesive.
- B. Pack insulation around door frames and windows and in cracks, expansion joints, control joints, door soffits and other voids. Pack behind outlets, around pipes, ducts, and services encased in wall or partition. Hold insulation in place with pressure sensitive tape or adhesive.
- C. Do not compress insulation below required thickness except where embedded items prevent required thickness.
- D. Where acoustical insulation is installed above suspended ceilings install blanket at right angles to the main runners or framing. Extend insulation over wall insulation systems not extending to structure above.

- E. Where semirigid insulation is used which is not full thickness of cavity, adhere to one side of cavity maintaining continuity of insulation and covering penetrations or embedments in insulation.
- F. Where sound deadening board is shown, secure with adhesive to masonry or concrete walls and with screws to metal or wood framing. Secure sufficiently in place until subsequent cover is installed. Seal all cracks with caulking.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07220
ROOF AND DECK INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Installation of roof and deck insulation, and vapor retarder on new construction ready to receive roofing or waterproof membrane.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Wood blocking and edge strips.
- B. Perimeter, rigid, and batt or blanket insulation: Section 07210, BUILDING INSULATION.
- C. Sheet metal components: Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Supervision of work by persons that are knowledgeable and experienced in roofing. See submittals for documentation of supervisor's qualification.
- B. Unless specified otherwise, comply with the recommendations of the NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" applicable to insulation for storage, handling, and application.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Asphalt materials, each type
 - 2. Roofing cement, each type
 - 3. Roof insulation, each type
 - 4. Fastening requirements
 - 5. Insulation span data for flutes of metal decks
- C. Samples:
 - 1. Roof insulation, each type
 - 2. Nails and fasteners, each type
- D. Certificates:
 - 1. Indicating type, thickness and thermal conductance of insulation. (Average thickness for tapered insulation).
 - 2. Indicating materials and method of application of insulation system on metal decks meet the requirements of Factory Mutual Research Corporation for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs.
- E. Laboratory Test Reports: Thermal values of insulation products.
- F. Layout of tapered roof system showing units required.
- G. Documentation of supervisors training and experience showing knowledge of roofing procedures.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND MARKING

- A. Deliver materials to the site in original sealed packages or containers marked with the name and brand, or trademark of the manufacturer or seller.
- B. Keep materials dry, and store in dry, weathertight facilities or under canvas tarps. Use of polyethylene or plastic tarps to cover materials is not permitted. Store above ground or deck level on wood pallets. Cover ground under stored materials with plastic tarp.
 - 1. Store rolled materials (felts, base sheets, paper) on end. Do not store materials on top of rolled material.
 - 2. Store foam insulation away from areas where welding is being performed and where contact with open flames is possible.
- C. Protect from damage from handling, weather and construction operations before, during, and after installation.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
 - UU-B-790A.....Building Paper, Vegetable Fiber: (Kraft, Waterproofed, Water Repellent and Fire Resistant)
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - C208-95 (R2001).....Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
 - C209-98.....Test Methods for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
 - C552-03.....Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
 - C726-00.....Mineral Fiber Roof Insulation Board
 - C728-97.....Perlite Thermal Insulation Board
 - C1289-03.....Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocynurate Thermal Insulation Board
 - D41-94 (R2000).....Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing, and Waterproofing
 - D312-00.....Asphalt Used in Roofing
 - D2178-97.....Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
 - D2822-91 (R-1997).....Asphalt Roof Cement
 - F1667-03.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples
- D. Factory Mutual Global (FM):

1-28.....Winds Loads to Roof Systems and Roof Deck

Securement

P7825-04.....Approval Guide

E. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA):

The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual - Fourth Edition.

F. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

Fire Resistance Directory (2003)

G. U.S. Department of Commerce (NBS):

PS 1-83.....Construction and Industrial Plywood

H. National Particleboard Association (NPA):

A208.1-93.....Mat-Formed Wood Particleboard

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Roof insulation on combustible or steel decks shall have a flame spread rating not greater than 75 and a smoke developed rating not greater than 150, exclusive of covering, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84. Insulation bearing the UL label and listed in the UL Building Materials Directory as meeting the flame spread and smoke developed ratings will be accepted in-lieu-of copies of test reports. Compliance with flame spread and smoke developed ratings will not be required when insulation has been tested as part of a roof construction assembly of the type used for this project and the construction is listed as fire-classified in the UL Building Materials Directory or listed as Class I roof deck construction in the FM P7825. Insulation tested as part of a roof construction assembly shall bear UL or FM labels attesting to the ratings specified herein.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.2 INSULATION

A. Cellular Glass: ASTM C552, Type IV, roof board

Roof Board:

1. Dens-Deck Prime, 1/4 inch thick, glass-mat faced, water-resistant gypsum substrate board complying with ASTM C1177 as manufactured by Georgia Pacific Corporation, USG, or ATLAS Roofing Corporation.

B. Isocyanurate Board: ASTM C1289, Type I, Class 2 or Type III.

Roof Insulation:

1. Insulation: ASTM C1013 polyisocyanurate insulation complying with the following:
 - a. Thickness: Insulation board shall have a minimum thickness as required to achieve R-30, but less than 5 inches.
2. Tapered Roof Insulation: Expanded perlite, ASTM C728. Provide

preformed crickets and tapered edge strips fabricated to slopes indicated or as required for sloping to drain.

3. Fasteners: FM approved acceptable to Insulation and Roofing Membrane Manufacturer, meeting corrosion resistance provisions of FM 4470.
4. The Contractor shall be responsible for verifying the compatibility of the insulation with the proposed roofing materials and manufacturer. Compatibility shall include, but not be limited to, warranty, fire rating, fastening and detailing.

C. Tapered Roof Insulation System Segments:

1. Fabricate of mineral fiberboard, isocyanurate, perlite board, or cellular glass. Use only insulation material for tapered sections.
2. Cut to provide high and low points with crickets and slopes as shown.
3. Minimum thickness of tapered sections; 13mm (1/2 inch), unless manufacturers allow taper to zero mm (inch).

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Building Paper (Sheathing Paper):

1. Fed. Spec. UU-B-790, Type I, Barrier paper, Grade D, Water - Vapor permeable, Style 1a, Uncreped, not reinforced; or, Style 1b, Uncreped, not reinforced, red rosin sized.
2. Weighing approximately 3 kg/10 m² (six pounds per 100 square feet).

B. Tapered Edge Strips:

1. Tapered 1:12 (one inch per foot), from 0 mm (0 inches), 300 mm to 450 mm (12 inches to 18 inches) wide.
2. Cellulosic Fiberboard: ASTM C208.
3. Mineral Fiberboard: ASTM C726.
4. Perlite Board: ASTM C728.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. Staples and Nails: ASTM F1667. Type as designated for item anchored and for substrate.

B. Nails for securing base sheets, and first ply of vapor retarder, to wood nailers and deck:

1. Type I, Style 20, zinc coated steel roofing nails with minimum head diameter of 10 mm (3/8 inch) through metal discs at least 25 mm (one inch) across; or,
2. One piece nails with an integral flat cap at least 24 mm (15/16 inch) across.

- C. Nails for securing building paper and dry felt edge strips to wood nailer and decks:
1. Type I, Style 20, zinc coated steel roofing nails, 16 mm (5/8 inch) minimum head diameter.
 2. Type IV, staples, Style 3, flat top crown, zinc coated may be used.
- D. Nails into plywood: Annular thread type of length to provide at least 19 mm (3/4 inch) penetration.
- E. Nails for securing venting base sheet to insulating concrete:
1. Self-clinching type of galvanized steel having an integral flat cap at least 25 mm (one inch) across.
 2. Nails shall have a holding power of not less than 27 kg (60 pounds) when pulled from 11.7 kg (25.8 pounds) density insulating concrete.
- F. Fasteners for securing insulation to steel decks:
1. Conform to requirements of Factory Mutual Research Corporation for wind uplift.
 2. Self-drilling galvanized screws with 50 mm (two inch) diameter disk.
 3. Antibackout thread design.
 4. Have a pullout resistance of 14 kg (30 pounds) minimum.

2.5 RECOVERED MATERIALS

- A. Comply with following minimum content standards for recovered materials:

Material Type	Percent by Weight
Perlite composite board	23 percent post consumer recovered paper
Plastic rigid foams: Polyisocyanurate/polyurethane	
Rigid foam	9 percent recovered material
Foam-in-place	5 percent recovered material
Glass fiber reinforced	6 percent recovered material
Rock wool material	75 percent recovered material

- B. The minimum-content standards are based on the weight (not the volume) of the material in the insulating core only.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Do not apply roof insulation if deck will be used for subsequent work platform, storage of materials, or staging or scaffolding will be erected thereon.
- B. Entire roof deck construction of any section of the building shall be completed before insulation system work is begun. Curbs, blocking, edge strips, and other components which insulation, roofing and base flashing

is attached to shall be in place ready to receive insulation and roofing. Coordinate roof insulation operations with roofing and sheet metal work so that insulation is installed to permit continuous roofing operations.

- C. Insulation system materials shall be dry and damage free when applied. Do not use broken insulation or insulation with damaged facings. Remove damaged insulation from the site immediately.
- D. Dry out surfaces , including the flutes of metal deck, that become wet from any cause during progress of the work before roofing work is resumed. Apply materials only to dry substrates.
- E. Except for temporary protection specified, do not apply materials during damp or rainy weather, during excessive wind conditions, nor while moisture (dew, fog, snow, ice) or frost is present in any amount in or on the materials when temperature is below 10 °C (50 °F). Do not apply materials to substrate having temperature of 10 °C (50 °F) or less.
- F. Phased construction is not permitted. The complete installation of all flashing, insulation, and roofing shall be completed in the same day except for the area where temporary protection is required when work is stopped.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Sweep decks to broom clean condition. Remove all dust, dirt or debris.
- B. Remove projections that might damage materials.
- C. Concrete Decks, Except Insulating Concrete:
 - 1. Test concrete decks for moisture prior to application of materials. Heat bitumen as specified and pour approximately 0.5 liters (one pint) of bitumen on surface to which roofing materials are to be applied. If bitumen foams upon contact with the deck or after bitumen has cooled and bitumen is stripped clean from deck leaving no residue, the deck is not dry enough for application of prime coat and subsequent work.
 - 2. Prime concrete decks, including precast unit, with primer and allow to dry before application of bitumen. Keep primer back 100 mm (four inches) from joints in precast unit.
- D. Insulating Concrete:
 - 1. Allow to dry out for at least five days after installation before the placement of subsequent materials or insulation.
 - 2. If rain occurs during or at end of drying period or during installation, allow additional drying time before continuing the placement of the subsequent materials or insulation.

3.3 VAPOR RETARDER

A. General:

1. Install a continuous vapor retarder on roof decks as specified.
Install a vapor retarder when phenolic insulation is used.
2. At vertical surfaces, turn up vapor retarder to top of insulation or base flashing.
3. At all pipes, walls, and similar penetrations through vapor retarder, seal openings with roof cement to prevent moisture entry from below.
4. Mop felts solidly in place as specified.
5. Seal penetrations with roof cement.

B. Cast in Place Concrete Decks, Except Insulating Concrete:

1. Prime deck as specified.
2. Apply two plies of asphalt saturated felt mopped down to deck.

C. Steel Deck:

1. Material and method of application of roofing systems used on metal decks shall meet the requirements of Underwriters Laboratories for Class A or Factory Mutual Research Corporation for Class I-60 or I-90, Insulated Steel Roof Deck.
2. Mechanically anchor a 25 mm (one inch) thick layer of mineral fiber board, cellular glass, or perlite board to meet the requirements of Factory Mutual Research Corporation for Class 1-90 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs.
3. Locate the long dimension edge joints to have solid bearing on top of decking ribs; do not cantilever over rib openings or flutes.

3.4 SELECTION OF RIGID INSULATION

A. Insulation Type:

1. Use cellular glass, mineral fiberboard, perlite board, phenolic board, isocyanurate board, or urethane board or a combination thereof.
2. Use not less than two layers of insulation unless specified otherwise.
3. Use either 25 mm (one inch) thick mineral fiberboard, cellular glass, or perlite board as first layer over steel decks. Do not use phenolic, isocyanurate, or urethane board type insulation directly on steel roof decks.
4. Use either 13 mm (1/2 inch) thick perlite board or mineral fiber board as a top layer over urethane board or isocyanurate board. Composite board is acceptable.
5. Where tapered insulation is used, all insulation shall be factory tapered, except perlite board may be field tapered.

6. Use same insulation as existing for roof repair and alterations unless specified otherwise.

B. Insulation Thickness:

1. Thickness of roof insulation shown on drawings is nominal. Actual thickness shall provide the thermal resistance "R" value of not less than 30 for total roof assembly. (average thickness where tapered insulation is used) .
2. The minimum thickness of insulation for metal decks shall not be less than recommended by the insulation manufacturer to span the rib opening (flute size) of the metal deck used.
3. When thickness of insulation to be used is more or less than that shown on the drawings, make adjustments in the alignment and location of roof drains, flashing, gravel stops, fascias and similar items at no additional cost to the Government.
4. Where tapered insulation is used, the thickness of the insulation at high points and roof edges shall be as shown on the drawings; the thickness at the low point (drains) shall be not less than 38 mm (1-1/2 inches).
5. Use not less than two layers of insulation when insulation is 25 mm (one inch) or more in thickness unless specified otherwise.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Lay insulating units with close joints, in regular courses and with cross joints broken. When laid in more than one layer, break joints of succeeding layers of roof insulation with those in preceding layer. Bed insulation layers in Type III or IV asphalt firmly pressed into the hot bitumen. Keep bitumen below surface of insulation to receive single ply rubber roofing.
- B. Lay units with long dimension perpendicular to the rolled (longitudinal) direction of the roofing felt.
- C. Cover all insulation installed on the same day by either:
 1. The roofing membrane as specified.
 2. Temporary protection as specified.
- D. Seal all cut edges at penetrations and at edges against blocking with bitumen or roof cement.
- E. Cut to fit tight against blocking or penetrations.
- F. Over Vapor Retarder, or Concrete Deck: Lay insulation in hot bitumen as specified.
- G. Over Precast Concrete Unit Decks: Lay insulation in hot bitumen keeping bitumen back 100 mm (four inches) from joints in precast concrete units.
- H. Steel Deck:

1. Material and method of application of insulation systems used on metal decks shall meet the requirements of Underwriters laboratories for Class A or Factory Mutual Research Corporation for Class I Insulated Steel Roof Deck.
2. Mechanically anchor first layer of insulation to steel deck to conform to FM Class 1-90 , Insulated Steel Roof Deck.
3. Locate the long dimension edge joints to have solid bearing on top of deck ribs; do not cantilever over deck rib openings or flutes.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07410
PREFORMED WALL PANELS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies uninsulated metal wall as shown.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Sealant: Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- B. Color and texture of finish: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULE.

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS

Metal wall panels shall be products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the fabrication and erection of metal panels of the type and design shown and specified.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Samples: Metal panel, 150 mm (six inch) square, showing finish, each color and texture.
- C. Shop Drawings: Wall and roof panels, showing details of construction and installation. Collateral steel framing, U value, thickness and kind of material, closures, flashing, fastenings and related components and accessories.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Wall panels

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extend referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A36/A36M-04..... Structural Steel
 - A653/A653M-04..... Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized), or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
 - A463-02..... Steel Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Aluminum-Coated, by the Hot-Dip Process
 - A924/A924M-04..... Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
 - A1008/A1008M-04..... Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High Strength Low Alloy
 - B209/209M-04..... Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

C442-04	Gypsum Backing Board, Gypsum Coreboard, and Gypsum Shaftliner Board
C553-02	Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
C591-01	Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
C612-04	Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
E119-00	Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials

C. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
AMP 500 Series Metal Finishes Manual

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET STEEL

- A. Minimum 0.8mm thick for wall panels.
- B. Steel, Sheet, Galvanized: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural.
 - 1. Grade 40, galvanized coating conforming to ASTM A924/A924M, Class Z 275 G-90.
- C. Steel, Sheet, Commercial: ASTM A1008, Type C.
- D. Steel, Sheet, Aluminized: ASTM A463. Steel shall be coated on both sides with 0.5 ounce of aluminum per square foot (0.15 Kg/sm).

2.2 ALUMINUM PLATE AND SHEET

ASTM B209/209M

2.3 FASTENERS

Fasteners for steel panels shall be galvanized or cadmium plated steel.
Fasteners for aluminum panels shall be aluminum or stainless steel.
Fasteners of size, type and holding strength as recommended by
manufacturer.

2.4 GYPSUM BACKING BOARD

ASTM C442, Type X, Plain face, Square edge.

2.5 THERMAL INSULATING MATERIALS

- A. Urethane or isocyanurate Board: ASTM C591, Type I.
- B. Mineral Fiber Blankets: ASTM C553, Type I.
- C. Mineral Fiber Board: ASTM C612, Class I.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Uninsulated metal wall panels shall be single sheets, of approximate overall depth and configuration shown on drawings. Connection between panels shall be by interlocking joints filled with sealing compound as specified in Section, SEALANTS AND CAULKING. Furnish

wall panels in one continuous length for full height or at least one story height with no horizontal joints, except at openings.

Construct panels as follows:

1. Wall panels:
 - a. 0.8 mm 0.032 inch thick aluminum.

2.7 FINISH

- A. For uninsulated wall panels and composite wall and roof panels, the finishes shall be as follows for aluminum face sheets:
 1. Fluorocarbon finish, consisting of a prime coat and a polyvinylidene fluoride finish coat of 1.0 mil minimum dry film thickness on one side, and a wash coat of 0.5 mil minimum dry film thickness applied to reverse side.
- B. Finish numbers for aluminum specified herein are in accordance with The Aluminum Association's Designation System. Each aluminum finish number preceded by letters AA identifies it as an Aluminum Association designation.
- C. Aluminum alloy used for color coating shall be as required to produce specified color. Color shall be as specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULE. Color for sheet aluminum shall not deviate more than the colors of extrusion samples.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install panels in accordance with the manufacturer's approved erection instructions and diagrams, except as specified otherwise. Panels shall be in full and firm contact with supports and with each other at side and end laps. Where panels are cut in the field, or where any of the factory applied coverings or coatings are abraded or damaged in handling or installation, they shall, after the necessary repairs have been made with material of the same type and color as the weather coating, be approved before being installed. All cut ends and edges, including those at openings through the sheets shall be sealed completely. Correct defects or errors in the materials in an approved manner. Replace materials which cannot be corrected in an approved manner with nondefective material. Provide molded closure strips where indicated and whenever sheets terminate with open ends after installation.
- B. Wall Panels: Apply panels with the configuration in a horizontal position. Provide panels in the longest obtainable lengths, with end

laps occurring only at structural members. Seal side and end laps with joint sealing material. Flash and seal walls at the base, at the top, around windows, door frames, framed louvers, and other similar openings. Install closure strips, flashings, and sealing material in an approved manner that will assure complete weather tightness. Flashing will not be required where approved "self-flashing" panels are used.

- C. Flashing: All flashing and related closures and accessories in connection with the preformed metal panels shall be provided as indicated and as necessary to provide a watertight installation. Details of installation, which are not indicated, shall be in accordance with the panel manufacturer's printed instruction and details, or the approved shop drawings. Installation shall allow for expansion and contraction of flashing.
- D. Fasteners: Fastener spacings shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as necessary to withstand the design loads indicated. Install fasteners in straight lines within a tolerance of 13 mm (1/2-inch) in the length of a bay. Drive exposed penetrating type fasteners normal to the surface, and to a uniform depth to seat gasketed washers properly, and drive so as not to damage factory applied coating. Exercise extreme care in drilling pilot holes for fastenings to keep drills perpendicular. After drilling, remove metal filings and burrs from holes prior to installing fasteners and washers. Torque used in applying fasteners shall not exceed that recommended by the manufacturer. Remove panels deformed or otherwise damaged by over-torqued fastenings, and provide new panels. Remove metal shavings.

3.2 ISOLATION OF ALUMINUM

- A. Isolate aluminum in contact with or fastened to dissimilar metals other than stainless steel, white bronze, or other metal compatible with aluminum by one of the following:
 - 1. Painting the dissimilar metal with a prime coat of Zinc-Molybdate followed by two coats of aluminum paint.
 - 2. Placing a non-abrasive tape or gasket between the aluminum and the dissimilar metal.
- B. Paint aluminum in contact with or built into mortar, concrete, plaster, or other masonry materials with a coat of alkali-resistant bituminous paint.

3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect panels and other components from damage during and after erection, and until project is accepted by the Government.

B. After completion of work, all exposed finished surfaces of panels shall be cleaned of soil, discoloration and disfiguration. Touch-up abraded surfaces of panels.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07510
BITUMINOUS BUILT-UP ROOFING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section includes bituminous built-up roofing, with base flashing for new construction.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Wood cants, blocking, and wood edge strips: Section 06100, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- B. Insulation: Section 07220, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.
- C. Vapor barrier: Section 07220, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.
- D. Base sheet for insulated roof assemblies: Section 07220, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.
- E. Metal base flashing, pipe flashing, counter flashing, fascia, coping, reglet, Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- F. Extruded aluminum, coping, fascia, Section 07700, ROOF SPECIALTIES AND ACCESSORIES.

1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Applicable publications listed below form a part of this Specification as referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the number designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - D41-94(R2000).....Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing,
Dampproofing and Waterproofing
 - D2178-04.....Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and
Waterproofing
 - D3909-97b(R2004).....Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced
with Mineral Granules
 - D4586-00.....Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Free
 - D4601-98.....Asphalt Coated Fiberglass Base Sheet Used
In Roofing
 - D4897-01.....Asphalt Coated Glass Fiber Venting Base
Sheet Used in Roofing
 - D6163-00.....Specification for Styrene Butadiene
Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet
Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements
 - E108-04.....Fire Tests of Roof Coverings
 - E119-00.....Test Method for Fire Tests of Building
Construction and Materials

- F1667-03.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, Staples
- C. FM Global (FMG):
- P7825C-03.....Approval Guide Building Materials
- 4450:.....Approved Standard for Class 1 Insulated
Steel Deck Roofs
- 4470:.....Approved Standard for Class 1 Roof
Coverings
- D. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA):
- "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up
Roofing."
- "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual"

1.4 WARRANTY

Roofing system is subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction"
Article in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, except that warranty
period is extended to five years.

1.5 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Installer experienced in installation
of systems similar in complexity to that required for this
Project, including specific requirements indicated:
1. Work shall be performed by installer approved in writing by
roofing material manufacturer.
 2. Work shall comply with printed instructions of the roofing
materials manufacturer.
- B. Product/Material Qualifications:
1. Provide manufacturer's label on each container or certification
with each load of bulk bitumen, indicating Flash Point (FP),
Finished Blowing Temperature (FBT), Softening Point (SP),
Equiviscous Temperature (EVT).
 2. Provide manufacturer's certification that field applied
bituminous coatings and mastics, and field applied roof
coatings comply with limits for Volatile Organic Compounds
(VOC) per the National Volatile Organic Compound Emission
Standards for Architectural Coatings pursuant to Section 183(e)
of the Clean Air Act with limits as follows:
 - a. Bituminous Coatings and Mastics: 500 g/l (4.2#/gal.).
 - b. Roof Coatings: 250 g/l (2.1#/gal.).
 3. Obtain products from single manufacturer or from sources
recommended by manufacturer for use with roofing system.

- C. Comply with the recommendations of the NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" applicable to built-up roofing for storage, handling and installation.
- D. FMG Listing: Provide roofing membrane, base flashing, and component materials that comply with requirements in FMG 4450 and FMG 4470 as part of a roofing system and that are listed in FMG "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FMG markings.
 - 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60,75,90,105, and 120.
 - 2. Hail Resistance: MH SH.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Product Data:
 - 1. Asphalt materials, each type.
 - 2. Roofing cement, each type.
 - 3. Roof walkway.
 - 4. Fastening requirements.
- C. Certificates:
 - 1. Indicate materials and method of application of roofing system meet requirements of FMG.
 - 2. Statements of qualification for manufacturers and installers.
 - 3. Inspection Report: Copy of roofing system manufacturer's inspection report certifying completed roofing complies with manufacturer's warranty requirements.
- D. Warranty: As specified in Part 1 of this Section:
 - 1. Warranty sample form with specific language to address Contract provisions.
- E. Contract Close-out Submittals:
 - 1. Maintenance Manuals.
 - 2. Warranty signed by installer and manufacturer.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND MARKING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to the site in original sealed packages or containers marked with the name and brand or trademark of the manufacturer or seller.
- B. Keep roofing materials dry and store in a dry, weather-tight facility or under canvas covers. Do not use polyethylene or plastic covers to protect materials. Store above ground or deck level on wood pallets. Cover ground under pallet stored materials with plastic.

1. Store rolled materials (felts, base sheets, and paper) on end.
Do not store hems on top of rolled materials.
 2. Aggregates shall be maintained surface dry as defined by ASTM D1863.
- C. Protect from damage due to handling, weather and construction operations before, during and after installation.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Environmental Controls: Refer to Section 01568, Environmental Protection.
- C. Protection of interior spaces: Refer to Section 01010, General Requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOFING SYSTEM

- A. Install built-up roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of NRCA "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
- B. Fiberglass Felt:
1. Substrate: Roof Insulation Cast-In-Place Concrete Precast Concrete.
 2. Components: Quantity
 - a. Fiberglass felt Base Sheet: 1 Ply
 - b. Ply Sheet: 3,2 Plies
 - c. Mineral Surfaced Cap Sheet: 1 Ply
 - d. Asphalt Between Substrate Ventilating Base Sheet, and First Ply: 10-17.5 kg/10 sq. meters 20-35 lbs/100 sq. ft.
 - e. Asphalt Between Each Ply 10-17.5 kg/10 sq. meters 20-35 lbs/100 sq. ft.
 3. Provide asphalt quantities within the indicated ranges, unless recommended otherwise in the roofing materials manufacturer's printed data.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Primer: ASTM D41.

- B. Base Sheet: ASTM D4601, Type II, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
- C. Asphalt: ASTM D312, Type III or IV for roof membrane. Use Type I for pour coat unless specified otherwise.
- D. Ply Sheet/Backer Sheet: ASTM D2178, Type VI, heavy-duty ply sheet.
- E. Cap Sheet: ASTM D3909, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber cap sheet, with white coarse mineral-granule top surfacing and fine mineral surfacing on bottom surface.
- F. Roof Cement: ASTM D4586, Type I Type II.
- G. Flashing Sheet: ASTM D6163, Type I or II, glass-fiber-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
- H. Glass mat gypsum protection board mechanically fastened into concrete deck.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Roof Walkway:
 - 1. Prefabricated asphalt plank consisting of a homogeneous core of asphalt, plasticizer and inert fillers, bonded by heat and pressure between two saturated and coated sheets of felt:
 - a. Topside of plank surfaced with ceramic granules.
 - b. Size: Minimum 13 mm (1/2-inch) thick, manufactures standard size, but not less than 300 mm (12 inches) in least dimension and 600 mm (24 inches) in length.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Fasteners for Securing Dry Felt Edge Strips to Wood Nailer and Decks:
 - 1. Zinc coated steel roofing nails, 16-mm (5/8-inch) minimum head diameter.
 - 2. Staples, Flat top Crown, zinc coated may be used.
- B. Fasteners for Securing Base Sheet to Insulating Concrete:
 - 1. Self clinching type of galvanized steel having an integral flat cap at least 25 mm (one-inch) across.
 - 2. Holding power of fasteners not less than 27 Kg (60 pounds) when pulled from approximate 400 Kg/m³ (26 pound per cubic foot) dense concrete.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions: Examine substrates, areas and conditions under which Work is to be performed and identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely completion:
 - 1. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions, including moisture, have been corrected.
 - 2. Do not install roofing materials over wet insulation.
 - 3. Do not install roofing materials unless roof openings, wood nailers, edge venting, insulation board, flashing, curbs, and roof joints are constructed.
 - 4. Do not install roof materials unless deck and/or insulation provides designed drainage to working drains.
- B. Insulating Concrete:
 - 1. Allow deck to dry before installing materials.
- C. Do not apply roof system if roofed deck will be used as a work platform.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Sweep substrate to broom clean condition. Remove all dust, dirt and debris.
- B. Remove surface irregularities that may damage materials or cause installation defects.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of NRCA "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
- B. Cooperate with inspection and test agencies required to perform services in connection with built-up roofing system installation.
- C. General:
 - 1. Provide uniform and positive adhesion between all installed materials, including adhesion to insulation or substrate, and between each ply of felt.
 - 2. Substrate Penetrations: Do not allow bitumen to penetrate joints or enter building. Where mopping is applied directly to a substrate, tape joints. When applying steep asphalt, hold mopping back 50mm (2 inches) from each side of joint.
- D. Asphalt Products Schedule:
 - 1. Use asphalt only with asphalt-saturated or asphalt-impregnated felts.

2. Use Type I asphalt for pour coats up to 1:10 (one inch per foot) slope.

3. Use asphalt roof cement with asphalt products.

E. Bitumen Schedule:

1. Per square, unless otherwise specified.

2. Between substrate and plies of organic felt:

a. Asphalt 7 to 11 Kg (15 to 25 pounds).

3. Between substrate and plies of glass fiber felts asphalt, 9 to 14 kg (20 to 30 pounds).

4. Glaze Coats:

a. Asphalt 7 to 11 Kg (15 to 25 pounds).

5. Pour coats:

a. Asphalt 25 to 30 Kg (55 to 65 pounds).

F. Heating Bitumen:

1. Heat the asphalt to the equiviscous temperature (EVT) plus or minus 4 C (25 degrees F) at the time of application.

a. Do not heat asphalt greater than 38 C (100 degrees F) above the EVT.

b. When the EVT is not furnished do not heat asphalt above 246 C (475 degrees F) for Type I and 275 C (525 degrees) F for Type II and IV, with an application not less than 218 C (425 degrees F) and 246 C (475 degrees F) respectively.

2. Do not heat bitumen above the flash point temperature.

3. Provide heating kettles with a thermometer kept in operating condition. Attend, during heating, to insure the bitumen is heated within the temperatures specified.

4. Do not mix different types of bitumen in kettle.

G. Terminations:

1. Where cants occur at vertical surfaces, cut off plies of membrane 50mm (2 inches) above top of cant strip, (except at prefabricated curbs, scuttles and other roof accessories having integral cants) extend membrane over cant and up vertical surface to top of curb or blocking.

2. Where wood blocking occurs at roof edge, under gravel stops or penetrations to receive base flashing, nail a continuous strip of 400 mm (16-inch) wide, loose applied organic felt envelope over the blocking before the first ply sheet is applied.

a. Install strip on top of base sheet.

b. After membrane is installed, turn the dry felt back over the roofing and secure in place with hot bitumen before gravel

stops or metal flanges extending onto the membrane are installed.

3. Where fascia/cant occurs at roof edges, extend membrane beyond outside face and cut off after base flashing is installed. Do not cut off base sheet outside cant face, extend down over outer cant face to allow for venting.

H. Base Sheet:

1. One ply of base sheet dry to deck, except mop between laps. Lap and attach as specified to deck.
2. At vertical surfaces: Extend base sheet up vertical surface over cants to top of base flashing or curb.
3. At roof edge under gravel stops install base sheet over blocking: Extend base sheet not less than 50 mm (2-inches) beyond outer edge and turn down to allow venting at the edge.
4. At roof edge over fascia-cant: Extend base sheet over top of cant and turn down over outer face of cant to allow venting at the edge.
5. For base sheet applied to deck of insulated roof assemblies: Refer to Section 07220, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.

J. Roof Ply Installation:

1. Install, asphalt, glass fiber felt construction. Base sheet is not considered a ply.
2. Extend the first ply 100 mm (4-inches) beyond the insulation and the second ply 75 mm (3-inches) beyond the first. Lap ends 75 mm (3-inches) with joints broken 450 mm (18-inches) in each ply.

K. Laps for felts and base sheet:

1. Base sheet, lapped 50 mm (2-inches).
2. Two plies of felt with 450 mm (18-inches) and 900 mm (36-inch) starting widths, lapped 480 mm (19-inches).
3. End joints of felt and base sheet, lapped 50 mm (2-inches). Stagger end joints in relation to joints in adjacent and proceeding plies.

L. Flashing:

1. Prime vertical surfaces of masonry and concrete with asphalt primer except where vented base sheet is required to provide edge venting.
2. Apply flashing on top of built-up roofing, up face of cant and vertical surfaces, at least 200 mm (8-inches) above the roof, full height beneath counter flashing or top of curb flashing:
 - a. At fascia-cants, extend to top of cant and cut off.
 - b. Extend plies of roofing into reglet the full depth of the reglet.
3. Except at metal fascia cants, secure top edge of base flashing with nails on a line approximately one inch below top edge, spaced not more than 200 mm (8-inches) on center.
 - a. Cover all nail heads with roof cement.
 - b. Cover the top of the base flashing with counter flashing as specified in Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL. At the cants secure the top edge of the flashing with fascia compression clamp as specified in Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
4. Install flashing using longest pieces practicable. Complete splices between flashing and main roof sheet before bonding to vertical surface. Seal splice not less than 76mm (3-inches) beyond fasteners that attach membrane to blocking. Apply bonding adhesive to both flashing and surface to which flashing is being adhered per manufacturer recommendations. Nail top of flashing 300mm (12-inches) on center under metal counter flashing or cap.
 - a. Parapet Walls: Extend up parapet and turn over top edge. Apply with 100 percent adhesive.
5. Install flashing over cants to make system watertight.
6. Install flashing before final roofing coat and aggregate are installed.

M. Stripping:

1. Set flanges of metal flashing in roof cement before the final bituminous coat and roof aggregate are installed and nail to blocking per Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
2. Before the final bituminous coat and aggregate are installed, cover that portion of the horizontal flanges of metal base flashing, gravel stops and other flanges, extending onto the roofing with flashing sheet consisting of two plies of organic felt with asphalt.

N. Roof Walkways:

1. Install roof walkways where shown.
2. Prefabricated asphalt plank: sweep away loose roof aggregate from area to receive plank. Set planks in hot bitumen poured over the firmly embedded roof aggregate as specified for pour coat. Maintain minimum 75-mm (3-inches) to maximum of 150 mm (6-inches) space between planks.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07600
FLASHING AND SHEET METAL**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

Formed sheet metal work for flashing specified in this section.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Composition base flashings and stripping in metal roof flanges: Section 07510, BUILT-UP ROOFING.
- B. Sealant compound and installation: Section 07920, SEALANT AND CAULKING.
- C. Color of factory coated metal and anodized aluminum: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES.
- D. Integral flashing component of manufactured roof specialties and accessories or equipment: Section 07700, ROOF SPECIALTIES AND ACCESSORIES, and Division 15, MECHANICAL.
- E. Paint materials and application: Section 09900, PAINTING.
- F. Flashing of Roof Drains: Section 15400, PLUMBING SYSTEMS.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - Flashings
 - Copings
 - Gravel Stop-Fascia
 - Gutter and Conductors
 - Fascia-cant
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - Two-piece counterflashing
 - Thru wall flashing
 - Nonreinforced, elastomeric sheeting
 - Fascia-cant
- D. Certificates: Stating that aluminum has been given - specified finish thickness of anodizing. Coating formulators approvals as specified.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below for a part of this specification to the extend referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A167-99.....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

- D173-97.....Bitumen-Saturated Cotton Fabrics Used in Roofing
and Waterproofing
- A653/A653M-02.....Steel Sheet Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc
Alloy Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot- Dip
Process
- B32-00.....Solder Metal
- B209-02.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
- B370-98.....Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
- D412-98.....Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers-
Tension
- D1187-97.....Asphalt Base Emulsions for Use as Protective
Coatings for Metal
- D1784-99.....Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and
Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC)
Compounds
- D3656-97.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from
Vinyl-Coated Glass Yarns
- D4586-00.....Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Free
- C. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
(SMACNA): Architectural Sheet Metal Manual (Fifth Edition, 1993).
- D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual
- E. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
605-98.....Voluntary Specification for High Performance
Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions
Panels
- F. Federal Specification (Fed. Spec):
A-A-1925A.....Shield, Expansion; (Nail Anchors)
UU-B-790A.....Building Paper, Vegetable Fiber

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Solder: ASTM B32; flux type and alloy composition as required for use
with metals to be soldered.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304, dead soft temper.
- C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 - Finish to be a fluoropolymer -
Polyvinylidene, Flouride (PVDF) Resin base coating, KYNAR 500 or equal
color as specified in section 09050.
- D. Nonreinforced, Elastomeric Sheeting: Elastomeric substances reduced to
thermoplastic state and extruded into continuous homogenous sheet (0.056
inch) thick. Sheeting shall have not less than 7 MPa (1,000 psi) tensile

strength and not more than seven percent tension-set at 50 percent elongation when tested in accordance with ASTM D412. Sheetting shall show no cracking or flaking when bent through 180 degrees over a 1 mm (1/32 inch) diameter mandrel and then bent at same point over same size mandrel in opposite direction through 360 degrees at temperature of - 30°C (-20 °F).

E. Bituminous Paint: ASTM D1187, Type I.

F. Fasteners:

1. Bronze, brass, or stainless steel for clad stainless steel, and stainless steel for stainless steel and aluminum alloy. Use galvanized steel or stainless steel for galvanized steel.
2. Nails:
 - a. Minimum diameter for copper nails: 3 mm (0.109 inch).
 - b. Minimum diameter for aluminum nails 3 mm (0.105 inch).
 - c. Minimum diameter for stainless steel nails: 2 mm (0.095 inch) and annular threaded.
 - d. Length to provide not less than 22 mm (7/8 inch) penetration into anchorage.
3. Rivets: Not less than 3 mm (1/8 inch)diameter.
4. Expansion Shields: Fed. Spec. A-A-1925A.

G. Sealant: As specified in Section SEALANTS AND CAULKING for exterior locations.

H. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656, 18 by 18 regular mesh.

I. Roof Cement: ASTM D4586.

2.2 SHEET METAL THICKNESS

- A. Except as otherwise shown or specified use thickness or weight of sheet metal as follows:
- B. Concealed Locations (Built into Construction):
1. Stainless steel: 0.25 mm (0.010 inch) thick.
 2. Galvanized steel: 0.5 mm (0.021 inch) thick.
- C. Exposed Locations:
1. Stainless steel: 0.4 mm (0.015 inch).
- D. Thickness of aluminum or galvanized steel is specified with each item.

2.3 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Jointing:
1. In general, stainless steel joints, shall be locked and soldered.
 2. Jointing of stainless steel over 0.45 mm (0.018 inch) thick shall be done by lapping, riveting and soldering.
 3. Joints shall conform to following requirements:
 - a. Flat-lock joints shall finish not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide.

- b. Lap joints subject to stress shall finish not less than 25 mm (one inch) wide and shall be soldered and riveted.
 - c. Unsoldered lap joints shall finish not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
- 4. Flat and lap joints shall be made in direction of flow.
- 5. Edges of bituminous nonreinforced elastomeric sheeting shall be jointed by lapping not less than 100 mm (4 inches) in the direction of flow and cementing with asphalt roof cement or sealant as required by the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- 6. Soldering:
 - a. Pre tin both mating surfaces with solder for a width not less than 38 mm (1 1/2 inches) of stainless steel.
 - b. Treat in accordance with metal producers recommendations other sheet metal required to be soldered.
 - c. Completely remove acid and flux after soldering is completed.
- B. Edge Strips or Continuous Cleats:
 - 1. Fabricate continuous edge strips where shown and specified to secure loose edges of the sheet metal work.
 - 2. Except as otherwise specified, fabricate edge strips of minimum 1.25 mm (0.050 inch) thick aluminum.
 - 3. Use material compatible with sheet metal to be secured by the edge strip.
 - 4. Fabricate in 3000 mm (10 feet) maximum lengths with not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock into metal secured by edge strip.
 - 5. Fabricate Strips for fascia anchorage to extend below the supporting wood construction to form a drip and to allow the flashing to be hooked over the lower edge at least 19 mm (3/4-inch).
 - 6. Fabricate anchor edge maximum width of 75 mm (3 inches) or of sufficient width to provide adequate bearing area to insure a rigid installation using 1 Kg (32 oz) copper 0.8 mm (0.031 inch) thick stainless steel 1.6 mm (0.0625 inch) thick aluminum.
- C. Drips:
 - 1. Form drips at lower edge of sheet metal counter-flashings (cap flashings), fascias, gravel stops, wall copings, by folding edge back 13 mm (1/2 inch) and bending out 45 degrees from vertical to carry water away from the wall.
 - 2. Form drip to provide hook to engage cleat or edge strip for fastening for not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock where shown.

D. Edges:

1. Edges of flashings concealed in masonry joints opposite drain side shall be turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch) to form dam, unless otherwise specified or shown otherwise.
2. Finish exposed edges of flashing with a 6 mm (1/4 inch) hem formed by folding edge of flashing back on itself when not hooked to edge strip or cleat. Use 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum penetration beyond wall face with drip for through-wall flashing exposed edge.

E. Metal Options:

1. Where options are permitted for different metals use only one metal throughout.
2. Stainless steel may be used in concealed locations for fasteners of other metals exposed to view.

2.4 FINISH

- A. Use same finish on adjacent metal or components and exposed metal surfaces unless specified or shown otherwise.
- B. In accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual, unless otherwise specified.
- C. Finish exposed metal surfaces as follows, unless specified otherwise:
 1. Stainless Steel: Finish No. 2B or 2D.
 2. Aluminum:
 - a. Clear Finish: AA-C22A41 medium matte, clear anodic coating, Class 1 Architectural, 18 mm (0.7 mils) thick.
 - b. Colored Finish: AA-C22A42 (anodized) or AA-C22A44 (electrolytically deposited metallic compound) medium matte, integrally colored coating, Class 1 Architectural, 18 mm (0.7 mils) thick. Dyes will not be accepted.
 - c. Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 605.2, high performance organic coating.
 - d. Mill finish.
 3. Steel and Galvanized Steel:
 - a. Finish painted under Section PAINTING unless specified as prefinished item.
 - b. Manufacturer's finish:
 - 1) Baked on prime coat over a phosphate coating.
 - 2) Baked-on prime and finish coat over a phosphate coating.
 - 3) Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 605.2, high performance organic coating.

2.5 THROUGH-WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Form through-wall flashing to provide a mechanical bond or key against lateral movement in all directions. Install a sheet having 2 mm (1/16 inch) deep transverse channels spaced four to every 25 mm (one inch), or ribbed diagonal pattern, or having other deformation unless specified otherwise.
 - 1. Fabricate in not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) lengths; 3000 mm (10 feet) maximum lengths.
 - 2. Fabricate so keying nests at overlaps.
- B. For Masonry Work When Concealed Except for Drip:
 - 1. Stainless steel.
 - 2. Form an integral dam at least 5 mm (3/16 inch) high at back edge.
 - 3. Form exposed portions of flashing with drip, approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) projection beyond wall face.
- C. For Masonry Work When Exposed Edge Forms a Receiver for Counter Flashing:
 - 1. Use same metal and thickness as counter flashing.
 - 2. Form an integral dam at least 5 mm (3/16 inch) high at back edge.
 - 3. Form exposed portion as snap lock receiver for counter flashing upper edge.
- D. For Flashing at Architectural Precast Concrete Panels or Stone Panels.
 - 1. Use plan flat sheet of stainless steel.
 - 2. Form exposed portions with drip as specified or receiver.
- E. Window Sill Flashing and Lintel Flashing:
 - 1. Use stainless steel, flat sheet, or nonreinforced elastomeric sheeting.
 - 2. Fabricate flashing at ends with folded corners to turn up 5 mm (3/16 inch) in first vertical masonry joint beyond masonry opening.
 - 3. Turn up back edge as shown.
 - 4. Form exposed portion with drip as specified or receiver.
- F. Door Sill Flashing:
 - 1. Where concealed, use either 0.5 mm (0.018 inch) thick stainless steel, or 0.5 mm.
 - 2. Where shown on drawings as combined counter flashing under threshold, sill plate, door sill, or where subject to foot traffic, use either 0.6 mm (0.024 inch) stainless steel, or 0.6 mm (0.024 inch) thick stainless steel.
 - 3. Fabricate flashing at ends to turn up 5 mm (3/16 inch) in first vertical masonry joint beyond masonry opening with folded corners.

2.6 BASE FLASHING

- A. Use metal base flashing at vertical surfaces intersecting built-up roofing without cant strips or where shown.
 - 1. Use stainless steel, thickness specified unless specified otherwise.
 - 2. When flashing is over 250 mm (10 inches) in vertical height or horizontal width use either 0.5 Kg (20 oz) copper or 0.5 mm (0.018 inch) stainless steel.
 - 3. Use stainless steel at aluminum roof curbs where flashing contacts the aluminum.
 - 4. Use stainless steel at pipe flashings.
- B. Fabricate metal base flashing up vertical surfaces not less than 200 mm (8 inch) nor more than 400 mm (16 inch).
- C. Fabricate roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide unless shown otherwise. When base flashing length exceeds 2400 mm (8 feet) form flange edge with 13 mm (1/2 inch) hem to receive cleats.
- D. Form base flashing bent from strip except pipe flashing. Fabricate ends for riveted soldered lap seam joints. Fabricate expansion joint ends as specified.
- E. Pipe Flashing: (Other than engine exhaust or flue stack)
 - 1. Fabricate roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) beyond sleeve on all sides.
 - 2. Extend sleeve up and around pipe and flange out at bottom not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) and solder to flange and sleeve seam to make watertight.
 - 3. At low pipes 200 mm (8 inch) to 450 mm (18 inch) above roof:
 - a. Form top of sleeve to turn down into the pipe at least 25 mm (one inch).
 - b. Allow for loose fit around and into the pipe.
 - 4. At high pipes and pipes with goosenecks or other obstructions which would prevent turning the flashing down into the pipe:
 - a. Extend sleeve up not less than 300 mm (12 inch) above roofing.
 - b. Allow for loose fit around pipe.

2.7 COUNTERFLASHING (CAP FLASHING OR HOODS)

- A. Stainless steel, unless specified otherwise.
- B. Fabricate to lap base flashing a minimum of 100 mm (4 inches) with drip.
 - 1. Form lock seams for outside corners. Allow for lap joints at ends and inside corners.
 - 2. In general, form flashing in lengths not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) and not more than 3000 mm (10 feet).

3. Two-piece, lock in type flashing may be used in lieu of one piece counter-flashing.
4. Manufactured assemblies may be used.
5. Where counterflashing is installed at new work use an integral flange at the top designed to be extended into the masonry joint or reglet in concrete.
6. Where counterflashing is installed at existing work use surface applied type, formed to provide a space for the application of sealant at the top edge.

C. One-piece Counterflashing.

1. Back edge turned up and fabricate to lock into reglet in concrete.
2. Upper edge formed to extend full depth of masonry unit in mortar joint with back edge turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch).

D. Two-Piece Counterflashing:

1. Receiver to extend into masonry wall depth of masonry unit with back edge turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch) and exposed edge designed to receive and lock counterflashing upper edge when inserted.
2. Counterflashing upper edge designed to snap lock into receiver.

E. Surface Mounted Counterflashing; one or two piece:

1. Use at existing or new surfaces where flashing can not be inserted in vertical surface.
2. One piece fabricate upper edge folded double for 65 mm (2 1/2 inches) with top 19 mm (3/4 inch) bent out to form "V" joint sealant pocket with vertical surface. Perforate flat double area against vertical surface with horizontally slotted fastener holes at 400 mm (16 inch) centers between end holes. Option: One piece surface mounted counter-flashing (cap flashing) may be used. Fabricate as detailed on Plate 51 of SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
3. Two pieces: Fabricate upper edge to lock into surface mounted receiver. Fabricate receiver joint sealant pocket on upper edge and lower edge to receive counterflashing, with slotted fastener holes at 400 mm (16 inch) centers between upper and lower edge.

F. Pipe Counterflashing:

1. Form flashing for water-tight umbrella with upper portion against pipe to receive a draw band and upper edge to form a "V" joint sealant receiver approximately 19 mm (3/4 inch) deep.
2. Fabricate 100 mm (4 inch) over lap at end.
3. Fabricate draw band of same metal as counter flashing. Use 0.6 Kg (24 oz) copper or 0.33 mm (0.013 inch) thick stainless steel or copper coated stainless steel.

4. Use stainless steel bolt on draw band tightening assembly.
5. Vent pipe counter flashing may be fabricated to omit draw band and turn down 25 mm (one inch) inside vent pipe.
- G. Where vented edge decks intersect vertical surfaces, form in one piece, shape to slope down to a point level with and in front of edge-set notched plank; then, down vertically, overlapping base flashing.

2.8 COPINGS

- A. Fabricate of 0.5 mm (0.018 inch) thick stainless steel 1.25 mm (0.050 inch) thick aluminum sheets 2400 mm to 3000 mm (8 to 10 feet) long.
- B. Fabricate coping to profile shown.
- C. Use continuous edge strips with drips at bottom edges on exterior wall side. Use slotted holes for fasteners on roof wall side if continuous cleats or edge strips are not used.
- D. Form joints between sections with either alternate 4 or 5 as shown on plate 68, SMACNA, unless shown otherwise.
- E. Fabricate corners with mitered joints, riveted and soldered locked and sealed if aluminum.
- F. Fabricate ends of coping terminating at vertical building surfaces to form a slot for the installation of sealant.
- G. Fabricate exterior ends of coping closures of same appearance as exterior wall side.

2.9 REGLETS

- A. Fabricate reglets of one of the following materials:
 1. Stainless steel, not less than 0.3 mm (0.012 inch) thick.
 2. Plastic coated extruded aluminum, not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 inch) thick prefilled with butyl rubber sealer and complete with plastic wedges inserted at 1000 mm (40 inches) on centers.
 3. Plastic, ASTM D1784, Type II, not less than 2 mm (0.075 inch) thick.
- B. Fill open-type reglets with fiberboard or other suitable separator, to prevent crushing of the slot during installation.
- C. Bend edges of reglets for setting into concrete to an angle of not less than 45 degrees, and make wide enough to provide firm anchorage in the concrete.
- D. Fabricate reglets for building into horizontal masonry mortar joints not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) deep, nor more than 25 mm (one inch) deep.
- E. Fabricate mitered corners, fittings, and special shapes as may be required by details.
- F. Reglets for concrete may be formed to receive flashing and have a 10 mm (3/8 inch), 45 degree snap lock.

2.10 ENGINE EXHAUST PIPE OR FLUE OR STACK FLASHING

- A. Flashing at penetrations through roofing shall consist of a metal collar, sheet metal flashing sleeve and hood.
- B. Fabricate collar with roof flange of 1.2 mm (0.047 inch) minimum thick black iron or galvanized steel sheet.
 - 1. Fabricate inside diameter of collar 100 mm (4 inches) larger than the outside diameter of the item penetration the roofing.
 - 2. Extend collar height from structural roof deck to not less than 350 mm (14 inches) above roof surface.
 - 3. Fabricate collar roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
 - 4. Option: Collar may be of steel tubing 3 mm (0.125 inch) minimum wall thickness, with not less than four, 50 mm x 100 mm x 3 mm (2 inch by 4 inch by 0.125 inch) thick tabs bottom edge evenly spaced around tube in lieu of continuous roof flange. Full butt weld joints of collar.
- C. Fabricate sleeve base flashing with roof flange of either copper, stainless steel, or copper clad stainless steel.
 - 1. Fabricate sleeve roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
 - 2. Extend sleeve around collar up to top of collar.
 - 3. Flange bottom of sleeve out not less than 13 mm (1/24 inch) and soldered to 100 mm (4 inch) wide flange to make watertight.
 - 4. Fabricate interior diameter 50 mm (2 inch) greater than collar.
- D. Fabricate hood counter flashing from same material and thickness as sleeve.
 - 1. Fabricate the same as pipe counter flashing except allow not less than 100 mm (4 inch) lap below top of sleeve and to form vent space minimum of 100 mm (4 inch) wide.
 - 2. Hem bottom edge of hood 13 mm (1/2 inch).
 - 3. Provide a 50 mm (2 inch) deep drawband.
- E. Fabricate insect screen closure between sleeve and hood. Secure screen to sleeve with sheet metal screws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Install flashing and sheet metal items as shown in Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc., publication, ARCHITECTURAL SHEET METAL MANUAL, except as otherwise shown or specified.
 - 2. Apply Sealant as specified in Section, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.

3. Apply sheet metal and other flashing material to surfaces which are smooth, sound, clean, dry and free from defects that might affect the application.
4. Remove projections which would puncture the materials and fill holes and depressions with material compatible with the substrate. Cover holes or cracks in wood wider than 6 mm (1/4 inch) with sheet metal compatible with the roofing and flashing material used.
5. Coordinate with masonry work for the application of a skim coat of mortar to surfaces of unit masonry to receive flashing material before the application of flashing.
6. Confine direct nailing of sheet metal to strips 300 mm (12 inch) or less wide. Nail flashing along one edge only. Space nail not over 100 mm (4 inches) on center unless specified otherwise.
7. Install bolts, rivets, and screws where indicated, specified, or required in accordance with the SMACNA Sheet Metal Manual. Space rivets at 75 mm (3 inch) on centers in two rows in a staggered position. Use neoprene washers under fastener heads when fastener head is exposed.
8. Coordinate with roofing work for the installation of metal base flashings and other metal items having roof flanges for anchorage and watertight installation.
9. Nail continuous cleats on 75 mm (3 inch) on centers in two rows in a staggered position.
10. Nail individual cleats with two nails and bend end tab over nail heads. Lock other end of cleat into hemmed edge.
11. Install flashings in conjunction with other trades so that flashings are inserted in other materials and joined together to provide a water tight installation.
12. Where required to prevent galvanic action between dissimilar metal isolate the contact areas of dissimilar metal with sheet lead, waterproof building paper, or a coat of bituminous paint.
13. Isolate aluminum in contact with dissimilar metals others than stainless steel, white bronze or other metal compatible with aluminum by:
 - a. Paint dissimilar metal with a prime coat of zinc-chromate or other suitable primer, followed by two coats of aluminum paint.
 - b. Paint dissimilar metal with a coat of bituminous paint.
 - c. Apply an approved caulking material between aluminum and dissimilar metal.

14. Paint aluminum in contact with or built into mortar, concrete, plaster, or other masonry materials with a coat of bituminous paint.
15. Paint aluminum in contact with absorptive materials that may become repeatedly wet with two coats of bituminous paint or two coats of aluminum paint.
16. Bitumen Stops:
 - a. Install bitumen stops for built-up roof opening penetrations through deck and at formed sheet metal gravel stops.
 - b. Nail leg of bitumen stop at 300 mm (12 inch) intervals to nailing strip at roof edge before roofing material is installed.

3.2 THROUGH-WALL FLASHING

A. General:

1. Install continuous through-wall flashing between top of concrete foundation walls and bottom of masonry building walls; at top of concrete floors; under masonry, concrete, or stone copings and elsewhere as shown.
2. Where exposed portions are used as a counterflashings, lap base flashings at least 100 mm (4 inches) and use thickness of metal as specified for exposed locations.
3. Exposed edge of flashing may be formed as a receiver for two piece counter flashing as specified.
4. Terminate exterior edge beyond face of wall approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) with drip edge where not part of counter flashing.
5. Turn back edge up 6 mm (1/4 inch) unless noted otherwise where flashing terminates in mortar joint or hollow masonry unit joint.
6. Terminate interior raised edge in masonry backup unit approximately 38 mm (1 1/2 inch) into unit unless shown otherwise.
7. Under copings terminate both edges beyond face of wall approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) with drip edge.
8. Lap end joints at least two corrugations, but not less than 100 mm (4 inches). Seal laps with sealant.
9. Where dowels, reinforcing bars and fastening devices penetrate flashing, seal penetration with sealing compound. Sealing compound is specified in Section, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
10. Coordinate with other work to set in a bed of mortar above and below flashing so that total thickness of the two layers of mortar and flashing are same as regular mortar joint.
11. Where ends of flashing terminate turn ends up 25 mm (one inch) and fold corners to form dam extending to wall face in vertical mortar or veneer joint.

12. Turn flashing up not less than 200 mm (8 inch) between masonry or behind exterior veneer.
13. When flashing terminates in reglet extend flashing full depth into reglet and secure with lead or plastic wedges spaced 150 mm (6 inch) on center.
14. Continue flashing around columns:
 - a. Where flashing cannot be inserted in column reglet hold flashing vertical leg against column.
 - b. Counterflash top edge with 75 mm (3 inch) wide strip of saturated cotton unless shown otherwise. Secure cotton strip with roof cement to column. Lap base flashing with cotton strip 38 mm (1 1/2 inch).
- B. Flashing at Top of Concrete Foundation Walls Where concrete is exposed. Turn up not less than 200 mm (8 inch) high and into masonry backup mortar joint or reglet in concrete backup as specified.
- C. Flashing at Top of Concrete Floors (except where shelf angles occur): Place flashing in horizontal masonry joint not less than 200 mm (8 inch) below floor slab and extend into backup masonry joint at floor slab 38 mm (1 1/2 inch).
- D. Flashing at Cavity Wall Construction: Where flashing occurs in cavity walls turn vertical portion up against backup under waterproofing, if any, into mortar joint. Turn up over insulation, if any, and horizontally through insulation into mortar joint.
- E. Flashing at Veneer Walls:
 1. Install near line of finish floors over shelf angles or where shown.
 2. Turn up against sheathing.
 3. At stud framing, hem top edge 19 mm (3/4 inch) and secure to each stud with stainless steel fasteners through sheathing.
 4. At concrete backing, extend flashing into reglet as specified.
 5. Coordinate with installation of waterproofing or asphalt felt for lap over top of flashing.
- F. Lintel Flashing when not part of shelf angle flashing:
 1. Install flashing full length of lintel to nearest vertical joint in masonry over veneer.
 2. Turn ends up 25 mm (one inch) and fold corners to form dam and extend end to face of wall.
 3. Turn back edge up to top of lintel; terminate back edge as specified for back-up wall.
- G. Window Sill Flashing:

1. Install flashing to extend not less than 100 mm (4 inch) beyond ends of sill into vertical joint of masonry or veneer.
2. Turn back edge up to terminate under window frame.
3. Turn ends up 25 mm (one inch) and fold corners to form dam and extend to face of wall.

H. Door Sill Flashing:

1. Install flashing under bottom of plate sills of doors over curbs opening onto roofs. Extend flashing out to form counter flashing or receiver for counter flashing over base flashing. Set in sealant.
2. Extend sill flashing 200 mm (8 inch) beyond jamb opening. Turn ends up one inch in vertical masonry joint, extend end to face of wall. Join to counter flashing for water tight joint.
3. Where doors thresholds cover over waterproof membranes install sill flashing over water proof membrane under thresholds. Extend beyond opening to cover exposed portion of waterproof membrane and not less than 150 mm (6 inch) beyond door jamb opening at ends. Turn up approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) under threshold.

I. Flashing at Masonry, Stone, or Precast Concrete Copings:

1. Install flashing with drips on both wall faces unless shown otherwise.
2. Form penetration openings to fit tight against dowel or other item with edge turned up. Seal penetrations with sealant.

3.3 BASE FLASHING

A. Install where roof membrane type base flashing is not used and where shown.

1. Install flashing at intersections of roofs with vertical surfaces or at penetrations through roofs, to provide watertight construction.
2. Set flanges in heavy trowel coat of roof cement and nail through flanges into wood nailers over bituminous roofing.
3. Secure flange by nailing through roofing into wood blocking with nails spaced 75 mm (3 inch) on centers or, when flange over 100 mm (4 inch) wide terminate in a 13 mm (1/2 inch) folded edge anchored with cleats spaced 200 mm (8 inch) on center. Secure one end of cleat over nail heads. Lock other end into the seam.
4. For long runs of base flashings install in lengths of not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) nor more than 3000 mm (ten feet). Install a 75 mm (3 inch) wide slip type, loose lock expansion joint filled with sealant in joints of base flashing sections over 2400 mm (8 feet) in length. Lock and solder corner joints at corners.

5. Extend base flashing up under counter flashing of roof specialties and accessories or equipment not less than 75 mm (3 inch).

3.4 COUNTERFLASHING (CAP FLASHING OR HOODS)

A. General:

1. Install counterflashing over and in conjunction with installation of base flashings, except as otherwise specified or shown.
2. Install counterflashing to lap base flashings not less than 100 mm (4 inch).
3. Install upper edge or top of counterflashing not less than 225 mm (9 inch) above top of the roofing.
4. Lap joints not less than 100 mm (4 inch). Stagger joints with relation to metal base flashing joints.
5. Use surface applied counterflashing on existing surfaces and new work where not possible to integrate into item.
6. When fastening to concrete or masonry, use screws driven in expansion shields set in concrete or masonry. Use screws to wood and sheet metal. Set fasteners in mortar joints of masonry work.

B. One Piece Counterflashing:

1. Where flashing is installed at new masonry, coordinate to insure proper height, embed in mortar, and end lap.
2. Where flashing is installed in reglet in concrete insert upper edge into reglet. Hold flashing in place with wedges spaced not more than 200 mm (8 inch) apart. Fill joint with sealant.
3. Where flashing is surface mounted on flat surfaces.
 - a. When top edge is double folded anchor flat portion below sealant "V" joint with fasteners spaced not over 400 mm (16 inch) on center.
 - 1) Locate fasteners in masonry mortar joints.
 - 2) Use screws to sheet metal or wood.
 - b. Fill joint at top with sealant.
4. Where flashing or hood is mounted on pipe.
 - a. Secure with draw band tight against pipe.
 - b. Set hood and secure to pipe with a one by 25 mm x 3 mm (1 x 1/8 inch) bolt on stainless steel draw band type clamp, or a stainless worm gear type clamp.
 - c. Completely fill joint at top with sealant.

C. Two-Piece Counterflashing.

1. Where receiver is installed at new masonry coordinate to insure proper height, embed in mortar, and lap.
2. Surface applied type receiver:

- a. Secure to face construction in accordance, with manufacturers instructions.
- b. Completely fill space at the top edge of receiver with sealant.
- 3. Insert counter flashing in receiver in accordance with fabricator or manufacturer's instructions and to fit tight against base flashing.
- D. Where vented edge occur install so lower edge of counterflashing is against base flashing.
- E. When counter flashing is a component of other flashing install as shown.

3.5 REGLETS

- A. Install reglets in a manner to provide a watertight installation.
- B. Locate reglets not less than 225 mm (9 inch) nor more than 400 mm (16 inch) above roofing, and not less than 125 mm (5 inch) nor more than 325 mm (13 inch) above cant strip.
- C. Butt and align end joints or each section of reglet and securely hold in position until concrete or mortar are hardened.
 - 1. Coordinate reglets for anchorage into concrete with formwork construction.
 - 2. Coordinate reglets for masonry to locate horizontally into mortar joints.

3.6 COPINGS

- A. General:
 - 1. On walls topped with a wood plank, install a continuous edge strip on the front and rear edge of the plank. Lock the coping to the edge strip with a 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock seam.
 - 2. Where shown turn down roof side of coping and extend down over base flashing as specified for counter-flashing. Secure counter-flashing to lock strip in coping at continuous cleat.
 - 3. Install ends adjoining existing construction so as to form space for installation of sealants. Sealant is specified in section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.

3.7 ENGINE EXHAUST PIPE OR STACK FLASHING

- A. Set collar where shown and secure roof tabs or flange of collar to structural deck with 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter bolts.
- B. Set flange of sleeve base flashing not less than 100 mm (4 inch) beyond collar on all sides as specified for base flashing.
- C. Install hood to above the top of the sleeve 50 mm (2 inch) and to extend from sleeve same distance as space between collar and sleeve beyond edge not sleeve.
 - 1. Install insect screen to fit between bottom edge of hood and side of sleeve.

2. Set collar of hood in high temperature sealant and secure with one by 3 mm (1/8 inch) bolt on stainless steel draw band type, or stainless steel worm gear type clamp. Install sealant at top of head.

3.8 GOOSENECK ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Install on structural curb not less than 200 mm (8 inch) high above roof surface.
- B. Securely anchor ventilator curb to structural curb with fasteners spaced not over 300 mm (12 inch) on center.
- C. Anchor gooseneck to curb with screws having nonprene washers at 150 mm (6 inch) on center.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07700
ROOF SPECIALTIES AND ACCESSORIES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies roof hatches; equipment supports; extruded aluminum copings, and gravity ventilators.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Color and texture of finish: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES.
- B. Sealant material and installation: Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- C. General insulation: Section 07210, BUILDING INSULATION.
- D. Rigid insulations for roofing: Section 07220, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All roof accessories shall be the products of manufacturers regularly engaged in producing the kinds of products specified.
- B. Each accessory type shall be the same and be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Each accessory shall be completely assembled to the greatest extent possible before delivery to the site.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Samples: Representative sample panel of color anodized aluminum not less than 100 mm X 100 mm (four by four inches), except extrusions shall be a width not less than section to be used. Sample shall show coating with integral color and texture and shall include manufacturer's identifying label.
- C. Shop Drawings: Each item specified showing design, details of construction, installation and fastenings.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Each item specified.
- E. Certificates: Stating that aluminum has been given specified thickness of anodizing.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extend referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
RR-G-1602D.....Grating, Metal, Other than Bar Type (Floor,
Except for Naval Vessels)
- C. American Society for Testing and Material (ASTM):

- A36-930Standard Specific for Structural Steel
- A653/A653M-02.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) By the Hot-Dip Process
- B209/209M-02.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy-Sheet and Plate
- B221/221M-02.....Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
- C612-00.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
- D1187-97.....Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal
- D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual
- E. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
605-98.....High Performance Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions and Panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: ASTM A526/A526M; G-90 coating.
- C. Insulation: ASTM C612, Class 1 or 2.

2.2 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM COPING

- A. Fabricate of aluminum not less than 0.125 inch thick.
- B. Turn outer edges down each face of wall as shown.
- C. Maximum lengths of 3000 mm (10 feet).
- D. Shop fabricate external and internal corners as one piece assemblies with not less than 300 mm (12 inch) leg lengths.
- E. Provide 100 mm (four inch) wide 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick watertight joint covers.
- F. Provide anchor gutter bar of 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick aluminum with anchor holes formed for underside of joint.
- G. Provide concealed guttered splice plate of 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick aluminum with butyl or other resilient seal strips anchored to splice plate for underside of joint. Use galvanized steel anchor plate providing compression spring anchoring of coping cover.
- H. Finish: Fluorocarbon.

2.3 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM FASCIA-CANT SYSTEM

- A. Form fascia from not less than 2 mm (0.070 inch) thick aluminum. Provide four inch wide 0.8 mm (0.032-inch) thick concealed sheet aluminum joint cover plates in back of fascia.
- B. Internal and external corners:
 - 1. Factory fabricate and fully weld mitered joints.
 - 2. Furnish corner sections in manufacturers standard sizes shown with not less than 300 mm (12 inch) leg lengths.
- C. Finish on aluminum: fluorocarbon.

2.4 FINISH

- A. In accordance with NAAMM Amp 500 Series.
- B. Aluminum, Mill Finish: AA-MIX, as fabricated.
- C. Aluminum, Clear Finish: AA-C22A41 medium matte, clear anodic coating, Class 1, Architectural, 0.7 mils thick. Class II, Architectural, 0.4 mils thick.
- D. Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 605.2 high performance organic coating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof specialties and accessories where shown.
- B. Secure with fasteners in accordance with manufacture's printed installation instructions and approved shop drawings unless shown otherwise.
- C. Coordinate to install insulation where shown; see Section on BUILDING INSULATION and ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.
- D. Comply with section on SEALANTS AND CAULKING to install sealants where manufactures installation instructions require sealant.
- E. Coordinate with roofing work for installation of items in sequence to prevent water infiltration.
- F. Fascias:
 - 1. Install fascia with butt joints with approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) space for expansion.
 - 2. Over each joint provide cover plates of sheet aluminum, complete with concealed sheet aluminum flashing, centered under each joint.
 - 3. Lap cover plates and concealed flashing over fascia not less than four inches.
 - 4. Extend concealed flashing over roofing, embed in roof cement and turn down over face of blocking at roof edge.
- G. Aluminum Coping:

1. Install sections of coping with approximately 6 mm (1/4-inch) space between ends of sections.
2. Center joint gutter bar and covers at joints and securely lock in place.
3. When snap-on system is used insure front and back edges are locked in place.

H. Fascia System:

1. Coordinate with roofing work and after completion of roofing work install extruded aluminum fascia, concealed joint cover plate, and aluminum compression clamp, where shown.
2. Install system to allow for expansion and contraction with 6 mm (1/4 inch) space between extruded aluminum members and galvanized steel cant as required by manufacturer of system.
3. Offset joints in extruded aluminum members from galvanized steel cant joints.

- I. Equipment Supports: Do not anchor to insulating concrete or metal deck. Anchor only to building structure as per manufacturers recommendations.

3.2 PROTECTION OF ALUMINUM

- A. Provide protection for aluminum against galvanic action wherever dissimilar materials are in contact, by painting the contact surfaces of the dissimilar material with two coats of asphalt coating (complete coverage), or by separating the contact surfaces with a preformed neoprene tape having pressure sensitive adhesive coating on side.
- B. Paint aluminum in contact with wood, concrete and masonry, or other absorptive materials, that may become repeatedly wet, with two coats of asphalt coating.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust roof hatch hardware to operate freely and so that cover will operate without binding, close tightly at perimeter, and latch securely.
- B. Adjust expansion joints to close tightly and be watertight; insuring maximum allowance for building movement.

3.4 PROTECTION

Protect roof accessories from damage during installation and after completion of the work from subsequent construction.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07920
SEALANTS AND CAULKING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

Section covers all sealant and caulking materials and their application, wherever required for complete installation of building materials or systems.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Sealing of site work concrete paving: Section 02514, SITE WORK CONCRETE.
- B. Masonry control and expansion joint: Section 04200, UNIT MASONRY.
- C. Gypsum partitions section 09260 Gypsum Wall Board.
- D. Sound rated Gypsum (Sound Deadening Board) Section 07210.
- E. Mechanical Work: Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL:

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has specialized in installing joint sealants similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in joint-sealant installations with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Obtain test results from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 12-month period.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021.
 - 2. Test elastomeric joint sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
 - 3. Test elastomeric joint sealants according to SWRI's Sealant Validation Program for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C920 for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement, adhesion-in peel, and indentation hardness.
 - 4. Test other joint sealants for compliance with requirements indicated by referencing standard specifications and test methods.
- D. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to joint substrates in accordance with sealant manufacturer's recommendations:

1. Locate test joints where indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Contracting Officer.
2. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:
 - a. Each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
 - b. Each type of non-elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
3. Notify Resident Engineer seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
- E. Mockups: Before installing joint sealants, apply elastomeric sealants as follows to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution:
 1. Joints in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive elastomeric joint sealants, which are specified by reference to this section.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's installation instructions for each product used.
- C. Cured samples of exposed sealants for each color where required to match adjacent material.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 1. Caulking compound
 2. Primers
 3. Sealing compound, each type, including compatibility when different sealants are in contact with each other.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under following conditions:
 - a. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer or are below 4.4 °C (40 °F).
 - b. When joint substrates are wet.
- B. Joint-Width Conditions:
 1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
- C. Joint-Substrate Conditions:

1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

1.6 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE:

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturers' original unopened containers, with brand names, date of manufacture, shelf life, and material designation clearly marked thereon.
- B. Carefully handle and store to prevent inclusion of foreign materials.
- C. Do not subject to sustained temperatures exceeding 5 °C (90 °F) or less than 32 °C (40 °F).

1.7 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Definitions of terms in accordance with ASTM C717 and as specified.
- B. Back-up Rod: A type of sealant backing.
- C. Bond Breakers: A type of sealant backing.
- D. Filler: A sealant backing used behind a back-up rod.

1.8 WARRANTY:

- A. Warranty exterior sealing against leaks, adhesion, and cohesive failure, and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction" Article specified in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, except that warranty period shall be extended to two years.
- B. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Government of other rights Government may have under other provisions of Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of Contract Documents.

1.9 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - C509-00.....Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material.
 - C612-00.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation.
 - C717-03.....Standard Terminology of Building Seals and Sealants.
 - C834-00.....Latex Sealants.
 - C919-02.....Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications.
 - C920-02.....Elastomeric Joint Sealants.

C1021-01.....Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building
Sealants
C1193-00.....Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
C1330-02.....Specification for Cylindrical Sealant Backing
for Use with Cold Liquid Applied Sealants.
D1056-00.....Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials-
Sponge or Expanded Rubber.
E84-03.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials.

C. Sealant, Waterproofing and Restoration Institute (SWRI).
The Professionals' Guide

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEALANTS:

- A. S-1:
 - 1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
 - 2. Type M.
 - 3. Class 25.
 - 4. Grade NS.
 - 5. Shore A hardness of 20-40
- B. S-2:
 - 1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
 - 2. Type M.
 - 3. Class 25.
 - 4. Grade P.
 - 5. Shore A hardness of 25-40.
- C. S-3:
 - 1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
 - 2. Type S.
 - 3. Class 25, joint movement range of plus or minus 50 percent.
 - 4. Grade NS.
 - 5. Shore A hardness of 15-25.
 - 6. Minimum elongation of 700 percent.
- D. S-4:
 - 1. ASTM C920 polyurethane or polysulfide.
 - 2. Type S.
 - 3. Class 25.
 - 4. Grade NS.
 - 5. Shore A hardness of 25-40.
- E. S-5:
 - 1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.

2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P.
5. Shore hardness of 15-45.

F. S-6:

1. ASTM C920, silicone, neutral cure.
2. Type S.
3. Class: Joint movement range of plus 100 percent to minus 50 percent.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-20.
6. Minimum elongation of 1200 percent.

G. S-7:

1. ASTM C920, silicone, neutral cure.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-30.
6. Structural glazing application.

H. S-8:

1. ASTM C920, silicone, acetoxo cure.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-30.
6. Structural glazing application.

I. S-9:

1. ASTM C920 silicone.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-30.
6. Non-yellowing, mildew resistant.

J. S-10:

1. ASTM C920, coal tar extended fuel resistance polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-20.

K. S-11:

1. ASTM C920 polyurethane.

2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 35 to 50.

L. S-12:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25, joint movement range of plus or minus 50 percent.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25 to 50.

2.2 CAULKING COMPOUND:

- A. C-1: ASTM C834, acrylic latex.
- B. C-2: One component acoustical caulking, non drying, non hardening, synthetic rubber.

2.3 COLOR:

- A. Sealants used with exposed masonry shall match color of mortar joints.
- B. Sealants used with unpainted concrete shall match color of adjacent concrete.
- C. Color of sealants for other locations shall match color of adjacent material.
- D. Caulking shall be light gray or white, unless specified otherwise.

2.4 JOINT SEALANT BACKING:

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, of type indicated below and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
 1. Type C: Closed-cell material with a surface skin.
- C. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to minus 32 °C (minus 26 °F). Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint

where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

E. Open cell or reticulated backer materials will not be accepted.

2.5 FILLER:

- A. Mineral fiber board: ASTM C612, Class 1.
- B. Thickness same as joint width.
- C. Depth to fill void completely behind back-up rod.

2.6 PRIMER:

- A. As recommended by manufacturer of caulking or sealant material.
- B. Stain free type.

2.7 CLEANERS-NON POURIOUS SURFACES:

- A. Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturer of sealants and sealant backing material free of oily residues and other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent non-porous surfaces and formulated to promote adhesion of sealant and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION:

- A. Inspect substrate surface for bond breaker contamination and unsound materials at adherent faces of sealant.
- B. Coordinate for repair and resolution of unsound substrate materials.
- C. Inspect for uniform joint widths and that dimensions are within tolerance established by sealant manufacturer.

3.2 PREPARATIONS:

- A. Prepare joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and SWRI.
- B. Clean surfaces of joint to receive caulking or sealants leaving joint dry to the touch, free from frost, moisture, grease, oil, wax, lacquer paint, or other foreign matter that would tend to destroy or impair adhesion.
 - 1. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants.
 - 2. Remove loose particles remaining from above cleaning operations by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint surfaces include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- C. Do not cut or damage joint edges.
- D. Apply masking tape to face of surfaces adjacent to joints before applying primers, caulking, or sealing compounds.
 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Apply primer to sides of joints wherever required by compound manufacturer's printer instructions.
 1. Apply primer prior to installation of back-up rod or bond breaker tape.
 2. Use brush or other approved means that will reach all parts of joints.
- F. Take all necessary steps to prevent three sided adhesion of sealants.

3.3 BACKING INSTALLATION:

- A. Install back-up material, to form joints enclosed on three sides as required for specified depth of sealant.
- B. Where deep joints occur, install filler to fill space behind the back-up rod and position the rod at proper depth.
- C. Cut fillers installed by others to proper depth for installation of back-up rod and sealants.
- D. Install back-up rod, without puncturing the material, to a uniform depth, within plus or minus 3 mm (1/8 inch) for sealant depths specified.
- E. Where space for back-up rod does not exist, install bond breaker tape strip at bottom (or back) of joint so sealant bonds only to two opposing surfaces.
- F. Take all necessary steps to prevent three sided adhesion of sealants.

3.4 SEALANT DEPTHS AND GEOMETRY:

- A. At widths up to 6 mm (1/4 inch), sealant depth equal to width.
- B. At widths over 6 mm (1/4 inch), sealant depth 1/2 of width up to 13 mm (1/2 inch) maximum depth at center of joint with sealant thickness at center of joint approximately 1/2 of depth at adhesion surface.

3.5 INSTALLATION:

A. General:

1. Apply sealants and caulking only when ambient temperature is between 5 degrees C and 38 degrees C (40 and 100 degrees F).
2. Do not use polysulfide base sealants where sealant may be exposed to fumes from bituminous materials, or where water vapor in continuous contact with cementitious materials may be present.
3. Do not use sealant type listed by manufacture as not suitable for use in locations specified.
4. Apply caulking and sealing compound in accordance with manufacturer's printer instructions.
5. Avoid dropping or smearing compound on adjacent surfaces.
6. Fill joints solidly with compound and finish compound smooth.
7. Tool joints to concave surface unless shown or specified otherwise.
8. Finish paving or floor joints flush unless joint is otherwise detailed.
9. Apply compounds with nozzle size to fit joint width.
10. Test sealants for compatibility with each other and substrate. Use only compatible sealant.

B. For application of sealants, follow requirements of ASTM C1193 unless specified otherwise.

C. Where gypsum board partitions are of sound rated, fire rated, or smoke barrier construction, follow requirements of ASTM C919 only to seal all cut-outs and intersections with the adjoining construction unless specified otherwise.

1. Apply a 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum bead of sealant each side of runners (tracks), including those used at partition intersections with dissimilar wall construction.
2. Coordinate with application of gypsum board to install sealant immediately prior to application of gypsum board.
3. Partition intersections: Seal edges of face layer of gypsum board abutting intersecting partitions, before taping and finishing or application of veneer plaster-joint reinforcing.
4. Openings: Apply a 6 mm (1/4 inch) bead of sealant around all cut-outs to seal openings of electrical boxes, ducts, pipes and similar penetrations. To seal electrical boxes, seal sides and backs.
5. Control Joints: Before control joints are installed, apply sealant in back of control joint to reduce flanking path for sound through control joint.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field-test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as recommended by sealant manufacturer:
 - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed elastomeric sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 10 tests for first 300 m (1000 feet) of joint length for each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform one test for each 300 m (1000 feet) of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
- B. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field adhesion test log.
- C. Inspect tested joints and report on following:
 - 1. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate.
 - 2. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 - 3. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free from voids.
 - 4. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
- D. Record test results in a field adhesion test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
- E. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used to originally seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and new sealant contacts original sealant.
- F. Evaluation of Field-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.7 CLEANING:

- A. Fresh compound accidentally smeared on adjoining surfaces: Scrape off immediately and rub clean with a solvent as recommended by the caulking or sealant manufacturer.
- B. After filling and finishing joints, remove masking tape.

C. Leave adjacent surfaces in a clean and unstained condition.

3.8 LOCATIONS:

A. Exterior Building Joints, Horizontal and Vertical:

1. Metal to Metal: Type S-1, S-2
2. Threshold Setting Bed: Type S-1, S-3, S-4.

B. Metal Reglets and Flashings:

1. Flashings to Wall: Type S-6
2. Metal to Metal: Type S-6

C. Sanitary Joints:

1. Walls to Plumbing Fixtures: Type S-9
2. Counter Tops to Walls: Type S-9
3. Pipe Penetrations: Type S-9

D. Horizontal Traffic Joints:

1. Concrete Paving, Unit Pavers: Type S-11 or S-12

E. High Temperature Joints over 204 degrees C (400 degrees F):

1. Exhaust Pipes, Flues, Breech Stacks: Type S-7 or S-8

F. Interior Caulking:

1. Typical Narrow Joint 6 mm, (1/4 inch) or less at Walls and Adjacent Components: Type C-1, C-2, C-3.
2. Perimeter of Doors, Windows, Access Panels which Adjoin Concrete or Masonry Surfaces: Type C-1, C-2, C-3.
3. Joints at Masonry Walls and Columns, Piers, Concrete Walls or Exterior Walls: Type C-1, C-2, C-3.
4. Perimeter of Lead Faced Control Windows and Plaster or Gypsum Wallboard Walls: Type C-1, C-2, C-3.
5. Exposed Isolation Joints at Top of Full Height Walls: Type C-1, C-2, C-3.
6. Exposed Acoustical Joint at Sound Rated Partitions Type C-2
7. Concealed Acoustic Sealant Type S-4, C-1, C-2, C-3.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08110
STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies steel doors, steel frames and related components.
- B. Terms relating to steel doors and frames as defined in ANSI A123.1 and as specified.

1.2 WORK

- A. Frames fabricated of structural steel: Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS.

1.3 TESTING

An independent testing laboratory shall perform testing.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturers Literature and Data:
 - 1. Fire rated doors and frames, showing conformance with NFPA 80 and Underwriters Laboratory, Inc., or Inchcape Testing Services or Factory Mutual fire rating requirements and temperature rise rating for stairwell doors. Submit proof of temperature rating .
 - 2. Sound rated doors, including test report from Testing Laboratory.

1.5 SHIPMENT

- A. Prior to shipment label each door and frame to show location, size, door swing and other pertinent information.
- B. Fasten temporary steel spreaders across the bottom of each door frame.

1.6 STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store doors and frames at the site under cover.
- B. Protect from rust and damage during storage and erection until completion.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
 - L-S-125B.....Screening, Insect, Nonmetallic
- C. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI):
 - A115 Series.....Steel Door and Frame Preparation for Hardware, Series A115.1 through A115.17 (Dates Vary)

D. Steel Door Institute (SDI):

113-1979.....Apparent Thermal Performance for Steel Door and
Frame Assemblies

114-1979.....Acoustical Performance for Steel Door and Frame
Assemblies

A250.8-98.....Standard Steel Doors and Frames

E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

A167-99.....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

A568/568-M-03.....Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low-
alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled

A1008-04.....Steel, sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,
High Strength Low Alloy and High Strength Low
Alloy with Improved Formability

B209/209M-02.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

B221/221M-02.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles and Tubes

D1621-00.....Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular
Plastics

D3656-97.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from
Vinyl Coated Glass Yarns

E90-02.....Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound
Transmission Loss of Building Partitions

F. The National Association Architectural Metal Manufactures (NAAMM):
Metal Finishes Manual (1988 Edition)

G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

80-99.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows

H. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

Fire Resistance Directory

I. Inchcape Testing Services (ITS):

Certifications Listings...Latest Edition

J. Factory Mutual System (FM):

Approval Guide

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304; finish, NAAMM Number 4.
- B. Sheet Steel: ASTM A1008, cold-rolled for panels (face sheets) of doors.
- C. Anchors, Fastenings and Accessories: Fastenings anchors, clips connecting members and sleeves from zinc coated steel.
- D. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656, 18 by 18 regular mesh.
- E. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209/209M.
- F. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/221M.
- G. Prime Paint: Paint that meets or exceeds the requirements of A250.8.

2.2 FABRICATION GENERAL

- A. GENERAL:
 - 1. Follow SDI A250.8 for fabrication of standard steel doors, except as specified otherwise. Doors to receive hardware specified in Section 08710, Door Hardware. Tolerances as per SDI A250.8. Thickness, 44 mm (1-3/4 inches), unless otherwise shown.
 - 2. Close top edge of exterior doors flush and seal to prevent water intrusion.
 - 3. When vertical steel stiffeners are used for core construction, fill spaces between stiffeners with mineral fiber insulation.
- B. Standard Duty Doors: SDI A250.8, Level 1, Model 2 of size and design shown. Use for interior locations only. Do not use for stairwell doors, security doors and detention doors.
- C. Heavy Duty Doors: SDI A250.8, Level 2, Model 2 of size and design shown. Core construction types a, d, or f, for interior doors, and, types b, c, e, or f, for exterior doors.
- D. Extra Heavy Duty Doors: SDI A250.8, Level 3, Model 2 of size and design shown. Core construction type d or f, for interior doors, and, type b, c, e, or f, for exterior doors. Use for stairwell doors and security doors.
- E. Smoke Doors
 - 1. Close top and vertical edges flush.
 - 2. Provide seamless vertical edges.
 - 3. Apply Steel astragal to the meeting style at the active leaf of pair of doors or double egress doors.
 - 4. Provide clearance at head, jamb and sill as specified in NFPA 80.
- F. Fire Rated Doors (Labeled):

1. Conform to NFPA 80 when tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Inchcape Testing Services, or Factory Mutual for the class of door or door opening shown.
2. Fire rated labels of metal, with raised or incised markings of approving laboratory shall be permanently attached to doors.
3. Close top and vertical edges of doors flush. Vertical edges shall be seamless. Apply steel astragal to the meeting stile of the active leaf of pairs of fire rated doors, except where vertical rod exit devices are specified for both leaves swinging in the same direction.
4. Construct fire rated doors in stairwell enclosures for maximum transmitted temperature rise of 230 °C (450 °F) above ambient temperature at end of 30 minutes of fire exposure when tested in accordance with ASTM E152.

G. Custom Metal Hollow Doors:

Provide custom hollow metal doors where nonstandard steel doors are indicated. At the Contractor's option, custom hollow metal doors may be provided in lieu of standard steel doors. Door size(s), design, materials, construction, gages and finish shall be as specified for of standard steel doors.

H. Sound Rated Doors:

1. SDI 114, except as specified otherwise.
2. Sound Transmission Class minimum of 45 when tested in accordance with ASTM E90.
3. Doors complete with integral spring type automatic door bottom seal and with integral continuous gaskets on the frames. Applied spring type automatic door bottom seal and applied continuous gaskets for the frames for doors that are not sound rated but sealed for flanking noises are specified in Section, BUILDERS' HARDWARE.
4. Fabricate vision panels to receive double glazing where shown.

2.3 METAL FRAMES

A. General:

1. SDI A250.8, 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) thick sheet steel, types and styles as shown or scheduled.
2. Frames for exterior doors: Fabricate from 1.7 mm (0.067 inch) thick galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A525.
3. Frames for labeled fire rated doors and windows.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 80. Test by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Inchcape Testing Services, or Factory Mutual.

- b. Fire rated labels of approving laboratory permanently attached to frames as evidence of conformance with these requirements. Provide labels of metal or engraved stamp, with raised or incised markings.
- 4. Knock down frames are not acceptable.
- B. Reinforcement and Covers:
 - 1. SDI A250.8 for, minimum thickness of steel reinforcement welded to back of frames.
 - 2. Provide mortar guards securely fastened to back of hardware reinforcements except on lead-lined frames.
 - 3. Where concealed door closers are installed within the head of the door frames, prepare frames for closers and provide 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel removable stop sections for access to concealed face plates and control valves, except when cover plates are furnished with closer.
- C. Terminated Stops: SDI A250.8.
- D. Two piece frames:
 - a. One piece unequal leg finished rough buck sub-frames as shown, drilled for anchor bolts.
 - b. Unequal leg finished frames formed to fit subframes and secured to subframe legs with countersunk, flat head screws, spaced 300 mm (12 inches) on center at head and jambs on each side.
 - c. Preassemble at factory for alignment.
- E. Frame Anchors:
 - 1. Floor anchors:
 - a. Where floor fills occur, provide extension type floor anchors to compensate for depth of fill.
 - b. At bottom of jamb use 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) thick steel clip angles welded to jamb and drilled to receive two 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts. Use 50 mm x 50 mm (2 inch by 2 inch) 9 mm by (3/8 inch) clip angle for lead lined frames, drilled for 9 mm (3/8 inch) floor bolts.
 - c. Where mullions occur, provide 2.3 mm (0.093 inch) thick steel channel anchors, drilled for two 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws.
 - d. Where sill sections occur, provide continuous 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel rough bucks drilled for 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws. Space floor bolts at 50 mm (24 inches) on center.
 - 2. Jamb anchors:

- a. Locate anchors on jambs near top and bottom of each frame, and at intermediate points not over 600 mm (24 inches) apart, except for fire rated frames space anchors as required by labeling authority.
- b. Form jamb anchors of not less than 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel unless otherwise specified.
- c. Anchors set in masonry: Use adjustable anchors designed for friction fit against the frame and for extension into the masonry not less than 250 mm (10 inches). Use one of following type:
 - 1) Wire loop type of 5 mm (3/16 inch) diameter wire.
 - 2) T-shape of strap and stirrup type of corrugated or perforated sheet steel.
- d. Anchors for stud partitions: Either weld to frame or use lock-in snap-in type. Provide tabs for securing anchor to the sides of the studs.
- e. Anchors for frames set in prepared openings:
 - 1) Steel pipe spacers with 6 mm (1/4 inch) inside diameter welded to plate reinforcing at jamb stops or hat shaped formed strap spacers, 50 mm (2 inches) wide, welded to jamb near stop.
 - 2) Drill jamb stop and strap spacers for 6 mm (1/4 inch) flat head bolts to pass thru frame and spacers.
 - 3) Two piece frames: Subframe or rough buck drilled for 6 mm (1/4 inch) bolts.
- f. Modify frame anchors to fit special frame and wall construction and provide special anchors where shown or required.

2.4 LOUVERS

A. General:

1. Sight proof type with stationary blades the full thickness of the door.
2. Design lightproof louvers to exclude passage of light but permit free ventilation.
3. Provide insect screen and wire guards at exterior doors, except where doors are located below completely enclosed areaways, the wire guard is not required.

B. Fabrication:

1. Steel louvers 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick for interior doors, and 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) inch thick for exterior doors.
2. Fabricate louvers as complete units Install in prepared cutouts in doors.

3. Weld stationary blades to frames. Weld louvers into door openings.

2.5 SHOP PAINTING

SDI A250.8.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Plumb, align and brace frames securely until permanent anchors are set.
 1. Use triangular bracing near each corner on both sides of frames with temporary wood spreaders at midpoint.
 2. Use wood spreaders at bottom of frame if the shipping spreader is removed.
 3. Protect frame from accidental abuse.
 4. Where construction will permit concealment, leave the shipping spreaders in place after installation, otherwise remove the spreaders after the frames are set and anchored.
 5. Remove wood spreaders and braces only after the walls are built and jamb anchors are secured.
- B. Floor Anchors:
 1. Anchor the bottom of door frames to floor with two 6 mm (1/4 inch) diameter expansion bolts. Use 9 mm (3/8 inch) bolts on lead lined frames.
 2. Power actuated drive pins may be used to secure frame anchors to concrete floors.
- C. Jamb Anchors:
 1. Anchors in masonry walls: Embed anchors in mortar. Fill space between frame and masonry wall with grout or mortar as walls are built.
 2. Coat frame back with a bituminous coating prior to lining of grout filling in masonry walls.
 3. Secure anchors to sides of studs with two fasteners through anchor tabs. Use steel drill screws to steel studs.
 4. Frames set in prepared openings of masonry or concrete: Expansion bolt to wall with 6 mm (1/4 inch) expansion bolts through spacers. Where subframes or rough bucks are used, 6 mm (1/4 inch) expansion bolts on 600 mm (24 inch) centers or power activated drive pins 600 mm (24 inches) on centers. Secure two piece frames to subframe or rough buck with machine screws on both faces.
- D. Install anchors for labeled fire rated doors to provide rating as required.
- E. Frames for Sound Rated Doors:

1. Coordinate to line frames for sound rated doors with insulation.

F. Overhead Bracing (Lead Lined Frames): Where jamb extensions extend to structure above, anchor clip angles with not less than two, 9 mm (3/8 inch) expansion bolts or power actuated drive pins to concrete slab. Weld to steel overhead members.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF DOORS AND APPLICATION OF HARDWARE

Install doors and hardware as specified in Section 08750, INSTALLATION OF DOORS AND HARDWARE.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08305
ACCESS DOORS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

Section specifies access doors or panels.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Lock Cylinders: Section 08710, BUILDERS HARDWARE.
- B. Locations of access doors for duct work cleanouts: Section 15840,
DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings: Access doors, each type, showing construction, location
and installation details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Access doors, each type.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent
referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation
only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A167-99.....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel
Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
 - A1008-03.....Steel Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,
High Strength Low-Alloy
- C. American Welding Society (AWS):
 - D1.3-98.....Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 80-99.....Fire Doors and Windows
- E. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
 - AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual
- F. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - Fire Resistance Directory

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Fabricate components to be straight, square, flat and in same plane
where required.
 - 1. Slightly round exposed edges and without burrs, snags and sharp
edges.
 - 2. Exposed welds continuous and ground smooth.
 - 3. Weld in accordance with AWS D1.3.

- B. Number of locks and non-continuous hinges as required to maintain alignment of panel with frame. For fire rated doors, use hinges and locks as required by fire test.
- C. Provide anchors or make provisions in frame for anchoring to adjacent construction. Provide size, number and location of anchors on four sides to secure access door in opening. Provide anchors as required by fire test.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS, FLUSH PANEL:

- A. Door Panel:
 - 1. Form of 1.9 mm (0.0747 inch) thick steel or 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick stainless steel sheet.
 - 2. Reinforce to maintain flat surface.
- B. Frame:
 - 1. Form of 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick steel or stainless steel sheet of depth and configuration to suit material and type of construction where installed.
 - 2. Provide surface mounted units having frame flange at perimeter where installed in concrete, masonry, or gypsum board construction.
 - 3. Weld exposed joints in flange and grind smooth.
- C. Hinge:
 - 1. Concealed spring hinge to allow panel to open 175 degrees.
 - 2. Provide removable hinge pin to allow removal of panel from frame.
- D. Lock:
 - 1. Flush, screwdriver operated cam lock.

2.3 FINISH:

- A. Provide in accordance with NAAMM AMP 500 series on exposed surfaces.
- B. Steel Surfaces: Baked-on prime coat over a protective phosphate coating.
- C. Stainless Steel: No. 4 for exposed surfaces.

2.4 SIZE:

Minimum 600 mm (24 inches) square door unless otherwise shown.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LOCATION:

- A. Provide access panels or doors wherever any valves, traps, dampers, cleanouts, and other control items of mechanical, electrical and conveyor work are concealed in wall or partition, or are above ceiling of gypsum board or plaster.
- B. Use fire rated doors in fire rated partitions and ceilings.

- C. Use flush panels in partitions and gypsum board or plaster ceilings, except lay-in acoustical panel ceilings or upward access acoustical tile ceilings.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL:

- A. Install access doors in openings to have sides vertical in wall installations, and parallel to ceiling suspension grid or side walls when installed in ceiling.
- B. Set frames so that edge of frames without flanges will finish flush with surrounding finish surfaces.
- C. Set frames with flanges to overlap opening and so that face will be uniformly spaced from the finish surface.
- D. Set recessed panel access doors recessed so that face of surrounding materials will finish on the same plane, when finish in door is installed.

3.3 ANCHORAGE:

- A. Secure frames to adjacent construction using anchors attached to frames or by use of bolts or screws through the frame members.
- B. Type, size and number of anchoring device suitable for the material surrounding the opening, maintain alignment, and resist displacement during normal use of access door.
- C. Anchors for fire rated access doors shall meet requirements of applicable fire test.

3.4 ADJUSTMENT:

- A. Adjust hardware so that door panel will open freely.
- B. Adjust door when closed so door panel is centered in the frame.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08331
OVERHEAD ROLL UP DOORS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies coiling doors of sizes shown, complete as specified.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Lock cylinders for cylindrical locks: Section 08710, BUILDERS HARDWARE.
- B. Field painting: Section 09900, PAINTING.
- C. Electric devices and wiring: DIVISION 16 ELECTRICAL.

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S AND INSTALLER'S QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Coiling doors shall be products of manufacturers regularly engaged in manufacturing items of type specified.
- B. Install items under direct supervision of manufacturer's representative or trained personnel.

1.4 FIRE DOOR REQUIREMENTS

Where fire doors exceed the size for which testing and labeling is available, submit certificates stating that the doors and hardware is identical in design, materials, and construction to a door that has been tested and meets the requirements for the class indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Each type of door showing details of construction, accessories and hardware, electrical and mechanical items supporting brackets for motors, location, and ratings of motors, and safety devices.
 - 2. Wiring diagrams for motors and controls, including wiring diagram for door, showing electrical interlock of motor with manually operated dead lock, electrical rough-in.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Brochures or catalog cuts, each type door or grille.
 - 2. Manufacturer's installation procedures and instructions.
 - 3. Maintenance instructions, parts lists.
- D. Certificates:
 - 1. Attesting doors, anchors and hardware will withstand the horizontal loads specified.

2. Attesting oversize fire doors and hardware are identical in design, material, and construction to doors that meet the requirements for the class specified.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A36/A36M-03.....Structural Steel
A167-99.....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel
Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
A653/A653M-03.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Zinc-Iron
Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip
Process
B209/209M-02.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
B221/B221M-02.....Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire,
Shapes, and Tubes
- C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
ICS 1-00.....Industrial Control and Systems General
Requirements
ICS 2-00.....Industrial Control, and Systems, Controllers,
Contactors, and Overload Relays
ICS 6-93 (R2001).....Industrial Control and Systems Enclosures
MG 1-03.....Motors and Generators
ST 20-92 (R1997).....Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications
- D. Master Painters Institute (MPI):
MPI #35.....Exterior Bituminous Coating
MPI #76.....Quick Drying Alkyd Metal Primer
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
70-98.....National Electrical Code 1999 Edition
80-99.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows
- F. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual
- G. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
2004.....Fire Resistance Directory

BUILDING INSULATION

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL

- A. Steel: A653 for forming operation. ASTM A36 for structural sections.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304.
- C. Aluminum, Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209/B209M
- D. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M
- E. Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI No. 76.
- F. Bituminous Coating: MPI No. 35.

2.2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coiling doors shall be spring counter balanced, overhead coiling type, inside face mounted with guides at jambs set back a sufficient distance to provide a clear opening when door is in open position.
- B. Doors, hardware, and anchors shall be designed to withstand a horizontal or wind pressure of 20 psf of door area without damage.
- C. All motor operators shall have manual emergency mechanical operators.
- D. Fire rated doors shall conform to the requirements specified herein and to NFPA 80 for the class indicated. Doors shall bear Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. label indicating the applicable fire rating.
- E. Where doors in excess of 7.4 m² (80 sf) are indicated to be manually operated, provision shall be made in the design and construction that will permit future installation of electric-power operation.
- F. The coiling door shall be superimposed over the coiling grille in a common assembly where dual installation is required.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Curtains:
 - 1. Form of interlocking slats of galvanized steel of shapes standard with the manufacturer, except that slats for exterior doors shall be flat type.
 - 2. Thickness of slats shall be as required to resist loads specified except not less than the following:
 - a. For doors less than 4500 mm (15 feet) wide: 0.75 mm (0.0299 inch).
 - b. For doors from 4530 mm (15 feet 1 inch) to 6300 mm (21 feet wide): 0.90 mm (0.0359 inch).
 - c. For doors wider than 6330 mm (21 feet 1 inch): 1.20 mm (0.0478 inch).
 - 3. Thickness of aluminum slats shall be as follows:
 - a. For doors less than 4500 mm (15 feet wide): 1 mm (0.040 inch).
 - b. For doors from 4530 mm (15 feet 1 inch) to 6300 mm (21 feet wide): 1.45 mm (0.057 inch).

c. For doors wider than 6330 mm (21 feet 1 inch): 1.65 mm (0.064 inch).

B. Endlocks and Windlocks:

1. Manufacturer's stock design of galvanized malleable iron or galvanized steel or stamped cadmium steel for doors.
2. The ends of each slat for exterior doors and each alternate slat for grilles and interior doors shall have endlocks.
3. Doors shall have windlocks at ends of at least every sixth slat. Windlocks shall prevent curtain from leaving guide because of deflection from wind pressure or other forces.

C. Bottom Bar:

1. Two angles of equal weight, one on each side, standard extruded aluminum members not less than 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick.
2. Bottom bar designed to receive weather-stripping and safety device, and be securely fastened to bottom of curtain or grille.

D. Barrel and Spring Counterbalance:

1. Curtain shall coil on a barrel supported at end of opening on brackets and be balanced by helical springs.
2. Barrel fabricated of steel pipe or commercial welded steel tubing of proper diameter and thickness for the size of curtain, to limit deflection with curtain rolled up, not to exceed 1 in 400 (0.03 inch per foot) of span.
3. Close ends of barrel with cast iron plugs, machined to fit the opening.
4. Within the barrel, install an oil-tempered, helical, counter balancing steel spring, capable of producing sufficient torque to assure easy operation of the door curtain from any position.
5. At least 80 percent of the door weight shall be counter balanced at any position.
6. Spring-tension shall be adjustable from outside of bracket without removing the hood or motor operator.

E. Brackets:

1. Steel plate designed to form end closure and support for hood and the end of the barrel assembly.
2. End of barrel or shaft shall screw into bracket hubs fabricated of cast iron or steel.
3. Equip bracket hubs or barrel plugs with prelubricated ball bearings, shielded or sealed.

F. Hoods:

1. Steel galvanized, 0.6 mm (0.0239 inch) thick.

2. Form hood to fit contour of end brackets.
3. Reinforce at top and bottom edges with rolled beads, rods or angles.
Hoods more than 3600 mm (12 feet) in length shall have intermediate supporting brackets.
4. Fasten to brackets with screws or bolts and provide for attachment to wall with bolts.
5. Provide a weather baffle at the lintel or inside the hood of each exterior door to minimize seepage of air through the hood enclosure.

G. Guides:

1. Manufacturer's standard formed sections or angles of steel.
 - a. Steel sections not less than 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick.
2. Form a channel pocket of sufficient depth to retain the curtain in place under the horizontal pressure specified, and prevent ends of curtain from slipping out of guide slots.
3. Top sections flared for smooth entry of curtain to vertical sections that will facilitate entry of curtain.
4. Provide stops to limit curtain travel above top of guides.
5. Provide guide of aluminum with replaceable wear strips to prevent metal to metal contact.
6. Mounting brackets shall provide closure between guides and jambs.

H. Weather-stripping:

1. Manually Operated Doors: Exterior doors shall have a compressible and replaceable rubber, neoprene, or vinyl weather seal attached to bottom bar.
2. Motor Operated Doors: Bottom bar safety device shall be a combination compressible seal and safety device as specified in paragraph, ELECTRIC MOTOR OPERATORS.
3. At exterior doors provide replaceable sweep type continuous vinyl or neoprene weather seals on guides and across head on exterior to seal against wind infiltration.

I. Locking:

1. Cylinder locks shall receive standard screw in cylinders furnished under Section, BUILDERS HARDWARE.
2. For each manually operated exterior door, provide manufacturer's standard cylinder dead lock type locking device on the inside at each door jamb, key operated from the exterior and interior by turn knob.
3. For motor operated doors provide manufacturer's standard cylinder dead lock type locking device on the inside, key operated from both

sides, interlocked with motor to prevent motor from operating when locks are activated.

2.4 MANUAL OPERATORS

A. Push-up Operation:

1. Provide one lifting handle on each side of door and counterbalance in a manner to provide easy operation while raising or lowering the curtain by hand.
2. The maximum exertion or pull required for lift handle operation shall not exceed 1197 Pa (25 psf).
3. Provide pull-down straps or pole hooks on bottom rail of doors over 2100 mm (7 feet) high.

B. Hand Chain Operation:

1. Galvanized, endless chain operating over a sprocket and extending to within 900 mm (3 feet) of floor.
2. Obtain reduction by use of suitable permanently lubricated gearing connected by roller chain and sprocket drive.
3. Calculate gear reduction to reduce pull required on hand chain, not to exceed 1676 Pa (35 psf).

2.5 FIRE DOORS

- A. B-labeled fire doors shall be complete with hardware, accessories, and automatic closing device as required by NFPA 80.
- B. Equip fire doors with an automatic closing mechanism actuated by fusible links to release at 54 °C (130 °F).
- C. Doors shall be forced into a closed position by an auxiliary spring in the barrel which is inoperative during normal operation and when activated will not affect the adjustment of the counterbalance spring. The auxiliary spring shall exert pressure on the curtain until the release device is reset. Door shall come to rest on the floor without impact.
- D. Control descent of curtain by an oscillating governor.
- E. Provide handles for push up operation

2.6 FINISHES

A. Steel:

1. Clean surfaces of steel free from scale, rust, oil and grease, and then apply a light colored shop prime paint after fabrication.
2. Non-galvanized steel: Treat to assure maximum paint adherence, and apply corrosion inhibitive primer.
3. Galvanized steel: Apply a phosphate treatment and a corrosion inhibitive primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Locate anchors and inserts for guides, brackets, motors, switches, hardware, and other accessories accurately.
- C. Securely attach guides to adjoining construction with not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter bolts, near each end and spaced not over 600 mm (24 inches) apart.
- D. Locate control switches where shown.
- E. Install all electric devices and wiring as specified in DIVISION 16 ELECTRICAL.

3.2 REPAIR

- A. Repair prime painted zinc-coated surfaces and bare zinc-coated surfaces that are damaged by the application of galvanizing repair compound. Spot prime all damaged shop prime painted surfaces including repaired prime painted zinc-coated surfaces.
- B. Coiling Doors shall be lubricated, properly adjusted, and demonstrated to operate freely.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Isolate aluminum in contact with or fastened to dissimilar metals other than stainless steel, white bronze or other metals not compatible with aluminum by one of the following:
 - 1. Paint the dissimilar metal with a prime coat of zinc-Molybdate or other suitable primer, followed by two coats of aluminum paint.
 - 2. Place an approved caulking compound, or a non-absorptive tape, or gasket between the aluminum and the dissimilar metal.
- B. Paint aluminum in contact with or built into mortar, concrete, plaster or other masonry materials with a coat of bituminous paint.
- C. Paint aluminum in contact with wood or other absorptive materials, that may repeatedly become wet, with a coat of bituminous paint or two coats of aluminum paint.

3.4 INSPECTION

Upon completion, doors shall be weathertight and doors shall be free from warp, twist, or distortion.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08710
BUILDERS HARDWARE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

Builders' hardware and related items necessary for complete installation and operation of doors.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Caulking: Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- B. Application of Hardware: Section 08110, STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES
- C. Finishes: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULE.
- D. Painting: Section 09900, PAINTING.

1.3 GENERAL

- A. All hardware shall comply with UFAS, (Uniform Federal Accessible Standards) unless specified otherwise.
- B. Hardware for Labeled Fire Doors and Exit Doors: Conform to requirements of NFPA 80 for labeled fire doors and to NFPA 101 for exit doors, as well as to other requirements specified. Provide hardware listed by UL, except where heavier materials, large size, or better grades are specified herein under paragraph HARDWARE SETS. In lieu of UL labeling and listing, test reports from a nationally recognized testing agency may be submitted showing that hardware has been tested in accordance with UL test methods and that it conforms to NFPA requirements.
- C. Hardware for application on metal and wood doors and frames shall be made to standard templates. Furnish templates to the fabricator of these items in sufficient time so as not to delay the construction.
- D. The following items shall be of the same manufacturer, if possible, except as otherwise specified:
 - 1. Mortise locksets.
 - 2. Hinges for hollow metal and wood doors.
 - 3. Surface applied overhead door closers.
 - 4. Exit devices.
 - 5. Floor closers.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Hardware Schedule: Prepare and submit hardware schedule in the following form:

Hardware Item	Quantity	Size	Reference Publication Type No.	Finish	Mfr. Name and Catalog No.	Key Control Symbols	UL Mark (if fire rated and listed)	ANSI/BHMA Finish Designation

C. Samples and Manufacturers' Literature:

1. Samples: All hardware items (proposed for the project) that have not been previously approved by Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association shall be submitted for approval. Tag and mark all items with manufacturer's name, catalog number and project number.
2. Samples are not required for hardware listed in the specifications by manufacturer's catalog number, if the contractor proposes to use the manufacturer's product specified.

D. Certificate of Compliance and Test Reports: Submit certificates that hardware conforms to the requirements specified herein. Certificates shall be accompanied by copies of reports as referenced. The testing shall have been conducted either in the manufacturer's plant and certified by an independent testing laboratory or conducted in an independent laboratory, within four years of submittal of reports for approval.

1.5 DELIVERY AND MARKING

Deliver items of hardware to job site in their original containers, complete with necessary appurtenances including screws, keys, and instructions. Tag one of each different item of hardware and deliver to Resident Engineer for reference purposes. Tag shall identify items by Project Specification number and manufacturer's catalog number. These items shall remain on file in Resident Engineer's office until all other similar items have been installed in project, at which time the Resident Engineer will deliver items on file to Contractor for installation in predetermined locations on the project.

1.6 INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Hardware set listed in this section are keyed to doors in the room finish schedule/door schedule in section 9050.3.3.
- B. Manufacturers' Catalog Number References: Where manufacturers' products are specified herein, products of other manufacturers which are

considered equivalent to those specified may be used. Manufacturers whose products are specified are identified by abbreviations as follows:

Adams-Rite	Adams Rite Mfg. Co.	Glendale, CA
Glynn Johnson	Glynn Johnson Co.	Chicago, IL
LCN	LCN Closers	Princeton, IL
Firemark	Rixon-Firemark Co.	Chicago, IL
Hager	Hager Hinge Company	Saint Louis, MO
Stanley	The Stanley Works	New Britain, CT
Trimco	Triangle Brass Mfg. Co.	Los Angeles, CA
Unican	Simplex Security Systems	Collinsville, CT
Von Duprin	Von Duprin Hardware Co.	Indianapolis, IN
Zero	Zero Weather Stripping Co.	New York, NY

C. Keying: A new Great Grandmaster key shall be established for this project. The key system shall be removable core type as previously described. The manufacturer shall furnish code pattern listings so keys may be reproduced by code. The manufacturer shall design the new key system with the capacity to relock the existing station and also provide for 25 percent expansion capability beyond this requirement. Submit a keying chart for approval showing proposed keying layout and listing expansion capacity.

1. Keying information will be furnished to the Contractor by the Resident Engineer.
2. Supply information regarding key control of cylinder locks to manufacturers of equipment having cylinder type locks. Notify Resident Engineer immediately when and to whom keys or keying information is supplied. Return all such keys to the Resident Engineer.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. In text, hardware items are referred to by series, types, etc., listed in such specifications and standards, except as otherwise specified.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
F883-1904.....Standard Performance Specification for Padlocks
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
A156.1-00.....Butts and Hinges
A156.2-03.....Bored and Pre-assembled Locks and Latches

- A156.3-01.....Exit Devices
- A156.4-00.....Door Controls (Closers)
- A156.5-01.....Auxiliary Locks and Associated Products
- A156.6-01.....Architectural Door Trim
- A156.8-00.....Door Controls-Overhead Stops and Holders
- A156.13-02.....Mortise Locks and Latches Series 1000
- A156.15-01.....Release Devices-Closer Holder, Electromagnetic
and Electromechanical
- A156.16-02.....American National Standard for Auxiliary
Hardware
- A156.18-00.....Materials and Finishes
- A156.21-01.....Thresholds
- A156.22-03.....Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems
- A156.23-04.....Electromagnetic Locks
- A156.24-03.....Delayed Egress Locking Systems
- A156.26-00.....Continuous Hinges
- A250.8-03.....Standard Steel Doors and Frames
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 80-99.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows
 - 101-03.....Life Safety Code
- E. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - Building Materials Directory (2004)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BUTT HINGES

- A. ANSI A156.1. The following types of butt hinges shall be used for the types of doors listed, except where otherwise specified.
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Type A2112 for doors 900 mm (3 feet) wide or less and Type A2111 for doors over 900 mm (3 feet) wide. Hinges for exterior doors shall have non-removable pins.
 - 2. Interior Doors: Type 8112 for doors 900 mm (3 feet) wide or less and Type A8111 for doors over 900 mm (3 feet) wide.
 - 3. Any door installed in structural steel frames: Type A2412, A8412, A2411 or A8411 as applicable, except where otherwise specified. Such hinges shall be of same quality and weight as other hinges listed above for applicable door sizes.
 - 4. Labeled Wood Fire Doors: Type 8411 or Type 8412; these hinges shall be thru bolted to door with hex nuts and bolts.
- B. See Articles "MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE" and "HARDWARE SETS" for pivots and hinges other than butts specified above.

2.2 DOOR CLOSING DEVICES

Closing devices shall be products of one manufacturer for each type specified.

2.3 OVERHEAD CLOSERS

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.4, Grade 1.
- B. Closers shall conform to the following:
 - 1. The closer shall have 50 percent adjustable closing force over minimum value for that closer and have adjustable hydraulic back check effective between 60 degrees and 85 degrees of door opening.
 - 2. Where specified, closer shall have hold-open feature.
 - 3. Size Requirements: Size closers in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations or provide multi-size closers, sizes 1 through 6.
 - 4. Material of closer shall be forged or cast iron.
 - 5. Arm and brackets for closers shall be steel, malleable iron or high strength ductile cast iron.
 - 6. Closers shall have full size cover.
 - 7. Closers shall have adjustable hydraulic back-check and separate valves for closing and latching speed.

2.4 COMBINATION CLOSER - HOLDER

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.15; combination closer-holder with built-in electronic release.
- B. Combination closer-holder shall have the following features:
 - 1. Control door closing and latching sequence by hydraulic action.
 - 2. Wiring for 24V DC current. Current draw shall not exceed 0.16 amperes.
 - 3. Double level arm closing action, and adjustable hydraulic back-check.
 - 4. Spring power for closing force shall conform to ANSI A156.4 and have 50% spring power adjustment.
 - 5. Closer Size Requirements:
 - a. Doors, 900 mm (3 feet) and less in width: Size III closer.
 - b. Doors over 900 mm (3 feet) and less than 1050 mm (3 feet 6 inches) in width: Size IV closer.
 - c. Doors 1050 mm (3 feet 6 inches) and over in width: Size V closer.
 - 6. Hold open mechanism shall hold door open between 85 degrees and 180 degrees depending on wall and frame conditions. Mount device to provide maximum door opening permitted by building construction or equipment.
 - 7. Electronic release shall release door when signaled by smoke detector. Smoke detectors shall not be incorporated as an integral

part of door holders. Smoke detectors are specified in the ELECTRICAL Section.

8. All closers to have full covers.

9. All closers shall have a 1 ½" piston and an adjustable back check position valve.

2.5 DOOR STOPS

A. Conform to ANSI A156.16.

B. Provide door stops wherever an opened door or any item of hardware thereon would strike a wall, column, equipment or other parts of building construction. For concrete, masonry or quarry tile construction, use lead expansion shields for mounting door stops.

C. Where cylindrical locks with turn pieces or pushbuttons occur, equip wall bumpers Type L22251 (rubber pads having concave face) to receive turn piece or button.

D. Substitute floor stops Type L22141 or L22161 as appropriate, when wall bumpers would not provide an effective door stop.

E. Where drywall partitions occur, use floor stops, Type L22141 or L22161.

F. Provide stop Type L22011 or L22181, as applicable for exterior doors.

G. Provide appropriate roller bumper for each set of doors (except where closet doors occur) where two doors would interfere with each other in swinging.

H. Provide appropriate door mounted stop on doors in individual toilets where floor or wall mounted stops cannot be used.

2.6 OVERHEAD DOOR HOLDERS

Conform to ANSI Standard A156.8. Overhead holders shall be of sizes recommended by holder manufacturer for each width of door. Set overhead holders for 110 degree opening, unless limited by building construction or equipment.

2.7 LOCKS AND LATCHES

A. Conform to ANSI A156.2. Locks and latches for doors 45 mm (1-3/4 inch) thick or over shall have beveled fronts. Lock cylinders shall have not less than seven pins. Cylinders for all locksets shall be removable core type. Cylinders shall be furnished with construction removable cores and construction master keys. Cylinder shall be removable by special key or tool. Construct all cores so that they will be interchangeable into the core housings of all mortise locks, rim locks, cylindrical locks, and any other type lock included in the Great Grand Master Key System. Disassembly of lever or lockset shall not be required to remove core from lockset. All locksets or latches on double doors

with fire label shall have latch bolt with 19 mm (3/4 inch) throw. Provide temporary keying device or construction core of allow opening and closing during construction and prior to the installation of final cores.

B. In addition to above requirements, locks and latches shall comply with following requirements:

1. Mortise Lock and Latch Sets: Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.13. Mortise locksets shall be series 1000, minimum Grade 2. All locksets and latchsets, except on designated doors in Psychiatric (Mental Health) areas, shall have lever handles similar to Falcon S-lever Design. Lever handle shall be fabricated from wrought stainless steel. No substitute lever design or material shall be accepted. All locks and latchsets shall be furnished with curved lip strike and wrought box. Lock function F02 shall be furnished with key plates similar to Russwins No. A70. All lock cases installed on lead lined doors shall be lead lined before applying final hardware finish. Furnish armored fronts for all mortise locks.
2. Cylindrical Lock and Latch Sets: levers shall meet ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) requirements. Cylindrical locksets shall be series 4000 Grade I. Knobs for series 4000 lock and latch sets shall have 57 mm (2-1/4 inch) diameters. Where two turn pieces are specified for lock F76, turn piece on inside knob shall lock and unlock inside knob, and turn piece on outside knob shall unlock outside knob when inside knob is in the locked position. (This function is intended to allow emergency entry into these rooms without an emergency key or any special tool.)
3. Auxiliary locks shall be as specified under hardware sets and conform to ANSI A156.5.

2.8 KEYS

A. Stamp all keys with change number and key set symbol. Furnish keys in quantities as follows:

Locks/Keys	Quantity
Cylinder locks	2 keys each
Cylinder lock change key blanks	100 each different key way
Master-keyed sets	6 keys each
Grand Master sets	6 keys each
Great Grand Master set	5 keys
Control key	1 key

2.9 KEY INDEXING

- A. The lock supplier shall set up a three-way cross index system, including master keys, listing the keys alphabetically, and the key changes numerically on different colored index cards. Index cards shall be typewritten and inserted in a durable binder. Instruct the owner in proper use of the system.

2.10 ARMOR PLATES, COMBINATION KICK-MOP PLATES AND DOOR EDGING

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.6.
- B. Provide protective plates and door edging as specified below:
 1. Kick-mop plates and armor plates plastic or metal, Type J100 series, color as required. When wood grain plastic plates are specified in Section, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES, grain plates shall run in same direction as grain of face veneer of wood doors.
 2. Provide kick-mop plates for both sides of each door, except where noted as not required. Kick-mop plates shall be 125 mm (5 inches) high. On push side of doors where jamb stop extends to floor, make combination kick-mop plates 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) less than width of door, except pairs of metal doors which shall have plates 25 mm (1 inch) less than width of each door. Extend all other combination kick-mop plates to within 6 mm (1/4 inch) of each edge of doors. Kick mop plates shall butt astragals. For jamb stop requirements, see specification sections pertaining to door frames.
 3. Kick-mop plates are not required on following door sides:
 - a) Armor plate side of doors;
 - b) Exterior side of exterior doors;
 - c) Closet side of closet doors;
 - d) Storage side of doors to or from storage spaces; and
 4. Armor plates for doors are listed under Article "Hardware Sets". Armor plates shall be 875 mm (35 inches) high and 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) less than width of doors, except on pairs of metal doors. Plates on pairs of metal doors shall be 25 mm (1 inch) less than width of each door. Where top of intermediate rail of door is less than 875 mm (35 inches) from door bottom, extend armor plates to within 13 mm (1/2 inch) of top rail. On doors equipped with panic devices, extend armor plates to within 13 mm (1/2 inch) of panic bolt cross bar.
 5. Where louver or grille occurs in lower portion of doors, substitute stretcher plate and kick-mop plate in place of armor plate. Size of stretcher plate and kick-mop plate shall be 200 mm (8 inches) high.

2.11 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.3. Exit devices shall be Grade 1; type and function are specified in hardware sets. Provide flush with finished floor strikes for vertical rod exit devices in interior of building. Trim shall have lever handles similar to locksets, unless otherwise specified.
- B. Exit devices for fire doors shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for Fire Exit Hardware. Submit proof of compliance.

2.12 FLUSH BOLTS (LEVER EXTENSION)

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.16. Flush bolts shall be Type L24081 unless otherwise specified. Furnish proper dustproof strikes conforming to ANSI A156.16, for flush bolts required on lower part of doors. Modify flush bolts to fit stiles of aluminum doors on double-acting doors.
- B. Face plates for cylindrical strikes shall be rectangular and not less than 25 mm by 63 mm (1 inch by 2-1/2 inches).
- C. Friction-fit cylindrical dustproof strikes with circular face plate may be used only where metal thresholds occur.

2.13 FLUSH BOLTS (AUTOMATIC)

Conform to ANSI A156.16. Dimension of flush bolts shall conform to ANSI A115. Bolts shall conform to Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for fire door hardware. Flush bolts shall automatically latch and unlatch. Furnish dustproof strikes conforming to ANSI A156.16 for bottom flushbolt. Face plates for dustproof strike shall be rectangular and not less than 38 mm by 90 mm (1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches).

2.14 DOOR PULLS

Conform to ANSI A156.6. Pull plate 90 mm by 350 mm (3-1/2 inches by 14 inches), unless otherwise specified. Cut plates of door pulls for cylinders, or turn pieces where required.

2.15 PUSH PLATES

Conform to ANSI A156.6. Plastic, Type J302, 200 mm (8 inches) wide by 350 mm (14 inches) high. Provide plastic Type J300 plates 100 mm (4 inches wide by 350 mm (14 inches) high) where push plates are specified for doors with stiles less than 200 mm (8 inches) wide. Color shall be as specified for kick-mop plates in Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES. Cut plates for cylinders, and turn pieces where required. When wood grain plastic plates are specified in INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES Section, grain in plates shall run in same direction as grain of face veneer of wood doors.

2.16 COMBINATION PUSH AND PULL PLATES

Conform to ANSI 156.6. Type J303, stainless steel 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick, 80 mm (3-1/3 inches) wide by 800 mm (16 inches) high), top and bottom edges shall be rounded. Secure plates to wood doors with 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) long No. 12 wood screws. Cut plates for turn pieces, and cylinders where required. Pull shall be mounted down.

2.17 COORDINATORS

Conform to ANSI A156.16. Coordinators, when specified for fire doors, shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for fire door hardware. Coordinator may be omitted on exterior pairs of doors where either door will close independently regardless of the position of the other door. Coordinator may be omitted on interior pairs of non-labeled open where open back strike is used. Open back strike shall not be used on labeled doors. Paint coordinators to match door frames, unless coordinators are plated.

2.18 THRESHOLDS

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.21, mill finish extruded aluminum, except as otherwise specified. In existing construction, thresholds shall be installed in a bed of sealant with machine screws and expansion shields. In new construction, embed aluminum anchors coated with epoxy in concrete to secure thresholds. Furnish thresholds for the full width of the openings.
- B. For thresholds at elevators entrances see other sections of specifications.

2.19 WEATHERSTRIPS (FOR EXTERIOR DOORS)

Conform to ANSI A156.22. Air leakage shall not to exceed 0.50 CFM per foot of crack length ($0.000774\text{m}^3/\text{s/m}$).

2.20 MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE

- A. Access Doors (including Sheet Metal, Screen and Woven Wire Mesh Types): Except for fire-rated doors and doors to Temperature Control Cabinets, equip each single or double metal access door with Lock Type E76213, conforming to ANSI A156.5. Key locks as directed. Ship lock prepaid to the door manufacturer. Hinges shall be provided by door manufacturer.
- B. Cylinders for Various Partitions and Doors: Key cylinders same as entrance doors of area in which partitions and door occur, except as otherwise specified . Provide cylinders to operate locking devices where specified for following partitions and doors:
 - 1. Fire-rated access doors-Engineer's key set.
- C. Mutes: Conform to ANSI A156.16. Provide door mutes or door silencers

Type L03011, of white or light gray color, on each steel door frame,

except lead-lined frames and frames for sound-resistant, lightproof and electromagnetically shielded doors. Furnish 3 mutes for single doors and 2 mutes for each pair of doors, except double-acting doors. Provide 4 mutes or silencers for frames for each Dutch type door. Provide 2 mutes for each edge of sliding door which would contact door frame.

2.21 PADLOCKS FOR VARIOUS DOORS, GATES AND HATCHES

- A. Fed. Spec. FF-P-101, Type EPC, size 50 mm (2 inch) wide chain; furnish extended shackles as required by job conditions. Provide padlocks, with key cylinders, for each door in following areas as noted.
- B. Key padlocks as follows:
 - 1. Chain Link Fence Gates for Electrical Substation and other Fenced Buildings or Areas: Engineer's set, except as otherwise specified.
 - 2. Roof Access and Scuttles: Engineer's Set
 - 3. Cold room in Morgue Department: Autopsy Set.

2.22 THERMOSTATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL VALVE CABINETS

- A. Where lock is shown, equip each cabinet door (metal) with lock Type E76213, conforming to ANSI A156.5. Key locks in Key Sets approved by Contracting Officer. See mechanical drawings and specifications for location of cabinets.
- B. Cabinet manufacturer shall supply the hinges, bolts and pulls. Ship locks to cabinet manufacturer for installation.

2.23 HINGED WIRE GUARDS (FOR WINDOWS, DOORS AND TRANSOMS) AND WIRE PARTITION DOORS

- A. Butt hinges, type A8133 (special swaging) 100 mm by 90 mm (4 inches by 3-1/2 inches), Finish US2C.
 - 1. 3 hinges for guards over 1060 mm (3-1/2 feet) high.
 - 2. 2 hinges for guards less than 1060 mm (3-1/2 feet) high.
- B. Conform to ANSI A156.5. Lock Type E16081 for guards and Type E16061 for partitions.
 - 1. Keying: Except as noted otherwise, key locks like entrance door or space wherein guards and partitions are located except as otherwise specified.
 - 2. Key locks for partitions enclosing mechanical and electrical equipment in Engineer's Set. (See detailed drawings for number of locks and butt hinges required for each guard).

2.24 DOOR EDGE GUARDS

ANSI 156.6 - J210 - Mortised .050 stainless steel edge guards for 1 3/4" O.D. woods doors.

2.25 FINISHES

- A. Exposed surfaces of hardware shall have ANSI A156.18, finishes as specified below. Finishes on all hinges, pivots, closers, thresholds, etc., shall be as specified below under "Miscellaneous Finishes." For field painting (final coat) of ferrous hardware, see Section, PAINTING.
- B. 626 or 630: All surfaces on exterior and interior of buildings, except where other finishes are specified.
- C. Miscellaneous Finishes:
 1. Butts: Outswinging Exterior Doors
US32D (BHMA 630) on Stainless Steel
 2. Butts: Interior Doors and Inswinging Exterior Doors
US26D (BHMA 652) on Steel
 3. Continuous Hinges:
US28 (BHMA 628) on Aluminum
 4. Flush Bolts:
US26D (BHMA 626) on Brass or Bronze
 5. Exit Devices:
US32D (BHMA 630) on Stainless Steel
 6. Locks and Latches:
US32D (BHMA 630) on Stainless Steel
 7. Push Plates, Pulls and Push Bars:
US32D (BHMA 630) on Stainless Steel
 8. Coordinators:
USP (BHMA 600) on Steel
 9. Kick Plates, Armor Plates, and Edge Guards:
US32D (BHMA 630) on Stainless Steel
 - 10.Overhead Stops and Holders:
US26D (BHMA 626) on Brass or Bronze
 - 11.Closers: Surface mounted.
Sprayed Aluminum Lacquer.
 - 12.Latch Protectors:
US32D (BHMA 630) on Stainless Steel
 - 13.Miscellaneous Hardware:
US26D (BHMA 626) on Brass or Bronze
 - 14.Pivots: Match door trim.
 - 15.Thresholds: Mill finish aluminum.
 - 16.Cover plates for floor hinges and pivots: 630.
 - 17.Other primed steel hardware: 652.

Finish List

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
26D	Satin Chrome
32D	Satin Stainless Steel
689	Aluminum Painted
BLK	Black
GREY	Grey
CLEAR	Clear
US28	Clear Anodized ALuminum
USP	Prime Coat
US26D	Satin Chrome
US32D	Satin Stainless Steel

D. Color of Plastic Items: See Section 09050 INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES. Where colors other than chocolate brown or black are specified, color of core material may be different than color of face.

E. Special Finish: Exposed surfaces of hardware for dark bronze anodized aluminum doors shall have oxidized oil rubbed bronze finish (dark bronze) finish on door closers shall closely match doors.

2.26 BASE METALS

Apply specified U.S. Standard finishes on different base metals as following:

Finish	Base Metal
652	Steel
626	Brass or bronze
630	Stainless steel

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HARDWARE HEIGHTS

A. Locate hardware on doors at heights specified below unless otherwise noted:

B. Hardware Heights from Finished Floor:

- Exit devices centerline of strike (where applicable) 1000 mm (40-5/16 inches).
- Locksets and latch sets centerline of strike 1000 mm (40-5/16 inches).
- Deadlocks centerline of strike 1200 mm (48 inches).
- Hospital arm pull 1170 mm (46 inches) to centerline of bottom supporting bracket.
- Centerline of door pulls to be 1000 mm (40 inches).

6. Push plates and push-pull shall be 1250 mm (50 inches) to top of plate.
7. Push-pull latch to be 1000 mm (40-5/16 inches) to centerline of strike.
8. Centerline of deadlock strike to be 840 mm (33 inches) when used with push-pull latch.
9. Locate other hardware at standard commercial heights. Locate push and pull plates to prevent conflict with other hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Closer devices, including those with hold-open features, shall be equipped and mounted to provide maximum door opening permitted by building construction or equipment. Closers shall be mounted regular arm. Where closers are mounted on doors they shall be mounted with sex nuts and bolts; foot shall be fastened to frame with machine screws.
- B. Substitute parallel arm or top jamb mounting for regular arm mounting where the following conditions occur:
 1. Where door swing, in full open position, would be limited to less than 90 degrees due to partition construction and closer location.
 2. Where door to room opens outward into corridor.
 3. Where exterior doors open outward.
- C. Hinge Size Requirements:

Door Thickness	Door Width	Hinge Height
45 mm (1-3/4 inch)	900 mm (3 feet) and less	113 mm (4-1/2 inches)
45 mm (1-3/4 inch)	Over 900 mm (3 feet) but not more than 1200 mm (4 feet)	125 mm (5 inches)
35 mm (1-3/8 inch) (hollow core wood doors)	Not over 1200 mm (4 feet)	113 mm (4-1/2 inches)

- D. Hinge leaves shall be sufficiently wide to allow doors to swing clear of door frame trim.
- E. Hinges Required Per Door:

Doors 1500 mm (5 ft) or less in height	2 butts
Doors over 1500 mm (5 ft) high and not over 2280 mm (7 ft 6 in) high	3 butts
Doors over 2280 mm (7 feet 6 inches) high	4 butts
Dutch type doors	4 butts
Doors with spring hinges 1370 mm (4 feet 6 inches) high	2 butts

or less	
Doors with spring hinges over 1370 mm (4 feet 6 inches)	3 butts

- F. Fastenings: Suitable size and type and shall harmonize with hardware as to material and finish. Provide machine screws and lead expansion shields to secure hardware to concrete, ceramic or quarry floor tile, or solid masonry. Fiber or rawl plugs and adhesives are not permitted. All fastenings exposed to weather shall be of nonferrous metal.
- G. After locks have been installed; show in presence of Resident Engineer that keys operate their respective locks in accordance with keying requirements. (All keys, Master Key level and above shall be sent Registered Mail to the Medical Center Director along with the bitting list. Also a copy of the invoice shall be sent to the Resident Engineer for his records.) Installation of locks which do not meet specified keying requirements shall be considered sufficient justification for rejection and replacement of all locks installed on project.
- H. Install thresholds with machine screws and anchors (MSTA).

3.3 HARDWARE SETS

Following sets of hardware correspond to hardware symbols shown on drawings. Where hardware set for a single door is specified for a pair of doors; equip each leaf of such pair of doors with set noted. Only those hardware sets that are shown on drawings will be required. Disregard hardware sets listed in specifications but not shown on drawings.

HARDWARE SETS	
SET #83B	
Hinges	AS REQUIRED
Exit Device	Type 1 Function 04
Closer	C02021
Wall Stop	L02101
Raindrip	R0Y976
Door Silencers	L03011
SET #162A	
Cylinder	AS REQUIRED
The balance of the hardware is furnished by the door supplier.	

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08750
INSTALLATION OF DOORS AND HARDWARE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies the hanging of doors and installation of hardware.
- B. Fitting and preparation for hardware of unfinished wood doors.
- C. Installation of lock cylinders in special doors.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Sealants for Thresholds: Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- B. Fitting and Preparation for hardware: Section 08110, STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES.
- C. Special doors specified to have the hardware except cylinders furnished with the door and installed in accordance with the specification for each particular door:
 - 1. Roll-Up Doors and Grills: Section 08331, OVERHEAD ROLL-UP DOORS AND GRILLS.

1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI):
 - A115.1G-94.....Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 80-99.....Fire Doors and Windows
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A167-99.....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FASTENERS

- A. Use fasteners furnished with hardware for installation.
 - 1. Where fasteners are not furnished with item, use fasteners of suitable size and type to harmonize with item as to material and finish and to suit material to which fastened.
 - 2. Use machine screws and metal expansion shields to secure hardware to concrete, ceramic or quarry tile, or solid masonry. Do not use fiber, plastic, and lead plugs or adhesives.
- B. Use non-ferrous metal fastenings exposed to weather.

2.2 SHIMS

Stainless steel, type 302 or 304, thickness for conditions required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION GENERAL

- A. Hang doors and install hardware when concrete work, plastering, tile setting, and other operations have been completed which increase humidity and dust in building.
- B. Do not hang wood doors in areas where materials are not sufficiently dry so as to not affect the dimensional stability of the door.
- C. Install hardware, except hinges, after field painting or sealing, specified in Section PAINTING.
- D. Center doors in the opening or frame with contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping the components.
- E. Replace doors and frames that do not conform to hardware height requirements.

3.2 INSTALLING DOORS AND BUILDER'S HARDWARE

- A. Install hardware at the location (heights) specified.
- B. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and DHI A115.1G unless specified otherwise.
- C. Drill and tap screw holes in steel frames and doors for surface mounted hardware.
- D. Use shims only at hinges where required to provide uniform clearance and alignment of door. Cut shims from stainless steel sheet to same size as hinge.
- E. Do not drive screws in place.
- F. Carefully fit and securely attach hardware items to doors and frames.
- G. Closers including those with hold-open features:
 - 1. Where closers are mounted on doors, mount with sex nuts and bolts; fasten foot to frame with machine screws.
 - 2. Mount to provide maximum door opening permitted by building construction or equipment.
 - 3. Use regular arm mounting except where door swing is less than 90 degrees or closer is on interior of exterior door or door is equipped with roller latch.
- H. Thresholds:
 - 1. Install thresholds in a bed of sealant with machine screws and expansion shields. For sealant see section, SEALANT AD CAULKING.
 - 2. Cut thresholds to closely fit jambs.
 - 3. Drill and cut for door holders and bottom bolts where required.

- I. Install automatic door bottom so that gasket is automatically forced down to tightly seal instantly when the door is fully closed, and raised instantly when the door begins to open. Mount automatic door bottom to provide 5 mm (3/16 inch) clearance at door bottom.
- J. Install seals on door frames for lightproof doors. Secure seals to door frames at jamb and heads with contact adhesive to prevent infiltration of light.
- K. Install rain drips for heads of door frames not protected by canopy or soffit.
- L. Install key cabinet as directed by the Resident Engineer.

3.3 INSTALLING FIRE RATED DOORS

- A. Install fire rated doors in accordance with NFPA 80.
- B. Do not remove qualified testing and inspection agency label.

3.4 INSTALLING SOUND CONTROL DEVICES

Install sound rated door gasketing and bottom seal, and adjust to obtain the specified sound rating.

3.5 INSTALLING WEATHERSTRIPPING AND SEALS

- A. Accurately cut and fit weatherstrips and seals. Carefully aligned for full contact and tight seal and secure firmly to maintain weatherproof, waterproof, and lightproof seal without preventing smooth and easy operation of doors.
- B. Provide suitable blocking where necessary to clear hardware; and make adjustments as required to meet special conditions encountered.
- C. Prime paint wood surfaces which have been cut with wood sealer before weatherstrips are installed.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust Doors, including hardware to operate as designed without binding or deformation of the members.
- B. After installation, clean surfaces, remove temporary labels, paint spots and other defacement.
- C. Clean prefinished and plated items and items fabricated from stainless steel, aluminum and copper alloys, as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect doors and hardware from damage until completion of the project.
- B. Protective covering for wood doors is specified in Section, WOOD DOORS.

- - - E N D - - -

Section 09050
INTERIOR / EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULE

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section contains a coordinated system in which requirements for materials specified in other sections shown are identified by abbreviated material names and finish codes in the room finish schedule or shown for other locations.

1.2 MANUFACTURERS

Manufacturer's trade names and numbers used herein are 'BASIC OF DESIGN' only to identify colors, finishes, textures, textures and patterns. Products of other manufacturer's equivalent to colors, finishes textures and patterns of manufacturers listed that meet requirements of technical specifications will be acceptable "as an approved equal" in writing by contracting officer for finish requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Submit in accordance with Section 01340, Samples and Shop Drawings provide quadruplicate samples for color approval of material and finished specified in this section.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of these specifications to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. MASTER PAINTING INSTITUTE: (MPI)
2001..... Architectural Painting Specification Manual

PART II - PRODUCTS

2.1 COLOR SLIDES

- A. Size 24 x 35 mm.
- B. Labeled for:
 - 1. Building name and number.
 - 2. Room name and number.

2.2. DIVISION 2 - SITEWORK

A. BOLLARDS

Material	Finish	Style Name/No.	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Painted Steel Pipe	Paint	Round	Sherwin Williams	SW 7029

2.3 DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE

A. CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE (03301)

Surface	Finish Description
Floor Slab	Coarse Wire Broom
Equipment Pads	Floated Sandy Texture

B. MORTAR AND GROUT (04100)

Material	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name / No.
GM-1	Superlite Block	#58 3 LB. per 94 LBS. Of cement
GM-2	Superlite Block	#30 4 LB. Per 94 LBS. Of cement

2.4 DIVISION 4 - MASONRY

A. CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT (CMU) (4200)

Type	Size	Pattern	Finish	Mfg. Color Name/No.
CMU Standard	12"x8"x16"	Running Bond	Ground face/ Split Face	Buff 62.28.3
CMU Standard	8"x8"x16"	Running Bond	Ground face/ Split Face	Buff 62.28.3
Ground Face Block	12"x8"x16"	Running Bond	Ground face	Autumn 62.27.3

2.5 DIVISION 5 - METALS

A. STRUCTURAL STEEL (05120)

Component	Finish	Color
Beams, Columns	Paint	Agreeable Gray SW 7029

B. Steel Decking (05311) or (05321)

Finish	Color
Paint	Agreeable Gray SW 7029

C. METAL FABRICATION (05500)

Steel Plate Door Sill	Paint- Agreeable Gray SW7029
Structural Steel Angle Corner	Paint- Agreeable Gray SW7029

Corner Guards @ CMU Walls to extend to top of CMU -10'-0"

2.6 Division 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

A. Performed Wall Panels (07410)

Type	Shape	Ext. Finish	Int. Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Concept Series	CS-660	Kynar 500	Mill	Centria	9921-Charcol Grey

B. BITUMINOUS BUILT-UP ROOFING (07510)

Color	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
White	GAF	White (Cap Sheet)

C. ROOF SPECIALITIES AND ACCESSORIES (07700)

Item	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Copings	Extruded Aluminum	Kynar 500		Kynar
Fascia System	Extruded Aluminum	Kynar 500		Kynar

D. SEALANTS AND CAULKING (07920)

Location	Color	Manufacturer	Manufacturer Color
CMU Control Joints	GM-1	Sonneborn	Custom color to match grout color GM-1
		Pecora Corp	Custom color to match grout color GM-1
		Sika	Custom color to match grout color GM-1

2.7 DIVISION 8 - DOORS AND WINDOWS

A. STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES (08110)

Paint both sides of door and frames same color including ferrous metal louvers, and hardware attached to door	
Component	Color of Paint Type and Gloss
Door	P-1 Sherwin Williams - Web Grey #SW7075 - Gloss Level 6.
Frame	P-3 Sherwin Williams - Green Black #SW6994 - Gloss Level 6.
Window Frame	Anodized Aluminum - Mill Finish

B. OVERHEAD ROLL-UPS DOORS AND GRILLES (08331)

Location	Item	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Throughout	Door	Galvanized Steel	Paint	Raynor	Green Black # SW 6994

F. ALUMINUM WINDOWS (08520)

Type	Finish	Glazing	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Fixed	Clear Anodized	Viracon 1" Low E	Kawneer	Mill

G. WINDOW SILLS

Room No. and Name	Material	Finish
Throughout	Aluminum (With Windows)	Aluminum Clear Anodized

H.WINDOW STOOLS

Room No. and Name	Material	Finish
Throughout	CMU	P.1 SW 7029 Agreeable Grey

I.BUILDERS HARDWARE (08710)

Item	Material	Finish
Hinges	Steel/Stainless Steel	US26D/US32D
Door Closers	Steel/Plastic Cover	Aluminum (Painted)
Floor Closers	Steel/Stainless Steel	US26D/US32D
Floor Pivot Sets	Steel/Brass-Bronze	US26D
Closer/Holder	Steel/Plastic Cover	Aluminum (Painted)
Floor Stops	Brass-Bronze	US26D
Door Holders	Brass-Bronze	US26D
Lock/Latches	Brass-Bronze	US26D
Key Cabinet	Steel	Gray (Painted)
Armor Plates	Metal	US32D
Kick Mop Plates	Metal	*US32D
Exit Device	Stainless Steel	US32D
Flush Bolts	Brass-Bronze/Steel	US26D
Door Pulls	Brass-Bronze/Stainless Steel	US26D/US32D
Push Plates	Stainless Steel	US32D
Combination Push Pull Plate	Brass-Bronze/Stainless Steel	US26D/US32D
Coordinators	Steel	Prime Coat
Light Proof Seals	Aluminum	US28
Weather Strip	Aluminum	US28
Threshold	Aluminum	US28

* 16" High on both sides of all wood doors.

J. GLASS AND GLAZING (08810)

Glazing Type	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name / No.
G-1	Viracon	1" Low-E VRE 1-67
G-2	Viracon	1" Clear insulated spandrel glass w/V948 medium grey on surface #4

2.8 DIVISION 9 - FINISHES

A. RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES (09679)

Finish Code	Item	Height	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name / No.
RB-1	Rubber Base (RB)	4 1/2"	Burker Mercer	Thunder #727
RTS-1	Rubber Transition Strip # 633 Tile Reducer	1/8" x 1"	Burker Mercer	Thunder #727

B. PAINT AND COATINGS (09900)

1. MPI Gloss and Sheen Standards

	Gloss Level	Gloss @60	Sheen @85
Level 1	a traditional matte finish- flat	max 5 units, and	max 10 units
Level 2	a high side sheen flat-"a velvet-like" finish	max 10 units, and	10-35 units
Level 3	a traditional "egg-shell like" finish	10-25 units, and	10-35 units
Level 4	a "satin-like" finish	20-35 units, and	min. 35 units
Level 5	a traditional semi-gloss	35-70 units	
Level 6	a traditional gloss	70-85 units	
Level 7	a high gloss	more than 85 units	

2. PAINT

Paint Code	Gloss	Manufacturer	MFG. Color Name/ No.
P-1	Gloss Level 3	Sherwin Williams	#SW-7029 Agreeable Gray
P-2	Gloss Level 6	Sherwin Williams	#SW6994 Dark Gray
P-3	Gloss Level 6	Sherwin Williams	#SW-7075 Web Grey
P-4	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used
P-5	Gloss Level 3	Sherwin Williams	#SW 6242 Bracing Blue
P-6	Gloss Level 3	Sherwin Williams	#SW 007 Decorus Amber

PART III EXECUTION

3.1 FINISH SCHEDULES & MISCELLANEOUS ABBREVIATION

Term				
Acustical Ceiling	AT		Gypsum Wallboard	GWB
Acustical Ceiling Grid	ACG		Material	MAT
Anodized Aluminum	AAC		Natural Finish	NF
Colored			Paint	P
Anodized Aluminum	AA		Plastic Laminate	HPDL
Natural Finish			Porcelain Paver Tile	PPT
Baked on Enamel	BE		Porcelain Paver Tile	PPTG
Concrete	CONC		Grout	
Concrete Masonary Unit	CMU		Remove	RM
Concrete Sealed	CS		Rubber Base	RB
Existing	E		Rubber Transition Strip	RTS
Existing Finish To Remain	EFTR		Vinyl Composition Tile	VCT
Exterior	EXT		Vinyl Protective Wall	VPWS
Exterior Paint	EXT-P		Sheeting	
Fence	F		To Match Existig	XX
Grout/Mortar	GM-1		Walk Off Matt	WOM
Grout/Mortar	GM-2		Wood	WD
Galvanization	G			

3.2 FINISH SCHEDULE SYMBOLS

Symbol Definition

- ** Same finish as adjoining walls
 - No color required

3.3 ROOM FINISH SCHEDULE / DOOR SCHEDULE

- A. Match adjoining or existing similar surfaces colors, textures or patterns where disturbed or damaged by alterations or new work when not scheduled.
 B. Room Finish Schedule Symbols:
 N = North, S = South, E = East, W = West and C = Ceiling

Room No. and Name	FLOOR		BASE		WALL		WAINSCOT		CEILING	DOORS	HARDWARE
2.112 New Chiller Room	CONC CS	N	RB	B-1	CMU/GWB	P-1	N/A	N/A	STL P-1		
		E	RB	B-1	CMU/GWB	P-1	N/A	N/A		**4/1/B 11/4/E	83B 162A
		S	RB	B-1	CMU/GWB	P-1	N/A	N/A			
		W	RB	B-1	CMU/GWB	P-5	N/A	N/A			
		C									

* Refer to sheet AE-540 for jamb details.

** Exterior doors to chiller room to have storeroom lock #F07 (with no outside handle) and cylinder pull #J303, Finish: 32D.

DOOR SIZES

MARK	WIDTH	HEIGHT
A	3'-6"	7'-0"
B	3'-0"	7'-0"
C	3'-2"	7'-0"
D	16'-0"	16'-0"
E	14'-0"	16'-0"
F	4'-0"	7'-0"
G	3'-10"	7'-0"
H	3'-0"	8'-0"
I	7'-0"	8'-0"

(Double letters in door schedule indicates doors with two leafs)

DOOR TYPES

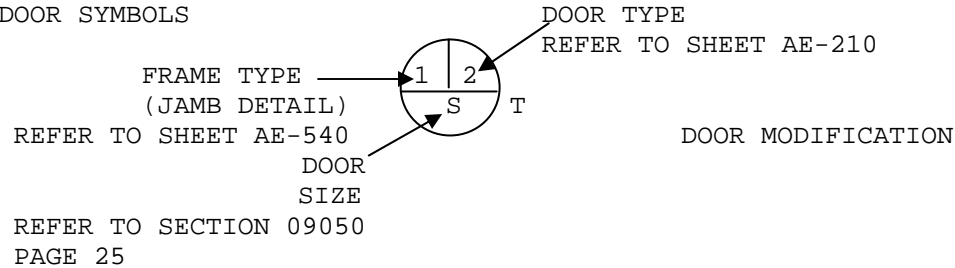
MARK	MATERIAL
1	Hollow Metal
2	Wood
3	Aluminum/Glass
4	Overhead Roll-up
5	Chain Link

FRAME TYPE

Aluminum
Hollow Metal

Refer to sheet AE-540 for jamb details.

DOOR SYMBOLS



DOOR MODIFICATIONS

A	LAMINATED GL
D	DOUBLE GLAZED TEMPERED GLASS
H	ELECTRIC HOLD
L	LOUVER
LP	LIGHT PROOF LOUVER
M	MECHANICAL SEAL FOR LIGHT PROOF & SOUND RETARDING DOOR
T	TEMPERED GLASS
U	UNDERCUT 1"
V	LEAD GLASS
W	WIRE GLASS

LEGEND (SEE DOOR ELEVATIONS)

--
| | GL OR L REQUIRED BY MODIFICATION

—
| | GL OR L REQUIRED BY ELEVATION TYPE

NOTES:

1. ALL DOORS SHALL BE FLUSH AND 1-3/4" THICK UNLESS NOTED OTHERWISE.
2. TOP AND SIDE RAILS SHALL BE 9" MIN. BOTTOM RAILS 12" MIN.
3. FOR SCHEDULING DOOR TYPES SEE SECTION 09050 - Part III.
4. FOR HARDWARE SETS REFER TO SECTION 08710, 3.3

**SECTION 09100
NON-LOAD BEARING FRAMING SYSTEMS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies steel studs wall systems, ceiling or soffit suspended or furred framing, wall furring, fasteners, and accessories for the screw attachment of gypsum board, plaster bases or other building boards.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Support for wall mounted items: Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Pull down tabs in steel decking: Section 05321, STEEL DECKING COMPOSITE.

1.3 TERMINOLOGY

- A. Description of terms shall be in accordance with ASTM C754, ASTM C11, ASTM C841 and as specified.
- B. Underside of Structure Overhead: In spaces where steel trusses or bar joists are shown, the underside of structure overhead shall be the underside of the floor or roof construction supported by beams, trusses, or bar joists. In interstitial spaces with walk-on floors the underside of the walk-on floor is the underside of structure overhead.
- C. Thickness of steel specified is the minimum bare (uncoated) steel thickness.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Studs, runners and accessories.
 - 2. Hanger inserts.
 - 3. Channels (Rolled steel).
 - 4. Furring channels.
 - 5. Screws, clips and other fasteners.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Typical ceiling suspension system.
 - 2. Typical metal stud and furring construction system including details around openings and corner details.
 - 3. Typical shaft wall assembly
 - 4. Typical fire rated assembly and column fireproofing showing details of construction same as that used in fire rating test.
- D. Test Results: Fire rating test designation, each fire rating required for each assembly.

1.5 DELIVERY, IDENTIFICATION, HANDLING AND STORAGE

In accordance with the requirements of ASTM C754.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society For Testing And Materials (ASTM)
- A123-02.....Zinc (Hot-dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
 - A653/A653M-03.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
 - A641-98.....Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
 - C11-03.....Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems
 - C635-00.....Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension System for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings
 - C636-03.....Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels
 - C645-03.....Non-Structural Steel Framing Members
 - C754-00.....Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products
 - C841-03.....Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring
 - C954-00.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness
 - C1002-00.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs
 - E580-02.....Application of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Requiring Moderate Seismic Restraint.
- C. Federal Specification (Fed. Spec.):
- FF-P-395B.....Pin, Drive, Guided And Pin Drive, Power Actuated (Fasteners For Powder Actuated And Hand Actuated Fastening Tools)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PROTECTIVE COATING

Galvanize steel studs, runners (track), rigid (hat section) furring channels, "Z" shaped furring channels, and resilient furring channels, with coating designation of G-60 minimum, per ASTM 123.

2.2 STEEL STUDS AND RUNNERS (TRACK)

- A. ASTM C645, modified for thickness specified and sizes and shown.
 - 1. Use ASTM A525 steel, 0.9 mm (0.0359-inch) thick bare metal (20 gauge).
 - 2. Runners same thickness as studs.
- B. Provide not less than two cutouts in web of each stud, approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from each end, and intermediate cutouts on approximately 600 mm (24-inch) centers.
- C. Doubled studs for openings and studs for supporting concrete backer-board.
- D. Studs 3600 mm (12 feet) or less in length shall be in one piece.
- E. Shaft Wall Framing:
 - 1. Conform to rated wall construction.
 - 2. C-H Studs.
 - 3. E Studs.
 - 4. J Runners.
 - 5. Steel Jamb-Strut.

2.3 FURRING CHANNELS

- A. Rigid furring channels (hat shape): ASTM C645.
- B. Resilient furring channels:
 - 1. Not less than 0.45 mm (0.0179-inch) thick bare metal.
 - 2. Semi-hat shape, only one flange for anchorage with channel web leg slotted on anchorage side, channel web leg on other side stiffens fastener surface but shall not contact anchorage surface other channel leg is attached to.
- C. "Z" Furring Channels:
 - 1. Not less than 0.45 mm (0.0179-inch)-thick bare metal, with 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) and 19 mm (3/4-inch) flanges.
 - 2. Web furring depth to suit thickness of insulation with slotted perforations.
- D. Rolled Steel Channels: ASTM C754, cold rolled; or, ASTM C841, cold rolled.

2.4 FASTENERS, CLIPS, AND OTHER METAL ACCESSORIES

- A. ASTM C754, except as otherwise specified.

- B. For fire rated construction: Type and size same as used in fire rating test.
- C. Fasteners for steel studs thicker than 0.84 mm (0.033-inch) thick. Use ASTM C954 steel drill screws of size and type recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.
- D. Clips: ASTM C841 (paragraph 6.11), manufacturer's standard items. Clips used in lieu of tie wire shall have holding power equivalent to that provided by the tie wire for the specific application.
- E. Concrete ceiling hanger inserts (anchorage for hanger wire and hanger straps): Steel, zinc-coated (galvanized), manufacturers standard items, designed to support twice the hanger loads imposed and the type of hanger used.
- F. Tie Wire and Hanger Wire:
 - 1. ASTM A641, soft temper, Class 1 coating.
 - 2. Gage (diameter) as specified in ASTM C754 or ASTM C841.
- G. Attachments for Wall Furring:
 - 1. Manufacturers standard items fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
 - 2. For concrete or masonry walls: Metal slots with adjustable inserts or adjustable wall furring brackets. Spacers may be fabricated from 1 mm (0.0396-inch) thick galvanized steel with corrugated edges.
- H. Power Actuated Fasteners:
 - 1. Fed. Spec. FF-P-395.
 - 2. Fastener length and Class as required to resist twice the imposed loads; style suitable for type of hanger or bracket used.
 - 3. Eye Pin: Type I, Class 4, Style EP.
 - 4. Threaded Stud: Style SC for concrete; Style SS for steel.
 - 5. Drive Pins: Style PC for concrete, Style PS for steel.
 - 6. For applications not specified, type and size as recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.

2.5 SUSPENDED CEILING SYSTEM FOR GYPSUM BOARD (OPTION)

- A. Conform to ASTM C635, heavy duty, with not less than 35 mm (1-3/8 inch) wide knurled capped flange face designed for screw attachment of gypsum board.
- B. Wall track channel with 35 mm (1-3/8 inch) wide flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION CRITERIA

- A. Where fire rated construction is required for walls, partitions, columns, beams and floor-ceiling assemblies, the construction shall be same as that used in fire rating test.

- B. Construction requirements for fire rated assemblies and materials shall be as shown and specified, the provisions of the Scope paragraph (1.2) of ASTM C754 and ASTM C841 regarding details of construction shall not apply.

3.2 INSTALLING STUDS

- A. Install studs in accordance with ASTM C754, except as otherwise shown or specified.
- B. Space studs not more than 610 mm (24 inches) on center.
- C. Cut studs 6 mm to 9 mm (1/4 to 3/8-inch) less than floor to underside of structure overhead when extended to underside of structure overhead.
- D. Where studs are shown to terminate above suspended ceilings, provide bracing as shown or extend studs to underside of structure overhead.
- E. Extend studs to underside of structure overhead for fire, rated partitions, smoke partitions, shafts, and sound rated partitions and insulated exterior wall furring.
- F. Openings:
 - 1. Frame jambs of openings in stud partitions and furring with two studs placed back to back or as shown.
 - 2. Fasten back to back studs together with 9 mm (3/8-inch) long Type S pan head screws at not less than 600 mm (two feet) on center, staggered along webs.
 - 3. Studs fastened flange to flange shall have splice plates on both sides approximately 50 X 75 mm (2 by 3 inches) screwed to each stud with two screws in each stud. Locate splice plates at 600 mm (24 inches) on center between runner tracks.
- G. Fastening Studs:
 - 1. Fasten studs located adjacent to partition intersections, corners and studs at jambs of openings to flange of runner tracks with two screws through each end of each stud and flange of runner.
 - 2. Do not fasten studs to top runner track when studs extend to underside of structure overhead.
- H. Chase Wall Partitions:
 - 1. Locate cross braces for chase wall partitions to permit the installation of pipes, conduits, carriers and similar items.
 - 2. Use studs or runners as cross bracing not less than 63 mm (2-1/2 inches wide).
- I. Form building seismic or expansion joints with double studs back to back spaced 75 mm (three inches) apart plus the width of the seismic or expansion joint.
- J. Form control joint, with double studs spaced 13 mm (1/2-inch) apart.

3.3 INSTALLING WALL FURRING FOR FINISH APPLIED TO ONE SIDE ONLY

- A. In accordance with ASTM C754, or ASTM C841 except as otherwise specified or shown.
- B. Wall furring-Stud System:
 - 1. Framed with 63 mm (2-1/2 inch) or narrower studs, 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
 - 2. Brace as specified in ASTM C754 for Wall Furring-Stud System or brace with sections or runners or studs placed horizontally at not less than three foot vertical intervals on side without finish.
 - 3. Securely fasten braces to each stud with two Type S pan head screws at each bearing.
- C. Direct attachment to masonry or concrete; rigid channels or "Z" channels:
 - 1. Install rigid (hat section) furring channels at 600 mm (24 inches) on center, horizontally or vertically.
 - 2. Install "Z" furring channels vertically spaced not more than 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
 - 3. At corners where rigid furring channels are positioned horizontally, provide mitered joints in furring channels.
 - 4. Ends of spliced furring channels shall be nested not less than 200 mm (8 inches).
 - 5. Fasten furring channels to walls with power-actuated drive pins or hardened steel concrete nails. Where channels are spliced, provide two fasteners in each flange.
 - 6. Locate furring channels at interior and exterior corners in accordance with wall finish material manufacturers printed erection instructions. Locate "Z" channels within 100 mm (4 inches) of corner.
- D. Installing Wall Furring-Bracket System: Space furring channels not more than 400 mm (16 inches) on center.

3.4 INSTALLING SUPPORTS REQUIRED BY OTHER TRADES

- A. Provide for attachment and support of electrical outlets, plumbing, laboratory or heating fixtures, recessed type plumbing fixture accessories, access panel frames, wall bumpers, wood seats, toilet stall partitions, dressing booth partitions, urinal screens, chalkboards, tackboards, wall-hung casework, handrail brackets, recessed fire extinguisher cabinets and other items supported by stud construction.
- B. Provide additional studs where required. Install metal backing plates, or special metal shapes as required, securely fastened to metal studs.

3.5 INSTALLING FURRED AND SUSPENDED CEILINGS OR SOFFITS

- A. Install furred and suspended ceilings or soffits in accordance with ASTM C754 or ASTM C841 except as otherwise specified or shown for screw attached gypsum board ceilings and for plaster ceilings or soffits.
 - 1. Space framing at 400 mm (16-inch) centers for metal lath anchorage.
 - 2. Space framing at 600 mm (24-inch) centers for gypsum board anchorage.
- B. New exposed concrete slabs:
 - 1. Use metal inserts required for attachment and support of hangers or hanger wires with tied wire loops for embedding in concrete.
 - 2. Furnish for installation under Section, CONCRETE.
 - 3. Suspended ceilings under concrete rib construction shall have runner channels at right angles to ribs and be supported from ribs with hangers at ends and at 1200 mm (48-inch) maximum intervals along channels. Stagger hangers at alternate channels.
- C. Concrete slabs on steel decking composite construction:
 - 1. Use pull down tabs when available.
 - 2. Use power activated fasteners when direct attachment to structural framing can not be accomplished.
- D. Where bar joists or beams are more than 1200 mm (48 inches) apart, provide intermediate hangers so that spacing between supports does not exceed 1200 mm (48 inches). Use clips, bolts, or wire ties for direct attachment to steel framing.
- E. Steel decking without concrete topping:
 - 1. Do not fasten to steel decking 0.76 mm (0.0299-inch) or thinner.
 - 2. Toggle bolt to decking 0.9 mm (0.0359-inch) or thicker only where anchorage to steel framing is not possible.
- F. Installing suspended ceiling system for gypsum board (ASTM C635 Option):
 - 1. Install only for ceilings to receive screw attached gypsum board.
 - 2. Install in accordance with ASTM C636.
 - a. Install main runners spaced 1200 mm (48 inches) on center.
 - b. Install 1200 mm (four foot) tees not over 600 mm (24 inches) on center; locate for edge support of gypsum board.
 - c. Install wall track channel at perimeter.
- G. Installing Ceiling Bracing System:
 - 1. Construct bracing of 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) channels for lengths up to 2400 mm (8 feet) and 50 mm (2 inch) channels for lengths over 2400 mm (8 feet) with ends bent to form surfaces for anchorage to carrying channels and over head construction. Lap channels not less than 600 mm (2 feet) at midpoint back to back. Screw or bolt lap together with two fasteners.

2. Install bracing at an approximate 45 degree angle to carrying channels and structure overhead; secure as specified to structure overhead with two fasteners and to carrying channels with two fasteners or wire ties.
3. Brace suspended ceiling or soffit framing in seismic areas in accordance with ASTM E580.

3.6 TOLERANCES

- A. Fastening surface for application of subsequent materials shall not vary more than 3 mm (1/8-inch) from the layout line.
- B. Plumb and align vertical members within 3 mm (1/8-inch.)
- C. Level or align ceilings within 3 mm (1/8-inch.)

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09260
GYPSUM BOARD SYSTEM**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies installation and finishing of gypsum board.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Installation of steel framing members for walls, partitions, furring, soffits, and ceilings: Section 09100, NON-LOAD BEARING FRAMING SYSTEMS.
- B. Sound deadening board: Section 07210, BUILDING INSULATION.
- C. Acoustical Sealants: Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.

1.3 TERMINOLOGY

- A. Definitions and description of terms shall be in accordance with ASTM C11, C840, and as specified.
- B. Underside of Structure Overhead: In spaces where steel trusses or bar joists are shown, the underside of structure overhead shall be the underside of the floor or roof construction supported by the trusses or bar joists.
- C. "Yoked": Gypsum board cut out for opening with no joint at the opening (along door jamb or above the door).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Cornerbead and edge trim.
 - 2. Finishing materials.
 - 3. Laminating adhesive.
 - 4. Gypsum board, each type.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Typical gypsum board installation, showing corner details, edge trim details and the like.
 - 2. Typical sound rated assembly, showing treatment at perimeter of partitions and penetrations at gypsum board.
 - 3. Typical shaft wall assembly.
 - 4. Typical fire rated assembly and column fireproofing, indicating details of construction same as that used in fire rating test.
- D. Samples:
 - 1. Cornerbead.
 - 2. Edge trim.
 - 3. Control joints.
- E. Test Results:

1. Fire rating test, each fire rating required for each assembly.
2. Sound rating test.

1.5 DELIVERY, IDENTIFICATION, HANDLING AND STORAGE

In accordance with the requirements of ASTM C840.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

In accordance with the requirements of ASTM C840.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society For Testing And Materials (ASTM):
 - C11-04.....Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems
 - C475-02.....Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board
 - C840-04.....Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board
 - C954-04.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Board or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Stud from 0.033 in. (0.84mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84mm) in thickness
 - C1002-04.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs
 - C1047-04.....Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base
 - C1177-04.....Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
 - C1396-04.....Gypsum Board
 - E84-04.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
 - E497-99.....Installing Sound Isolating Lightweight Partitions
- C. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
 - Latest Edition.....Fire Resistance Directory
- D. Inchcape Testing Services (ITS):
 - Latest Editions.....Certification Listings

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396, Type X, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick unless shown otherwise.
- B. Water Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C620, Type X, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick.

2.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING BOARD

- A. ASTM C1396, Type X, water-resistant core, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick.
- B. ASTM C1177, Type X.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. ASTM C1047, except form of 0.39 mm (0.015 inch) thick zinc coated steel sheet or rigid PVC plastic.
- B. Flanges not less than 22 mm (7/8 inch) wide with punchouts or deformations as required to provide compound bond.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. ASTM C1002 and ASTM C840, except as otherwise specified.
- B. ASTM C954, for steel studs thicker than 0.04 mm (0.33 inch).
- C. Select screws of size and type recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.
- D. For fire rated construction, type and size same as used in fire rating test.
- E. Clips: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; gypsum board manufacturer's standard items.

2.5 FINISHING MATERIALS AND LAMINATING ADHESIVE

ASTM C475 and ASTM C840.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GYPSUM BOARD HEIGHTS

- A. Extend all layers of gypsum board from floor to underside of structure overhead on following partitions and furring:
 - 1. Two sides of partitions:
 - a. Fire rated partitions.
 - b. Smoke partitions.
 - c. Sound rated partitions.
 - d. Full height partitions shown (FHP).
 - 2. One side of partitions or furring:
 - a. Inside of exterior wall furring or stud construction.
 - b. Room side of room without suspended ceilings.

- c. Furring for pipes and duct shafts, except where fire rated shaft wall construction is shown.
- 3. Extend all layers of gypsum board construction used for fireproofing of columns from floor to underside of structure overhead, unless shown otherwise.
- B. In locations other than those specified, extend gypsum board from floor to heights as follows:
 - 1. Not less than 100 mm (4 inches) above suspended acoustical ceilings.
 - 2. At ceiling of suspended gypsum board ceilings.
 - 3. At existing ceilings.

3.2 INSTALLING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Coordinate installation of gypsum board with other trades and related work.
- B. Install gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C840, except as otherwise specified.
- C. Use gypsum boards in maximum practical lengths to minimize number of end joints.
- D. Bring gypsum board into contact, but do not force into place.
- E. Walls:
 - 1. When gypsum board is installed parallel to framing members, space fasteners 300 mm (12 inches) on center in field of the board, and 200 mm (8 inches) on center along edges.
 - 2. When gypsum board is installed perpendicular to framing members, space fasteners 300 mm (12 inches) on center in field and along edges.
 - 3. Stagger screws on abutting edges or ends.
 - 4. For single-ply construction, apply gypsum board with long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing members as required to minimize number of joints except gypsum board shall be applied vertically over "Z" furring channels.
 - 5. For two-ply gypsum board assemblies, apply base ply of gypsum board to assure minimum number of joints in face layer. Apply face ply of wallboard to base ply so that joints of face ply do not occur at joints of base ply with joints over framing members.
 - 6. For three-ply gypsum board assemblies, apply plies in same manner as for two-ply assemblies, except that heads of fasteners need only be driven flush with surface for first and second plies. Apply third ply of wallboard in same manner as second ply of two-ply assembly, except

- use fasteners of sufficient length enough to have the same penetration into framing members as required for two-ply assemblies.
7. No offset in exposed face of walls and partitions will be permitted because of single-ply and two-ply or three-ply application requirements.
 8. Installing Two Layer Assembly Over Sound Deadening Board:
 - a. Apply face layer of wallboard vertically with joints staggered from joints in sound deadening board over framing members.
 - b. Fasten face layer with screw, of sufficient length to secure to framing, spaced 300 mm (12 inches) on center around perimeter, and 400 mm (16 inches) on center in the field.
 9. Control Joints ASTM C840 and as follows:
 - a. Locate at both side jambs of openings if gypsum board is not "yoked". Use one system throughout.
 - b. Not required for wall lengths less than 9000 mm (30 feet).
 - c. Extend control joints the full height of the wall or length of soffit/ceiling membrane.
- F. Acoustical or Sound Rated Partitions, Fire and Smoke Partitions:
1. Cut gypsum board for a space approximately 3 mm to 6 mm (1/8 to 1/4 inch) wide around partition perimeter.
 2. Coordinate for application of caulking or sealants to space prior to taping and finishing.
 3. Follow ASTM E497 for sound rated partitions. STC minimum values as shown.
- G. Accessories:
1. Set accessories plumb, level and true to line, neatly mitered at corners and intersections, and securely attach to supporting surfaces as specified.
 2. Install in one piece, without the limits of the longest commercially available lengths.
 3. Corner Beads:
 - a. Install at all vertical and horizontal external corners and where shown.
 - b. Use screws only. Do not use crimping tool.
 4. Edge Trim (casings Beads):
 - a. At both sides of expansion and control joints unless shown otherwise.
 - b. Where gypsum board terminates against dissimilar materials and at perimeter of openings, except where covered by flanges, casings or permanently built-in equipment.

- c. Where gypsum board surfaces of non-load bearing assemblies abut load bearing members.
- d. Where shown.

3.3 INSTALLING GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Install in accordance with ASTM C840, except as otherwise specified or shown.
- B. Use screws of sufficient length to secure sheathing to framing.
- C. Space screws 9 mm (3/8 inch) from ends and edges of sheathing and 200 mm (8 inches) on center. Space screws a maximum of 200 mm (8 inches) on center on intermediate framing members.
- D. Apply 600 mm by 2400 mm (2 foot by 8 foot) sheathing boards horizontally with tongue edge up.
- E. Apply 1200 mm by 2400 mm or 2700 mm (4 ft. by 8 ft. or 9 foot) gypsum sheathing boards vertically with edges over framing.

3.4 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Finish joints, edges, corners, and fastener heads in accordance with ASTM C840. Use Level 5 finish for all finished areas open to public view.
- B. Before proceeding with installation of finishing materials, assure the following:
 - 1. Gypsum board is fastened and held close to framing or furring.
 - 2. Fastening heads in gypsum board are slightly below surface in dimple formed by driving tool.
- C. Finish joints, fasteners, and all openings, including openings around penetrations, on that part of the gypsum board extending above suspended ceilings to seal surface of non decorated smoke barrier, fire rated, and sound rated gypsum board construction. After the installation of hanger rods, hanger wires, supports, equipment, conduits, piping and similar work, seal remaining openings and maintain the integrity of the smoke barrier, fire rated and sound rated construction. Sanding is not required of non decorated surfaces.

3.5 REPAIRS

- A. After taping and finishing has been completed, and before decoration, repair all damaged and defective work, including nondecorated surfaces.
- B. Patch holes or openings 13 mm (1/2 inch) or less in diameter, or equivalent size, with a setting type finishing compound or patching plaster.
- C. Repair holes or openings over 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter, or equivalent size, with 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick gypsum board secured in such a manner as to provide solid substrate equivalent to undamaged surface.

- D. Tape and refinish scratched, abraded or damaged finish surfaces including cracks and joints in non decorated surface to provide smoke tight construction fire protection equivalent to the fire rated construction and STC equivalent to the sound rated construction .

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09900
PAINTING**

PART 1-GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Section specifies field painting.
- B. Section specifies prime coats which may be applied in shop under other sections.
- C. Painting includes shellacs, stains, varnishes, high performance coatings specified, and striping or markers and identity markings.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Shop prime painting of steel and ferrous metals: Divisions 5, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15 and 16 sections.
- B. Type of Finish, Color, and Gloss Level of Finish Coat: Within Architecture Drawings finish material schedule.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
Before work is started, or sample panels are prepared, submit manufacturer's literature, the current Master Painters Institute (MPI) "Approved Product List" indicating brand label, product name and product code as of the date of contract award, will be used to determine compliance with the submittal requirements of this specification. The Contractor may choose to use subsequent MPI "Approved Product List", however, only one list may be used for the entire contract and each coating system is to be from a single manufacturer. All coats on a particular substrate must be from a single manufacturer. No variation from the MPI "Approved Product List" where applicable is acceptable.
- C. Sample Panels:
 - 1. After painters' materials have been approved and before work is started submit sample panels showing each type of finish and color specified.
 - 2. Panels to show color: Composition board, 100 by 250 by 3 mm (4 inch by 10 inch by 1/8 inch).
 - 3. Panel to show transparent finishes: Wood of same species and grain pattern as wood approved for use, 100 by 250 by 3 mm (4 inch by 10 inch face by 1/4 inch) thick minimum, and where both flat and edge grain will be exposed, 250 mm (10 inches) long by sufficient size, 50 by 50 mm (2 by 2 inch) minimum or actual wood member to show complete finish.
 - 4. Attach labels to panel stating the following:

- a. Federal Specification Number or manufacturers name and product number of paints used.
- b. Specification code number specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES.
- c. Product type and color.
- d. Name of project.
- 5. Strips showing not less than 50 mm (2 inch) wide strips of undercoats and 100 mm (4 inch) wide strip of finish coat.
- D. Sample of identity markers if used.
- E. Manufacturers' Certificates indicating compliance with specified requirements:
 - 1. Manufacturer's paint substituted for Federal Specification paints meets or exceeds performance of paint specified.
 - 2. High temperature aluminum paint.
 - 3. Epoxy coating.
 - 4. Intumescent clear coating or fire retardant paint.
 - 5. Plastic floor coating.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's sealed container marked to show following:
 - 1. Name of manufacturer.
 - 2. Product type.
 - 3. Batch number.
 - 4. Instructions for use.
 - 5. Safety precautions.
- B. In addition to manufacturer's label, provide a label legibly printed as following:
 - 1. Federal Specification Number, where applicable, and name of material.
 - 2. Surface upon which material is to be applied.
 - 3. If paint or other coating, state coat types; prime, body or finish.
- C. Maintain space for storage, and handling of painting materials and equipment in a neat and orderly condition to prevent spontaneous combustion from occurring or igniting adjacent items.
- D. Store materials at site at least 24 hours before using, at a temperature between 18 and 30 degrees C (65 and 85 degrees F).

1.5 MOCK-UP PANEL

- A. Before starting application of water paint mixtures, apply paint as specified to an area, not to exceed 9 m² (100 ft²), selected by Resident Engineer.

- B. Finish and texture approved by Resident Engineer will be used as a standard of quality for remainder of work.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. American Conference Of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH):
ACGIH TLV-BKLT-1992.....Threshold Limit Values (TLV) for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents and Biological Exposure Indices (BEIs)
ACGIH TLV-DOC.....Documentation of Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices, (Sixth Edition)
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
A13.1-96.....Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
D260-86.....Boiled Linseed Oil
- E. Commercial Item Description (CID):
A-A-1555.....Water Paint, Powder (Cementitious, White and Colors) (WPC) (cancelled)
A-A-3120.....Paint, For Swimming Pools (RF) (cancelled)
- F. Federal Specifications (Fed Spec):
TT-P-1411A.....Paint, Copolymer-Resin, Cementitious (For Waterproofing Concrete and Masonry Walls) (CEP)
- G. Master Painters Institute (MPI):
No. 1-04.....Aluminum Paint (AP)
No. 8-04.....Exterior Alkyd, Flat MPI Gloss Level 1 (EO)
No. 9-04.....Exterior Alkyd Enamel MPI Gloss Level 6 (EO)
No. 11-04.....Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE)
No. 18-04.....Organic Zinc Rich Primer
No. 22-04.....Aluminum Paint, High Heat (up to 590° - 1100F) (HR)
No. 31-04.....Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear Gloss (PV)
No. 43-04.....Interior Satin Latex, MPI Gloss Level 4
No. 44-04.....Interior Low Sheen Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2
No. 46-04.....Interior Enamel Undercoat
No. 47-04.....Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (AK)
No. 48-04.....Interior Alkyd, Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 6 (AK)
No. 49-04.....Interior Alkyd, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (AK)
No. 50-04.....Interior Latex Primer Sealer
No. 51-04.....Interior Alkyd, Eggshell, MPI Gloss Level 3

No. 52-04.....Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)
No. 53-04.....Interior Latex, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE)
No. 54-04.....Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)

No. 90-04.....Interior Wood Stain, Semi-Transparent (WS)
No. 91-04.....Wood Filler Paste
No. 94-04.....Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO)
No. 95-04.....Fast Drying Metal Primer
No. 98-04.....High Build Epoxy Coating
No. 101-04.....Epoxy Anti-Corrosive Metal Primer
No. 114-04.....Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)
No. 138-04.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2
(LF)
No. 139-04.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3
(LL)

H. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):

SSPC SP 1-00.....Solvent Cleaning
SSPC SP 2-00.....Hand Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 3-00.....Power Tool Cleaning

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Paint (CEP): TT-P-1411A [Paint, Copolymer-Resin, Cementitious (CEP)], Type 1 for exterior use, Type II for interior use.
- B. Identity markers options:
1. Pressure sensitive vinyl markers.
 2. Snap-on coil plastic markers.
- C. Aluminum Paint (AP): MPI 1.
- D. Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO): MPI 8.
- E. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO): MPI 9.
- F. Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE): MPI 11.
- G. Organic Zinc rich Coating (HR): MPI 18.
- H. High Heat Resistant Coating (HR): MPI 22.
- I. Interior Satin Latex: MPI 43.
- J. Interior Low Sheen Latex: MPI 44.
- K. Interior Primer Sealer: MPI 45.
- L. Interior Enamel Undercoat: MPI 46.
- M. Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (AK): MPI 47.
- N. Interior Latex Primer Sealer: MPI 50.
- O. Interior Alkyd, Eggshell: MPI 51
- P. Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE): MPI 52.

- AA. Interior Latex, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE): MPI 53.
- BB. Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE): MPI 54.
- CC. Interior Wood Stain, Semi-Transparent (WS): MPI 90.
- DD. Wood Filler Paste: MPI 91.
- EE. Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO): MPI 94.
- FF. Fast Drying Metal Primer: MPI 95.
- GG. Epoxy Anti-Corrosive Metal Primer: MPI 101.
- HH. Interior latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG): MPI 114.
- II. Waterborne Galvanized Primer: MPI 134.
- JJ. Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2(LF): MPI 138.
- KK. Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LL): MPI 139.

2.2 PAINT PROPERTIES

- A. Use ready-mixed (including colors), except two component epoxies, polyurethanes, polyesters, paints having metallic powders packaged separately and paints requiring specified additives.
- B. Where no requirements are given in the referenced specifications for primers, use primers with pigment and vehicle, compatible with substrate and finish coats specified.

2.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Paint materials shall conform to the restrictions of the local Environmental and Toxic Control jurisdiction.
 - 1. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC): VOC content of paint materials shall not exceed local, state or district requirements.
 - 2. Lead-Base Paint:
 - a. Comply with Section 410 of the Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention Act, as amended, and with implementing regulations promulgated by Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.
 - b. Regulations concerning prohibition against use of lead-based paint in federal and federally assisted construction, or rehabilitation of residential structures are set forth in Subpart F, Title 24, Code of Federal Regulations, Department of Housing and Urban Development.
 - c. For lead-paint removal, see Section 02090, LEAD PAINT REMOVAL.
 - 3. Asbestos: Materials shall not contain asbestos.
 - 4. Chromate, Cadmium, Mercury, and Silica: Materials shall not contain zinc-chromate, strontium-chromate, Cadmium, mercury or mercury compounds or free crystalline silica.
 - 5. Human Carcinogens: Materials shall not contain any of the ACGIH-BKLT and ACGHI-DOC confirmed or suspected human carcinogens.
 - 6. Comply with the Regional Ozone Transport Commission (OTC) regulations regarding Volatile Organic Content (VOC).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Safety: Observe required safety regulations and manufacturer's warning and instructions for storage, handling and application of painting materials.
 - 1. Take necessary precautions to protect personnel and property from hazards due to falls, injuries, toxic fumes, fire, explosion, or other harm.
 - 2. Deposit soiled cleaning rags and waste materials in metal containers approved for that purpose. Dispose of such items off the site at end of each days work.
- B. Atmospheric and Surface Conditions:
 - 1. Do not apply coating when air or substrate conditions are:
 - a. Less than 3 degrees C (5 degrees F) above dew point.
 - b. Below 10 degrees C (50 degrees F) or over 35 degrees C (95 degrees F), unless specifically pre-approved by the Contracting Officer and the product manufacturer. Under no circumstances shall application conditions exceed manufacturer recommendations.
 - 2. Maintain interior temperatures until paint dries hard.
 - 3. Do no exterior painting when it is windy and dusty.
 - 4. Do not paint in direct sunlight or on surfaces that the sun will soon warm.
 - 5. Apply only on clean, dry and frost free surfaces except as follows:
 - a. Apply water thinned acrylic and cementitious paints to damp (not wet) surfaces where allowed by manufacturer's printed instructions.
 - b. Dampened with a fine mist of water on hot dry days concrete and masonry surfaces to which water thinned acrylic and cementitious paints are applied to prevent excessive suction and to cool surface.
 - 6. Varnishing:
 - a. Apply in clean areas and in still air.
 - b. Before varnishing vacuum and dust area.
 - c. Immediately before varnishing wipe down surfaces with a tack rag.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Method of surface preparation is optional, provided results of finish painting produce solid even color and texture specified with no overlays.
- B. General:
 - 1. Remove prefinished items not to be painted such as lighting fixtures, escutcheon plates, hardware, trim, and similar items for reinstallation after paint is dried.

2. Remove items for reinstallation and complete painting of such items and adjacent areas when item or adjacent surface is not accessible or finish is different.
3. See other sections of specifications for specified surface conditions and prime coat.
4. Clean surfaces for painting with materials and methods compatible with substrate and specified finish. Remove any residue remaining from cleaning agents used. Do not use solvents, acid, or steam on concrete and masonry.

C. Ferrous Metals:

1. Remove oil, grease, soil, drawing and cutting compounds, flux and other detrimental foreign matter in accordance with SSPC-SP 1 (Solvent Cleaning).
2. Remove loose mill scale, rust, and paint, by hand or power tool cleaning, as defined in SSPC-SP 2 (Hand Tool Cleaning) and SSPC-SP 3 (Power Tool Cleaning). Exception: where high temperature aluminum paint is used, prepare surface in accordance with paint manufacturer's instructions.
3. Fill dents, holes and similar voids and depressions in flat exposed surfaces of hollow steel doors and frames, access panels, roll-up steel doors and similar items specified to have semi-gloss or gloss finish with TT-F-322D (Filler, Two-Component Type, For Dents, Small Holes and Blow-Holes). Finish flush with adjacent surfaces.
 - a. This includes flat head countersunk screws used for permanent anchors.
 - b. Do not fill screws of item intended for removal such as glazing beads.
4. Spot prime abraded and damaged areas in shop prime coat which expose bare metal with same type of paint used for prime coat. Feather edge of spot prime to produce smooth finish coat.
5. Spot prime abraded and damaged areas which expose bare metal of factory finished items with paint as recommended by manufacturer of item.

D. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Metal, and Aluminum Surfaces Specified Painted:

1. Clean surfaces to remove grease, oil and other deterrents to paint adhesion in accordance with SSPC-SP 1 (Solvent Cleaning).
2. Spot coat abraded and damaged areas of zinc-coating which expose base metal on hot-dip zinc-coated items with MPI 18 (Organic Zinc Rich Coating). Prime or spot prime with MPI 134 (Waterborne Galvanized Primer) or MPI 135 (Non- Cementitious Galvanized Primer) depending on finish coat compatibility.

E. Concrete, Cement Board:

1. Clean and remove dust, dirt, oil, grease efflorescence, form release agents, laitance, and other deterrents to paint adhesion.
2. Use emulsion type cleaning agents to remove oil, grease, paint and similar products. Use of solvents, acid, or steam is not permitted.
3. Neutralize Concrete floors to be painted by washing with a solution of 1.4 Kg (3 pounds) of zinc sulfate crystals to 3.8 L (1 gallon) of water, allow to dry three days and brush thoroughly free of crystals.
4. Repair broken and spalled concrete edges with concrete patching compound to match adjacent surfaces as specified in CONCRETE Sections. Remove projections to level of adjacent surface by grinding or similar methods.

G. Gypsum Board:

1. Remove efflorescence, loose and chalking plaster or finishing materials.
2. Remove dust, dirt, and other deterrents to paint adhesion.
3. Fill holes, cracks, and other depressions with CID-A-A-1272A [Plaster, Gypsum (Spackling Compound) finished flush with adjacent surface, with texture to match texture of adjacent surface. Patch holes over 25 mm (1-inch) in diameter as specified in Section for plaster or gypsum board.

3.3 PAINT PREPARATION

- A. Thoroughly mix painting materials to ensure uniformity of color, complete dispersion of pigment and uniform composition.
- B. Do not thin unless necessary for application and when finish paint is used for body and prime coats. Use materials and quantities for thinning as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions.
- C. Remove paint skins, then strain paint through commercial paint strainer to remove lumps and other particles.
- D. Mix two component and two part paint and those requiring additives in such a manner as to uniformly blend as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions unless specified otherwise.
- E. For tinting required to produce exact shades specified, use color pigment recommended by the paint manufacturer.

3.4 APPLICATION

- A. Start of surface preparation or painting will be construed as acceptance of the surface as satisfactory for the application of materials.
- B. Unless otherwise specified, apply paint in three coats; prime, body, and finish. When two coats applied to prime coat are the same, first coat applied over primer is body coat and second coat is finish coat.

- C. Apply each coat evenly and cover substrate completely.
- D. Allow not less than 48 hours between application of succeeding coats, except as allowed by manufacturer's printed instructions, and approved by Resident Engineer.
- E. Finish surfaces to show solid even color, free from runs, lumps, brushmarks, laps, holidays, or other defects.
- F. Apply by brush, roller or spray, except as otherwise specified.
- G. Do not spray paint in existing occupied spaces unless approved by Resident Engineer, except in spaces sealed from existing occupied spaces.
 - 1. Apply painting materials specifically required by manufacturer to be applied by spraying.
 - 2. In areas, where paint is applied by spray, mask or enclose with polyethylene, or similar air tight material with edges and seams continuously sealed including items specified in WORK NOT PAINTED, motors, controls, telephone, and electrical equipment, fronts of sterilizes and other recessed equipment and similar prefinished items.
- I. Do not paint in closed position operable items such as access doors and panels, window sashes, overhead doors, and similar items except overhead roll-up doors and shutters.

3.5 PRIME PAINTING

- A. After surface preparation prime surfaces before application of body and finish coats, except as otherwise specified.
- B. Spot prime and apply body coat to damaged and abraded painted surfaces before applying succeeding coats.
- C. Additional field applied prime coats over shop or factory applied prime coats are not required except for exterior exposed steel apply an additional prime coat.
- D. Prime rebates for stop and face glazing of wood, and for face glazing of steel.
- E. Metals except boilers, incinerator stacks, and engine exhaust pipes:
 - 1. Steel and iron: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer)
 - 2. Zinc-coated steel and iron: MPI 134 (Waterborne Galvanized Primer)
 - 3. Aluminum scheduled to be painted: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer).
 - 4. Terne Metal: MPI 79 (Marine Alkyd Metal Primer) MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer) .
 - 5. Copper and copper alloys scheduled to be painted: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer).
 - 6. Machinery not factory finished: MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)).
 - 7. Asphalt coated metal: MPI 1 (Aluminum Paint (AP)).

8. Metal over 94 degrees C. (200 degrees F), Boilers, Incinerator Stacks, and Engine Exhaust Pipes: MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)).

F. Gypsum Board:

1. Surfaces scheduled to have MPI 11 (Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE)) or MPI 53 (Interior Latex, Flat) , MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE)) MPI 52 (Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)) MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)) finish: MPI 11 (Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE)) or MPI 53 (Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)) MPI 52 (Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)) MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)) respectively .
2. Primer: MPI 50(Interior Latex Primer Sealer) except use MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) in shower and bathrooms.

G. Cement board Interior Surfaces of Ceilings and Walls:

1. MPI 53 (Interior Latex, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE)) MPI 52 (Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)) MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)) except use two coats where substrate has aged less than six months.
2. Use MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)) TT-P-1411A (Paint, Copolymer Resin, Cementitious (CEP)) Type II

3.6 EXTERIOR FINISHES

A. Apply following finish coats where specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES.

B. Steel and Ferrous Metal:

1. Two coats of MPI 8 (Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO)) MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)) MPI 94 (Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO)) on exposed surfaces, except on surfaces over 94 degrees C (200 degrees F).
2. One coat of MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)) on surfaces over 94 degrees K (200 degrees F) and on surfaces of boiler engine exhaust pipes.

D. Machinery without factory finish except for primer: One coat MPI 8 (Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO)) MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)) MPI 94 (Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO)) .

E. Concrete:

1. General:
 - a. Where specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES or shown.
 - b. Mix as specified in manufacturer's printed directions.

- c. Do not mix more paint at one time than can be used within four hours after mixing. Discard paint that has started to set.
- d. Dampen warm surfaces above 24 degrees C (75 degrees F) with fine mist of water before application of paint. Do not leave free water on surface.
- e. Cure paint with a fine mist of water as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions.
- 2. Use two coats of TT-P-1411 (Paint, Co-polymer-Resin, Cementitious (CEP)), unless specified otherwise.
- F. Factory Applied Finishes:
 - 1. Kynar 500 - (PVDF) Fluoropolymer-polyvinylidene fluoride. (Or approved equal) occurs on copings and fascia systems as noted in section 09050 intereior/exterior finishes, materials and finish.

3.7 INTERIOR FINISHES

- A. Apply following finish coats over prime coats in spaces or on surfaces specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES.
- B. Metal Work:
 - 1. Apply to exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Omit body and finish coats on surfaces concealed after installation except electrical conduit containing conductors over 600 volts.
 - 3. Ferrous Metal, Galvanized Metal, and Other Metals Scheduled:
 - a. Apply two coats of MPI 47 (Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (AK)) unless specified otherwise.
 - b. Two coats of MPI 48 (Interior Alkyd Gloss (AK)).
 - c. One coat of MPI 46 (Interior Enamel Undercoat) plus one coat of MPI 47 (Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (AK)) on exposed interior surfaces of alkyd-amine enamel prime finished windows.
 - d. Machinery: One coat MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)).
 - e. Asphalt Coated Metal: One coat MPI 1 (Aluminum Paint (AP)).
 - f. Ferrous Metal over 94 degrees K (200 degrees F): Boilers, Incinerator Stacks, and Engine Exhaust Pipes: One coat MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)).
 - 4. High Performance coatings at catwalk.
 - a. Primer: Type P1 - Catalyzed epoxy primer. Epoxy intermediate coat for metal and concrete.
 - 1.Carboline - Carboguard 888 or approved equal.
 - Sheen: satin
 - Color: Gray (0700)
 - Solids content by volume: 63%

VOC: 330 g/l (2.7 pounds/gallon) max.

Adhesion: ASTM D4541 not less than 6894 KPA [(1000PSI)] pull,
average of three trials.

b. Polyurethane Coatings:

1. Type UI - High build acrylic polyurethane coatings:

a. Carboline - Carbothane 134 or approved equal.

V

Sheen: gloss

VOC: 1.58 lbs/gal. (1909/1)

Adhesion:ASTM D4541

C. Gypsum Board:

1. One coat of MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) plus one coat of MPI 139 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss level 3 (LL)).
2. Two coats of MPI 138 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2 (LF)).
3. One coat of MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) plus one coat of MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) or MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)).
4. One coat of MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) MPI 46 (Interior Enamel Undercoat) plus one coat of MPI 48 (Interior Alkyd Gloss (AK)).

D. Concrete Walls:

1. Two coats of MPI 53 (Interior Latex, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE)) MPI 52 (Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)) MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)) .
2. Two coats of MPI 138 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2 (LF)) MPI 139 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss level 3 (LL)) MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)).

E. Cement Board: One coat of MPI 138 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2 (LF)) MPI 139 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss level 3 (LL)) MPI 140 (Interior High Performance Latex MPI Gloss level 4) MPI 141 (Interior High Performance Latex (SG) MPI Gloss Level 5 MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)).

F. Miscellaneous:

1. Apply where specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES.
2. MPI 1 (Aluminum Paint): Two coats of aluminum paint.

3.8 PAINT COLOR

- A. Color and gloss of finish coats is specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES.
- B. For additional requirements regarding color see Articles, MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL FIELD PAINTING SCHEDULE.
- C. Coat Colors:
 - 1. Color of priming coat: Lighter than body coat.
 - 2. Color of body coat: Lighter than finish coat.
 - 3. Color prime and body coats to not show through the finish coat and to mask surface imperfections or contrasts.
- D. Painting, Caulking, Closures, and Fillers Adjacent to Casework:
 - 1. Paint to match color of casework where casework has a paint finish.
 - 2. Paint to match color of wall where casework is stainless steel, plastic laminate, or varnished wood.

3.10 MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL WORK FIELD PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Field painting of mechanical and electrical consists of cleaning, touching-up abraded shop prime coats, and applying prime, body and finish coats to materials and equipment if not factory finished in space scheduled to be finished.
- B. In spaces not scheduled to be finish painted in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES paint as specified under paragraph H, colors.
- C. Paint various systems specified in Divisions 2, 15, and 16.
- D. Paint after tests have been completed.
- E. Omit prime coat from factory prime-coated items.
- F. Finish painting of mechanical and electrical equipment is not required when located in interstitial spaces, above suspended ceilings, in concealed areas such as pipe and electric closets, pipe basements, pipe tunnels, trenches, attics, roof spaces, shafts and furred spaces except on electrical conduit containing feeders 600 volts or more.
- G. Omit field painting of items specified in paragraph, Building and Structural WORK NOT PAINTED.
- H. Color:
 - 1. Paint items having no color specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES to match surrounding surfaces.
 - 2. Paint colors as specified in Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES except for following:

- a. WhiteExterior unfinished surfaces of enameled plumbing fixtures. Insulation coverings on breeching and uptake inside boiler house, drums and drum-heads, oil heaters, condensate tanks and condensate piping.
 - b. Gray:Heating, ventilating, air conditioning and refrigeration equipment (except as required to match surrounding surfaces), and water and sewage treatment equipment and sewage ejection equipment.
 - c. Aluminum Color: Ferrous metal on outside of boilers and in connection with boiler settings including supporting doors and door frames and fuel oil burning equipment, and steam generation system (bare piping, fittings, hangers, supports, valves, traps and miscellaneous iron work in contact with pipe).
 - d. Federal Safety Red: Exposed fire protection piping hydrants, post indicators, electrical conducts containing fire alarm control wiring, and fire alarm equipment.
 - e. Federal Safety Orange: .Entire lengths of electrical conduits containing feeders 600 volts or more.
 - f. Color to match brickwork sheet metal covering on breeching outside of exterior wall of boiler house.
- I. Apply paint systems on properly prepared and primed surface as follows:
- 1. Exterior Locations:
 - a. Apply two coats of MPI 8 (Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO)) MPI 94 (Exterior Alkyd, Semi-gloss (EO)) MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)) to the following ferrous metal items:
Vent and exhaust pipes with temperatures under 94 degrees C (200 degrees F), roof drains, fire hydrants, post indicators, yard hydrants, exposed piping and similar items.
 - b. Apply two coats of MPI 11 (Exterior Latex, Semi Gloss (AE)) to the following metal items:
Galvanized and zinc-copper alloy metal.
 - c. Apply one coat of MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)), 650 degrees C (1200 degrees F) to incinerator stacks, boiler stacks, and engine generator exhaust.
 - 2. Interior Locations:
 - a. Apply two coats of MPI 47 (Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (AK)) to following items:
 - 1) Metal under 94 degrees C (200 degrees F) of items such as bare piping, fittings, hangers and supports.

- 2) Equipment and systems such as hinged covers and frames for control cabinets and boxes, cast-iron radiators, electric conduits and panel boards.
- 3) Heating, ventilating, air conditioning, plumbing equipment, and machinery having shop prime coat and not factory finished.
- b. Apply one coat of MPI 50 (Interior Latex Primer Sealer) and one coat of MPI 53 (Interior Latex, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE)) MPI 52 (Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)) MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) MPI 114 (Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)) on finish of insulation on boiler breeching and uptakes inside boiler house, drums, drumheads, oil heaters, feed water heaters, tanks and piping.
- d. Apply two coats of MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)) to ferrous metal surface over 94 degrees K (200 degrees F) of following items:
 - 2) Exterior of boilers and ferrous metal in connection with boiler settings including supporting members, doors and door frames and fuel oil burning equipment.
 - 3) Steam line flanges, bare pipe, fittings, valves, hangers and supports over 94 degrees K (200 degrees F).
 - 4) Engine generator exhaust piping and muffler.
- e. Paint electrical conduits containing cables rated 600 volts or more using two coats of MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)) MPI 8(Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO)) or MPI 94 (Exterior Alkyd, Semi-gloss (EO)) in the Federal Safety Orange color in exposed and concealed spaces full length of conduit.
3. Other exposed locations:
 - a. Metal surfaces, except aluminum, of cooling towers exposed to view, including connected pipes, rails, and ladders: Two coats of MPI 1 (Aluminum Paint (AP)).
 - b. Cloth jackets of insulation of ducts and pipes in connection with plumbing, air conditioning, ventilating refrigeration and heating systems: One coat of MPI 50 (Interior Latex Primer Sealer) and one coat of MPI 11 (Exterior Latex Semi-Gloss (AE)).

3.11 BUILDING AND STRUCTURAL WORK FIELD PAINTING

- A. Painting and finishing of interior and exterior work except as specified under paragraph 3.11 B.
 1. Painting and finishing of new work including colors and gloss of finish selected is specified in Finish Schedule, Section 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES.

2. Painting of disturbed, damaged and repaired or patched surfaces when entire space is not scheduled for complete repainting or refinishing.
3. Painting of ferrous metal and galvanized metal.
4. Identity painting and safety painting.
- B. Building and Structural Work not Painted:
 1. Prefinished items:
 - a. Casework, doors, elevator entrances and cabs, metal panels, wall covering, and similar items specified factory finished under other sections.
 - b. Factory finished equipment and pre-engineered metal building components such as metal roof and wall panels.
 2. Finished surfaces:
 - a. Hardware except ferrous metal.
 - b. Anodized aluminum, stainless steel, chromium plating, copper, and brass, except as otherwise specified.
 - c. Signs, fixtures, and other similar items integrally finished.
 3. Concealed surfaces:
 - a. Inside dumbwaiter, elevator and duct shafts, interstitial spaces, pipe basements, crawl spaces, pipe tunnels, above ceilings, attics, except as otherwise specified.
 - b. Inside walls or other spaces behind access doors or panels.
 - c. Surfaces concealed behind permanently installed casework and equipment.
 4. Moving and operating parts:
 - a. Shafts, chains, gears, mechanical and electrical operators, linkages, and sprinkler heads, and sensing devices.
 - b. Tracks for overhead or coiling doors, shutters, and grilles.
 5. Labels:
 - a. Code required label, such as Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Inchcape Testing Services, Inc., or Factory Mutual Research Corporation.
 - b. Identification plates, instruction plates, performance rating, and nomenclature.
 6. Galvanized metal:
 - a. Exterior chain link fence and gates, corrugated metal areaways, and gratings.
 - b. Gas Storage Racks.
 - c. Except where specifically specified to be painted.
 7. Metal safety treads and nosings.
 8. Gaskets.

9. Concrete curbs, gutters, pavements, retaining walls, exterior exposed foundations walls and interior walls in pipe basements.
10. Structural steel encased in concrete, masonry, or other enclosure.
11. Structural steel to receive sprayed-on fire proofing.
12. Ceilings, walls, columns in interstitial spaces.
13. Ceilings, walls, and columns in pipe basements.

3.12 IDENTITY PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Identify designated service in accordance with ANSI A13.1, unless specified otherwise, on exposed piping, piping above removable ceilings, piping in accessible pipe spaces, interstitial spaces, and piping behind access panels.
 1. Legend may be identified using 2.1 G options or by stencil applications.
 2. Apply legends adjacent to changes in direction, on branches, where pipes pass through walls or floors, adjacent to operating accessories such as valves, regulators, strainers and cleanouts a minimum of 12 000 mm (40 feet) apart on straight runs of piping. Identification next to plumbing fixtures is not required.
 3. Locate Legends clearly visible from operating position.
 4. Use arrow to indicate direction of flow.
 5. Identify pipe contents with sufficient additional details such as temperature, pressure, and contents to identify possible hazard. Insert working pressure shown on drawings where asterisk appears for High, Medium, and Low Pressure designations as follows:
 - a. High Pressure - 414 kPa (60 psig) and above.
 - b. Medium Pressure - 104 to 413 kPa (15 to 59 psig).
 - c. Low Pressure - 103 kPa (14 psig) and below.
 - d. Add Fuel oil grade numbers.
 6. Legend name in full or in abbreviated form as follows:

PIPING	COLOR OF EXPOSED PIPING	COLOR OF BACKGROUND	COLOR OF LETTERS	LEGEND BBREVIATIONS
Chilled Water Supply		Green	White	Ch. Wtr Sup
Chilled Water Return		Green	White	Ch. Wtr Ret
Shop Compressed Air		Yellow	Black	Shop Air
Air-Instrument Controls		Green	White	Air-Inst Cont
Drain Line		Green	White	Drain
Emergency Shower		Green	White	Emg Shower
High Temperature Water Supply		Yellow	Black	H. Temp Wtr Sup
VAMC CENTRAL PLANT EXPANSION		09900		RTKL/JMA A JOINT VENTURE

High Temperature Water Return		Yellow	Black	H. Temp Wtr Ret
Hot Water Heating Supply		Yellow	Black	H. W. Htg Sup
Hot Water Heating Return		Yellow	Black	H. W. Htg Ret
Fuel Oil - Grade		Green	White	Fuel Oil-Grade __*
Boiler Water Sampling		Yellow	Black	Sample
Chemical Feed		Yellow	Black	Chem Feed
Pump Recirculating		Yellow	Black	Pump-Recirc.
Vent Line		Yellow	Black	Vent
Alkali		Yellow	Black	Alk
Bleach		Yellow	Black	Bleach
Detergent		Yellow	Black	Det
Liquid Supply		Yellow	Black	Liq Sup
Reuse Water		Yellow	Black	Reuse Wtr
Cold Water (Domestic)	White	Green	White	C.W. Dom
Hot Water (Domestic)				
Supply	White	Yellow	Black	H.W. Dom
Return	White	Yellow	Black	H.W. Dom Ret
Tempered Water	White	Yellow	Black	Temp. Wtr
Ice Water				
Supply	White	Green	White	Ice Wtr
Return	White	Green	White	Ice Wtr Ret
Reagent Grade Water		Green	White	RG
Reverse Osmosis		Green	White	RO
Sanitary Waste		Green	White	San Waste
Sanitary Vent		Green	White	San Vent
Storm Drainage		Green	White	St Drain
Pump Drainage		Green	White	Pump Disch
Chemical Resistant Pipe				
Waste		Yellow	Black	Acid Waste
Vent		Yellow	Black	Acid Vent
Atmospheric Vent		Green	White	ATV
Silver Recovery		Green	White	Silver Rec
Oral Evacuation		Green	White	Oral Evac
Fuel Gas		Yellow	Black	Gas
Fire Protection Water				
Sprinkler		Red	White	Auto Spr
Standpipe		Red	White	Stand
Sprinkler		Red	White	Drain

7. Electrical Conduits containing feeders over 600 volts, paint legends using 50 mm (2 inch) high black numbers and letters, showing the voltage class rating. Provide legends where conduits pass through walls and floors and at maximum 6100 mm (20 foot) intervals in between. Use labels with yellow background with black border and words Danger High Voltage Class, 5000 15000 25000 .
8. See Sections for methods of identification, legends, and abbreviations of the following:
 - a. Regular compressed air lines: Section 15319, COMPRESSED AIR SYSTEMS, SHOP AND LAUNDRY.
 - b. Dental compressed air lines: Section, 15481, DENTAL COMPRESSED AIR.
 - c. Laboratory gas and vacuum lines: Section 15488, LABORATORY (NONFLAMMABLE) GAS AND VACUUM SYSTEMS.
 - d. Oral evacuation lines: Section 15489, ORAL EVACUATION SYSTEM.
 - e. Medical Gases and vacuum lines: Section 15491, MEDICAL GAS AND VACUUM SYSTEMS.
 - f. Conduits containing high voltage feeders over 600 volts: Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS.
- B. Fire and Smoke Partitions:
 1. Identify partitions above ceilings on both sides of partitions except within shafts in letters not less than 64 mm (2 1/2 inches) high.
 2. Stenciled message: "SMOKE PARTITION" or, "FIRE PARTITION" as applicable.
 3. Locate not more than 6100 mm (20 feet) on center on corridor sides of partitions, and with a least one message per room on room side of partition.
 4. Use semigloss paint of color that contrasts with color of substrate.
- C. Identify columns in pipe basements and interstitial space:
 1. Apply stenciled number and letters to correspond with grid numbering and lettering shown.
 2. Paint numbers and letters 100 mm (4 inches) high, locate 450 mm (18 inches) below overhead structural slab.
 3. Apply on four sides of interior columns and on inside face only of exterior wall columns.
 4. Color:
 - a. Use black on concrete columns.
 - b. Use white or contrasting color on steel columns.

3.14 PROTECTION CLEAN UP, AND TOUCH-UP

- A. Protect work from paint droppings and spattering by use of masking, drop cloths, removal of items or by other approved methods.
- B. Upon completion, clean paint from hardware, glass and other surfaces and items not required to be painted of paint drops or smears.
- C. Before final inspection, touch-up or refinished in a manner to produce solid even color and finish texture, free from defects in work which was damaged or discolored.

- - - E N D - - -

APPENDIX

Coordinate the following abbreviations used in SECTION 09900, PAINTING, with other Sections, especially 09050, INTERIOR EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULES and other COATING SECTIONS listed. Use the same abbreviation and terms consistently.

Paint or coating Abbreviation

Acrylic Emulsion AE (MPI 10 - flat/MPI 11 - semigloss/MPI 119 - gloss)

Alkyd Flat Ak (MPI 49)

Alkyd Gloss Enamel G (MPI 48)

Alkyd Semigloss Enamel SG (MPI 47)

Aluminum Paint AP (MPI 1)

Cementitious Paint CEP (TT-P-1411)

Exterior Latex EL??(MPI 10 / 11 / 119)??

Exterior Oil EO (MPI 9 - gloss/MPI 8 - flat/MPI 94 - semigloss)

Epoxy Coating EC (MPI 77 - walls, floors/MPI 108 - CMU, concrete)

Fire Retardant Paint FR (MPI 67)

Fire Retardant Coating (Clear) FC (MPI 66, intumescent type)

Floor Enamel FE (MPI 27 - gloss/MPI 59 - eggshell)

Heat Resistant Paint HR (MPI 22)

Latex Emulsion LE (MPI 53, flat/MPI 52, eggshell/MPI 54, semigloss/MPI 114, gloss Level 6)

Latex Flat LF (MPI 138)

Latex Gloss LG (MPI 114)

Latex Semigloss SG (MPI 141)

Latex Low Luster LL (MPI 139)

Plastic Floor Coating PL

Polyurethane Varnish PV (MPI 31 - gloss/MPI 71 - flat)

Rubber Paint RF (CID-A-A-3120 - Paint for Swimming Pools (RF)).

Water Paint, Cement WPC (CID-A-A-1555 - Water Paint, Powder).

Wood Stain WS (MPI 90)

Verify abbreviations used in the following coating sections:

Section 09815, HIGH-BUILD GLAZED COATINGS GC

Section 09836, MULTI-COLOR COATING MC

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10200
LOUVERS AND WALL VENTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies fixed and operable wall louvers, door louvers and wall vents.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Color of finish: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings:
Each type, showing material, finish, size of members, method of assembly, and installation and anchorage details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
Each type of louver and vent.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. The Master Painters Institute (MPI):
Approved Product List - February 2002
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A167-99.....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium - Nickel
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
A1008-02.....Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Cold Rolled, Structural,
and High Strength Low-Alloy with Improved
Formability
B209/B209M-02.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy, Sheet and Plate
B221/B221M-00.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
- D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
Metal Finishes Manual (1988 Edition)
AMP 500.....Metal Finishes Manual
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
90A-99.....Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating
Systems
- G. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):

605-98.....High Performance Organic Coatings on
Architectural Extrusions and Panels

H. Air Movement and Control Association, Inc. (AMCA):

500-89.....Test Methods for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M.
- B. Fasteners: Fasteners for securing louvers and wall vents to adjoining construction, except as otherwise specified or shown, shall be toggle or expansion bolts, of size and type as required for each specific type of installation and service condition.
 - 1. Where type, size, or spacing of fasteners is not shown or specified, submit shop drawings showing proposed fasteners, and method of installation.
 - 2. Fasteners for louvers, louver frames, and wire guards shall be of stainless steel or aluminum.

2.2 EXTERIOR WALL LOUVERS

- A. General:
 - 1. Provide fixed type louvers of size and design shown.
 - 2. Heads, sills and jamb sections shall have formed caulking slots or be designed to retain caulking. Head sections shall have exterior drip lip, and sill sections an integral water stop.
 - 3. Furnish louvers with sill extension or separate sill as shown.
 - 4. Frame shall be mechanically fastened or welded construction with welds dressed smooth and flush.
- B. Performance Characteristics:
 - 1. Weather louvers shall have a minimum of 50 percent free area and shall pass 500 fpm free area velocity at a pressure drop not exceeding 0.1 mm inch water gage and carry not more than 0.01 ounces of water per m² (square foot) of free area for 15 minutes when tested per AMCA Standard 500 L.
 - 2. Louvers shall bear AMCA certified rating seals for air performance and water penetration ratings.
- C. Aluminum Louvers:
 - 1. General: Frames, blades, sills and mullions (sliding interlocking type); 2 mm (0.081-inch) thick extruded aluminum. Blades shall be standard or drainable type and have reinforcing bosses.
 - 2. Louvers, fixed: Make frame sizes 13 mm (1/2-inch) smaller than openings. Single louvers frames shall not exceed 1700 mm (66 inches)

wide. When openings exceed 1700 mm (66 inches), provide twin louvers separated by mullion members.

D. Bird/Insect:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, all louvers to be finished with mill finish bird or insect screens.
2. Screens to be aluminum mesh 0.011" (0.279 mm) diameter wire insect screens secured within 0.055" (1.40mm) thick extruded aluminum frames. Frames to have mitered corners and corner locks.

2.3 CLOSURE ANGLES AND CLOSURE PLATES

- A. Fabricate from 2 mm (0.074-inch) thick stainless steel or aluminum.
- B. Provide continuous closure angles and closure plates on inside head, jambs and sill of exterior wall louvers.
- C. Secure angles and plates to louver frames with screws, and to masonry or concrete with fasteners as specified.

2.4 WIRE GUARDS

- A. Provide wire guards on outside of all exterior louvers, except on exhaust air louvers.
- B. Fabricate frames from 2 mm (0.081-inch) thick extruded or sheet aluminum 1.5 mm (0.059-inch) thick stainless steel designed to retain wire mesh.
- C. Wire mesh shall be woven from not less than 1.6 mm (0.063-inch) diameter aluminum wire 1.3 mm (0.05-inch) diameter stainless steel wire in 13 mm (1/2-inch) square mesh.
- D. Miter corners and join by concealed corner clips or locks extending about 57 mm (2-1/4 inches) into rails and stiles. Equip wire guards over four feet in height with a mid-rail constructed as specified for frame components.
- E. Fasten frames to outside of louvers with aluminum or stainless steel devices designed to allow removal and replacement without damage to the wire guard or the louver.

2.5 AIR INTAKE VENTS

- A. Fabricate exterior louvered wall ventilators for fresh air intake for air conditioning units from extruded aluminum, Fed. Spec.QQ-A-200/9. Form with integral horizontal louvers and frame, with drip extending beyond face of wall and integral water stops.
- B. Closures where louver area exceeds ducted area behind the louver, provide one piece aluminum closures finished to match louver and install on the back side of louver.
- C. Provide 0.8 m (0.032-inch) thick aluminum sleeves in cavity walls where shown.

2.6 FINISH

- A. In accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual:
- B. Aluminum Louvers Air Intake Vents Wire Guards:
 - 1. (PVDF) Finish polyvinylidene difluoride - thermoplastic fluoropolymer.

2.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protection for aluminum against galvanic action wherever dissimilar materials are in contact, by painting the contact surfaces of the dissimilar material with a heavy coat of bituminous paint (complete coverage), or by separating the contact surfaces with a performed synthetic rubber tape having pressure sensitive adhesive coating on one side.
- B. Isolate the aluminum from plaster, concrete and masonry by coating aluminum with zinc-chromate primer.
- C. Protect finished surfaces from damage during fabrication, erection, and after completion of the work. Strippable plastic coating on organic finish is not approved.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Set work accurately, in alignment and where shown. Items shall be plumb, level, free of rack and twist, and set parallel or perpendicular as required to line and plane of surface.
- B. Furnish setting drawings and instructions for installation of anchors and for the positioning of items having anchors to be built into masonry construction. Provide temporary bracing for such items until masonry is set.
- C. Provide anchoring devices and fasteners as shown and as necessary for securing louvers and vents to building construction as specified. Power actuated drive pins may be used, except for removal items and where members would be deformed or substrate damaged by their use.
- D. If wall louvers and vents are not delivered to job in time for installation in prepared openings, make provision for later installation.

3.2 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, all exposed prefinished and plated items and all items fabricated from stainless steel and aluminum shall be cleaned as recommended by the manufacturer and protected from damage until completion of the project.

- B. All movable parts, including hardware, shall be cleaned and adjusted to operate as designed without binding or deformation of the members, so as to be centered in the opening of frame, and where applicable, to have all contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping the components

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10260
WALL GUARDS AND CORNER GUARDS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies corner guards.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Armor plates and kick plates not specified in this section: Section 08710, BUILDERS HARDWARE.
- B. Color and texture of aluminum and resilient material: Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULES.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show design and installation details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Corner Guards.
- D. Test Report: Showing that resilient material complies with specified fire and safety code requirements.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver materials to the site in original sealed packages or containers marked with the name and brand, or trademark of the manufacturer.
- B. Protect from damage from handling and construction operations before, during and after installation.
- C. Store in a dry environment of approximately 21° C (70 degrees F) for at least 48 hours prior to installation.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A167-99.....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
 - B221-02.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
 - D256-02.....Impact Resistance of Plastics
 - D635-98.....Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Self-Supporting Plastics in a Horizontal Position

D1729-96.....Visual Appraisal of Color and Color
Differences of Diffusely-Illuminated Opaque
Materials

E84-03.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

C. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual

D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
80-99.....Standards for Fire Doors and Windows

E. Society of American Automotive Engineers (SAE):
J 1545-86.....Instrumental Color Difference Measurement for
Exterior Finishes.

F. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
Annual Issue.....Building Materials Directory

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. **STAINLESS STEEL: ASTM A167, TYPE 302 OR 304.**

2.2 CORNER GUARDS

A. Stainless Steel Corner Guards: Fabricate of 1.6 mm (0.0625-inch) thick stainless steel. Form guards of dimensions and to contour shown.

2.3 WALL GUARDS

A. Stainless Steel Wall Guards: Construct wall guard, including brackets, of minimum 7.75 mm (0.1875 inch) thick stainless steel to design shown.

2.4 FASTENERS AND ANCHORS

- A. Provide fasteners and anchors as required for each specific type of installation.
- B. Where type, size, spacing or method of fastening is not shown or specified, submit shop drawings showing proposed installation details.

2.5 FINISH

A. Stainless Steel: NAAMM Finish Number 1.

PART 3 - INSTALLATION

3.1 STAINLESS STEEL CORNER GUARDS

- A. Mount guards on external corners of interior walls, partitions and columns as shown.
- B. Where corner guards are installed on walls, partitions or columns finished with plaster or ceramic tile, anchor corner guards as shown on drawings. Provide continuous 16 gage perforated, galvanized Z-shape steel anchors welded to back edges of corner guards and wired to metal studs expansion bolted to concrete or masonry with four 9.5 mm (3/8

inch) diameter bolts, spaced 400 mm (16 inches) on centers Coat back surfaces of corner guards, where shown, with a non-flammable, sound deadening material. Corner guards shall overlap finish plaster surfaces.

1.Where corner guards are installed on masonry wall, partitions or columns, anchor corner guards as shown on the drawings anchor corner guards to walls with 6 mm (1/4- inch) oval head stainless steel countersunk expansion or toggle bolts anchor corner guards with four nominal 1.3 mm (0.0516-inch) thick, adjustable galvanized steel anchors, spaced as shown. Grout spaces solid between guards and backing with Portland cement and sand mortar.

2.Where corner guards are installed on gypsum board, clean surface and anchor guards with a neoprene solvent-type contact adhesive specifically manufactured for use on gypsum board construction.

C. Install corner guards on walls in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 Stainless Steel Wall Guards:

Space brackets at not more than three feet on centers and anchor to the wall in accordance with manufacturer's installation instruction.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10430
EXTERIOR SIGNS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies exterior Central Plant Building 2 and Emergency Generator Building 3 room identification signs, directional signs, directories, information, parking and traffic signs.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Electrical: Related Electrical Specification Sections.
- B. Interior signs: Section 10440.
- C. Finishes Division 9.

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS

Sign manufacturer regularly and presently manufactures signs similar to those specified as one of their principal products.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Samples: Submit 2 sets. One set of samples will be retained by Resident Engineer, other returned to Contractor.
 - 1. Sign Panel, 200 mm x 250 mm (8 inches x 10 inches), with letters.
 - 2. Color samples of each color, 150 mm x 150 mm (6 inches x 6 inches).
Show anticipated range of color and texture.
 - 3. Sample of typeface, arrow and symbols in a typical full size layout.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature: Manufacturer's printed specifications, anchorage details, installation and maintenance instructions.
- D. Shop Drawings: Scaled for manufacture and fabrication of sign types. Identify materials, show joints, welds, anchorage, accessory items, mounting and finishes.
- E. Full size layout patterns for dimensional letters.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Package to prevent damage or deterioration during shipment, handling, storage and installation. Maintain protective covering in place and in good repair until removal is necessary.
- B. Deliver signs only when the site and mounting services are ready for installation work to proceed.
- C. Store products in dry condition inside enclosed facilities.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATION

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Council of American Building Officials (CABO)
A117.1-98.....Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities

- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - N2.1-89.....Warning Symbols, Radiation Symbols
- D. Americans with Disabilities Act - 1990
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - B209-96.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
 - B221-96.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Shapes and Tubes.
- F. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
 - MIL-P-8184E.....Plastic Sheet, Acrylic, Modified.
 - MIL-P-46144C.....Plastic Sheet, Polycarbonate
- G. Federal Highway Administration
 - Manuals on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Street and Highways.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum
 - 1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209
 - 2. Extrusions and Tubing: ASTM B221
- B. Cast Acrylic Sheet: MIL-P-8184E; Type II, class 1, Water white non-glare optically clear. Matt finish water white clear acrylic shall not be acceptable.
- C. Polycarbonate: MIL-P-46144C; Type I, class 1.
- D. Vinyl: 0.1 mm thick machine cut, having a pressure sensitive adhesive and integral colors.
- E. Concrete Post Footings: See Section 03301, Cast-in-place Concrete.
- F. Steel: See Section 05120, Structural Steel.

2.2 GENERAL

- A. Provide graphics items as completed units produced by a single manufacturer, including necessary mounting accessories, fittings and fastenings.
- B. Do not scale drawings for dimensions. Contractor to verify and be responsible for all dimensions and conditions shown by these drawings. Resident Engineer to be notified of any discrepancy in drawing, in field directions or conditions, and/or of any changes required for all such construction details.
- C. The Sign Contractor, by commencing work of this section, assumes overall responsibility, as part of his warranty of work, to assure that assemblies, components and parts shown or required within the work of the section, comply with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall further warrant: That all components, specified or required to satisfactorily complete the installation are compatible with each other and with conditions of installations.

2.3 SIGN STANDARDS

A. Topography:

1. Type Style: Helvetica Medium and Helvetica Medium Condensed. Initial caps or all caps as indicated in Sign Message Schedule.
2. Arrow: See graphic standards in drawings.
3. Letter spacing: See graphic standards on drawings.
4. Letter spacing: See graphic standards on drawings.
5. VA Logo and Logotype: See drawings.
6. All text, arrows, and symbols to be provided in size, colors, typefaces and letter spacing shown. Text shall be a true, clean, accurate reproduction of typeface(s) shown. Text shown in drawings are for layout purposes only; final text for signs is listed in Sign Message Schedule.

B. Project Colors and Finishes: See Section 09050.

2.4 SIGNS TYPES

A. General: The exterior sign system shall be comprised of sign types families that are identified by a letter and number which identify a particular group of signs. An additional number identifies a specific type of sign within that family.

1. EI designation indicates exterior internally illuminated sign.
2. EN designation indicates exterior non-illuminated sign.

Illuminated Exterior Sign Designations:

Each sign in the program guide has been given a specific sign type number designation. This designation provide a common description that can be referenced when programming a site and ordering signs. The following explains how the sign type designations are derived.

EI - 03.01 A

E Designates an exterior sign.

I Identifies that the sign is internally illuminated.

.03 Two digit numbers identifies a particular sign type family like the "signs for use in identifying an Ambulance Entrance".

.01 The two digit number following the period identifies a specific sign family.

A. The letter designates a specific sign configuration, version and/or layout for graphics.

B. Text and Graphics:

1. Illuminated Signs: Graphics are routed out and backed with 3mm (0.0125 inch) thick minimum translucent white acrylic diffuser. Diffuser and letter voids are to be mechanically fastened to sign face.

2. Non-illuminated Signs: Surface applied reflective white opaque vinyl graphics.

C. Post and Panel Signs:

1. Sign shall be constructed of an aluminum extrusion system including the following integral features: water relief channel for proper drainage, integral flanges for attachment of additional structural supports and mounting to posts with minimum 3 mm (0.125 inch) wall thickness. Post caps to be welded or mechanically attached with concealed fasteners.
2. Reveal between the post and sign cabinet is to be extruded aluminum. This extruded connector shall be adjustable to allow for either flush, 12 mm (0.5 inch) or 25 mm (one inch) reveal between the sign post and cabinet or tube.
3. Sign to be installed with direct burial of posts in concrete or with a base plate mounting. Any electrical connections should be run through the posts.

D. Non-illuminated Single Post Sign - Sign Types EN05, EN12.3, EN12.4, EN12.5, EN12.6:

1. Sign shall be constructed of an extruded aluminum square post with an aluminum plate sign panel.
2. Sign panel shall be a 3 mm (0.125 inch) aluminum plate. Panel mechanically fastens to support post with tamper resistant fasteners.
3. Posts shall be aluminum and a minimum 3 mm (0.125 inch) wall thickness. Post caps to be welded or mechanically attached with conceal fasteners.
4. Sign shall be installed with direct burial of post into concrete. If sign is to be installed with a base plate/"J" bolt type mounting, it is noted in the sign message schedule.

E. Non-illuminated Single Post Traffic Regulatory Sign - Sign Type EN10:

1. Sign shall be constructed of an extruded aluminum square post with an aluminum plate sign panel.
2. Sign panel shall be a 3 mm (0.125 inch) aluminum plate with surface applied reflective vinyl traffic regulatory decals. Panel mechanically fastens to support post with tamper resistant fasteners.
3. Posts shall be aluminum and a minimum 3 mm (0.125 inch) wall thickness. Post caps to be welded or mechanically attached with conceal fasteners.

4. Sign to be installed with direct burial of post into concrete. If sign is to be installed with a base plate/"J" bolt type mounting, it is noted in the sign message schedule.
 5. Signs shall be reflective traffic control symbols complying with Department of Transportation, Manual for Uniform Traffic Control Devices in color, shape, proportions, text and symbols.
- F. Non-illuminated Single Post & Panel Street Sign - Sign Type EN11.1, EN11.2:
1. Sign shall be constructed of an extruded aluminum square post, cast or fabricated aluminum post cap/panel retainers and aluminum plate sign panels.
 2. Sign panels are 3 mm (0.125 inch) aluminum plate. Panel mechanically fastens to panel retainers with tamper resistant fasteners.
 3. Post caps/panel retainers are either cast or fabricated aluminum with a minimum 3 mm (0.125 inch) wall thickness. Post cap element slides over square sign post and mechanically fastens to post with tamper resistant fasteners.
 4. Aluminum post with a minimum 3 mm (0.125 inch) wall thickness.
 5. Sign to be installed with direct burial of post in concrete. If sign is to be installed with a base plate/"J" bolt type mounting, it is noted in the sign message schedule.
- G. Non-illuminated Single Post Street Sign - Sign Type EN11.3:
1. Sign shall be constructed of an extruded aluminum square post.
 2. Posts shall be extruded aluminum with a minimum 3 mm (0.125 inch) wall thickness.
 3. Sign to be installed with direct burial of post in concrete. If sign is to be installed with a base plate/"J" bolt type mounting, it is noted in the sign message schedule.
- H. Non-illuminated Wall Panel Sign - Sign Types EN06.1, EN06.2, EN06.3, EN06.4, EN06.5, EN06.6 and EN08:
1. Sign shall be an extruded aluminum illuminated sign panel and frame configured for wall mounting.
 2. Sign shall be constructed of an aluminum extrusion system including the following integral features: internal flanges for attachment of additional structural supports and mounting to wall and a frame retainer (maximum 25 mm (1 inch) face dimension) to allow for sign face removal.
 3. Weld sign cabinet at mitered corners and provide internal bracing as necessary to insure structural rigidity. Shop weld as much as possible. Grind smooth all exposed welds so that surface is

consistent with surrounding surface, and accepts paint finish in a like manner.

4. The sign faces are to be 2 mm (0.090 inch) thick aluminum with surface applied reflective white vinyl graphics. Aluminum face shall be mounted into the extruded cabinet frame to allow for removal from the top or side, so that faces can be changed without affecting extruded sign structure.
5. Sign is to be installed with mechanical fasteners into wall surface behind the sign. No exposed support brackets are allowed.
- I. Non-illuminated Wall Panel Sign - Sign Types EN06.7 and EN06.8:
 1. Sign shall be constructed with a flat sheet of aluminum for wall mounting.
 2. The sign face to be 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick aluminum with surface applied reflective white vinyl graphics.
 3. Sign shall be to be installed with mechanical fasteners into wall surface. No exposed support brackets are allowed.
- J. Non-Illuminated Cut Out Dimensional Letters - Sign Types EN09.1, EN09.2, EN09.3, EN09.4:
 1. Cut out aluminum letters which are mill cut (vertical sides) out of 9 mm (0.375 inch), 12 mm (0.5 inch) or 19 mm (0.75 inch) plate depending on sign type.
 2. Letters to be studded and mounted with a 9 mm (.375 inch) spacers to wall surface using adhesive appropriate to the surface.
 3. Letters painted with acrylic polyurethane in specified color and finish.
- K. Non-illuminated Fabricated Dimensional Letters - Sign Types EN09.5, EN09.6, EN09.7, EN09.8, EN09.9:
 1. Non-illuminated fabricated aluminum letters. Letters are to have fully welded construction, utilizing a minimum of 2 mm (0.090 inch) wall aluminum for letter faces and 2 mm (0.080 inch) wall aluminum for letter edges.
 2. Mechanically fasten to wall surface utilizing aluminum angle mounting tabs internal to letter. Space letters 9 mm (.375 inch) off wall surface.
 3. Letters painted with acrylic polyurethane in specified color and finish.
- L. Department of Veterans Affairs Seals - Sign Type EN13:
 1. Cast bronze Department of Veterans Affairs seal. Contact the Department of Veterans Affairs regarding procurement.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Design components to allow for expansion and contraction for a minimum material temperature range of 56 degree C (100 degree F), without causing buckling, excessive opening of joints or over stressing of adhesives, welds and fasteners.
- B. Form work to required shapes and sizes, with true curve lines and angles. Provide necessary rebates, lugs and brackets for assembly of units. Use concealed fasteners whenever and wherever possible.
- C. Shop fabricate so far as practicable. Joints fastened flush to conceal reinforcement, or welded where thickness or section permits.
- D. Contact surfaces of connected members be true. Assembled so joints will be tight and practically unnoticeable, without use of filling compound.
- E. Signs shall have fine, even texture and be flat and sound. Lines and miters sharp, arises unbroken, profiles accurate and ornament true to pattern. Plane surfaces be smooth flat and without oil-canning, free of rack and twist. Maxi-mum variation from plane of surface plus or minus .4 mm (0.015 inch). Restore texture to filed or cut areas.
- F. Level or straighten wrought work. Members shall have sharp lines and angles and smooth surfaces.
- G. Extruded members to be free from extrusion marks. Square turns and corners sharp, curves true.
- H. Drill holes for bolts and screws. Conceal fastenings where possible. Exposed ends and edges mill smooth, with corners slightly rounded. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water.
- I. Finish hollow signs with matching material on all faces, tops, bottoms and ends. Edge joints tightly mitered to give appearance of solid material.
- J. All painted surfaces properly primed. Finish coating of paint to have complete coverage with no light or thin applications allowing substrate or primer to show. Finished surface smooth, free of scratches, gouges, drips, bubbles, thickness variations, foreign matter and other imperfections.
- K. Movable parts, including hardware, are be cleaned and adjusted to operate as designed without binding or deformation of members. Doors and covers centered in opening or frame. All contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping components.
- L. Pre-assemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation.

- M. No signs are being manufactured until final sign message schedule & location review has been completed by the Resident Engineer & forwarded to contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Protect products against damage during field handling and installation. Protect adjacent existing and newly placed construction, landscaping and finishes as necessary to prevent damage during installation. Paint and touch up any exposed fasteners and connecting hardware to match color and finish of surrounding surface.
- B. Mount signs in proper alignment, level and plumb according to the sign location plan and the dimensions given on elevation and sign location drawings. Where otherwise not dimensioned, signs shall be installed where best suited to provide a consistent appearance throughout the project. When exact position, angle, height or location is in doubt, contact Resident Engineer for clarification.
- C. Contractor shall own and be responsible for all signs that are damaged, lost or stolen while materials are on the job site and up until the completion and final acceptance of the job.
- E. Remove or correct signs or installation work Resident Engineer determines as unsafe or as an unsafe condition.
- F. At completion of sign installation, clean exposed sign surfaces. Clean and repair any adjoining surfaces and landscaping that became soiled or damaged as a result of installation of signs.
- G. Locate signs as shown on the Sign Location Plans.
- H. Certain signs may be installed on glass. A blank glass back up is required to be placed on opposite side of glass exactly behind sign being installed. This blank glass back up is to be the same size as sign being installed.
- I. Contractor will be responsible for verifying that behind each sign location there are no utility lines that will be affected by installation of signs. Any damage during installation of signs to utilities will be the sole responsibility of the Contractor to correct and repair.
- J. Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or other material for installation of signs. Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage devices which may involve other trades.
- K. At completion of installation turn over to Resident Engineer additional stock of signs and sign components listed in Sign Message Schedule:

Individually box or crate by Sign Type or Part Number and labeled accordingly.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10440
INTERIOR SIGNS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies interior signage for room numbers, directional signs, directories, code required signs, telephone identification signs and temporary interior signs.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Lighted EXIT signs for egress purposes are specified under Division 16.
- B. Exterior signs: Section 10430, EXTERIOR SIGNAGE.
- C. Color Finish: SECTION 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS AND FINISH SCHEDULE

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS

Sign manufacturer shall provide evidence that they regularly and presently manufactures signs similar to those specified in this section as one of their principal products.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Samples: Sign panels and frames, with letters and symbols, each type.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature: Showing the methods and procedures proposed for the concealed anchorage of the signage system to each surface type.
- D. Samples: Sign location plan, showing location, type and total number of signs required.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver materials to job in manufacturer's original sealed containers with brand name marked thereon. Protect materials from damage.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Council of American Building Officials (CABO):
A117.1-98.....Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
N2.1-89.....Warning Symbols - Radiation Symbol
- D. Americans with Disabilities Act - 1990
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
B209-04.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

B221-05.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Shapes, and tubes.

F. Federal Specifications (Fed Spec):

MIL_P 8184E.....Plastic Sheet, Acrylic, Modified.

A-A-59502.....Plastic Sheet, Polycarbonate.

1.7 MINIMUM SIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Permanent Rooms and Spaces:

1. Tactile and Braille Characters, raised minimum 0.793 mm (1/32 in).
Characters shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille.
2. Type Styles: Characters shall be uppercase, Helvetica Medium,
Helvetica Medium Condensed and Helvetica Regular.
3. Character Height: Minimum 16 mm (5/8 in) high, Maximum 50 mm (2 in).
4. Symbols (Pictograms): Equivalent written description shall be placed
directly below symbol, outside of symbol's background field. Border
dimensions of symbol background shall be minimum 150 mm (6 in) high.
5. Finish and Contrast: Characters and background shall be eggshell,
matte or other non-glare finish with adequate contrast with
background.
6. Mounting Location and Height: As shown. Mounted on wall adjacent to
the latch side of the door and to avoid door swing and protruding
objects.

B. Directional/Informational and Overhead Signs:

1. Type Styles: As shown. Characters shall have a width-to-height ratio
between 3:5 and 1:1. Characters shall have a stroke width-to-height
ratio of between 1:5 and 1:10.
2. Character Height: minimum 75 mm (3 in) high for overhead signs. As
shown, for directional signs.
3. Finish and Contrast: Same as for signs of permanent rooms and spaces.
4. Mounting Location and Height: As shown.

1.8 COLORS AND FINISHES, SECTION 09050:

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Signs of type, size and design shown on the drawings and as specified.
- B. Signs complete with lettering, framing and related components for a
complete installation.

2.2 PRODUCTS

A. Aluminum:

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209.
2. Extrusions and Tubing: ASTM B221.

- B. Cast Acrylic Sheet: MIL-P-8184E; Type II, class 1, Water white non-glare optically clear. Matt finish water white clear acrylic shall not be acceptable.
- C. Polycarbonate: Mil-P-46144C; Type I, class 1.
- D. Vinyl: 0.1 mm thick machine cut, having a pressure sensitive adhesive and integral colors.

2.3 SIGN TYPES

A. General:

- 1. The interior sign system is comprised of sign type's families that are identified by a letter and number which identify a particular group of signs. An additional number identifies a specific type of sign within that family.
 - a. IN indicates a component construction based sign and an interior sign.

Interior Sign Designations:

Each sign in the program guide has been given a specific sign type number designation. This designation provide a common description that can be referenced when programming a site and ordering signs. The following explains how the sign type designations are derived.

IN-01.01.03C

- 01 Two digit numbers identifies the Life Safety & Code sign family.
- .28 The two digit number following the period identifies a specific sign type within the sign family.
- .03 The two digit number following the period identifies a specific sub group of sign within the sign family.
- C The letter designates a specific sign configuration and/or layout for graphics or symbols.

B. Interchangeable Component System:

- 1. Sign Type Families: 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 08, 09, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16 and 17.
- 2. Interior sign system capable of being arranged in a variety of configurations with a minimum of attachments, devices and connectors.
 - a. Interchangeable nature of the system shall allow for changes of graphic components of the installed sign, without changing sign in its entirety.
 - b. Component Sign System is comprised of the following primary components:

- 1) Rail Back utilizing horizontal rails, spaced to allow for uniform, modular sizing of sign types.
 - 2) Rail Insert mounted to back of Copy Panels to allow for attachment to Rail Back.
 - 3) Copy Panels, made of a variety of materials to allow for different graphic needs.
 - 4) End Caps which interlock to Rail Back to enclose and secure changeable Copy Panels.
 - 5) Joiners and Accent Joiners connect separate Rail Backs together.
 - 6) Top Accent Bars which provide decorative trim cap that encloses the top of sign or can connect the sign to a Type 03 Room Number Sign.
3. Rail Insert functions as a mounting device for Copy Panels on to the Rail Back. The Rail Insert mounts to the back of the Copy Panel with adhesive suitable for use with the particular copy insert material.
- a. Shall allow Copy Panels to slide or snap into the horizontal Rail Back for ease of changeability.
 - b. Shall mount to the back of the Copy Panel with adhesive suitable for use with particular Copy Panel material.
4. Copy Panels shall accept various forms of copy and graphics, and attaches to the Rail Back with the Rail Insert. Copy Panels shall be either ABS plastic with integral color or an acrylic lacquer finish; photo polymer; or, acrylic.
- a. Interchangeable by sliding horizontally from either side of sign, and to other signs in system of equal or greater width or height.
 - b. Cleanable without use of special chemicals or cleaning solutions.
 - c. Copy Insert Materials
 - 1) ABS Inserts - 2.3 mm (.090 inches) extruded ABS plastic core with .07 mm (.003 inches) acrylic cap bonded during extrusion/texturing process. Pressure bonded to extruded Rail Insert using adhesive. Background color is either integral or painted in acrylic lacquer. ABS inserts finished in a chromium industries #HM335RA texture pattern to prevent glare.
 - 2) Photo polymer Inserts - 3 mm (.125 inches) phenolic photo polymer with raised copy etched to 2.3 mm (.0937 inches), bonded to an ABS plastic or extruded aluminum insert with adhesive. Background color is painted in acrylic enamel.
 - 3) Changeable Paper/ Insert Holder - Extruded insert holder with integral Rail Insert for connection with structural back panel

- in 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized finish. Inserts into holder are paper with a clear 0.7 mm (.030 inches) textured cover. Background color is painted in acrylic lacquer.
- 4) Acrylic - 2 mm (.080 inches) non-glare acrylic. Pressure bonded to extruded Rail Insert using adhesive. Background color is painted in acrylic lacquer or acrylic enamel.
 - 5) Extruded 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized finish Insert Holder with integral Rail Insert for connection with Structural Back Panel to hold a 0.7 mm (.030 inches) textured polycarbonate insert and a Sliding Tile which mounts in the Inset Holder and slides horizontally.
 - 6) End Caps - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized. End Caps interlock with Rail Back with clips to form an integral unit, enclosing and securing the changeable Copy Panels, without requiring tools for assembly.
 - a) Shall be interchangeable to either end of sign and to other signs in the system of equal height.
 - b) Mechanical fasteners can be added to the End Caps that will secure it to Rail Back to make sign tamper resistant.
 - 7) Joiners - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized finish. Rail Joiners connect Rail Backs together blindly, providing a butt joint between Copy Inserts.
 - 8) Accent Joiners - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a mirror polished finish. Joiner shall connect Rail Backs together with a visible 3 mm (.125 inches) horizontal rib, flush to the adjacent Copy Panel surfaces.
 - 9) Top Accent Rail - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a mirror polished finish. Rail shall provide 3 mm (.125 inches) high decorative trim cap, which butts flush to adjacent Copy Panel and encloses top of Rail Back and Copy Panel.
 - 10) Typography
 - a) Vinyl First Surface Copy (non-tactile) - Applied Vinyl copy.
 - b) Subsurface Copy Inserts - Textured 1 mm (.030 inches) clear polycarbonate face with subsurface applied Vinyl copy. Face shall be back sprayed with paint and laminated to an extruded aluminum carrier insert.
 - c) Integral Tactile Copy Inserts - phenolic photo polymer etched with 2.3 mm (.0937 inches) raised copy.

- d) Silk-screened First Surface Copy (non-tactile) - Injection molded or extruded ABS plastic or aluminum insert with first surface applied enamel silk-screened copy.

C. Sign Type Family 01, 02.01 thru 02.05, 08, 09 and 20:

- 1. All text and graphics are to be first surface silk-screened.
- 2. IN-01.12 & IN-01.13: Refer to Sign Type 03 specification for tactile and Braille portion of sign.
- 3. IN-02.4: All text and graphics are to be first surface vinyl letters.
- 4. IN-01.1: Preparation of artwork for reproduction of "fire and emergency evacuation maps" is by manufacturer.

D. Sign Type Families 03:

- 1. Tactile sign is to be made from a material that provides for letters, numbers and Braille to be integral with sign plaque material such as: photosensitive polyamide resin, etched metal, sandblasted phenolic or embossed material. Do not apply letters, numbers and Braille with adhesive.
- 2. Numbers, letters and Braille to be raised 0.793 mm (.0312 inches) from the background surface. The draft of the letters, numbers and Braille to be tapered, vertical and clean.
- 3. Braille dots are to conform with standard dimensions for literary Braille; (a) Dot base diameter: 1.5 mm (.059 inches) (b) Inter-dot spacing: 2.3 mm (.090 inches) (c) Horizontal separation between cells: 6.0 mm (.241 inches) (d) Vertical separation between cells: 10.0 mm (.395 inches)
- 4. Entire assembly is painted in specified color. After painting, apply white or other specified color to surface of the numbers and letters. Entire sign is to have a protective clear coat sealant applied.
- 5. Complete sign is to have an eggshell finish (11 to 19 degree on a 60 degree glossmeter).

E. Sign Type Family 04 and 11:

- 1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
- 2. IN-04: When a Type IN-04 is to be mounted under a Type IN03, a connecting Accent Joiner is to be used to create a singular integrated sign.

F. Sign Type 05:

- 1. Text if added to Copy Insert module to be first surface applied vinyl letters.

G. Sign Type Family 06 and 07:

- 1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters except for under sliding tile.

2. Protect text, which is covered by sliding tile, so tile does not wear away letters.
- H. Sign Type Family 10:
1. Pocket depth is to be 0.3 mm (.0150 inches).
- I. Sign Type Family 12 and 13:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
 2. IN-12: Provide felt, cork or similar material on bottom of desk mounting bracket to protect counter surfaces.
- J. Sign Type Family 14, 15, and 16:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
 2. IN-14.06: When added to top of IN-14.01, IN-14.04, or IN-14.05 a connecting Accent Joiner is to be used to create a singular integrated sign.
 3. Ceiling mounted signs required mounting hardware on the sign that allows for sign disconnection, removal and reinstallation and reconnection.
- K. Sign Type Family 17:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
 2. IN-17: Directory constructed using elements of the Component System.
- L. Sign Type Family 18:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied stylus cut vinyl letters.
 2. Provide in specified typeface, color and spacing, with each message or message group on a single quick release backing sheet.
- M. Sign Type Family 19:
1. Dimensional letters are mill or laser cut acrylic in the size and thickness noted in the drawings.
 2. Draft of letters is perpendicular to letters face.
 3. All corners such as where a letter stem and bar intersect are to be square so the letter form is accurately reproduced.
 4. Paint letters with acrylic polyurethane in specified color and finish.
- N. Sign Type Family (See Specialty Signs Section) 21:
1. IN-21.01: 57 mm (2.25 inches) polished aluminum tube mounted to weighted 356 mm (14 inches) diameter polished aluminum base. Sign bracket to hold a 6 mm (.25 inches) sign plaque.
 2. IN-21.02: 57 mm (2.25 inches) polished aluminum tube vertical support mounted to a weighted polished 57 mm (2.25 inches) aluminum tubular base. Rail Back mechanically connected to vertical supports with Copy Panel attached to front and back.

3. IN-21.03 & 21.04: IN-21.02: 57 mm (2.25 inches) polished aluminum tube vertical support mounted to a weighted polished 57 mm (2.25 inches) aluminum tubular base. Rail Back mechanically connected to vertical supports with hinged locking glass door. Black felt covered changeable letter board or tan vinyl impregnated cork tack surface as background within case.

O. Sign Type Family 22:

1. IN-22.01: Extruded aluminum clip anodized black containing rollers to pinch and release paper. End caps are black plastic.
2. IN-22.02: Patient Information holder constructed of 18 gauge formed sheet metal painted in specified color. Polished aluminum connecting rods and buttons. Button covers for mounting screws are to permanently attach and securely conceal screws.

P. Temporary Interior Signs:

1. Fabricated from 50 kg (110 pound) matte finished white paper cut to 100 mm (4 inch) wide by 300 mm (12 inch) long. Punched 3 mm (.125 inch) hole with edge of hole spaced 13 mm (.5 inch) in from edge and centered on 100 mm (4 inch) side. Reinforce hole on both sides with suitable material that prevents tie from pulling through hole. Ties are steel wire 0.3 mm (0.120 inch) thick attached to tag with twist leaving 150 mm (6 inch) long free ends.
2. Mark architectural room number on sign, with broad felt marker in clearly legible numbers or letters that identify room, corridor or space as shown on floor plans.
3. Install temporary signs to all rooms that have a room, corridor or space number. Attach to door frame, door knob or door pull.
 - a. Doors that do not require signs are: corridor doors in corridor with same number, folding doors or partitions, toilet doors, bathroom doors within and between rooms, closet doors within rooms, communicating doors in partitions between rooms with corridor entrance doors.
 - b. Replace and missing damaged or illegible signs.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Design components to allow for expansion and contraction for a minimum material temperature range of 56 °C (100 °F), without causing buckling, excessive opening of joints or over stressing of adhesives, welds and fasteners.

- B. Form work to required shapes and sizes, with true curve lines and angles. Provide necessary rebates, lugs and brackets for assembly of units. Use concealed fasteners whenever and wherever possible.
- C. Shop fabricate so far as practicable. Joints fastened flush to conceal reinforcement, or welded where thickness or section permits.
- D. Contact surfaces of connected members be true. Assembled so joints will be tight and practically unnoticeable, without use of filling compound.
- E. Signs shall have fine, even texture and be flat and sound. Lines and miters sharp, arises unbroken, profiles accurate and ornament true to pattern. Plane surfaces be smooth flat and without oil-canning, free of rack and twist. Maximum variation from plane of surface plus or minus 0.3 mm (0.015 inches). Restore texture to filed or cut areas.
- F. Level or straighten wrought work. Members shall have sharp lines and angles and smooth surfaces.
- G. Extruded members to be free from extrusion marks. Square turns and corners sharp, curves true.
- H. Drill holes for bolts and screws. Conceal fastenings where possible. Exposed ends and edges mill smooth, with corners slightly rounded. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water.
- I. Finish hollow signs with matching material on all faces, tops, bottoms and ends. Edge joints tightly mitered to give appearance of solid material.
- J. All painted surfaces properly primed. Finish coating of paint to have complete coverage with no light or thin applications allowing substrate or primer to show. Finished surface smooth, free of scratches, gouges, drips, bubbles, thickness variations, foreign matter and other imperfections.
- K. Movable parts, including hardware, are to be cleaned and adjusted to operate as designed without binding or deformation of members. Doors and covers centered in opening or frame. All contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping components.
- L. Pre-assemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation.
- M. No signs are being manufactured until final sign message schedule and location review has been completed by the Resident Engineer & forwarded to contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Protect products against damage during field handling and installation. Protect adjacent existing and newly placed construction, landscaping and finishes as necessary to prevent damage during installation. Paint and touch up any exposed fasteners and connecting hardware to match color and finish of surrounding surface.
- B. Mount signs in proper alignment, level and plumb according to the sign location plan and the dimensions given on elevation and sign location drawings. Where otherwise not dimensioned, signs shall be installed where best suited to provide a consistent appearance throughout the project. When exact position, angle, height or location is in doubt, contact Resident Engineer for clarification.
- C. Contractor shall be responsible for all signs that are damaged, lost or stolen while materials are on the job site and up until the completion and final acceptance of the job.
- D. Remove or correct signs or installation work Resident Engineer determines as unsafe or as an unsafe condition.
- E. At completion of sign installation, clean exposed sign surfaces. Clean and repair any adjoining surfaces and landscaping that became soiled or damaged as a result of installation of signs.
- F. Locate signs as shown on the Sign Location Plans.
- G. Certain signs may be installed on glass. A blank glass back up is required to be placed on opposite side of glass exactly behind sign being installed. This blank glass back up is to be the same size as sign being installed.
- H. Contractor will be responsible for verifying that behind each sign location there are no utility lines that will be affected by installation of signs. Any damage during installation of signs to utilities will be the sole responsibility of the Contractor to correct and repair.
- J. Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or other material for installation of signs. Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage devices which may involve other trades.

- - - END - - -

**SECTION 10522
FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section covers recessed fire extinguisher cabinets.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Acrylic glazing: Section 08810, GLASS AND GLAZING.
- B. Field Painting: Section 09900, PAINTING.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Fire extinguisher cabinet including installation instruction and rough opening required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINET

Recessed type with flat trim of size and design shown.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Form body of cabinet from 0.9 mm (0.0359 inch) thick sheet steel.
- B. Fabricate door and trim from 1.2 mm (0.0478 inch) thick sheet steel with all face joints fully welded and ground smooth.
 - 1. Glaze doors with 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick G-19, clear acrylic sheet.
 - 2. Design doors to open 180 degrees.
 - 3. Provide continuous hinge, pull handle, and adjustable roller catch.

2.3 FINISH

- A. Finish interior of cabinet body with baked-on semigloss white enamel.
- B. Finish door, frame with manufacturer's standard baked-on prime coat suitable for field painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. Install fire extinguisher cabinets in prepared openings and secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install cabinet so that bottom of cabinet is 975 mm (39 inches) above finished floor.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 13081
SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR
NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

- A. Provide seismic restraint in accordance with the requirements of this section in order to maintain the integrity of nonstructural components of the building so that they remain safe and functional in case of seismic event.
- B. Definitions: Non-structural building components are components or systems that are not part of the building's structural system whether inside or outside, above or below grade. Non-structural components of buildings include:
 - 1. Architectural Elements: Facades that are not part of the structural system and its shear resistant elements; cornices and other architectural projections and parapets that do not function structurally; glazing; nonbearing partitions; suspended ceilings; stairs isolated from the basic structure; cabinets; bookshelves; medical equipment; and storage racks.
 - 2. Electrical Elements: Power and lighting systems; substations; switchgear and switchboards; auxiliary engine-generator sets; transfer switches; motor control centers; motor generators; selector and controller panels; fire protection and alarm systems; special life support systems; and telephone and communication systems.
 - 3. Mechanical Elements: Heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning systems; medical gas systems; plumbing systems; sprinkler systems; pneumatic systems; boiler equipment and components.
 - 4. Transportation Elements: Mechanical, electrical and structural elements for transport systems, including hoisting equipment and counterweights.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01410, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL:

- A. Shop-Drawing Preparation:
 - 1. Have seismic-force-restraint shop drawings and calculations prepared by a professional structural engineer experienced in the area of seismic force restraints. The professional structural engineer shall be registered in the state where the project is located.

2. Submit design tables and information used for the design-force levels, stamped and signed by a professional structural engineer registered in the State where project is located.

B. Coordination:

1. Do not install seismic restraints until seismic restraint submittals are approved by the Resident Engineer.
2. Coordinate and install trapezes or other multi-pipe hanger systems prior to pipe installation.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit a coordinated set of equipment anchorage drawings prior to installation including:
 1. Description, layout, and location of items to be anchored or braced with anchorage or brace points noted and dimensioned.
 2. Details of anchorage or bracing at large scale with all members, parts brackets shown, together with all connections, bolts, welds etc. clearly identified and specified.
 3. Numerical value of design seismic brace loads.
 4. For expansion bolts, include design load and capacity if different from those specified.
- B. Submit prior to installation, a coordinated set of bracing drawings for seismic protection of piping, with data identifying the various support-to-structure connections and seismic bracing structural connections, include:
 1. Single-line piping diagrams on a floor-by-floor basis. Show all suspended piping for a given floor on the same plain.
 2. Type of pipe (Copper, steel, cast iron, insulated, non-insulated, etc.).
 3. Pipe contents.
 4. Structural framing.
 5. Location of all gravity load pipe supports and spacing requirements.
 6. Numerical value of gravity load reactions.
 7. Location of all seismic bracing.
 8. Numerical value of applied seismic brace loads.
 9. Type of connection (Vertical support, vertical support with seismic brace etc.).
 10. Seismic brace reaction type (tension or compression). Details illustrating all support and bracing components, methods of connections, and specific anchors to be used.

- C. Submit prior to installation, bracing drawings for seismic protection of suspended ductwork and suspended electrical and communication cables, include:
 - 1. Details illustrating all support and bracing components, methods of connection, and specific anchors to be used.
 - 2. Numerical value of applied gravity and seismic loads and seismic loads acting on support and bracing components.
 - 3. Maximum spacing of hangers and bracing.
 - 4. Seal of registered structural engineer responsible for design.
- D. Submit design calculations prepared and sealed by the registered structural engineer specified above in paragraph 1.3A.
- E. Submit for concrete anchors, the appropriate ICBC evaluation reports, OSHPD pre-approvals, or lab test reports verifying compliance with OSHPD Interpretation of Regulations 28-6.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. The Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete, (ACI 318-02), and Commentary (ACI 318R-02).
- C. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
Load and Resistance Factor Design, Volume 1, Second Edition.
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 A36/A36M-05.....Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.
 A53/A53M-072.....Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
 A307-07.....Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs; 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength.
 A325/A325N-05.....Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength.
 A490/A490M-06.....Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Steel Structural Bolts, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength.

- A500/A500M-07.....Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
- A501-07.....Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.
- A615/615M-07.....Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
- A992/A992M-06.....Standard Specification for Steel for Structural Shapes for Use in Building Framing.
- A996/996M-06.....Standard Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
- E488-96(2003).....Standard Test Method for Strength of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements.
- E. International Building Code (IBC) 2006 Edition.
- F. VA Seismic Design Requirements, H-18-8, December 2003.
- G. National Uniform Seismic Installation Guidelines (NUSIG).
- H. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA):
Seismic Restraint Manual - Guidelines for Mechanical Systems, 1998 Edition and Addendum.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENT:

- A. IBC 2006.
Seismic forces shall be determined from a short period spectral acceleration, S_{DS} , of 0.45 and a component importance factor, I_P , of 1.5.
- B. Exceptions: The seismic restraint of the following items may be omitted:
1. Equipment weighing less than 400 pounds, which is supported directly on the floor or roof.
 2. Equipment weighing less than 20 pounds, which is suspended from the roof or floor or hung from a wall.
 3. Gas and medical piping less than 2 ½ inches inside diameter.
 4. Piping in boiler plants and equipment rooms less than 1 ¼ inches inside diameter.
 5. All other piping less than 2 ½ inches inside diameter, except for automatic fire suppression systems.
 6. All piping suspended by individual hangers, 12 inches or less in length from the top of pipe to the bottom of the support for the hanger.
 7. All electrical conduits, less than 2 ½ inches inside diameter.

8. All rectangular air handling ducts less than six square feet in cross sectional area.
9. All round air handling ducts less than 28 inches in diameter.
10. All ducts suspended by hangers 12 inches or less in length from the top of the duct to the bottom of support for the hanger.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL:

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A36, A572, Grade 50, and A992.
- B. Structural Tubing: ASTM A500, Grade B.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Grade B.
- D. Bolts & Nuts: ASTM A307 and A325.

2.2 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE:

- A. Concrete: 28 day strength, $f'_c = 32$ MPa (4,500 psi) for concrete in contact with soils or within 12 inches of finished grade and 30 MPa (4,000 psi) otherwise.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/615M for No. 7 and smaller, ASTM A706 otherwise.

2.3 DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. The seismic forces shall be determined from a short period spectral acceleration, S_{DS} , of 0.45 and a component importance factor, I_P , or 1.5.
- B. The maximum interstory drift is limited to 0.5% of the story height.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL:

- A. Provide equipment supports and anchoring devices to withstand the seismic design forces, so that when seismic design forces are applied, the equipment cannot displace, overturn, or become inoperable.
- B. Provide anchorages in conformance with recommendations of the equipment manufacturer and as shown on approved shop drawings and calculations.
- C. Construct seismic restraints and anchorage to allow for thermal expansion.
- D. Testing Before Final Inspection:
 1. Test 10-percent of anchors in masonry and concrete per ASTM E488, and ACI 355.2 to determine that they meet the required load capacity. If any anchor fails to meet the required load, test the next 20 consecutive anchors, which are required to have zero failure, before resuming the 10-percent testing frequency.
 2. Before scheduling Final Inspection, submit a report on this testing indicating the number and location of testing, and what anchor-loads were obtained.

3.2 EQUIPMENT RESTRAINT AND BRACING:

- A. See drawings for equipment to be restrained or braced.

3.3 MECHANICAL DUCTWORK AND PIPING; BOILER PLANT STACKS AND BREACHING; ELECTRICAL BUSWAYS, CONDUITS, AND CABLE TRAYS; AND TELECOMMUNICATION WIRES AND CABLE TRAYS:

- A. Support and brace mechanical ductwork and piping; electrical busways, conduits and cable trays; and telecommunication wires and cable trays including boiler plant stacks and breeching to resist directional forces (lateral, longitudinal and vertical).
- B. Brace duct and breeching branches with a minimum of 1 brace per branch.
- D. Provide supports and anchoring so that, upon application of seismic forces, piping remains fully connected as operable systems which will not displace sufficiently to damage adjacent or connecting equipment, or building members.
- E. Seismic Restraint of Piping:
 - 1. Design criteria: International Building Code 2003 Edition.
- F. Piping Connections: Provide flexible connections where pipes connect to equipment. Make the connections capable of accommodating relative differential movements between the pipe and equipment under conditions of earthquake shaking.

3.4 PARTITIONS:

- A. In buildings with flexible structural frames, anchor partitions to only structural element, such as a floor slab, and separate such partition by a physical gap from all other structural elements.
- B. Properly anchor masonry walls to the structure for restraint, so as to carry lateral loads imposed due to earthquake along with their own weight and other lateral forces.

3.5 CEILINGS AND LIGHTING FIXTURES:

- A. At regular intervals, laterally brace suspended ceilings against lateral and vertical movements, and provide with a physical separation at the walls.
- B. Independently support and laterally brace all lighting fixtures. Refer to applicable portion of lighting specification, Section 16510, BUILDING LIGHTING, INTERIOR.

3.6 FACADES AND GLAZING

- A. Install attachments to structure for all façade materials as shown on construction drawings to ensure strength against applicable seismic forces at the project location.

3.7 STORAGE RACKS, CABINETS, AND BOOKCASES

- A. Install storage racks to withstand earthquake forces and anchored to the floor or laterally braced from the top to the structural elements.
- B. Anchor filing cabinets that are more than 2 drawers high to the floor or walls, and equip all drawers with properly engaged, lockable latches.
- C. Anchor bookcases that are more than 30 inches high to the floor or walls, and equip any doors with properly engaged, lockable latches.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 13850
FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section of the specifications includes the modification of the existing Central Plant fire alarm system to accommodate the expansion of Building 2, including furnishing, installation, and connection of the new fire alarm equipment to form a complete coordinated system ready for operation. It shall include, but not be limited to, alarm initiating devices, alarm notification appliances, fire safety control devices, and wiring and conduit as shown on the drawings and as specified. Not all equipment listed in this specification is required for the system modification. It is provided here for information on the voice evacuation system installed throughout the site as part of Phase IV. The Matrix of Operations established during Phase IV shall be followed.
- B. Fire alarm systems shall comply with requirements of NFPA 72 unless variations to NFPA 72 are specifically identified within these contract documents by the following notation: "variation". The design, system layout, document submittal preparation, and supervision of installation and testing shall be provided by a technician that is certified NICET level III or a registered fire protection engineer. The NICET certified technician shall be on site for the supervision and testing of the system. Factory engineers from the equipment manufacturer, thoroughly familiar and knowledgeable with all equipment utilized, shall provide additional technical support at the site as required by the Contracting Officer or his authorized representative. Installers shall have a minimum of two years experience installing fire alarm systems.
- C. Fire alarm signals:
1. The New Medical Center shall have an automatic digitized voice fire alarm signal with emergency manual voice override to notify occupants to evacuate. The digitized voice message shall identify the area of the building (smoke zone) from which the alarm was initiated.
 2. A temporal three tone shall sound in the smoke compartment of alarm origin. Strobes shall flash in the smoke compartment of alarm origin only.

3. An automatic voice message shall sound throughout the remainder of the Medical Center, Nursing Home, and Central Plant buildings identifying the zone of alarm origin. Exact text of this message shall be approved by the VA Resident Engineer.
- D. Alarm signals (by device), supervisory signals (by device) and system trouble signals (by device not reporting) shall be distinctly transmitted to the main fire alarm system control unit located in the fire command center.
- E. The main fire alarm control unit shall automatically transmit alarm signals to a listed central station using a digital alarm communicator transmitter in accordance with NFPA 72.

1.2 SCOPE

- A. The scope of fire alarm system installation shall include the installation of a new networked, addressable voice communication system with distributed fire alarm control panels and amplifier panels throughout the Medical Center. Work shall also include the extension of the Medical Center fire alarm network to the existing Nursing Home and Central Plant. The Nursing Home fire alarm system is being provided under a separate Design-Build contract and has been specified to be capable of connection to the Medical Center system, with the Nursing Home fire alarm control panel serving as a node in the new networked system. The existing Central Plant fire alarm system does not have the capability of becoming a node in the network and shall be replaced. A new fire alarm control panel shall be installed in the Central Plant and shall be a node in the fire alarm network. Network Command Computers shall be installed in the Fire Command Center and in the Central Plant. The Central Plant computer shall serve as the main point of user interface with the system on a daily basis. The Fire Command Center computer shall serve as the main interface for the Fire Department.
- B. A new fire alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with the specifications and drawings. Device location and wiring runs shown on the drawings are for reference only unless specifically dimensioned. Actual locations shall be in accordance with NFPA 72 and this specification.
- C. Basic Performance:

1. Alarm and trouble signals from each building fire alarm control panel shall be digitally encoded by UL listed electronic devices onto a multiplexed communication system.
2. Response time between alarm initiation (contact closure) and recording at the main fire alarm control unit (appearance on alphanumeric read out) shall not exceed five (5) seconds.
3. The signaling line circuits (SLC) between building fire alarm control units shall be wired Style 7 in accordance with NFPA 72. Isolation shall be provided so that no more than one building can be lost due to a short circuit fault.
4. Initiating device circuits (IDC) shall be wired Style C in accordance with NFPA 72.
5. Signaling line circuits (SLC) within buildings shall be wired Style 4 in accordance with NFPA 72. Individual signaling line circuits shall be limited to covering 22,500 square feet of floor space or 3 floors whichever is less.
6. Notification appliance circuits (NAC) shall be wired Style Y in accordance with NFPA 72.

1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS: Restoration of existing surfaces.
- B. Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS: Procedures for submittals.
- C. Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS: Fire proofing wall penetrations.
- D. Section 08710, BUILDERS HARDWARE: Combination Closer-Holders.
- E. Section 09900, PAINTING: Painting for equipment and existing surfaces.
- F. Section 13900, FIRE PROTECTION: Sprinkler systems.
- G. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements for items which are common to other Division 16 sections.
- H. Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS: Conduits and boxes for cables/wiring.
- I. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Cables/wiring.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit 4 copies and 1 reproducible in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS and Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Drawings:
 1. Prepare drawings using AutoCAD software and include all contractors information. Layering shall be by VA criteria as provided by the

Contracting Officer's Technical Representative (COTR). Bid drawing files will be provided to the Contractor at the pre-construction meeting. The contractor shall be responsible for verifying all critical dimensions shown on the drawings provided by VA.

2. Floor plans: Provide locations of all devices (with device number at each addressable device corresponding to control unit programming), appliances, panels, equipment, junction/terminal cabinets/boxes, risers, electrical power connections, individual circuits and raceway routing, system zoning; number, size, and type of raceways and conductors in each raceway; conduit fill calculations with cross section area percent fill for each type and size of conductor and raceway. Only those devices connected and incorporated into the final system shall be on these floor plans. Do not show any removed devices on the floor plans. Show all interfaces for all fire safety functions.
3. Riser diagrams: Provide, for the entire system, the number, size and type of riser raceways and conductors in each riser raceway and number of each type device per floor and zone. Show door holder interface, elevator control interface, HVAC shutdown interface, fire extinguishing system interface, and all other fire safety interfaces. Show wiring Styles on the riser diagram for all circuits. Provide diagrams both on a per building and campus wide basis.
4. Detailed wiring diagrams: Provide for control panels, modules, power supplies, electrical power connections, auxiliary relays and annunciators showing termination identifications, size and type conductors, circuit boards, LED lamps, indicators, adjustable controls, switches, ribbon connectors, wiring harnesses, terminal strips and connectors, spare zones/circuits. Diagrams shall be drawn to a scale sufficient to show spatial relationships between components, enclosures and equipment configuration.
5. Two weeks prior to final inspection, the Contractor shall deliver to the COTR one (1) set of reproducible, as-built drawings, two blue-line copies and one (1) set of the as-built drawing computer files . As-built drawings (floor plans) shall show all new and existing conduit used for the fire alarm system.

C. Manuals:

1. Submit simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals including technical data sheets for all items used in the system, power requirements, device wiring diagrams, dimensions, and information for ordering replacement parts.
 - a. Wiring diagrams shall have their terminals identified to facilitate installation, operation, expansion and maintenance.
 - b. Wiring diagrams shall indicate internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnections between the items of equipment.
 - c. Include complete listing of all software used and installation and operation instructions including the input/output matrix chart.
 - d. Provide a clear and concise description of operation that gives, in detail, the information required to properly operate, inspect, test and maintain the equipment and system. Provide all manufacturer's installation limitations including but not limited to circuit length limitations.
 - e. Complete listing of all digitized voice messages.
 - f. Provide standby battery calculations under normal operating and alarm modes.
 - g. Include information indicating who will provide emergency service and perform post contract maintenance.
 - h. Provide a replacement parts list with current prices. Include a list of recommended spare parts, tools, and instruments for testing and maintenance purposes.
 - i. A computerized preventive maintenance schedule for all equipment. The schedule shall be provided on disk in a computer format acceptable to the VAMC and shall describe the protocol for preventive maintenance of all equipment. The schedule shall include the required times for systematic examination, adjustment and cleaning of all equipment. A print out of the schedule shall also be provided in the manual. Provide the disk in a pocket within the manual.
 - j. Furnish manuals in 3 ring loose-leaf binder or manufacturer's standard binder.
 - k. A print out for all devices proposed on each signaling line circuit with spare capacity indicated.

2. Two weeks prior to final inspection, deliver four copies of the final updated maintenance and operating manual to the COTR.
 - a. The manual shall be updated to include any information necessitated by the maintenance and operating manual approval.
 - b. Complete "As installed" wiring and schematic diagrams shall be included that shows all items of equipment and their interconnecting wiring. Show all final terminal identifications.
 - c. Complete listing of all programming information, including all control events per device including an updated input/output matrix.
 - d. Certificate of Installation as required by NFPA 72 for each building. The certificate shall identify any variations from the National Fire Alarm Code.
 - e. Certificate from equipment manufacturer assuring compliance with all manufacturers installation requirements and satisfactory system operation.

D. Certifications:

1. Together with the shop drawing submittal, submit the technician's NICET level III fire alarm certification as well as certification from the control unit manufacturer that the proposed performer of contract maintenance is an authorized representative of the major equipment manufacturer. Include in the certification the names and addresses of the proposed supervisor of installation and the proposed performer of contract maintenance. Also include the name and title of the manufacturer's representative who makes the certification.
2. Together with the shop drawing submittal, submit a certification from either the control unit manufacturer or the manufacturer of each component (e.g., smoke detector) that the components being furnished are compatible with the control unit.
3. Together with the shop drawing submittal, submit a certification from the major equipment manufacturer that the wiring and connection diagrams meet this specification, UL and NFPA 72 requirements.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. All work performed and all material and equipment furnished under this contract shall be free from defects and shall remain so for a period of five (5) years from the date of acceptance of the entire installation by the Contracting Officer.

1.6 GUARANTY PERIOD SERVICES

- A. Complete inspection, testing, maintenance and repair service for the fire alarm system shall be provided by a factory trained authorized representative of the manufacturer of the major equipment for a period of five years from the date of acceptance of the entire installation by the Contracting Officer.
- B. Contractor shall provide all necessary test equipment, parts and labor to perform required inspection, testing, maintenance and repair.
- C. All inspection, testing, maintenance and permanent records required by NFPA 72, and recommended by the equipment manufacturer shall be provided by the contractor. Work shall include operation of sprinkler system alarm and supervisory devices as well as all reused existing equipment connected to the fire alarm system. It shall include all interfaced equipment including but not limited to elevators, HVAC shutdown, and extinguishing systems.
- D. Maintenance and testing shall be performed in accordance with NFPA 72. A computerized preventive maintenance schedule shall be provided and shall describe the protocol for preventive maintenance of equipment. The schedule shall include a systematic examination, adjustment and cleaning of all equipment.
- E. Non-included Work: Repair service shall not include the performance of any work due to improper use, accidents, or negligence for which the contractor is not responsible.
- F. Service and emergency personnel shall report to the Engineering Office or their authorized representative upon arrival at the hospital and again upon the completion of the required work. A copy of the work ticket containing a complete description of the work performed and parts replaced shall be provided to the VA Contracting Officer or his authorized representative.
- G. Emergency Service:
 - 1. Warranty Period Service: Service other than the preventative maintenance, inspection, and testing required by NFPA 72 shall be considered emergency call-back service and covered under the warranty of the installation during the first year of the warranty period, unless the required service is a result of abuse or misuse by the Government. Written notification shall not be required for emergency warranty period service and the contractor shall respond as outlined

in the following sections on Normal and Overtime Emergency Call-Back Service. Warranty period service can be required during normal or overtime emergency call-back service time periods at the discretion of the Contracting Officer or his authorized representative.

2. Normal and overtime emergency call-back service shall consist of an on-site response within two hours of notification of a system trouble.
 3. Normal emergency call-back service times are between the hours of 7:30 a.m. and 4:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, exclusive of federal holidays. Service performed during all other times shall be considered to be overtime emergency call-back service. The cost of all normal emergency call-back service for years 2 through 5 shall be included in the cost of this contract.
 4. Overtime emergency call-back service shall be provided for the system when requested by the Government. The cost of the first 40 manhours per year of overtime call-back service during years 2 through 5 of this contract shall be provided under this contract. Payment for overtime emergency call-back service in excess of the 40 man hours per year requirement will be handled through separate purchase orders. The method of calculating overtime emergency call-back hours is based on actual time spent on site and does not include travel time.
- H. The contractor shall maintain a log at each fire alarm control unit. The log shall list the date and time of all examinations and trouble calls, condition of the system, and name of the technician. Each trouble call shall be fully described, including the nature of the trouble, necessary correction performed, and parts replaced.
- I. In the event that VA modifies the fire alarm system post-Acceptance but during the five year Guaranty Period Service period, Contractor shall be required to verify that the system, as newly modified or added, is consistent with the manufacturer's requirements; any verification performed will be equitably adjusted under the Changes clause. The post-Acceptance modification or addition to the fire alarm system shall not void the continuing requirements under this contract set forth in the Guarantee Period Service provision for the fire alarm system as modified

or added. The contract will be equitably adjusted under the Changes clause for such additional performance.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in text by the basic designation only.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-2008.....National Electrical Code (NEC).
 - 72-2010.....National Fire Alarm Code.
 - 90A-2002.....Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.
 - 101-2003.....Life Safety Code
- C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 2010.....Fire Protection Equipment Directory
- D. Factory Mutual Research Corp (FM): Approval Guide, 2008 Edition
- E. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - S3.41-1996.....Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal
- F. International Code Council, International Building Code (IBC) 2006 Edition

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS, GENERAL

All equipment and components shall be new and the manufacturer's current model. All equipment shall be tested and listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. or Factory Mutual Research Corporation for use as part of a fire alarm system. The authorized representative of the manufacturer of the major equipment shall certify that the installation complies with all manufacturer's requirements and that satisfactory total system operation has been achieved.

2.2 CONDUIT, BOXES, AND WIRE

- A. Conduit shall be in accordance with Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS and as follows:
 - 1. All new conduit shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70.
 - 2. Conduit fill shall not exceed 40 percent of interior cross sectional area.
 - 3. All new conduit shall be 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum.

4. All conduit shall be painted red or shall be labeled "Fire Alarm" on minimum 25 foot centers.

B. Wire:

1. All new wiring shall be installed in a conduit or raceway. Existing wiring that meets the system performance requirements specified herein may be reused. The contractor shall certify such performance in writing.
2. Wiring shall be in accordance with NEC article 760, Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE, and as recommended by the manufacturer of the fire alarm system. All wires shall be color coded. Number and size of conductors shall be as recommended by the fire alarm system manufacturer, but not less than 18 AWG for initiating device circuits and 14 AWG for notification device circuits.
3. Addressable circuits and wiring used for the multiplex communication loop shall be twisted and shielded unless specifically excepted by the fire alarm equipment manufacturer in writing.
4. Any fire alarm system wiring that extends outside of a building shall have additional power surge protection to protect equipment from physical damage and false signals due to lightning, voltage and current induced transients. Protection devices shall be shown on the submittal drawings and shall be UL listed or in accordance with written manufacturer's requirements.
5. All wire or cable used in underground conduits including those in concrete shall be listed for wet locations.

C. Terminal Boxes, Junction Boxes, and Cabinets:

1. Shall be galvanized steel in accordance with UL requirements.
2. All new and reused boxes shall be sized and installed in accordance with NFPA 70.
3. New and existing covers shall be repainted red in accordance with Section 09900, PAINTING and shall be identified with white markings as "FA" for junction boxes and as "FIRE ALARM SYSTEM" for cabinets and terminal boxes. Lettering shall be a minimum of 19 mm (3/4 inch) high.
4. Terminal boxes and cabinets shall have a volume 50 percent greater than required by the NFPA 70. Minimum sized wire shall be considered as 14 AWG for calculation purposes.

5. Terminal boxes and cabinets shall have identified pressure type terminal strips and shall be located at the base of each riser. Terminal strips shall be labeled as specified or as approved by the COTR.

2.3 FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. General:

1. Each building shall be provided with a fire alarm control unit and shall operate as a supervised addressable fire alarm system. Control Units and transponders are indicated on the plans and riser diagram for different sections of the building. Control units shall contain all the features described herein. Transponders shall have all the same features except they do not require a panel mounted operator interface.
2. Each power source shall be supervised from the other source for loss of power.
3. All circuits shall be monitored for integrity.
4. Visually and audibly annunciate any trouble condition including, but not limited to main power failure, grounds and system wiring derangement.
5. Transmit digital alarm information to the main fire alarm control unit.

B. Enclosure:

1. The control unit shall be housed in a cabinet suitable for both recessed and surface mounting. Cabinet and front shall be corrosion protected, given a rust-resistant prime coat, and manufacturer's standard finish.
2. Cabinet shall contain all necessary relays, terminals, lamps, and legend plates to provide control for the system.

C. Operator terminal at main control unit and Central Plant:

1. Operator terminal shall consist of the central processing unit, display screen, keyboard and printer.
2. Display screen shall have a minimum 15-inch diagonal non-glare screen capable of displaying 24 lines of 80 characters each.
3. Keyboard shall consist of 60 alpha numeric and 12 user/functional control keys.
4. Printer shall be the automatic type, printing the date, time and location for all alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions.

D. Power Supply:

1. The control unit shall derive its normal power from a 120 volt, 60 Hz dedicated supply connected to the emergency power system. Standby power shall be provided by a 24 volt DC battery as hereinafter specified. The normal power shall be transformed, rectified, coordinated, and interfaced with the standby battery and charger.
2. Power supply for smoke detectors shall be taken from the fire alarm control unit.
3. Provide protectors to protect the fire alarm equipment from damage due to lightning or voltage and current transients.
4. Provide new separate and direct ground lines to the outside to protect the equipment from unwanted grounds.

E. Circuit Supervision: Each alarm initiating device circuit, signaling line circuit, and notification appliance circuit, shall be supervised against the occurrence of a break or ground fault condition in the field wiring. These conditions shall cause a trouble signal to sound in the control unit until manually silenced by an off switch.

F. Supervisory Devices: All sprinkler system valves, standpipe control valves, post indicator valves (PIV), and main gate valves shall be supervised for off-normal position. Closing a valve shall sound a supervisory signal at the control unit until silenced by an off switch. The specific location of all closed valves shall be identified at the control unit. Valve operation shall not cause an alarm signal. Low air pressure switches and duct detectors shall be monitored as supervisory signals. The power supply to the elevator shunt trip breaker shall be monitored by the fire alarm system as a supervisory signal.

G. Trouble signals:

1. Arrange the trouble signals for automatic reset (non-latching).
2. System trouble switch off and on lamps shall be visible through the control unit door.

H. Function Switches: Provide the following switches in addition to any other switches required for the system:

1. Remote Alarm Transmission By-pass Switch: Shall prevent transmission of all signals to the main fire alarm control unit when in the "off" position. A system trouble signal shall be energized when switch is in the off position.

2. Alarm Off Switch: Shall disconnect power to alarm notification circuits on the local building alarm system. A system trouble signal shall be activated when switch is in the off position.
 3. Trouble Silence Switch: Shall silence the trouble signal whenever the trouble silence switch is operated. This switch shall not reset the trouble signal.
 4. Reset Switch: Shall reset the system after an alarm, provided the initiating device has been reset. The system shall lock in alarm until reset.
 5. Lamp Test Switch: A test switch or other approved convenient means shall be provided to test the indicator lamps.
 6. Drill Switch: Shall activate all notification devices without tripping the remote alarm transmitter. This switch is required only for general evacuation systems specified herein.
 7. Door Holder By-Pass Switch: Shall prevent doors from releasing during fire alarm tests. A system trouble alarm shall be energized when switch is in the abnormal position.
 8. Elevator recall By-Pass Switch: Shall prevent the elevators from recalling upon operation of any of the devices installed to perform that function. A system trouble alarm shall be energized when the switch is in the abnormal position.
 9. HVAC/Smoke Damper By-Pass: Provide a means to disable HVAC fans from shutting down and/or smoke dampers from closing upon operation of an initiating device designed to interconnect with these devices.
- I. Remote Transmissions:
1. Provide capability and equipment for transmission of alarm, supervisory and trouble signals to the main fire alarm control unit.
 2. Transmitters shall be compatible with the systems and equipment they are connected to such as timing, operation and other required features.
- J. Remote Control Capability: Each building fire alarm control unit shall be installed and programmed so that each must be reset locally after an alarm, before the main fire alarm control unit can be reset. After the local building fire alarm control unit has been reset, then the all system acknowledge, reset, silence or disabling functions can be operated by the main fire alarm control unit

- K. System Expansion: Design the control units and enclosures so that the system can be expanded in the future (to include the addition of twenty percent more alarm initiating, alarm notification and door holder circuits) without disruption or replacement of the existing control unit and secondary power supply.

2.4 STANDBY POWER SUPPLY

A. Uninterrupted Power Supply (UPS):

1. The UPS system shall be comprised of a static inverter, a precision battery float charger, and sealed maintenance free batteries.
2. Under normal operating conditions, the load shall be filtered through a ferroresonant transformer.
3. When normal AC power fails, the inverter shall supply AC power to the transformer from the battery source. There shall be no break in output of the system during transfer of the system from normal to battery supply or back to normal.
4. Batteries shall be sealed, gel cell type.
5. UPS system shall be sized to operate the central processor, CRT, printer, and all other directly connected equipment for five minutes upon a normal AC power failure.

B. Batteries:

1. Battery shall be of the sealed, maintenance free type, 24-volt nominal.
2. Battery shall have sufficient capacity to power the fire alarm system for not less than twenty-four hours plus five minutes of alarm to an end voltage of 1.14 volts per cell, upon a normal AC power failure.
3. Battery racks shall be steel with an alkali-resistant finish. Batteries shall be secured in seismic areas 2B, 3, or 4 as defined by the Uniform Building Code.

C. Battery Charger:

1. Shall be completely automatic, with constant potential charger maintaining the battery fully charged under all service conditions. Charger shall operate from a 120-volt, 60 hertz emergency power source.
2. Shall be rated for fully charging a completely discharged battery within 48 hours while simultaneously supplying any loads connected to the battery.

3. Shall have protection to prevent discharge through the charger.
4. Shall have protection for overloads and short circuits on both AC and DC sides.
5. A trouble condition shall actuate the fire alarm trouble signal.
6. Charger shall have automatic AC line voltage regulation, automatic current-limiting features, and adjustable voltage controls.

2.5 ANNUNCIATION

A. Annunciator, Alphanumeric Type (System):

1. Shall be a supervised, LCD display containing a minimum of two lines of 40 characters for alarm annunciation in clear English text.
2. Message shall identify building number, floor, zone, etc on the first line and device description and status (pull station, smoke detector, waterflow alarm or trouble condition) on the second line.
3. The initial alarm received shall be indicated as such.
4. A selector switch shall be provided for viewing subsequent alarm messages.
5. The display shall be UL listed for fire alarm application.
6. Annunciators shall display information for all buildings connected to the system. Local building annunciators, for general evacuation system buildings, shall be permitted when shown on the drawings and approved by the COTR.

B. Printers:

1. System printers shall be high reliability digital input devices, UL approved, for fire alarm applications. The printers shall operate at a minimum speed of 30 characters per second. The printer shall be continually supervised.
2. Printers shall be programmable to either alarm only or event logging output.
 - a. Alarm printers shall provide a permanent (printed) record of all alarm information that occurs within the fire alarm system. Alarm information shall include the date, time, building number, floor, zone, device type, device address, and condition.
 - b. Event logging printers shall provide a permanent (printed) record of every change of status that occurs within the fire alarm system. Status information shall include date, time, building number, floor, zone, device type, device address and change of status (alarm, trouble, supervisory, reset/return to normal).

3. System printers shall provide tractor drive feed pins for conventional fan fold 213 mm x 275 mm (8-1/2" x 11") paper.
4. The printers shall provide a printing and non-printing self test feature.
5. Power supply for printers shall be taken from and coordinated with the building emergency service.
6. Each printer shall be provided with a stand for the printer and paper.
7. Spare paper and ribbons for printers shall be stocked and maintained as part of the five (5) year guarantee period services in addition to the one installed after the approval of the final acceptance test.

2.6 VOICE COMMUNICATION SYSTEM (VCS)

A. General:

1. An emergency voice communication system shall be installed throughout the Medical Center and Central Plant. The NHCU is being provided with a voice communication system and shall be connected to the network so that voice communication messages can be transmitted throughout the campus.
2. Upon receipt of an alarm signal from the building fire alarm system, the VCS shall automatically transmit a temporal tone throughout the zone of alarm origin and shall transmit an alert voice message throughout the rest of the facility, including the NHCU and Central Plant.
3. A digitized voice module shall be used to store each prerecorded message.
4. The VCS shall be arranged as a dual channel system capable of transmitting two different messages simultaneously.
5. The VCS shall supervise all speaker circuits, control equipment, remote audio control equipment, and amplifiers.

B. Speaker Circuit Control Unit:

1. The speaker circuit control unit shall include switches to manually activate or deactivate speaker circuits grouped by floor in the system.
2. Speaker circuit control switches shall provide on, off, and automatic positions and indications.

3. The speaker circuit control unit shall include visual indication of active or trouble status for each group of speaker circuits in the system.
4. A trouble indication shall be provided if a speaker circuit group is disabled.
5. A lamp test switch shall be provided to test all indicator lamps.
6. A single "all call" switch shall be provided to activate all speaker circuit groups simultaneously.
7. A push-to-talk microphone shall be provided for manual voice messages.
8. Remote microphones shall be provided in the fire command center for manual "all call" messages to each individual building and throughout all buildings including the Medical Center, Nursing Home, and Central Plant.
9. A voice message disconnect switch shall be provided to disconnect automatic digitized voice messages from the system. The system shall be arranged to allow manual voice messages and indicate a system trouble condition when activated.

C. Speaker Circuit Arrangement:

1. Speaker circuits shall be arranged such that they do not cross smoke barriers. Where more than one circuit is required for a smoke compartment due to the number of speakers, all circuits in that compartment shall be controllable for manual messages with a single switch.
2. Audio amplifiers and control equipment shall be electrically supervised for normal and abnormal conditions.
3. Speaker circuits shall be either 25 VRMS or 70.7 VRMS with a minimum of 50% spare power available.
4. Speaker circuits and control equipment shall be arranged such that loss of any one speaker circuit will not cause the loss of any other speaker circuit in the system.

D. Digitized Voice Module (DVM):

1. The Digitized Voice Module shall provide prerecorded digitized evacuation and instructional messages. The messages shall be professionally recorded and approved by the COTR prior to programming.

2. The DVM shall be configured to automatically output to the desired circuits following a 10-second slow whoop alert tone.
3. Prerecorded magnetic taped messages and tape players are not permitted.
4. The digitized message capacity shall be no less than 15 second in length.
5. The digitized message shall be transmitted three times.
6. The DVM shall be supervised for operational status.
7. Failure of the DVM shall result in the transmission of a constant alarm tone.
8. The DVM memory shall have a minimum 50% spare capacity after those messages identified in this section are recorded. Multiple DVM's may be used to obtain the required capacity.

E. Audio Amplifiers:

1. Audio Amplifiers shall provide a minimum of 50 Watts at either 25 or 70.7 VRMS output voltage levels.
2. Amplifiers shall be continuously supervised for operational status.
3. Amplifiers shall be configured for either single or dual channel application.
4. Each audio output circuit connection shall be configurable for Style X.
5. A minimum of 50% spare output capacity shall be available for each amplifier.

F. Tone Generator(s):

1. Tone Generator(s) shall be capable of providing a distinctive three-pulse temporal pattern fire alarm signal as well as a slow whoop.
2. Tone Generator(s) shall be continuously supervised for operational status.

2.7 ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. Speakers:

1. Shall operate on either 25 VRMS or 70.7 VRMS with field selectable output taps from 0.5 to 2.0W and originally installed at the one-half watt tap. Speakers shall provide a minimum sound output of 80 dBA at ten feet with the one-half watt tap.
2. Frequency response shall be a minimum of 400 HZ to 4000 HZ.

3. 100 mm (4 inches) or 200 mm (8 inches) cone type speakers ceiling mounted with white colored baffles in areas with suspended ceilings and wall mounted in areas without ceilings.

B. Strobes:

1. Xenon flash tube type minimum 15 candela in toilet rooms and with a candela rating as noted on the plans in all other areas with a flash rate of 1 HZ. Strobes shall be synchronized where required by the National Fire Alarm Code (NFPA 72).
2. Backplate shall be white with 13 mm (1/2 inch) permanent red letters. Lettering to read "Fire", be oriented on the wall or ceiling properly, and be visible from all viewing directions.
3. Each strobe circuit shall have a minimum of twenty (20) percent spare capacity.
4. Strobes may be combined with the audible notification appliances specified herein.

2.8 ALARM INITIATING DEVICES

A. Manual Fire Alarm Stations:

1. Shall be non-breakglass, address reporting type.
2. Station front shall be constructed of a durable material such as cast or extruded metal or high impact plastic. Stations shall be semi-flush type.
3. Stations shall be of single action pull down type with suitable operating instructions provided on front in raised or depressed letters, and clearly labeled "FIRE".
4. Operating handles shall be constructed of a durable material. On operation, the lever shall lock in alarm position and remain so until reset. A key shall be required to gain front access for resetting, or conducting tests and drills.
5. Unless otherwise specified, all exposed parts shall be red in color and have a smooth, hard, durable finish.
6. Stations identified as key operated only shall have a single standardized lock and key separate from the control equipment

B. Smoke Detectors:

1. Smoke detectors shall be UL listed for use with the fire alarm control unit being furnished.

2. Smoke detectors shall be addressable type complying with applicable UL Standards for system type detectors. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and NFPA 72.
3. Detectors shall have an indication lamp to denote an alarm condition. Provide remote indicator lamps and identification plates where detectors are concealed from view. Locate the remote indicator lamps and identification plates flush mounted on walls so they can be observed from a normal standing position.
4. All spot type and duct type detectors installed shall be of the photoelectric type.
5. Photoelectric detectors shall be factory calibrated and readily field adjustable. The sensitivity of any photoelectric detector shall be factory set at 3.0 plus or minus 0.25 percent obscuration per foot.
6. Detectors shall provide a visual trouble indication if they drift out of sensitivity range or fail internal diagnostics. Detectors shall also provide visual indication of sensitivity level upon testing. Detectors, along with the fire alarm control units shall be UL listed for testing the sensitivity of the detectors.

C. Heat Detectors:

1. Heat detectors shall be of the addressable restorable rate compensated fixed-temperature spot type.
2. Detectors shall have a minimum smooth ceiling rating of 2500 square feet.
3. Ordinary temperature (135 degrees F) heat detectors shall be utilized in elevator shafts and elevator mechanical rooms. Intermediate temperature rated (200 degrees F) heat detectors shall be utilized in all other areas.
4. Provide a remote indicator lamp, key test station and identification nameplate (e.g. "Heat Detector - Elevator P-_____) for each elevator group. Locate key test station in plain view on elevator machine room wall.

D. Water Flow and Pressure Switches:

1. Wet pipe water flow switches and dry pipe alarm pressure switches for sprinkler systems shall be connected to the fire alarm system by way of an address reporting interface device.

2. All new water flow switches shall be of a single manufacturer and series and non-accumulative retard type. See Section 15500, FIRE PROTECTION for new switches added. Connect all switches shown on the approved shop drawings.
3. All new switches shall have an alarm transmission delay time that is conveniently adjustable from 0 to 60 seconds. Initial settings shall be 30-45 seconds. Timing shall be recorded and documented during testing.

E. Extinguishing System Connections:

1. Kitchen Range Hood and Duct Suppression Systems:
 - a. Each suppression system shall be equipped with a micro-switch connected to the building fire alarm control unit. Discharge of a suppression system shall automatically send an alarm signal to the building fire detection and alarm system for annunciation.
 - b. Operation of this suppression system shall also automatically shut off all sources of fuel and heat to all equipment requiring protection under the same hood.
2. Each gaseous suppression system shall be monitored for system alarm and system trouble conditions via addressable interface devices.

2.9 SUPERVISORY DEVICES

A. Duct Smoke Detectors:

1. Duct smoke detectors shall be provided and connected by way of an address reporting interface device. Detectors shall be provided with an approved duct housing mounted exterior to the duct, and shall have perforated sampling tubes extending across the full width of the duct (wall to wall). Detector placement shall be such that there is uniform airflow in the cross section of the duct.
2. Interlocking with fans shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 90A and as specified hereinafter under Part 3.2, "TYPICAL OPERATION".
3. Provide remote indicator lamps, key test stations and identification nameplates (e.g. "DUCT SMOKE DETECTOR AHU-X") for all duct detectors. Locate key test stations in plain view on walls or ceilings so that they can be observed and operated from a normal standing position.

B. Sprinkler and Standpipe System Supervisory Switches:

1. Each sprinkler system water supply control valve, riser valve or zone control valve, and each standpipe system riser control valve shall be

- equipped with a supervisory switch. Standpipe hose valves, and test and drain valves shall not be equipped with supervisory switches.
2. PIV (post indicator valve) or main gate valve shall be equipped with a supervisory switch.
 3. Valve supervisory switches shall be connected to the fire alarm system by way of address reporting interface device. See Section 15500, FIRE PROTECTION for new switches to be added. Connect tamper switches for all control valves shown on the approved shop drawings.
 4. The mechanism shall be contained in a weatherproof die-cast aluminum housing that shall provide a 19 mm (3/4 inch) tapped conduit entrance and incorporate the necessary facilities for attachment to the valves.
 5. The entire installed assembly shall be tamper-proof and arranged to cause a switch operation if the housing cover is removed or if the unit is removed from its mounting.
 6. Where dry-pipe sprinkler systems are installed, high and low air pressure switches shall be provided and monitored by way of an address reporting interface devices.
 7. Fire pump running, power failure and phase reversal supervisory alarms shall be provided and monitored by way of address reporting interface devices for the fire pumps located in the Central Plant.

2.10 ADDRESS REPORTING INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. Shall have unique addresses that reports directly to the building fire alarm panel.
- B. Shall be configurable to monitor normally open or normally closed devices for both alarm and trouble conditions.
- C. Shall have terminal designations clearly differentiating between the circuit to which they are reporting from and the device that they are monitoring.
- D. Shall be UL listed for fire alarm use and compatibility with the panel to which they are connected.
- E. Shall be mounted in weatherproof housings if mounted exterior to a building.

2.11 SMOKE BARRIER DOOR CONTROL

- A. Electromagnetic Door Holders:
 1. New Door Holders shall be provided with the door hardware under Division 8. In locations where doors do not come in contact with the

wall when in the full open position, an extension post shall be added to the door bracket.

2. Operation shall be by 120 volt AC power provided by the electrical contractor.

B. Door holders shall be wired to allow releasing doors by smoke zone.

C. Door holder control circuits shall be electrically supervised.

D. Smoke detectors shall not be incorporated as an integral part of door holders.

E. Where combination holder-closer units are required, these devices are furnished and installed as per Section 08710, BUILDERS HARDWARE.

Connection and wiring shall be as herein specified.

2.12 UTILITY LOCKS AND KEYS:

A. All key operated test switches, control units, annunciator panels and lockable cabinets shall be provided with a single standardized utility lock and key.

B. Key-operated manual fire alarm stations shall have a single standardized lock and key separate from the control equipment.

C. All keys shall be delivered to the COTR.

2.13 SPARE AND REPLACEMENT PARTS

A. Provide spare and replacement parts as follows:

1. Manual pull stations - 5
2. Key operated manual pull stations - 3
3. Heat detectors - 2 of each type
4. Fire alarm strobes - 5
5. Fire alarm bells - 5
6. Fire alarm speakers - 5
7. Smoke detectors - 20
8. Duct smoke detectors with all appurtenances - 1
9. Sprinkler system water flow switch - 1 of each size
10. Sprinkler system water pressure switch - 1 of each type
11. Sprinkler valve tamper switch - 1 of each type
12. Control equipment utility locksets - 5
13. Control equipment keys - 25
14. Key operated manual pull station keys - 50
15. 2.5 oz containers aerosol smoke - 12
16. Printer paper - 3 boxes

- 17. Printer replacement ribbons - 3
- 18. Monitor modules - 3
- 19. Control modules - 3
- 20. Fire alarm SLC cable (same as installed) - 152 m (500 feet)
- B. Keys for key-operated manual pull stations shall be provided 30 days prior to actual installation.
- C. Spare and replacement parts shall be in original packaging and submitted to the COTR.
- D. Furnish and install a storage cabinet of sufficient size and suitable for storing spare equipment. Doors shall include a padlocking device. Padlock to be provided by the VA. Location of cabinet to be determined by the COTR.
- E. Provide to the VA, all hardware, software, programming tools, license and documentation necessary to permanently modify the fire alarm system on site. The minimum level of modification includes addition and deletion of devices, circuits, zones and changes to system description, system operation, and digitized evacuation and instructional messages.

2.14 INSTRUCTION CHART:

Provide a typeset printed or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a Lexan plastic or glass cover in a stainless steel or aluminum frame with a backplate. Install the frame in a conspicuous location observable from each control unit where operations are performed. The card shall show those steps to be taken by an operator when a signal is received under all conditions, normal, alarm, supervisory, and trouble. Provide an additional copy with the binder for the input output matrix for the sequence of operation. The instructions shall be approved by the COTR before being posted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION:

- A. Installation shall be in accordance with NFPA 70, 72, 90A, and 101 as shown on the drawings, and as recommended by the major equipment manufacturer. Fire alarm wiring shall be installed in conduit. All conduit and wire shall be installed in accordance with Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS, Section 16127 CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE, and all penetrations of smoke and fire barriers shall be protected as required by Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS.

- B. All new conduits, junction boxes, conduit supports and hangers shall be concealed in finished areas and may be exposed in unfinished areas. All existing accessible fire alarm conduit not reused shall be removed.
- C. All new or reused exposed conduit shall be painted in accordance with Section 09900, PAINTING to match surrounding finished areas and red in unfinished areas.
- D. Existing devices that are reused shall be properly mounted and installed. Where devices are installed on existing shallow backboxes, extension rings of the same material, color and texture of the new fire alarm devices shall be used. Mounting surfaces shall be cut and patched in accordance with Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Restoration, and be re-painted in accordance with Section 09900, PAINTING as necessary to match existing.
- E. All fire detection and alarm system devices, control units and remote annunciators shall be flush mounted when located in finished areas and may be surface mounted when located in unfinished areas. Exact locations to be approved by the COTR.
- F. Speakers shall be ceiling mounted and fully recessed in areas with suspended ceilings. Speakers shall be wall mounted and recessed in finished areas without suspended ceilings. Speakers may be surface mounted in unfinished areas.
- G. Strobes shall be flush wall mounted so that the entire lens is 2,000 mm (80 inches) above the floor or 150 mm (6 inches) below ceiling, whichever is lower. Locate and mount to maintain a minimum 900 mm (36 inches) clearance from side obstructions.
- H. Manual pull stations shall be installed not less than 1050 mm (42 inches) or more than 1200 mm (48 inches) from finished floor to pull handle and within 1500 mm (60 inches) of a stairway or an exit door.
- I. Where possible, locate water flow and pressure switches a minimum of 300 mm (12 inches) from a fitting that changes the direction of the flow and a minimum of 900 mm (36 inches) from a valve.
- J. Mount valve tamper switches so as not to interfere with the normal operation of the valve and adjust to operate within two revolutions toward the closed position of the valve control, or when the stem has moved no more than one-fifth of the distance from its normal position.
- K. Connect flow and tamper switches installed under Section 15500, FIRE PROTECTION

- L. Connect combination closer-holders installed under Section 08710, BUILDERS HARDWARE.

3.2 TYPICAL OPERATION

- A. Activation of any manual pull station, water flow or pressure switch, heat detector, kitchen hood suppression system, gaseous suppression system, or smoke detector shall cause the following operations to occur:
 - 1. Operate the emergency voice communication system in all smoke compartments except the compartment of alarm origin in the Medical Center, Nursing Home, and Central Plant. For sprinkler protected buildings, flash strobes continuously only in the zone of alarm.
 - 2. Continuously sound a temporal pattern general alarm and flash all strobes in the smoke compartment in alarm until reset at the local fire alarm control unit.
 - 3. Release only the magnetic door holders in the smoke zone after the alert signal.
 - 4. Transmit a separate alarm signal, via the main fire alarm control unit to the fire department.
 - 5. Unlock the electrically locked exit doors within the zone of alarm.
- B. Heat detectors in elevator machine rooms shall, in addition to the above functions, disconnect all power to all elevators served by that machine room after a time delay. The time delay shall be programmed within the fire alarm system programming and be equal to the time it takes for the car to travel from the highest to the lowest level, plus 10 seconds.
- C. Smoke detectors in the primary elevator lobbies shall, in addition to the above functions, return all elevators in the bank to the secondary floor.
- D. Smoke detectors in the remaining elevator lobbies, elevator machine room, or top of hoistway shall, in addition to the above functions, return all elevators in the bank to the primary floor.
- E. Operation of a smoke detector at a corridor door used for automatic closing shall also release only the magnetic door holders in that smoke zone. Operation of a smoke detector at a shutter used for automatic closing shall also release only the shutters in that smoke zone.
- F. Operation of duct smoke detectors shall cause a system supervisory condition and shut down the ventilation system and close the associated smoke dampers as appropriate.

- G. Operation of any sprinkler or standpipe system valve supervisory switch, high/low air pressure switch, or fire pump alarm switch shall cause a system supervisory condition.

3.3 TESTS

- A. Provide the service of a NICET level III, competent, factory-trained engineer or technician authorized by the manufacturer of the fire alarm equipment to technically supervise and participate during all of the adjustments and tests for the system. Make all adjustments and tests in the presence of the COTR.
- B. When the systems have been completed and prior to the scheduling of the final inspection, furnish testing equipment and perform the following tests in the presence of the COTR. When any defects are detected, make repairs or install replacement components, and repeat the tests until such time that the complete fire alarm system meets all contract requirements. After the system has passed the initial test and been approved by the COTR, the contractor may request a final inspection.
 - 1. Before energizing the cables and wires, check for correct connections and test for short circuits, ground faults, continuity, and insulation.
 - 2. Test the insulation on all installed cable and wiring by standard methods as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.
 - 3. Run water through all flow switches. Check time delay on water flow switches. Submit a report listing all water flow switch operations and their retard time in seconds.
 - 4. Open each alarm initiating and notification circuit to see if trouble signal actuates.
 - 5. Ground each alarm initiation and notification circuit and verify response of trouble signals.
- B. The voice communication system shall be required to pass a subjective intelligibility test to be administered by the COTR and the VA Fire Protection Engineer. This test is in addition to the audibility level tests mandated by NFPA 72 and shall assess the intelligibility of the fire alarm messages transmitted throughout the facility. Costs for adjustments to speaker power settings and locations as a result of these tests shall be borne by the contractor.

3.4 FINAL INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. Prior to final acceptance a minimum 30 day "burn-in" period shall be provided. The purpose shall be to allow equipment to stabilize and potential installation and software problems and equipment malfunctions to be identified and corrected. During this diagnostic period, all system operations and malfunctions shall be recorded. Final acceptance will be made upon successful completion of the "burn-in" period and where the last 14 days is without a system or equipment malfunction.
- B. At the final inspection a factory trained representative of the manufacturer of the major equipment shall repeat the tests in Article 3.3 TESTS and those required by NFPA 72. In addition the representative shall demonstrate that the systems function properly in every respect. The demonstration shall be made in the presence of a VA representative.

3.5 INSTRUCTION

- A. The manufacturer's authorized representative shall provide instruction and training to the VA as follows:
 - 1. Six one-hour sessions to engineering staff, security police and central attendant personnel for simple operation of the system. Two sessions at the start of installation, two sessions at the completion of installation and two sessions 3 months after the completion of installation.
 - 2. Four two-hour sessions to engineering staff for detailed operation of the system. Two sessions at the completion of installation and two sessions 3 months after the completion of installation.
 - 3. Three eight-hour sessions to electrical technicians for maintaining, programming, modifying, and repairing the system at the completion of installation and one eight-hour refresher session 3 months after the completion of installation.
- B. The Contractor and/or the Systems Manufacturer's representative shall provide a typewritten "Sequence of Operation" including a trouble shooting guide of the entire system for submittal to the VA. The sequence of operation will be shown for each input in the system in a matrix format and provided in a loose leaf binder. When reading the sequence of operation, the reader will be able to quickly and easily determine what output will occur upon activation of any input in the system. The INPUT/OUTPUT matrix format shall be as shown in Appendix A to NFPA 72.

- C. Furnish the services of a competent instructor for instructing personnel in the programming requirements necessary for system expansion. Such programming shall include addition or deletion of devices, zones, indicating circuits and printer/display text.

PART 4 - SCHEDULES

4.1 SMOKE ZONE DESCRIPTIONS: REFER TO LIFE SAFETY PLANS

4.2 DIGITIZED VOICE MESSAGES:

- A. Digitized voice messages shall be provided for each smoke zone of the Medical Center, NHCUC, and Central Plant Buildings. The messages shall be arranged with a 3 second alert tone, a "Code Red" message and a description of the fire alarm area (building number, floor, level and smoke zone). A sample of such a message is as follows:

Alert Tone

Code Red

Building One, Second Floor, East Wing

Code Red

Building One, Second Floor, East Wing

Code Red

Building One, Second Floor, East Wing

4.3 LOCATION OF VOICE MESSAGES:

Upon receipt of an alarm signal from the building fire alarm system, the voice communication system shall automatically transmit a 3 second tone alert and a pre-recorded fire alarm message throughout all zones except the zone of origin.

- - - END - - -

SECTION 13930
WET SPRINKLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Design, installation and testing shall be in accordance with NFPA 13 2010 edition except for specified exceptions.
- B. The expansion of the existing Building 2 wet-pipe sprinkler system to cover the new area. Not all equipment listed under this section is required for the expansion. Information is provided for reference to original equipment.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 01340, SAMPLE AND SHOP DRAWINGS A/E.
- B. Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS, Treatment of penetrations through rated enclosures.
- C. Section 09900, PAINTING.
- D. Section 13850, FIRE ALARM SYSTEM, Connection to fire alarm of flow switches, pressure switches and valve supervisory switches.
- E. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL)

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Reliability: The installer shall possess a valid State of Nevada contractor's license. The installer shall have been actively and successfully engaged in the installation of commercial automatic sprinkler systems for the past ten years.
- B. Materials and Equipment: All equipment and devices shall be of a make and type listed by UL and approved by FM, or other nationally recognized testing laboratory for the specific purpose for which it is used. All materials, devices, and equipment shall be approved by the VA.
- C. Submittals: Submit as one package in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLE AND SHOP DRAWINGS. Prepare detailed working drawings that are signed by a NICET Level III or Level IV Sprinkler Technician or stamped by a Registered Professional Engineer practicing in the field of Fire Protection Engineering. As Government review is for technical adequacy only, the installer remains responsible for correcting any conflicts with other trades and building construction that arise during installation. Partial submittals will not be accepted. Material submittals shall be approved prior to the purchase or delivery to the job site. Suitably bind submittals in notebooks or binders and provide

index referencing the appropriate specification section. Submittals shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Qualifications

- A. Provide a copy of the installing contractors state contractors license.
- B. Provide a copy of the NICET certification for the NICET Level III or Level IV Sprinkler Technician who prepared and signed the detailed working drawings unless the drawings are stamped by a Registered Professional Engineer practicing in the field of Fire Protection Engineering.

2. Drawings: Submit detailed 1:100 (1/8 inch) scale (minimum) working drawings conforming to NFPA 13. Include a site plan showing the piping to the water supply test location.

3. Manufacturers Data Sheets:

- A. For backflow preventers, provide flow test curves from UL, FM, or the Foundation for Hydraulic Research and Cross-Connection Control to verify pressure loss calculations.
- B. Provide for materials and equipment proposed for use on the system. Include listing information and installation instructions in data sheets. Where data sheet describes items in addition to that item being submitted, clearly identify proposed item on the sheet.

4. Calculation Sheets: Submit hydraulic calculation sheets in tabular form conforming to the requirements and recommendations of NFPA 13.

5. Final Document Submittals: Provide as-built drawings, testing and maintenance instructions in accordance with the requirements in Section 01340. Submittals shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- A. One complete set of reproducible as-built drawings showing the installed system with the specific interconnections between the waterflow switch or pressure switch and the fire alarm equipment.
- B. Complete, simple, understandable, step-by-step, testing instructions giving recommended and required testing frequency of all equipment, methods for testing all equipment, and a complete trouble shooting manual. Provide maintenance instructions on replacing any components of the system including internal parts, periodic cleaning and adjustment of the equipment and components with information as to the address and telephone number of both the manufacturer and the local supplier of each item.

- C. Material and Testing Certificate: Upon completion of the sprinkler system installation or any partial section of the system, including testing and flushing, provide a copy of a completed Material and Testing Certificate as indicated in NFPA 13.
 - D. Certificates shall document all parts of the installation.
 - E. Instruction Manual: Provide one copy of the instruction manual covering the system in a flexible protective cover and mount in an accessible location adjacent to the riser.
- D. Design Basis Information: Provide design, materials, equipment, installation, inspection, and testing of the automatic sprinkler system in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 13 2010 Edition. Recommendations in appendices shall be treated as requirements.
- A. Perform hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 utilizing the Area/Density method. Do not restrict design area reductions permitted for using quick response sprinklers throughout by the required use of standard response sprinklers in the areas identified in this section.
 - B. Sprinkler Protection: To determining spacing and sizing, apply the following coverage classifications:
 - 1. Light Hazard Occupancies. - Not used.
 - 2. Ordinary Hazard Group 1 Occupancies. - Not Used
 - 3. Ordinary Hazard Group 2 Occupancies: Building 2, Building 3, and Building 4. Request clarification from the Government for any hazard classification not identified.
 - C. Hydraulic Calculations: Calculated demand including hose stream requirements shall fall no less than 10 percent below the available water supply curve.
 - A. Water Supply: Base water supply on the discharge pressure from the existing fire pump installed under Phase IV.
Refer to fire pump acceptance data.
 - D. Zoning:
 - A. For each sprinkler zone provide a control valve, flow switch and a test and drain assembly with pressure gauge.
 - B. Provide seismic protection in accordance with NFPA 13.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the

basic designation only.

- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - a. 13-2010.....Installation of Sprinkler Systems
 - b. 101-2003.....Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings
and Structures (Life Safety Code)
 - c. 170-1999.....Fire Safety Symbols
- C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): Fire Protection Equipment
Directory - 2001
- D. Factory Mutual Engineering Corporation (FM): Approval Guide - 2001
- E. International Building Code - 2006
- F. Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research-2005

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING & FITTINGS

- A. Sprinkler systems in accordance with NFPA 13.

2.2 VALVES

- A. Valves in accordance with NFPA 13.
- B. Do not use quarter turn ball valves for 50 mm (2 inch) or larger drain valves.
- C. The wet system control valve shall be a listed indicating type valve. Control valve shall be UL Listed and FM Approved for fire protection installations. System control valve shall be rated for normal system pressure but in no case less than 200 PSI. (No Substitutions Allowed).
- D. Alarm valve shall be UL listed and factory mutual approved. The alarm valve shall be equipped with a removable cover assembly. The alarm valve shall be listed for installation in the vertical or horizontal position. The alarm valve shall be equipped with gauge connections on the system side and supply side of the valve clapper. The alarm valve shall be equipped with an external bypass to eliminate false water flow alarms. The alarm valve trim piping shall be externally galvanized maximum water working pressure to 250 psi.

2.3 FIRE DEPARTMENT SIAMESE CONNECTION

- A. Brass, and a minimum of two 65 mm (2-1/2 inch) connections threaded to match those on the local fire protection service, with polished brass caps and chains. Provide escutcheon with integral raised letters "Automatic Sprinkler"

2.4 SPRINKLERS

- A. Type: Sprinklers shall be UL listed or FM approved. Sprinklers shall be of all brass body construction with a metal Belleville spring seal,

coated on both sides with Teflon film. Sprinklers utilizing non-metal parts in the sealing portion of the sprinkler are strictly prohibited.

- B. In generator rooms: Standard response sprinklers. (Note: Provide 'cages' to protect sprinkler heads from breakage/damage when the elevation of the head is less than 7 feet 6 inches above finished floor (mechanical))
- C. Temperature Ratings: In accordance with NFPA 13, except as follows:
 - A. Sprinklers in electrical switchgear and central plant chiller rooms: Match existing sprinkler model and temperature rating.
 - B. Sprinklers in Boiler Room and Generator Rooms: High temperature rated.

2.5 SPRINKLER CABINET

Provide sprinkler cabinet with the required number of sprinkler heads of all ratings and types installed, and a sprinkler wrench for each system. Locate adjacent to the riser. Sprinkler heads shall be installed in center of tile or center to center.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION SIGNS/HYDRAULIC PLACARDS

Plastic, steel or aluminum signs with white lettering on a red background with holes for easy attachment. Enter pertinent data for each system on the hydraulic placard.

2.7 SWITCHES:

- A. Contain in a weatherproof die cast/red baked enamel, oil resistant, aluminum housing with tamper resistant screws, 13 mm (1/2 inch) conduit.
- B. Water flow Alarm Switches: Mechanical, non-coded, non-accumulative retard and adjustable from 0 to 60 seconds minimum. Set flow switches at an initial setting between 20 and 30 seconds.
- C. Valve Supervisory Switches for Ball and Butterfly Valves: May be integral with the valve.

2.8 WATER MOTOR GONG - Not Used.

2.9 GAUGES

Provide gauges as required by NFPA 13 and NFPA 14.

2.10 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

Supports, hangers, etc., of an approved pattern placement to conform to NFPA 13. System piping shall be substantially supported to the building structure. The installation of hangers and supports shall adhere to the requirements set forth in NFPA 13, Standard for Installation of Sprinkler Systems. Materials used in the installation or construction of hangers and supports shall be listed and approved for such application.

Hangers or supports not specifically listed for service shall be designed and bear the seal of a professional engineer.

2.11 WALL, FLOOR AND CEILING PLATES

Provide chrome plated steel escutcheon plates for exposed piping passing through walls, floors or ceilings.

2.12 ANTIFREEZE SOLUTION - Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be accomplished by the licensed contractor. Provide a qualified technician, experienced in the installation and operation of the type of system being installed, to supervise the installation and testing of the system.
- B. Installation of Piping: Accurately cut pipe to measurements established by the installer and work into place without springing or forcing. In any situation where bending of the pipe is required, use a standard pipe-bending template. Install concealed piping in spaces that have finished ceilings. Where ceiling mounted equipment exists, such as in operating and radiology rooms, install sprinklers so as not to obstruct the movement or operation of the equipment. Sidewall heads may need to be utilized. Locate piping in stairways as near to the ceiling as possible to prevent tampering by unauthorized personnel, and to provide a minimum headroom clearance of 2250 mm (seven feet six inches). To prevent an obstruction to egress, provide piping clearances in accordance with NFPA 101.
- C. Welding: Conform to the requirements and recommendations of NFPA 13.
- D. Drains: Pipe drains to discharge at safe points outside of the building or to sight cones attached to drains of adequate size to readily carry the full flow from each drain under maximum pressure. Do not provide a direct drain connection to sewer system or discharge into sinks. Install drips and drains where necessary and required by NFPA 13.
- E. Supervisory Switches: Provide supervisory switches for sprinkler and standpipe control valves. Do not provide standpipe hose valves and test and drain valves with supervisory switches.
- F. Waterflow Alarm Switches: Install waterflow switch and adjacent valves in easily accessible locations.
- G. Inspector's Test Connection: Install and supply in conformance with NFPA 13, locate in a secured area, and discharge to the exterior of the building.

- H. Affix cutout disks, which are created by cutting holes in the walls of pipe for flow switches and non-threaded pipe connections to the respective waterflow switch or pipe connection near to the pipe from where they were cut.
- I. Sleeves: Provide for pipes passing through masonry or concrete. Provide space between the pipe and the sleeve in accordance with NFPA 13. Seal this space with a UL Listed through penetration fire stop material in accordance with Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS. Where core drilling is used in lieu of sleeves, also seal space. Seal penetrations of walls, floors and ceilings of other types of construction, in accordance with Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS.
- J. Provide pressure gauge at each water flow alarm switch location, at the top of each standpipe, and at each main drain connection.
- K. For each fire department connection, provide the symbolic sign given in NFPA 170 and locate 2400 to 3000 mm (8 to 10 feet) above each connection location. Size the sign to 450 by 450 mm (18 by 18 inches) with the symbol being at least 350 by 350 mm (14 by 14 inches).
- L. Fire stopping shall comply with Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS.
- M. Securely attach identification signs to control valves, drain valves, and test valves. Locate hydraulic placard information signs at each sectional control valve where there is a zone water flow switch.
- N. Repairs: Repair damage to the building or equipment resulting from the installation of the sprinkler system by the installer at no additional expense to the Government.

3.2 INSPECTION AND TEST

- A. Preliminary Testing: Flush newly installed systems prior to performing hydrostatic tests in order to remove any debris which may have been left as well as ensuring piping is unobstructed. Hydrostatically test system, including the fire department connections, as specified in NFPA 13 in the presence of the Contracting Officers Technical Representative (COTR) or his designated representative. Test and flush underground water line prior to performing these hydrostatic tests.
- B. Final Inspection and Testing: Subject system to tests in accordance with NFPA 13, and when all necessary corrections have been accomplished, advise COTR/Resident Engineer to schedule a final inspection and test. Connection to the fire alarm system shall have been in service for at least ten days prior to the final inspection, with adjustments made to prevent false alarms. Furnish all instruments, labor and materials required for the tests and provide the services of the installation

foreman or other competent representative of the installer to perform the tests. Correct deficiencies and retest system as necessary, prior to the final acceptance. Include the operation of all features of the systems under normal operations in test.

3.3 INSTRUCTIONS

Furnish the services of a competent instructor for not less than two hours for instructing personnel in the operation and maintenance of the system, on the dates requested by the COTR/Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 15050
BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Basic methods and requirements for Division 15, MECHANICAL, applies to all sections of Division 15.
- B. Definitions:
 - 1. Exposed: Piping, ductwork, and equipment exposed to view in finished rooms.
 - 2. Option or optional: Contractor's choice of an alternate material or method.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- B. Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- C. Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- D. Excavation and Backfill: Section 02200, EARTHWORK.
- E. Concrete and Grout: Section 03300, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
- F. Building Components for Attachment of Hangers: Section 05311, STEEL DECKING, and Section 05321, STEEL DECKING COMPOSITE.
- G. Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- H. Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING.
- I. Flashing for Wall and Roof Penetrations: Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- J. Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- K. Section 09900, PAINTING.
- L. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS
- M. Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.
- N. Section 15250, INSULATION.
- O. Section 15740, TERMINAL UNITS.
- P. Section 15902, CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTATION (DDC).
- Q. Section 15980, TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING.
- R. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL)
- S. Section 16150, MOTORS.
- T. Section 16155, MOTOR STARTERS.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Flow Rate Tolerance for HVAC Equipment: Section 15980, TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING.
- B. Equipment Vibration Tolerance:

1. The allowable vibration tolerance is specified in Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL. Equipment specifications require factory balancing of equipment to this tolerance.
2. After air balance work is completed and permanent drive sheaves are in place, perform field mechanical balancing and adjustments required to meet the specified vibration tolerance.

C. Products Criteria:

1. Standard Products: Material and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least 3 years. See other specification sections for any exceptions.
2. Where applicable, equipment shall comply with Energy Star or FEMP designated products.
3. Equipment Service: Products shall be supported by a service organization which maintains a complete inventory of repair parts and is located reasonably close to the site.
4. Multiple Units: When two or more units of materials or equipment of the same type or class are required, these units shall be products of one manufacturer.
5. Assembled Units: Manufacturers of equipment assemblies, which use components made by others, assume complete responsibility for the final assembled product.
6. Nameplates: Nameplate bearing manufacturer's name or identifiable trademark shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on equipment, or name or trademark cast integrally with equipment, stamped or otherwise permanently marked on each item of equipment.
7. Asbestos products or equipment or materials containing asbestos shall not be used.

D. Welding: Before any welding is performed, contractor shall submit a certificate certifying that welders comply with the following requirements:

1. Qualify welding processes and operators for piping according to ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications".
2. Comply with provisions of ASME B31 series "Code for Pressure Piping".
3. Certify that each welder has passed American Welding Society (AWS) qualification tests for the welding processes involved, and that certification is current.

E. Manufacturer's Recommendations: Where installation procedures or any part thereof are required to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the material being installed, printed copies of

these recommendations shall be furnished to the Resident Engineer prior to installation. Installation of the item will not be allowed to proceed until the recommendations are received. Failure to furnish these recommendations can be cause for rejection of the material.

- F. Guaranty: Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- G. Plumbing Systems: NAPHCC National Standard Plumbing Code.
- H. Supports for sprinkler piping shall be in conformance with NFPA 13.
- I. Supports for standpipe shall be in conformance with NFPA 14.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Submit under the pertinent section rather than under this section.
 - 1. Submit belt drive with the driven equipment. Submit selection data for specific drives when requested by the Resident Engineer.
 - 2. Submit electric motor data and variable speed drive data with the driven equipment.
 - 3. Equipment and materials identification.
 - 4. Fire-stopping materials.
 - 5. Hangers, inserts, supports and bracing. Provide load calculations for variable spring and constant support hangers.
 - 6. Wall, floor, and ceiling plates.
- C. Coordination Drawings: In accordance with Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, Article, SUBCONTRACTS AND WORK COORDINATION. Provide detailed layout drawings of all piping and duct systems. In addition provide details of the following.
 - 1. Mechanical equipment rooms.
 - 2. Hangers, inserts, supports, and bracing.
 - 3. Pipe sleeves.
 - 4. Duct or equipment penetrations of floors, walls, ceilings, or roofs.
- D. Maintenance Data and Operating Instructions:
 - 1. Maintenance and operating manuals in accordance with Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Article, INSTRUCTIONS, for systems and equipment.
 - 2. Provide a listing of recommended replacement parts for keeping in stock supply, including sources of supply, for equipment. Include in the listing belts for equipment: Belt manufacturer, model number, size and style, and distinguished whether of multiple belt sets.
- E. Provide copies of approved HVAC equipment submittals to the Testing, Adjusting and Balancing Subcontractor.

SECTION 15140
PUMPS (HVAC)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Pumps for Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning.
- B. Definitions:
 - 1. Capacity: Gallons per minute (GPM) of the fluid pumped.
 - 2. Head: Total dynamic head in feet of the fluid pumped.
 - 3. Flat head-capacity curve: Where the shutoff head is less than 1.16 times the head at the best efficiency point.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- B. Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- C. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.
- D. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- E. Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.
- F. Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS.
- G. Section 16150, MOTORS.
- H. Section 16155, MOTOR STARTERS.
- I. Section 16208, ENGINE GENERATORS.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to Paragraph, QUALITY ASSURANCE, in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Design Criteria:
 - 1. Pumps design and manufacturer shall conform to Hydraulic Institute Standards.
 - 2. Pump sizes, capacities, pressures, operating characteristics and efficiency shall be as scheduled.
 - 3. Head-capacity curves shall slope up to maximum head at shut-off. Curves shall be relatively flat for closed systems. Select pumps near the midrange of the curve, so the design capacity falls to the left of the best efficiency point, to allow a cushion for the usual drift to the right in operation, without approaching the pump curve end point and possible cavitation and unstable operation. Select pumps for open systems so that required net positive suction head (NPSHR) does not exceed the net positive head available (NPSHA).
 - 4. The head for pumps submitted for pumping through condensers and through chilled water coils and evaporators shall be increased, if necessary, to match the equipment approved for the project.

5. Pump Driver: Furnish with pump. Size shall be non-overloading at any point on the head-capacity curve including one pump operation in a parallel or series pumping installation.
6. Provide all pumps with motors, impellers, drive assemblies, bearings, coupling guard and other accessories specified. Statically and dynamically balance all rotating parts.
7. Furnish each pump and motor with a nameplate giving the manufacturers name, serial number of pump, capacity in GPM and head in feet at design condition, horsepower, voltage, frequency, speed and full load current and motor efficiency.
8. Test all pumps before shipment. The manufacturer shall certify all pump ratings.
9. After completion of balancing, provide replacement of impellers or trim impellers to provide specified flow at actual pumping head, as installed.
10. Furnish one spare seal and casing gasket for each pump to the Resident Engineer.

C. Allowable Vibration Tolerance for Pump Units: Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 1. Pumps and accessories.
 2. Motors and drives.
 3. Variable speed motor controllers.
- C. Manufacturer's installation, maintenance and operating instructions, in accordance with Section, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- D. Characteristic Curves: Head-capacity, efficiency-capacity, brake horsepower-capacity, and NPSHR-capacity for each pump and for combined pumps in parallel or series service. Identify pump and show fluid pumped, specific gravity, pump speed and curves plotted from zero flow to maximum for the impeller being furnished and at least the maximum diameter impeller that can be used with the casing.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only:
- B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):

AISI 1045.....Cold Drawn Carbon Steel Bar, Type 1045

AISI 416.....Type 416 Stainless Steel

- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - ANSI B15.1-00.....Safety Standard for Mechanical Power
Transmission Apparatus
 - ANSI B16.1-00.....Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings,
Class 25, 125, 250 and 800
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A48-98.....Gray Iron Castings
 - B62-02.....Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
- E. Maintenance and Operating Manuals in accordance with Section 01010,
General Requirements

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS, BRONZE FITTED

Base Mounted End Suction Type:

- A. Casing and Bearing Housing: Close-grained cast iron, ASTM A48.
- B. Casing Wear Rings: Bronze.
- C. Suction or Discharge 65 mm (2-1/2 inches) and Larger: Plain face flange,
850 kPa (125 psig), ANSI B16.1.
- D. Casing Vent: Manual brass cock at high point.
- E. Casing Drain and Gage Taps: 15 mm (1/2-inch) plugged connections minimum
size.
- F. Bearings: Regreaseable ball or roller type. Provide lip seal and slinger
outboard of each bearing.
- G. Impeller: Bronze, ASTM B62, enclosed type, keyed to shaft.
- H. Shaft: Steel, AISI Type 1045 or stainless steel.
- I. Shaft Seal: Manufacturer's standard mechanical type to suit pressure and
temperature and fluid pumped.
- J. Shaft Sleeve: Bronze or stainless steel.
- K. Motor: Furnish with pump. Refer to Section 16150, MOTORS.
- L. Base Mounted Pumps:
 - 1. Designed for disassembling for service or repair without disturbing
the piping or removing the motor.
 - 2. Impeller Wear Rings: Bronze.
 - 3. Shaft Coupling: Non-lubricated steel flexible type or spacer type
with coupling guard, ANSI B15.1, bolted to the baseplate.
 - 4. Base: Cast iron or fabricated steel for common mounting to a concrete
base.
 - 5. Suction Diffuser:
 - a. Body: Cast iron with steel inlet vanes and combination
diffuser-strainer-orifice cylinder with 5 mm (3/16-inch) diameter
openings for pump protection. Provide taps for strainer blowdown
and gage connections.

- b. Provide adjustable foot support for suction piping.
 - c. Strainer free area: Not less than five times the suction piping.
 - d. Provide disposable start-up strainer.
- M. Variable Speed Pumps:
- 1. The pumps shall be the type shown on the drawings and specified herein flex coupled to an open drip-proof motor. Provide motors 30 kW (40 horsepower) and larger with thermal overload switches.
 - 2. Variable Speed Motor Controllers: Refer to Section 16155, MOTOR STARTERS and to Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL) paragraph, Variable Speed Motor Controllers. Furnish controllers with pumps and motors.
 - 3. Pump operation and speed control shall be as shown on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for pump mounting and start-up. Access/ Service space around pumps shall not be less than minimum space recommended by pumps manufacturer.
- B. Support piping adjacent to pump such that no weight is carried on pump casing. First 3 hangers for each pipe shall be spring and neoprene type.
- C. Permanently support in-line pumps by the connecting piping only, not from the casing or the motor eye bolt.
- D. Sequence of installation for base-mounted pumps:
 - 1. Level and shim the unit base and grout to the concrete pad.
 - 2. Shim the driver and realign the pump and driver. Correct axial, angular or parallel misalignment of the shafts.
 - 3. Connect properly aligned and independently supported piping.
 - 4. Recheck alignment.
- E. Provide drains for bases and seals for base mounted pumps, piped to and discharging into floor drains.
- F. Coordinate location of thermometer and pressure gauges as per Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS.

3.2 START-UP

- A. Verify that the piping system has been flushed, cleaned and filled.
- B. Lubricate pumps before start-up.
- C. Prime the pump, vent all air from the casing and verify that the rotation is correct. To avoid damage to mechanical seals, never start or run the pump in dry condition.
- D. Verify that correct size heaters-motor over-load devices are installed for each pump controller unit.

- E. Perform field mechanical balancing if necessary to meet specified vibration tolerance.
- F. Ensure the disposable strainer is free of debris prior to testing and balancing of the hydronic system.
- G. After several days of operation, replace the disposable start-up strainer with a regular strainer in the suction diffuser.

- - - E N D - - -

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI):
430-99.....Central Station Air-Handling Units
- C. American National Standard Institute (ANSI):
B31.1-2001.....Power Piping
- D. Rubber Manufacturers Association (ANSI/RMA):
IP-20-2001.....Drives Using Classical V-Belts and Sheaves
IP-21-88.....Drives Using Double-V (Hexagonal) Belts
IP-22-91.....Drives Using Narrow V-Belts and Sheaves
- E. Air Movement and Control Association (AMCA):
410-96.....Recommended Safety Practices for Air Moving Devices
- F. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC):
SEC IX-98.....Qualifications Standard for Welding and Brazing Procedures, Welders, Brazers, and Welding and Brazing Operators
- G. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A36/A36M-2001.....Carbon Structural Steel
A575-96.....Steel Bars, Carbon, Merchant Quality, M-Grades R (2002)
E84-2003.....Standard Test Method for Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
E119-2000.....Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
- H. Manufacturers Standardization Society (MSS) of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc:
SP-58-93.....Pipe Hangers and Supports-Materials, Design and Manufacture
SP-69-96.....Pipe Hangers and Supports-Selection and Application
- I. National Association of Plumbing - Heating - Cooling Contractors (NAPHCC):
1996.....National Standard Plumbing Code
- J. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
90A-96.....Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
101-97.....Life Safety Code

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 BELT DRIVES**

- A. Type: ANSI/RMA standard V-belts with proper motor pulley and driven sheave. Belts shall be constructed of reinforced cord and rubber.
- B. Dimensions, rating and selection standards: ANSI/RMA IP-20 and IP-21.
- C. Minimum Horsepower Rating: Motor horsepower plus recommended ANSI/RMA service factor (not less than 20 percent) in addition to the ANSI/RMA allowances for pitch diameter, center distance, and arc of contact.
- D. Maximum Speed: 25 m/s (5000 feet per minute).
- E. Adjustment Provisions: For alignment and ANSI/RMA standard allowances for installation and take-up.
- F. Drives may utilize a single V-Belt (any cross section) when it is the manufacturer's standard.
- G. Multiple Belts: Matched to ANSI/RMA specified limits by measurement on a belt measuring fixture. Seal matched sets together to prevent mixing or partial loss of sets. Replacement, when necessary, shall be an entire set of new matched belts.
- H. Sheaves and Pulleys:
 - 1. Material: Pressed steel, or close grained cast iron.
 - 2. Bore: Fixed or bushing type for securing to shaft with keys.
 - 3. Balanced: Statically and dynamically.
 - 4. Groove spacing for driving and driven pulleys shall be the same.
 - 5. Minimum Diameter of V-Belt Sheaves (ANSI/RMA recommendations) in millimeters and inches:

Fractional Horsepower		Standard		High Capacity	
Cross Section	Min. od mm (in)	Cross Section	Min. od mm (in)	Cross Section	Min. od mm (in)
2L	20 (0.8)	A	83 (3.25)	3V	67 (2.65)
3L	38 (1.5)	B	146 (5.75)	4V	180 (7.10)
4L	64 (2.5)	C	239 (9.40)	5V	318 (12.50)
5L	89 (3.5)	D	345 (13.60)		
		E	554 (21.80)		

- I. Drive Types, Based on ARI 435:
 - 1. Provide adjustable-pitch or fixed-pitch drive as follows:
 - a. Fan speeds up to 1800 RPM: 7.5 kW (10 horsepower) and smaller.
 - b. Fan speeds over 1800 RPM: 2.2 kW (3 horsepower) and smaller.
 - 2. Provide fixed-pitch drives for drives larger than those listed above.

3. The final fan speeds required to just meet the system CFM and pressure requirements, without throttling, shall be determined by adjustment of a temporary adjustable-pitch motor sheave or by fan law calculation if a fixed-pitch drive is used initially.

2.2 DRIVE GUARDS

- A. For machinery and equipment, provide guards as shown in AMCA 410 for belts, chains, couplings, pulleys, sheaves, shafts, gears and other moving parts regardless of height above the floor. Drive guards may be excluded where motors and drives are inside factory fabricated air handling unit casings.
- B. Materials: Sheet steel, cast iron, expanded metal or wire mesh rigidly secured so as to be removable without disassembling pipe, duct, or electrical connections to equipment.
- C. Access for Speed Measurement: 25 mm (One inch) diameter hole at each shaft center.

2.3 ELECTRIC MOTORS

- A. Section 16150, MOTORS, specifies the applicable requirements for electric motors. Provide special energy efficient motors as scheduled. Unless otherwise specified for a particular application use electric motors with the following requirements.
- B. Single-phase Motors: Capacitor-start type for hard starting applications. Motors for centrifugal fans and pumps may be split phase or permanent split capacitor (PSC).
- C. Poly-phase Motors: NEMA Design B, Squirrel cage, induction type. Each two-speed motor shall have two separate windings. Provide a time- delay (20 seconds minimum) relay for switching from high to low speed.
- D. Rating: Continuous duty at 100 percent capacity in an ambient temperature of 40 degrees centigrade (104 degrees F); minimum horsepower as shown on drawings; maximum horsepower in normal operation not to exceed nameplate rating without service factor.
- E. Insulation Resistance: Not less than one-half meg-ohm between stator conductors and frame, to be determined at the time of final inspection.

2.4 VARIABLE SPEED MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Refer to Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL) and Section 16155, MOTOR STARTERS for specifications.
- B. The combination of controller and motor shall be provided by the respective air handler, fan or pump manufacturer, and shall be rated for 100 percent output performance. Multiple units of the same class of equipment, i.e. fans, pumps, shall be product of a single manufacturer.

- C. Motors shall be energy efficient type and be approved by the motor controller manufacturer. The controller-motor combination shall be guaranteed to provide full motor nameplate horsepower in variable frequency operation. Both driving and driven motor/fan sheaves shall be fixed pitch.
- D. Controller shall not add any current or voltage transients to the input AC power distribution system, DDC controls, sensitive medical equipment, etc., nor shall be affected from other devices on the AC power system.

2.5 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS IDENTIFICATION

- A. Interior (Indoor) Equipment: Engraved nameplates, with letters not less than 48 mm (3/16-inch) high of brass with black-filled letters, or rigid black plastic with white letters specified in Section 09900, PAINTING permanently fastened to the equipment. Identify unit components such as coils, filters, fans, etc.
- B. Exterior (Outdoor) Equipment: Brass nameplates, with engraved black filled letters, not less than 48 mm (3/16-inch) high riveted or bolted to the equipment.
- C. Control Items: Label all temperature and humidity sensors, controllers and control dampers. Identify and label each item as they appear on the control diagrams.
- D. Valve Tags and Lists:
 - 1. Plumbing: Provide for all valves (Fixture stops not included).
 - 2. HVAC: Provide for all valves other than for equipment in Section 15740, TERMINAL UNITS.
 - 3. Valve tags: Engraved black filled numbers and letters not less than 13 mm (1/2-inch) high for number designation, and not less than 6.4 mm(1/4-inch) for service designation on 19 gage 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) round brass disc, attached with brass "S" hook or brass chain.
 - 4. Valve lists: Typed or printed plastic coated card(s), sized 216 mm(8-1/2 inches) by 280 mm (11 inches) showing tag number, valve function and area of control, for each service or system. Punch sheets for a 3-ring notebook.
 - 5. Provide detailed plan for each floor of the building indicating the location and valve number for each valve. Identify location of each valve with a color coded thumb tack in ceiling.

2.6 FIRESTOPPING

Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING specifies an effective barrier against the spread of fire, smoke and gases where penetrations occur for piping and ductwork. Refer to Section 15250, INSULATION, for firestop pipe and duct insulation.

2.7 GALVANIZED REPAIR COMPOUND

Mil. Spec. DOD-P-21035B, paint form.

2.8 PIPE AND EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS AND RESTRAINTS

- A. Vibration Isolators: Refer to Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.
- B. In lieu of the paragraph which follow, suspended equipment support and restraints may be designed and installed in accordance with the National Uniform Seismic Installation Guidelines (NUSIG), most current edition. Submittals based on either the NUSIG guidelines or the following paragraphs of this Section shall be stamped and signed by a professional engineer registered in the State of Nevada. Support of suspended equipment over 227kg (500 pounds) shall be submitted for approval of the Resident Engineer in all cases. See paragraph 2.8.M for lateral force design requirements.
- C. Type Numbers Specified: MSS SP-58. For selection and application refer to MSS SP-69. Refer to Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS, for miscellaneous metal support materials and prime coat painting.
- D. For Attachment to Concrete Construction:
 - 1. Concrete insert: Type 18, MSS SP-58.
 - 2. Self-drilling expansion shields and machine bolt expansion anchors: Permitted in concrete not less than 102 mm (four inches) thick when approved by the Resident Engineer for each job condition.
 - 3. Power-driven fasteners: Permitted in existing concrete or masonry not less than 102 mm (four inches) thick when approved by the Resident Engineer for each job condition.
- E. For Attachment to Steel Construction: MSS SP-58.
 - 1. Welded attachment: Type 22.
 - 2. Beam clamps: Types 20, 21, 28 or 29. Type 23 C-clamp may be used for individual copper tubing up to 23mm (7/8-inch) outside diameter.
- F. Attachment to Metal Pan or Deck: As required for materials specified in Section 05311, STEEL DECKING Section 05321, STEEL DECKING COMPOSITE.
- G. Hanger Rods: Hot-rolled steel, ASTM A36 or A575 for allowable load listed in MSS SP-58. For piping, provide adjustment means for controlling level or slope. Types 13 or 15 turn-buckles shall provide 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) minimum of adjustment and incorporate locknuts. All-thread rods are acceptable.
- H. Multiple (Trapeze) Hangers: Galvanized, cold formed, lipped steel channel horizontal member, not less than 41mm by 41mm (1-5/8 inches by 1-5/8 inches), 2.7 mm (No. 12 gage), designed to accept special spring held, hardened steel nuts. Not permitted for steam supply and condensate piping.

1. Allowable hanger load: Manufacturers rating less 91kg (200 pounds).
 2. Guide individual pipes on the horizontal member of every other trapeze hanger with 6 mm (1/4-inch) U-bolt fabricated from steel rod. Provide Type 40 insulation shield, secured by two 13mm (1/2-inch) galvanized steel bands, or preinsulated calcium silicate shield for insulated piping at each hanger.
- I. Pipe Hangers and Supports: (MSS SP-58), use hangers sized to encircle insulation on insulated piping. Refer to Section 15250, INSULATION for insulation thickness. To protect insulation, provide Type 39 saddles for roller type supports or preinsulated calcium silicate shields. Provide Type 40 insulation shield or preinsulated calcium silicate shield at all other types of supports and hangers including those for preinsulated piping.
1. General Types (MSS SP-58):
 - a. Standard clevis hanger: Type 1; provide locknut.
 - b. Riser clamps: Type 8.
 - c. Wall brackets: Types 31, 32 or 33.
 - d. Roller supports: Type 41, 43, 44 and 46.
 - e. Saddle support: Type 36, 37 or 38.
 - f. Turnbuckle: Types 13 or 15. preinsulate
 - g. U-bolt clamp: Type 24.
 - h. Copper Tube:
 - 1) Hangers, clamps and other support material in contact with tubing shall be painted with copper colored epoxy paint, plastic coated or taped with non adhesive isolation tape to prevent electrolysis.
 - 2) For vertical runs use epoxy painted or plastic coated riser clamps.
 - 3) For supporting tube to strut: Provide epoxy painted pipe straps for copper tube or plastic inserted vibration isolation clamps.
 - 4) Insulated Lines: Provide pre-insulated calcium silicate shields sized for copper tube.
 - i. Supports for plastic or glass piping: As recommended by the pipe manufacturer with black rubber tape extending one inch beyond steel support or clamp.
 2. HVAC Piping (Other Than General Types):
 - a. Spring Supports (Expansion and contraction of vertical piping):
 - 1) Movement up to 20 mm (3/4-inch): Type 51 or 52 variable spring unit with integral turn buckle and load indicator.

- 2) Movement more than 20 mm (3/4-inch): Type 54 or 55 constant support unit with integral adjusting nut, turn buckle and travel position indicator.
3. Plumbing Piping (Other Than General Types):
 - a. Horizontal piping: Type 1, 5, 7, 9, and 10.
 - b. Hangers and supports in pipe chase: Prefabricated system ABS self-extinguishing material, not subject to electrolytic action, to hold piping, prevent vibration and compensate for all static and operational conditions.
 - c. Blocking, stays and bracing: Angle iron or preformed metal channel shapes, 1.3 mm (18 gage) minimum.
- J. Pre-insulated Calcium Silicate Shields:
 1. Provide 360 degree water resistant high density 965 kPa (140 psi) compressive strength calcium silicate shields encased in galvanized metal.
 2. Pre-insulated calcium silicate shields to be installed at the point of support during erection.
 3. Shield thickness shall match the pipe insulation.
 4. The type of shield is selected by the temperature of the pipe, the load it must carry, and the type of support it will be used with.
 - a. Shields for supporting chilled or cold water shall have insulation that extends a minimum of 1 inch past the sheet metal. Provide for an adequate vapor barrier in chilled lines.
 - b. The pre-insulated calcium silicate shield shall support the maximum allowable water filled span as indicated in MSS-SP 69. To support the load, the shields may have one or more of the following features: structural inserts 4138 kPa (600 psi) compressive strength, an extra bottom metal shield, or formed structural steel (ASTM A36) wear plates welded to the bottom sheet metal jacket.
 5. Shields may be used on steel clevis hanger type supports, roller supports or flat surfaces.
- K. Seismic Restraint of Piping and Ductwork: Refer to Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

2.9 PIPE PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves during construction for other than blocked out floor openings for risers in mechanical bays.
- B. Penetrations are not allowed through beams or ribs, but may be installed in concrete beam flanges. Any deviation from this requirements must receive prior approval of Resident Engineer.

- C. Sheet Metal, Plastic, or Moisture-resistant Fiber Sleeves: Provide for pipe passing through floors, interior walls, and partitions, unless brass or steel pipe sleeves are specifically called for below.
- D. Cast Iron or Zinc Coated Pipe Sleeves: Provide for pipe passing through exterior walls below grade. Make space between sleeve and pipe watertight with a modular or link rubber seal. Seal shall be applied at both ends of sleeve.
- E. Galvanized Steel or an alternate Black Iron Pipe with asphalt coating Sleeves: Provide for pipe passing through concrete beam flanges, except where brass pipe sleeves are called for. Provide sleeve for pipe passing through floor of mechanical rooms. Except in mechanical rooms, connect sleeve with floor plate.
- F. Sleeves are not required for wall hydrants for fire department connections or in drywall construction.
- G. Sleeve Clearance: Sleeve through floors, walls, partitions, and beam flanges shall be one inch greater in diameter than external diameter of pipe. Sleeve for pipe with insulation shall be large enough to accommodate the insulation. Interior openings shall be caulked tight with fire stopping material and sealant to prevent the spread of fire, smoke, and gases.
- H. Sealant and Adhesives: Shall be as specified in Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.

2.10 TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

- A. Furnish, and turn over to the Resident Engineer, special tools not readily available commercially, that are required for disassembly or adjustment of equipment and machinery furnished.
- B. Grease Guns with Attachments for Applicable Fittings: One for each type of grease required for each motor or other equipment.
- C. Tool Containers: Hardwood or metal, permanently identified for intended service and mounted, or located, where directed by the Resident Engineer.
- D. Lubricants: A minimum of 0.95 L (one quart) of oil, and 0.45 kg (one pound) of grease, of equipment manufacturer's recommended grade and type, in unopened containers and properly identified as to use for each different application.

2.11 WALL, FLOOR AND CEILING PLATES

- A. Material and Type: Chrome plated brass or chrome plated steel, one piece or split type with concealed hinge, with set screw for fastening to pipe, or sleeve. Use plates that fit tight around pipes, cover openings around pipes and cover the entire pipe sleeve projection.

- B. Thickness: Not less than 2.4 mm (3/32-inch) for floor plates. For wall and ceiling plates, not less than 0.64 mm (0.025-inch) for up to 80 mm (3-inch pipe), 0.89 mm (0.035-inch) for larger pipe.
- C. Locations: Use where pipe penetrates floors, walls and ceilings in exposed locations, in finished areas only. Use also where insulation ends on exposed water supply pipe drop from overhead. Provide a watertight joint in spaces where brass or steel pipe sleeves are specified.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate location of piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers, ductwork and equipment. Locate piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers, ductwork and equipment clear of windows, doors, openings, light outlets, and other services and utilities. Follow manufacturer's published recommendations for installation methods not otherwise specified.
- B. Protection and Cleaning:
 - 1. Equipment and materials shall be carefully handled, properly stored, and adequately protected to prevent damage before and during installation, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as approved by the Resident Engineer. Damaged or defective items in the opinion of the Resident Engineer, shall be replaced.
 - 2. Protect all finished parts of equipment, such as shafts and bearings where accessible, from rust prior to operation by means of protective grease coating and wrapping. Close pipe openings with caps or plugs during installation. Tightly cover and protect fixtures and equipment against dirt, water chemical, or mechanical injury. At completion of all work thoroughly clean fixtures, exposed materials and equipment.
- C. Concrete and Grout: Use concrete and shrink compensating grout 25 MPa (3000 psi) minimum, specified in Section 03300, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
- D. Install gages, thermometers, valves and other devices with due regard for ease in reading or operating and maintaining said devices. Locate and position thermometers and gages to be easily read by operator or staff standing on floor or walkway provided. Servicing shall not require dismantling adjacent equipment or pipe work.
- E. Work in Existing Building:
 - 1. Perform as specified in Article, OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS, Article, ALTERATIONS, and Article, RESTORATION of the Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS for relocation of existing equipment, alterations and restoration of existing building(s).
 - 2. As specified in Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Article, OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS, make alterations to existing service

- piping at times that will least interfere with normal operation of the facility.
3. Cut required openings through existing masonry and reinforced concrete using diamond core drills. Use of pneumatic hammer type drills, impact type electric drills, and hand or manual hammer type drills, will be permitted only with approval of the Resident Engineer. Locate openings that will least effect structural slabs, columns, ribs or beams. Refer to the Resident Engineer for determination of proper design for openings through structural sections and opening layouts approval, prior to cutting or drilling into structure. After Resident Engineer's approval, carefully cut opening through construction no larger than absolutely necessary for the required installation.
- F. Switchgear Drip Protection: Every effort shall be made to eliminate the installation of pipe above electrical and telephone switchgear. If this is not possible, encase pipe in a second pipe with a minimum of joints.
- G. Inaccessible Equipment:
1. Where the Government determines that the Contractor has installed equipment not conveniently accessible for operation and maintenance, equipment shall be removed and reinstalled or remedial action performed as directed at no additional cost to the Government.
 2. The term "conveniently accessible" is defined as capable of being reached without the use of ladders, or without climbing or crawling under or over obstacles such as motors, fans, pumps, belt guards, transformers, high voltage lines, piping, and ductwork.

3.2 PIPE AND EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Where hanger spacing does not correspond with joist or rib spacing, use structural steel channels secured directly to joist and rib structure that will correspond to the required hanger spacing, and then suspend the equipment and piping from the channels. Drill or burn holes in structural steel only with the prior approval of the Resident Engineer.
- B. Use of chain, wire or strap hangers; wood for blocking, stays and bracing; or, hangers suspended from piping above will not be permitted. Replace or thoroughly clean rusty products and paint with zinc primer.
- C. Use hanger rods that are straight and vertical. Turnbuckles for vertical adjustments may be omitted where limited space prevents use. Provide a minimum of 15 mm (1/2-inch) clearance between pipe or piping covering and adjacent work.
- D. HVAC Horizontal Pipe Support Spacing: Refer to MSS SP-69. Provide additional supports at valves, strainers, in-line pumps and other heavy components. Provide a support within one foot of each elbow.

E. HVAC Vertical Pipe Supports:

1. Up to 150 mm (6-inch pipe), 9 m (30 feet) long, bolt riser clamps to the pipe below couplings, or welded to the pipe and rests supports securely on the building structure.
2. Vertical pipe larger than the foregoing, support on base elbows or tees, or substantial pipe legs extending to the building structure.

F. Plumbing horizontal and vertical pipe supports, refer to the NAPHCC National Standard Plumbing Code.

3.3 MOTOR AND DRIVE ALIGNMENT

- A. Belt Drive: Set driving and driven shafts parallel and align so that the corresponding grooves are in the same plane.
- B. Direct-connect Drive: Securely mount motor in accurate alignment so that shafts are free from both angular and parallel misalignment when both motor and driven machine are operating at normal temperatures.

3.4 LUBRICATION

Field check and lubricate equipment requiring lubrication prior to initial operation.

3.5 STARTUP AND TEMPORARY OPERATION

Start up equipment as described in equipment specifications. Verify that vibration is within specified tolerance prior to extended operation. Temporary use of equipment is specified in Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Article, TEMPORARY USE OF MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT.

3.6 OPERATING AND PERFORMANCE TESTS

- A. Prior to the final inspection, perform required tests as specified in Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Article, TESTS and submit the test reports and records to the Resident Engineer.
- B. Should evidence of malfunction in any tested system, or piece of equipment or component part thereof, occur during or as a result of tests, make proper corrections, repairs or replacements, and repeat tests at no additional cost to the Government.
- C. When completion of certain work or system occurs at a time when final control settings and adjustments cannot be properly made to make performance tests, then make performance tests for heating systems and for cooling systems respectively during first actual seasonal use of respective systems following completion of work.

3.7 INSTRUCTIONS TO VA PERSONNEL

Provide in accordance with Article, INSTRUCTIONS, of Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 15200
NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

Noise criteria, seismic restraints for equipment, vibration tolerance and vibration isolation for HVAC and plumbing work.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. [Section 03300](#), CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE: Requirements for concrete inertia bases.
- B. [Section 13081](#), SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Seismic requirements for non-structural equipment
- C. [Section 15050](#), BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL): General mechanical requirements and items, which are common to more than one section of Division 15.
- D. [Section 15705](#), HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS: Requirements for flexible pipe connectors to reciprocating and rotating mechanical equipment.
- E. [Section 15200](#), DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES: requirements for flexible duct connectors, sound attenuators and sound absorbing duct lining.
- F. [Section 15980](#), TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING: requirements for sound and vibration tests.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to article, QUALITY ASSURANCE in specification [Section 15050](#), BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Noise Criteria:
 - 1. For equipment which has no sound power ratings scheduled on the plans, the contractor shall select equipment such that the foregoing noise criteria, local ordinance noise levels, and OSHA requirements are not exceeded. Selection procedure shall be in accordance with ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook, Chapter 7, Sound and Vibration.
 - 2. An allowance, not to exceed 5db, may be added to the measured value to compensate for the variation of the room attenuating effect between room test condition prior to occupancy and design condition after occupancy which may include the addition of sound absorbing material, such as, furniture. This allowance may not be taken after occupancy. The room attenuating effect is defined as the difference

between sound power level emitted to room and sound pressure level in room.

3. In absence of specified measurement requirements, measure equipment noise levels three feet from equipment and at an elevation of maximum noise generation.

C. Seismic Restraint Requirements:

1. Equipment:

- a. All mechanical equipment not supported with isolators external to the unit shall be securely anchored to the structure. Such mechanical equipment shall be properly supported to resist a horizontal force of 50 percent of the weight of the equipment furnished.
- b. All mechanical equipment mounted on vibration isolators shall be provided with seismic restraints capable of resisting a horizontal force of 100 percent of the weight of the equipment furnished.

2. Piping: Refer to specification [Section 15050](#), BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

3. Ductwork: Refer to specification [Section 15840](#), DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES.

- D. Allowable Vibration Tolerances for Rotating, Non-reciprocating Equipment: Not to exceed a self-excited vibration maximum velocity of 5 mm per second (0.20 inch per second) RMS, filter in, when measured with a vibration meter on bearing caps of machine in vertical, horizontal and axial directions or measured at equipment mounting feet if bearings are concealed. Measurements for internally isolated fans and motors may be made at the mounting feet.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with specification [Section 01340](#), SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.

B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:

1. Vibration isolators:

- a. Floor mountings
- b. Hangers
- c. Snubbers
- d. Thrust restraints

2. Bases.

- 3. Seismic restraint provisions and bolting.
- 4. Acoustical enclosures.
- C. Isolator manufacturer shall furnish with submittal load calculations for selection of isolators, including supplemental bases, based on lowest operating speed of equipment supported.
- D. Seismic Requirements: Submittals are required for all equipment anchors, supports and seismic restraints. Submittals shall include weights, dimensions, standard connections, and manufacturer's certification that all specified equipment will withstand seismic Lateral Force requirements as shown on drawings,

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE):
2005.....Fundamentals Handbook, Chapter 7, Sound and Vibration
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A123/A123M-02.....Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
A307-04.....Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength
D2240-05.....Standard Test Method for Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness
- D. Manufacturers Standardization (MSS):
SP-58-02.....Pipe Hangers and Supports-Materials, Design and Manufacture
- E. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
29 CFR 1910.95.....Occupational Noise Exposure

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Type of isolator, base, and minimum static deflection shall be as required for each specific equipment application as recommended by isolator or equipment manufacturer but subject to minimum requirements indicated herein and in the schedule on the drawings.

- B. Elastometric Isolators shall comply with ASTM D2240 and be oil resistant neoprene with a maximum stiffness of 60 durometer and have a straight-line deflection curve.
- C. Exposure to weather: Isolators, including springs, exposed to weather shall be hot dip galvanized after fabrication. Hot-dip zinc coating shall not be less than 609 grams per square meter (two ounces per square foot) by weight complying with ASTM A123. In addition provide limit stops to resist wind velocity. Comply with the design wind velocity of the existing system design.
- D. Uniform Loading: Select and locate isolators to produce uniform loading and deflection even when equipment weight is not evenly distributed.
- E. Color code isolators by type and size for easy identification of capacity.

2.2 SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR EQUIPMENTS

- A. Bolt pad mounted equipment, without vibration isolators, to the floor or other support using ASTM A307 standard bolting material.
- B. Floor mounted equipment, with vibration Isolators: Type SS. Where Type N isolators are used provide channel frame base horizontal restraints bolted to the floor, or other support, on all sides of the equipment. Size and material required for the base shall be as recommended by the isolator manufacturer.
- C. On all sided of suspended equipment, provide bracing for rigid supports and provide restraints for resiliently supported equipment. The slack cable restraint method, Mason Industries, or equal, is acceptable.

2.3 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Floor Mountings:
 - 1. Double Deflection Neoprene (Type N): Shall include neoprene covered steel support plated (top and bottom), friction pads, and necessary bolt holes.
 - 2. Captive Spring Mount for Seismic Restraint (Type SS):
 - a. Design mounts to resiliently resist seismic forces in all directions. Snubbing shall take place in all modes with adjustment to limit upward, downward, and horizontal travel to a maximum of 6 mm (1/4-inch) before contacting snubbers. Mountings shall have a minimum rating of one G coefficient of gravity as calculated and certified by a registered structural engineer.

- b. All mountings shall have leveling bolts that must be rigidly bolted to the equipment. Spring diameters shall be no less than 0.8 of the compressed height of the spring at rated load. Springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50 percent of the rated deflection. Mountings shall have ports for spring inspection. Provide an all directional neoprene cushion collar around the equipment bolt.
- 3. Spring Isolators with Vertical Limit Stops (Type SP): Similar to spring isolators noted above, except include a vertical limit stop to limit upward travel if weight is removed and also to reduce movement and spring extension due to wind loads. Provide clearance around restraining bolts to prevent mechanical short circuiting.
- 4. Seismic Pad (Type DS): Pads shall be felt, cork neoprene waffle, neoprene and cork sandwich, neoprene and fiberglass, neoprene and steel waffle, or reinforced duck and neoprene, with steel top plate and drilled for an anchor bolt. Washers and bushings shall be reinforced duck and neoprene. Size pads for a maximum load of 345 kPa (50 pounds per square inch).
- B. Hangers: Shall be combination neoprene and springs unless otherwise noted and shall allow for expansion of pipe.
 - 1. Combination Neoprene and Spring (Type H): Vibration hanger shall contain a spring and double deflection neoprene element in series. Spring shall have a diameter not less than 0.8 of compressed operating spring height. Spring shall have a minimum additional travel of 50 percent between design height and solid height. Spring shall permit a 15 degree angular misalignment without rubbing on hanger box.
 - 2. Spring Position Hanger (Type HP): Similar to combination neoprene and spring hanger except hanger shall hold piping at a fixed elevation during installation and include a secondary adjustment feature to transfer load to spring while maintaining same position.
 - 3. Neoprene (Type HN): Vibration hanger shall contain a double deflection type neoprene isolation element. Hanger rod shall be separated from contact with hanger bracket by a neoprene grommet.
 - 4. Spring (Type HS): Vibration hanger shall contain a coiled steel spring in series with a neoprene grommet. Spring shall have a diameter not less than 0.8 of compressed operating spring height. Spring shall have a minimum additional travel of 50 percent between

- design height and solid height. Spring shall permit a 15 degree angular misalignment without rubbing on hanger box.
5. Hanger supports for piping 50 mm (2 inches) and larger shall have a pointer and scale deflection indicator.
- C. Snubbers: Each spring mounted base shall have a minimum of four all-directional or eight two directional (two per side) seismic snubbers that are double acting. Elastomeric materials shall be shock absorbent neoprene bridge quality bearing pads, maximum 60 durometer, replaceable and have a minimum thickness of 6 mm (1/4 inch). Air gap between hard and resilient material shall be not less than 3 mm (1/8 inch) nor more than 6 mm (1/4 inch). Restraints shall be capable of withstanding design load without permanent deformation.
- D. Thrust Restraints (Type THR): Restraints shall provide a spring element contained in a steel frame with neoprene pads at each end attachment. Restraints shall have factory preset thrust and be field adjustable to allow a maximum movement of 6 mm (1/4 inch) when the fan starts and stops. Restraint assemblies shall include rods, angle brackets and other hardware for field installation.

2.4 BASES

- A. Rails (Type R): Design rails with isolator brackets to reduce mounting height of equipment and cradle machines having legs or bases that do not require a complete supplementary base. To assure adequate stiffness, height of members shall be a minimum of 1/12 of longest base dimension but not less than 100 mm (4 inches). Where rails are used with neoprene mounts for small fans or close coupled pumps, extend rails to compensate overhang of housing.
- B. Integral Structural Steel Base (Type B): Design base with isolator brackets to reduce mounting height of equipment which require a complete supplementary rigid base. To assure adequate stiffness, height of members shall be a minimum of 1/12 of longest base dimension, but not less than 100 mm (four inches).
- C. Inertia Base (Type I): Base shall be a reinforced concrete inertia base. Pour concrete into a welded steel channel frame, incorporating prelocated equipment anchor bolts and pipe sleeves. Level the concrete to provide a smooth uniform bearing surface for equipment mounting. Provide grout under uneven supports. Channel depth shall be a minimum of 1/12 of longest dimension of base but not less than 150 mm (six inches). Form shall include 13-mm (1/2-inch) reinforcing bars welded in

place on minimum of 203 mm (eight inch) centers running both ways in a layer 40 mm (1-1/2 inches) above bottom. Use height saving brackets in all mounting locations. Weight of inertia base shall be equal to or greater than weight of equipment supported to provide a maximum peak-to-peak displacement of 2 mm (1/16 inch).

- D. Curb Mounted Isolation Base (Type CB): Fabricate from aluminum to fit on top of standard curb with overlap to allow water run-off and have wind and water seals which shall not interfere with spring action. Provide resilient snubbers with 6 mm (1/4 inch) clearance for wind resistance. Top and bottom bearing surfaces shall have sponge type weather seals. Integral spring isolators shall comply with Spring Isolator (Type S) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Vibration Isolation:

1. No metal-to-metal contact will be permitted between fixed and floating parts.
2. Connections to Equipment: Allow for deflections equal to or greater than equipment deflections. Electrical, drain, piping connections, and other items made to rotating or reciprocating equipment (pumps, compressors, etc.) which rests on vibration isolators, shall be isolated from building structure for first three hangers or supports.
3. Common Foundation: Mount each electric motor on same foundation as driven machine. Hold driving motor and driven machine in positive rigid alignment with provision for adjusting motor alignment and belt tension. Bases shall be level throughout length and width. Provide shims to facilitate pipe connections, leveling, and bolting.
4. Provide heat shields where elastomers are subject to temperatures over 38 degrees C (100 degrees F).
5. Extend bases for pipe elbow supports at discharge and suction connections at pumps. Pipe elbow supports shall not short circuit pump vibration to structure.
6. Non-rotating equipment such as heat exchangers and convertors shall be mounted on isolation units having the same static deflection as the isolation hangers or support of the pipe connected to the equipment.

- B. Inspection and Adjustments: Check for vibration and noise transmission through connections, piping, ductwork, foundations, and walls. Adjust, repair, or replace isolators as required to reduce vibration and noise transmissions to specified levels.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust vibration isolators after piping systems are filled and equipment is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop.
- D. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- E. Adjust snubbers according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Adjust seismic restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.
- G. Torque anchor bolts according to equipment manufacturer's recommendations to resist seismic forces.

- - - E N D - - -

SELECTION GUIDE FOR VIBRATION ISOLATORS

		ON GRADE			20FT FLOOR SPAN			30FT FLOOR SPAN			40FT FLOOR SPAN			50FT FLOOR SPAN		
EQUIPMENT		BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL
REFRIGERATION MACHINES																
PACKAGED HERMETIC		---	D	0.3	---	SP	1.0	---	SP	1.7	---	SP	1.7	R	SP	2.5
OPEN CENTRIFUGAL		B	D	0.3	B	SP	1.0	---	SP	1.7	B	SP	1.7	B	SP	2.5
Reciprocating:	500 - 750 RPM	---	N	0.3	---	SP	1.7	R	SP	2.5	R	SP	2.5	R	SP	3.5
	751 RPM & OVER	---	N	0.3	---	SP	1.0	---	---	1.7	R	SP	2.5	R	SP	2.5
COMPRESSORS AND VACUUM PUMPS																
PUMPS																
BASE MOUNTED	UP TO 10 HP	---	---	---	I	S	1.0	I	S	1.0	I	S	1.7	I	S	1.7
	15 HP THRU 40 HP	I	S	1.0	I	S	1.0	I	S	1.7	I	S	1.7	I	S	1.7
	50-125 HP	I	S	1.0	I	S	1.0	I	S	1.7	I	S	2.5	I	S	2.5
	150 HP & OVER	I	S	1.0	I	S	1.7	I	S	2.5	I	S	2.5	I	S	3.5

	ON GRADE			20FT FLOOR SPAN			30FT FLOOR SPAN			40FT FLOOR SPAN			50FT FLOOR SPAN		
EQUIPMENT	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL	BASE TYPE	ISOL TYPE	MIN DEFL
COOLING TOWERS															
UP TO 300 RPM	---	D	0.3	---	SP	3.5	---	SP	3.5	---	SP	3.5	---	SP	4.5
301 TO 500 RPM	---	D	0.3	---	SP	2.5	---	SP	2.5	---	SP	2.5	---	SP	3.5
501 RPM & OVER	---	D	0.3	---	SP	1.0	---	SP	1.0	---	SP	1.7	---	SP	2.5

NOTES:

1. Edit the Table above to suit where isolator, other than those shown, are used, such as for seismic restraints and position limit stops.
2. For suspended floors lighter than 100 mm (4 inch) thick concrete, select deflection requirements from next higher span.
3. For separate chiller building on grade, pump isolators may be omitted.
4. Direct bolt fire pumps to concrete base. Provide pads (D) for domestic water booster pump package.
5. For projects in seismic areas, use only SS & DS type isolators and snubbers.
6. For floor mounted in-line centrifugal blowers (ARR 1): use "B" type in lieu of "R" type base.
7. Suspended: Use "H" isolators of same deflection as floor mounted.

SECTION 15250
INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Field applied insulation for thermal efficiency and condensation control for
 - 1. HVAC piping, ductwork and equipment.
 - 2. Plumbing piping and equipment.
- B. Definitions
 - 1. ASJ: All service jacket, white finish facing or jacket.
 - 2. Air conditioned space: Space having air temperature and/or humidity controlled by mechanical equipment.
 - 3. Cold: Equipment, ductwork or piping handling media at design temperature of 16 degrees C (60 degrees F) or below.
 - 4. Exposed: Piping, ductwork, and equipment exposed to view in finished areas including mechanical, and electrical equipment rooms or exposed to outdoor weather.
 - 5. FSK: Foil-scrim-kraft facing.
 - 6. Hot: HVAC Ductwork handling air at design temperature above 16 degrees C (60 degrees F);HVAC and plumbing equipment or piping handling media above 41 degrees C (105 degrees F)and piping media and equipment 32 to 230 degrees C(90 to 450 degrees F)
 - 7. Density: kg/m^3 - kilograms per cubic meter (Pcf - pounds per cubic foot).
 - 8. Runouts: Branch pipe connections up to 25-mm (one-inch) nominal size to fan coil units.
 - 9. Thermal conductance: Heat flow rate through materials.
 - a. Flat surface: Watt per square meter (BTU per hour per square foot).
 - b. Pipe or Cylinder: Watt per square meter (BTU per hour per linear foot).
 - 10. Thermal Conductivity (k): Watt per meter, per degree C (BTU per inch thickness, per hour, per square foot, per degree F temperature difference).
 - 11. HS: Hot water heating supply.
 - 12. HR: Hot water heating return.
 - 13. FOS: Fuel oil supply.

- 14. FOR: Fuel oil return.
- 15. CW: Cold water.
- 16. SW: Soft cold water.
- 17. CHS: Chilled water supply.
- 18. CHR: Chilled water return.
- 19. PVDC: Polyvinylidene chloride vapor retarder jacketing, white.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS: Mineral fiber and bond breaker behind sealant.
- B. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL): General mechanical requirements and items, which are common to more than one section of Division 15.
- C. Section 15400, PLUMBING SYSTEMS: Hot and cold water piping.
- D. Section 15650, REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT (HVAC): Compressor, evaporator and piping.
- E. Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS: Piping and equipment.
- F. Section 15840, DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES: Ductwork, plenum and fittings.
- G. Section 16208, ENGINE GENERATORS: Exhaust stacks and muffler.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to article QUALITY ASSURANCE, in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Criteria:

- 1. Comply with NFPA 90A, particularly paragraphs 4.3.3.1 through 4.3.3.6, 4.3.10.2.6, and 5.4.6.4, parts of which are quoted as follows:

4.3.3.1 Pipe insulation and coverings, duct coverings, duct linings, vapor retarder facings, adhesives, fasteners, tapes, and supplementary materials added to air ducts, plenums, panels, and duct silencers used in duct systems, unless otherwise provided for in 4.3.3.1.2 or 4.3.3.1.3, shall have, in the form in which they are used, a maximum flame spread index of 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with NFPA 255, Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

4.3.3.1.1 Where these products are to be applied with adhesives, they shall be tested with such adhesives applied, or the adhesives used shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when in the final dry state. (See 4.2.4.2.)

4.3.3.1.2 The flame spread and smoke developed index requirements of 4.3.3.1.1 shall not apply to air duct weatherproof coverings

where they are located entirely outside of a building, do not penetrate a wall or roof, and do not create an exposure hazard.

4.3.3.1.3 Smoke detectors required by 6.4.4 shall not be required to meet flame spread index or smoke developed index requirements.

4.3.3.2 Closure systems for use with rigid and flexible air ducts tested in accordance with UL 181, Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors, shall have been tested, listed, and used in accordance with the conditions of their listings, in accordance with one of the following:

(1) UL 181A, Standard for Safety Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors

(2) UL 181B, Standard for Safety Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors

4.3.3.3 Air duct, panel, and plenum coverings and linings, and pipe insulation and coverings shall not flame, glow, smolder, or smoke when tested in accordance with a similar test for pipe covering, ASTM C 411, Standard Test Method for Hot-Surface Performance of High-Temperature Thermal Insulation, at the temperature to which they are exposed in service.

4.3.3.3.1 In no case shall the test temperature be below 121°C (250°F).

4.3.3.4 Air duct coverings shall not extend through walls or floors that are required to be fire stopped or required to have a fire resistance rating, unless such coverings meet the requirements of 5.4.6.4.

4.3.3.5* Air duct linings shall be interrupted at fire dampers to prevent interference with the operation of devices.

4.3.3.6 Air duct coverings shall not be installed so as to conceal or prevent the use of any service opening.

4.3.10.2.6 Materials exposed to the airflow shall be noncombustible or limited combustible and have a maximum smoke developed index of 50 or comply with the following.

4.3.10.2.6.1 Electrical wires and cables and optical fiber cables shall be listed as noncombustible or limited combustible and have a maximum smoke developed index of 50 or shall be listed as having a maximum peak optical density of 0.5 or less, an average optical density of 0.15 or less, and a maximum flame spread distance of 1.5 m (5 ft) or less when tested in accordance with NFPA 262, Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air-Handling Spaces.

4.3.10.2.6.3 Nonferrous fire sprinkler piping shall be listed as having a maximum peak optical density of 0.5 or less, an average optical density of 0.15 or less, and a maximum flame spread distance of 1.5 m (5 ft) or less when tested in accordance with UL 1887, Standard for Safety Fire Test of Plastic Sprinkler Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics.

4.3.10.2.6.4 Optical-fiber and communication raceways shall be listed as having a maximum peak optical density of 0.5 or less, an average optical density of 0.15 or less, and a maximum flame

spread distance of 1.5 m (5 ft) or less when tested in accordance with UL 2024, Standard for Safety Optical-Fiber Cable Raceway.

4.3.10.2.6.5 Loudspeakers and recessed lighting fixtures, including their assemblies and accessories, shall be permitted in the ceiling cavity plenum where listed as having a maximum peak optical density of 0.5 or less, an average optical density of 0.15 or less, and a peak heat release rate of 100 kW or less when tested in accordance with UL 2043, Standard for Safety Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and Their Accessories Installed in Air-Handling Spaces.

4.3.10.2.6.6 Supplementary materials for air distribution systems shall be permitted when complying with the provisions of 4.3.3.

4.3.10.2.6.7 Smoke detectors shall not be required to meet the provisions of this section.

2. Test methods: ASTM E84, UL 723, or NFPA 255.

3. Specified k factors are at 24 degrees C (75 degrees F) mean temperature unless stated otherwise. Where optional thermal insulation material is used, select thickness to provide thermal conductance no greater than that for the specified material. For pipe, use insulation manufacturer's published heat flow tables.

4. All materials shall be compatible and suitable for service temperature, and shall not contribute to corrosion or otherwise attack surface to which applied in either the wet or dry state.

C. Every package or standard container of insulation or accessories delivered to the job site for use must have a manufacturer's stamp or label giving the name of the manufacturer and description of the material.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLE AND SHOP DRAWINGS

B. Shop Drawings:

1. All information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications and ASTM, federal and military specifications.

a. Insulation materials: Specify each type used and state surface burning characteristics.

b. Insulation facings and jackets: Each type used. Make it clear that white finish will be furnished for exposed ductwork, casings and equipment.

c. Insulation accessory materials: Each type used.

d. Manufacturer's installation and fitting fabrication instructions for flexible unicellular insulation.

- e. Make reference to applicable specification paragraph numbers for coordination.

C. Samples:

1. Each type of insulation: Minimum size 100 mm (4 inches) square for board/block/ blanket; 150 mm (6 inches) long, full diameter for round types.
2. Each type of facing and jacket: Minimum size 100 mm (4 inches square).
3. Each accessory material: Minimum 120 ML (4 ounce) liquid container or 120 gram (4 ounce) dry weight for adhesives / cement / mastic.

1.5 STORAGE AND HANDLING OF MATERIAL

Store materials in clean and dry environment, pipe covering jackets shall be clean and unmarred. Place adhesives in original containers. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions as required by printed instructions of manufacturers of adhesives, mastics and finishing cements.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
L-P-535E (2)-91.....Plastic Sheet (Sheeting): Plastic Strip; Poly (Vinyl Chloride) and Poly (Vinyl Chloride - Vinyl Acetate), Rigid.
- C. Military Specifications (Mil. Spec.):
MIL-A-3316C (2)-90.....Adhesives, Fire-Resistant, Thermal Insulation
MIL-A-24179A (1)-87.....Adhesive, Flexible Unicellular-Plastic Thermal Insulation
MIL-C-19565C (1)-88.....Coating Compounds, Thermal Insulation, Fire-and Water-Resistant, Vapor-Barrier
MIL-C-20079H-87.....Cloth, Glass; Tape, Textile Glass; and Thread, Glass and Wire-Reinforced Glass
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A167-99.....Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
B209-04.....Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

- C411-97.....Standard test method for Hot-Surface
Performance of High-Temperature Thermal
Insulation
- C449-00.....Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber
Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and
Finishing Cement
- C533-04.....Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate
Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation
- C534-05.....Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible
Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in
Sheet and Tubular Form
- C547-06.....Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber pipe
Insulation
- C552-03.....Standard Specification for Cellular Glass
Thermal Insulation
- C553-02.....Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber
Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and
Industrial Applications
- C585-90.....Standard Practice for Inner and Outer Diameters
of Rigid Thermal Insulation for Nominal Sizes
of Pipe and Tubing (NPS System) R (1998)
- C612-04.....Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block
and Board Thermal Insulation
- C1126-04.....Standard Specification for Faced or Unfaced
Rigid Cellular Phenolic Thermal Insulation
- C1136-06.....Standard Specification for Flexible, Low
Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal
Insulation
- D1668-97a (2006).....Standard Specification for Glass Fabrics (Woven
and Treated) for Roofing and Waterproofing
- E84-06.....Standard Test Method for Surface Burning
Characteristics of Building
Materials
- E119-05a.....Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Building
Construction and Materials
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- 90A-02.....Installation of Air Conditioning and
Ventilating Systems

- 96-04.....Standards for Ventilation Control and Fire
Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations
- 101-06.....Life Safety Code
- 251-06.....Standard methods of Tests of Fire Endurance of
Building Construction Materials
- 255-06.....Standard Method of tests of Surface Burning
Characteristics of Building Materials

F. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc (UL):

- 723.....UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning
Characteristics of Building Materials with
Revision of 08/03

G. Manufacturer's Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting
Industry (MSS):

- SP58-2002.....Pipe Hangers and Supports Materials, Design,
and Manufacture

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MINERAL FIBER

- A. ASTM C612 (Board, Block), Class 1 or 2, $k = 0.037$ Watt per meter, per
degree C (0.26), external insulation for temperatures up to 204 degrees
C (400 degrees F).
- B. ASTM C553 (Blanket, Flexible) Type I, Class B-5, Density 32 kg/m^3 (2
pcf), $k = 0.04$ (0.27), for use at temperatures up to 204 degrees C (400
degrees F)
- C. ASTM C547 (Pipe Fitting Insulation and Preformed Pipe Insulation),
Class 1, $k = 0.037$ (0.26) for use at temperatures 230 degrees C (450
degrees F).

2.2 MINERAL WOOL OR REFRACTORY FIBER

- A. Comply with Standard ASTM C612, Class 3, 450 degrees C (850 degrees F).

2.3 RIGID CELLULAR PHENOLIC FOAM

- A. Preformed (molded) pipe insulation, ASTM C1126, type III, grade 1, $k =$
 $0.021(0.15)$, for temperatures up to 121 degrees C (250 degrees F) with
vapor retarder and all service jacket with polyvinyl chloride premolded
fitting covering.
- B. Equipment and Duct Insulation, ASTM C 1126, type II, grade 1, $k = 0.021$
(0.15), for temperatures up to 121 degrees C (250 degrees F) with rigid
cellular phenolic insulation and covering, vapor retarder and all
service jacket.

2.4 CELLULAR GLASS CLOSED-CELL

- A. Comply with Standard ASTM C177, C518, density 120 kg/m³ (7.5 pcf) nominal, k = 0.033 (0.29) at 24 degrees C (75 degrees F).
- B. Pipe insulation for temperatures up to 200 degrees C (400 degrees F).

2.5 POLYISOCYANURATE CLOSED-CELL RIGID

- A. Preformed (fabricated) pipe insulation, ASTM C591, type IV, K=0.027(0.19), for use at temperatures up to 149 degree C (300 degree F) with factory applied PVDC or all service jacket vapor retarder with polyvinyl chloride premolded fitting covers.
- B. Equipment and duct insulation, ASTM C 591,type IV, K=0.027(0.19), for use at temperatures up to 149 degrees C (300 degrees F) with PVDC or all service jacket vapor retarder jacket.

2.6 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR THERMAL

- A. ASTM C177, C518, k = 0.039 Watt per meter, per degree C (0.27), at 24 degrees C (75 degrees F), flame spread not over 25, smoke developed not over 50, for temperatures from minus 4 degrees C (25 degrees F) to 93 degrees C (200 degrees F). No jacket required.

2.7 INSULATION FACINGS AND JACKETS

- A. Vapor Retarder, higher strength with low water permeance \leq 0.02 or less perm rating, Beach puncture 50 units for insulation facing on exposed ductwork, casings and equipment, and for pipe insulation jackets. Facings and jackets shall be all service type (ASJ) or PVDC Vapor Retarder jacketing.
- B. ASJ jacket shall be white kraft bonded to 0.025 mm (1 mil) thick aluminum foil, fiberglass reinforced, with pressure sensitive adhesive closure. Comply with ASTM C1136. Beach puncture 5 units, Suitable for painting without sizing. Jackets shall have minimum 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) lap on longitudinal joints and minimum 100 mm (4 inch) butt strip on end joints. Butt strip material shall be same as the jacket. Lap and butt strips shall be self-sealing type with factory-applied pressure sensitive adhesive.
- C. Vapor Retarder medium strength with low water vapor permeance of 0.02 or less perm rating), Beach puncture 25 units: Foil-Scrim-Kraft (FSK) or PVDC vapor retarder jacketing type for concealed ductwork and equipment.
- D. Glass Cloth Jackets: Presized, minimum 0.18 kg per square meter (7.8 ounces per square yard), 2000 kPa (300 psig) bursting strength with

integral vapor retarder where required or specified. Weather proof if utilized for outside service.

- E. Factory composite materials may be used provided that they have been tested and certified by the manufacturer.
- F. Pipe fitting insulation covering (jackets): Fitting covering shall be premolded to match shape of fitting and shall be polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conforming to Fed Spec L-P-335, composition A, Type II Grade GU, and Type III, minimum thickness 0.7 mm (0.03 inches). Provide color matching vapor retarder pressure sensitive tape.
- G. Aluminum Jacket-Piping systems and circular breeching and stacks: ASTM B209, 3003 alloy, H-14 temper, 0.6 mm (0.023 inch) minimum thickness with locking longitudinal joints. Jackets for elbows, tees and other fittings shall be factory-fabricated to match shape of fitting and of 0.6 mm (0.024) inch minimum thickness aluminum. Fittings shall be of same construction as straight run jackets but need not be of the same alloy. Factory-fabricated stainless steel bands shall be installed on all circumferential joints. Bands shall be 20 mm (0.75 inch) wide on 450 mm (18 inch) centers. System shall be weatherproof if utilized for outside service.
- H. Aluminum jacket-Rectangular breeching: ASTM B209, 3003 alloy, H-14 temper, 0.5 mm (0.020 inches) thick with 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) corrugations or 0.8 mm (0.032 inches) thick with no corrugations. System shall be weatherproof if used for outside service.

2.8 PIPE COVERING PROTECTION SADDLES

- A. Cold pipe support: Premolded pipe insulation 180 degrees (half-shells) on bottom half of pipe at supports. Material shall be cellular glass or high density Polyisocyanurate insulation of the same thickness as adjacent insulation. Density of Polyisocyanurate insulation shall be a minimum of 48 kg/m³ (3.0 pcf).

Nominal Pipe Size and Accessories Material (Insert Blocks)	
Nominal Pipe Size mm (inches)	Insert Blocks mm (inches)
Up through 125 (5)	150 (6) long
150 (6)	150 (6) long
200 (8), 250 (10), 300 (12)	225 (9) long
350 (14), 400 (16)	300 (12) long
450 through 600 (18 through 24)	350 (14) long

- B. Warm or hot pipe supports: Premolded pipe insulation (180 degree half-shells) on bottom half of pipe at supports. Material shall be high density Polyisocyanurate (for temperatures up to 149 degrees C [300 degrees F]), cellular glass or calcium silicate. Insulation at supports shall have same thickness as adjacent insulation. Density of Polyisocyanurate insulation shall be a minimum of 48 kg/m³ (3.0 pcf).

2.9 ADHESIVE, MASTIC, CEMENT

- A. Mil. Spec. MIL-A-3316, Class 1: Jacket and lap adhesive and protective finish coating for insulation.
- B. Mil. Spec. MIL-A-3316, Class 2: Adhesive for laps and for adhering insulation to metal surfaces.
- C. Mil. Spec. MIL-A-24179, Type II Class 1: Adhesive for installing flexible unicellular insulation and for laps and general use.
- D. Mil. Spec. MIL-C-19565, Type I: Protective finish for outdoor use.
- E. Mil. Spec. MIL-C-19565, Type I or Type II: Vapor barrier compound for indoor use.
- F. ASTM C449: Mineral fiber hydraulic-setting thermal insulating and finishing cement.
- G. Other: Insulation manufacturers' published recommendations.

2.10 MECHANICAL FASTENERS

- A. Pins, anchors: Welded pins, or metal or nylon anchors with tin-coated or fiber washer, or clips. Pin diameter shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer.
- B. Staples: Outward clinching monel or stainless steel.
- C. Wire: 1.3 mm thick (18 gage) soft annealed galvanized or 1.9 mm (14 gage) copper clad steel or nickel copper alloy.
- D. Bands: 20 mm (3/4 inch) nominal width, brass, galvanized steel, aluminum or stainless steel.

2.11 REINFORCEMENT AND FINISHES

- A. Glass fabric, open weave: ASTM D1668, Type III (resin treated) and Type I (asphalt treated).
- B. Glass fiber fitting tape: Mil. Spec MIL-C-20079, Type II, Class 1.
- C. Tape for Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation: As recommended by the insulation manufacturer.
- D. Hexagonal wire netting: 25 mm (one inch) mesh, 0.85 mm thick (22 gage) galvanized steel.
- E. Corner beads: 50 mm (2 inch) by 50 mm (2 inch), 0.55 mm thick (26 gage) galvanized steel; or, 25 mm (1 inch) by 25 mm (1 inch), 0.47 mm thick

(28 gage) aluminum angle adhered to 50 mm (2 inch) by 50 mm (2 inch) Kraft paper.

- F. PVC fitting cover: Fed. Spec L-P-535, Composition A, 11-86 Type II, Grade GU, with Form B Mineral Fiber insert, for media temperature 4 degrees C (40 degrees F) to 121 degrees C (250 degrees F). Below 4 degrees C (40 degrees F) and above 121 degrees C (250 degrees F). Provide double layer insert. Provide color matching vapor barrier pressure sensitive tape.

2.12 FIRESTOPPING MATERIAL

Other than pipe and duct insulation, refer to Section 07270
FIRESTOPPING.

2.13 FLAME AND SMOKE

Unless shown otherwise all assembled systems shall meet flame spread 25 and smoke developed 50 rating as developed under ASTM, NFPA and UL standards and specifications. See paragraph 1.3 "Quality Assurance".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Required pressure tests of duct and piping joints and connections shall be completed and the work approved by the Resident Engineer for application of insulation. Surface shall be clean and dry with all foreign materials, such as dirt, oil, loose scale and rust removed.
- B. Except for specific exceptions, insulate entire specified equipment, piping (pipe, fittings, valves, accessories), and duct systems. Insulate each pipe and duct individually. Do not use scrap pieces of insulation where a full length section will fit.
- C. Where removal of insulation of piping, ductwork and equipment is required to comply with Sections 01569 and 01570, Asbestos Abatement, such areas shall be reinsulated to comply with this specification.
- D. Insulation materials shall be installed in a first class manner with smooth and even surfaces, with jackets and facings drawn tight and smoothly cemented down at all laps. Insulation shall be continuous through all sleeves and openings, except at fire dampers and duct heaters (NFPA 90A). Vapor retarders shall be continuous and uninterrupted throughout systems with operating temperature 16 degrees C (60 degrees F) and below. Lap and seal vapor barrier over ends and exposed edges of insulation. Anchors, supports and other metal projections through insulation on cold surfaces shall be insulated and vapor sealed for a minimum length of 150 mm (6 inches).

- E. Install vapor stops at all insulation terminations on either side of valves, pumps and equipment and particularly in straight lengths of pipe insulation.
- F. Construct insulation on parts of equipment such as chilled water pumps and heads of chillers, convertors and heat exchangers that must be opened periodically for maintenance or repair, so insulation can be removed and replaced without damage. Install insulation with bolted 1 mm thick (20 gage) galvanized steel or aluminum covers as complete units, or in sections, with all necessary supports, and split to coincide with flange/split of the equipment.
- G. Insulation on hot piping and equipment shall be terminated square at items not to be insulated, access openings and nameplates. Cover all exposed raw insulation with white sealer or jacket material.
- H. Protect all insulations outside of buildings with aluminum jacket using lock joint or other approved system for a continuous weather tight system. Access doors and other items requiring maintenance or access shall be removable and sealable.
- I. HVAC work not to be insulated:
 - 1. Internally insulated ductwork and air handling units.
 - 2. Relief air ducts (Economizer cycle exhaust air).
 - 3. Exhaust air ducts and plenums, and ventilation exhaust air shafts.
 - 4. Equipment: Expansion tanks.
- J. Plumbing work not to be insulated:
 - 1. Piping and valves of fire protection system.
 - 2. Water piping in contact with earth.
 - 3. Small horizontal cold water branch runs in partitions to individual fixtures may be without insulation for maximum distance of 900 mm (3 feet).
 - 3. Equipment:
 - a. Pumps-inlet to outlet
 - b. Safety valves
 - c. All nameplates
 - 4. Specialties:
 - a. Pressure reducing valves
 - b. Control valves-water
 - c. Level sensors-piping, valves and blowdown
 - d. Strainers under 65 mm (2-1/2 inch) pipe size
 - e. Expansion bellows

- f. Flexible connectors
- g. Ball joints except piping between joints
- L. Apply insulation materials subject to the manufacturer's recommended temperature limits. Apply adhesives, mastic and coatings at the manufacturer's recommended minimum coverage.
- M. Elbows, flanges and other fittings shall be insulated with the same material as is used on the pipe straights. The elbow/ fitting insulation shall be field-fabricated, mitered or factory prefabricated to the necessary size and shape to fit on the elbow/ fitting. Use of polyurethane spray-foam to fill a PVC elbow jacket is prohibited on cold applications.
- N. Firestop Pipe and Duct insulation:
 - 1. Provide firestopping insulation at fire and smoke barriers through penetrations. Fire stopping insulation shall be UL listed as defines in Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING.
 - 2. Pipe and duct penetrations requiring fire stop insulation including, but not limited to the following:
 - a. Pipe risers through floors
 - b. Pipe or duct chase walls and floors
 - c. Smoke partitions
 - d. Fire partitions
- O. Freeze protection of above grade outdoor piping (over heat tracing tape): 20 mm (0.75) thick insulation, for all pipe sizes 75 mm(3 inches) and smaller and 25 mm(1inch) thick insulation for larger pipes. Provide metal jackets for all pipes. Provide for cold water make-up to cooling towers and condenser water piping and chilled water piping as described in Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS (electrical heat tracing systems).
- P. Provide metal jackets over insulation as follows:
 - a. All piping and ducts exposed to outdoor weather.

3.2 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Mineral Fiber Board:
 - 1. Faced board: Apply board on pins spaced not more than 300 mm (12 inches) on center each way, and not less than 75 mm (3 inches) from each edge of board. In addition to pins, apply insulation bonding adhesive to entire underside of horizontal metal surfaces. Butt insulation edges tightly and seal all joints with laps and butt

strips. After applying speed clips cut pins off flush and apply vapor seal patches over clips.

2. Plain board:

- a. Insulation shall be scored, beveled or mitered to provide tight joints and be secured to equipment with bands spaced 225 mm (9 inches) on center for irregular surfaces or with pins and clips on flat surfaces. Use corner beads to protect edges of insulation.
- b. For hot equipment: Stretch 25 mm (1 inch) mesh wire, with edges wire laced together, over insulation and finish with insulating and finishing cement applied in one coat, 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick, trowel led to a smooth finish.
- c. For cold equipment: Apply meshed glass fabric in a tack coat 1.5 to 1.7 square meter per liter (60 to 70 square feet per gallon) of vapor mastic and finish with mastic at 0.3 to 0.4 square meter per liter (12 to 15 square feet per gallon) over the entire fabric surface.
- d. Chilled water pumps: Insulate with removable and replaceable 1 mm thick (20 gage) aluminum or galvanized steel covers lined with insulation. Seal closure joints/flanges of covers with gasket material. Fill void space in enclosure with flexible mineral fiber insulation.

3. Exposed, unlined ductwork and equipment in unfinished areas, mechanical and electrical equipment rooms and attics, and duct work exposed to outdoor weather:

- a. 50 mm (2 inch) thick insulation faced with ASJ (white all service jacket): Supply air duct.
- b. Outside air intake ducts: 25 mm (one inch) thick insulation faced with ASJ.

4. Cold equipment: 40 mm (1-1/2inch) thick insulation faced with ASJ.

- a. Chilled water pumps.

B. Flexible Mineral Fiber Blanket:

1. Adhere insulation to metal with 100 mm (4 inch) wide strips of insulation bonding adhesive at 200 mm (8 inches) on center all around duct. Additionally secure insulation to bottom of ducts exceeding 600 mm (24 inches) in width with pins welded or adhered on 450 mm (18 inch) centers. Secure washers on pins. Butt insulation

- edges and seal joints with laps and butt strips. Staples may be used to assist in securing insulation. Seal all vapor retarder penetrations with mastic. Sagging duct insulation will not be acceptable. Install firestop duct insulation where required.
2. Supply air ductwork to be insulated includes main and branch ducts from AHU discharge to room supply outlets, and the bodies of ceiling outlets to prevent condensation. Insulate coil casings and damper frames. To prevent condensation insulate trapeze type supports and angle iron hangers for flat oval ducts that are in direct contact with metal duct.
 3. Concealed supply air ductwork.
 - a. Above ceilings at a roof level: 50 mm (2 inch) thick insulation faced with FSK.
 - b. Above ceilings for other than roof level: 40 mm (1 ½ inch) thick insulation faced with FSK.
- C. Molded Mineral Fiber Pipe and Tubing Covering:
1. Fit insulation to pipe or duct, aligning longitudinal joints. Seal longitudinal joint laps and circumferential butt strips by rubbing hard with a nylon sealing tool to assure a positive seal. Staples may be used to assist in securing insulation. Seal all vapor retarder penetrations on cold piping with a generous application of vapor barrier mastic. Provide inserts and install with metal insulation shields at outside pipe supports. Install freeze protection insulation over heating cable.
 2. Contractor's options for fitting, flange and valve insulation:
 - a. Insulating and finishing cement for sizes less than 100 mm (4 inches) operating at surface temperature of 16 degrees C (61 degrees F) or more.
 - b. Factory premolded, one piece PVC covers with mineral fiber, (Form B), inserts. Provide two insert layers for pipe temperatures below 4 degrees C (40 degrees F), or above 121 degrees C (250 degrees F). Secure first layer of insulation with twine. Seal seam edges with vapor barrier mastic and secure with fitting tape.
 - c. Factory molded, ASTM C547 or field mitered sections, joined with adhesive or wired in place. For hot piping finish with a smoothing coat of finishing cement. For cold fittings, 16 degrees C (60 degrees F) or less, vapor seal with a layer of glass

fitting tape imbedded between two 2 mm (1/16 inch) coats of vapor barrier mastic.

- d. Fitting tape shall extend over the adjacent pipe insulation and overlap on itself at least 50 mm (2 inches).
3. Nominal thickness in millimeters and inches specified in table below, for piping above ground:

Nominal Thickness of Molded Mineral Fiber Insulation				
Nominal Pipe Size millimeters (inches):	25 (1) & below	32-75 (1 1/4-3)	100-150 (4-6)	200 (8)and above
d. Domestic hot water supply and return	15 (0.5)	25 (0.75)	25 (1.0)	40 (1.5)

D. Rigid Cellular Phenolic Foam:

1. Rigid closed cell phenolic insulation may be provided for piping, ductwork and equipment for temperatures up to 121 degrees C (250 degrees F).
2. Note the NFPA 90A burning characteristics requirements of 25/50 in paragraph 1.3.B
3. Provide secure attachment facilities such as welding pins.
4. Apply insulation with joints tightly drawn together
5. Apply adhesives, coverings, neatly finished at fittings, and valves.
6. Final installation shall be smooth, tight, neatly finished at all edges.
7. Minimum thickness in millimeters (inches) specified in table below, for piping above ground:

Nominal Thickness of Rigid Closed-Cell Phenolic Foam Insulation					
Nominal Pipe Size millimeters (inches):	25 (1) & below	32-75 (1 1/4-3)	100-150 (4-6)	200-300 (8-12)	350 (14) & above
a. Run outs to Fan Coil units.	15 (0.5)	--	--	--	--
3. 4-16 degrees C (40-60 degrees F), CHS, CHR, GC, and GCR.	20 (0.75)	20 (0.75)	25 (1)	40 (1.5)	50 (2.0)

Nominal Thickness of Rigid Closed-Cell Phenolic Foam Insulation					
Nominal Pipe Size millimeters (inches):	25 (1) & below	32-75 (1 1/4-3)	100-150 (4-6)	200-300 (8-12)	350 (14) & above
a. Run outs to Fan Coil Units.	15 (0.5)	--	--	--	--

8. Condensation control insulation: Minimum 20 mm (0.75 inch) thick for all pipe sizes.

a. HVAC: Cooling coil condensation piping to waste piping fixture or drain inlet. Omit insulation on plastic piping in mechanical rooms.

b. Plumbing piping as follows:

- 1) Body of roof and overflow drains horizontal runs and offsets (including elbows) of interior downspout piping in all areas above pipe basement.
- 2) Waste piping located above basement floor from air handling units, from fixture (including trap) to main vertical waste pipe.

E. Cellular Glass Insulation:

1. Pipe and tubing, covering nominal thickness in millimeters and inches as tabulated below for chilled water and refrigerant piping.

Nominal Thickness of Cellular Glass Insulation				
Millimeters (inches)	Thru 38 (1 1/2)	50- 150 (2-6)	200-300 (8-12)	over 350 (14)
1. 4-16 degrees C (40-60 degrees F) (CHS and CHR within chiller room and pipe chase and underground)	50 (2.0)	80 (3.0)	80 (3.0)	100 (4.0)
2. 4-16 degrees C (40-60 degrees F) (CHS and CHR outside chiller room)	40 (1.5)	50 (2.0)	50 (2.0)	65 (2.5)

2. Cold equipment: 50 mm (2 inch) thick insulation faced with ASJ for chilled water pumps.

F. Polyisocyanurate Closed-Cell Rigid Insulation:

1. Polyisocyanurate closed-cell rigid insulation (PIR) may be provided for piping, equipment and ductwork for temperature up to 149 degree C (300 degree F) provided insulation thickness requirement does not exceed 38 mm (1.5 inches).

2. Install insulation, vapor retarder and jacketing per manufacturer's recommendations. Particular attention should be paid to recommendations for joint staggering, adhesive application, external hanger design, expansion/contraction joint design and spacing and vapor retarder integrity.
3. Install insulation with all joints tightly butted (except expansion joints in hot applications).
4. If insulation thickness exceeds 63 mm (2.5 inches), install as a double layer system with longitudinal (lap) and butt joint staggering as recommended by manufacturer.
5. For cold applications, vapor retarder shall be installed in a continuous manner. No staples, rivets, screws or any other attachment device capable of penetrating the vapor retarder shall be used to attach the vapor retarder or jacketing. No wire ties capable of penetrating the vapor retarder shall be used to hold the insulation in place. Banding shall be used to attach PVC or metal jacketing.
6. Elbows, flanges and other fittings shall be insulated with the same material as is used on the pipe straights. The elbow/ fitting insulation shall be field-fabricated, mitered or factory prefabricated to the necessary size and shape to fit on the elbow/ fitting. Use of polyurethane spray-foam to fill PVC elbow jacket is prohibited on cold applications.
7. For cold applications, the vapor retarder on elbows/fittings shall be either mastic-fabric-mastic or 2 mil thick PVDC vapor retarder adhesive tape.
8. All PVC and metal jacketing shall be installed so as to naturally shed water. Joints shall point down and shall be sealed with either adhesive or caulking (except for periodic slip joints).
9. Underground piping: Follow instructions for above ground piping but the vapor retarder jacketing shall be 6 mil thick PVDC or minimum 30 mil thick rubberized bituminous membrane. Sand bed and backfill shall be a minimum of 150 mm (6 inches) all around insulated pipe.
10. Note the NFPA 90A burning characteristic requirements of 25/50 in paragraph 1.3B. Refer to paragraph 3.1 for items not to be insulated.
11. Minimum thickness in millimeter (inches) specified in table below, for piping:

Nominal Thickness of Polyisocyanurate Rigid Insulation				
4. 4-16 degrees C (40-60 degrees F), CHS, CHR, GC and GCR for relative humidity up to 80 percent or underground location	25 (1.00)	25 (1.0)	40 (1.50)	40 (1.5)
a. Run outs to fan coil units	20 (0.75)	25 (1.)	--	--
	25 (1.00)	25 (1.0)	40 (1.5)	--
5. 4-16 degrees C (40-60 degrees F) CHS, CHR, GC and GCR for relative humidity 80 to 90 percent or higher	40 (1.50)	40 (1.5)	40 (1.5)	40 (1.5)
a. Run out to fan coils units	40 (1.5)	40 (1.5)	--	--
	40 (1.5)	40 (1.5)	40 (1.5)	--

12. Condensation control insulation: Minimum 20 mm (0.75 inch) thick for all pipe sizes.

a. HVAC: Cooling coil condensation piping to waste piping fixture or drain inlet. Omit insulation on plastic piping in mechanical rooms.

b. Plumbing piping as follows:

- 1) Body of roof and overflow drains and horizontal runs and offsets (including elbows) of interior downspout piping in all areas above pipe basement.
- 2) Waste piping from electric water coolers to drainage system.
- 3) Waste piping located above basement floor from air handling units, from fixture (including trap) to main vertical waste pipe.

G. Calcium Silicate:

1. Engine Exhaust Insulation for Emergency Generator: Type II, Class D, 65 mm (2 1/2 inch) nominal thickness. Cover exhaust completely from engine through roof or wall construction, including muffler. Secure with 16 AWG galvanized annealed wire or 0.38 x 12 mm 0.015 x 1/2 IN

wide galvanized bands on 300 mm 12 IN maximum centers. Anchor wire and bands to welded pins, clips or angles. Apply 25 mm 1 IN hex galvanized wire over insulation. Fill voids with 6 mm 1/4 IN insulating cement.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 15400
PLUMBING SYSTEMS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

Domestic water and sewer systems, including piping, equipment and all necessary accessories as designated in this section.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Penetrations in rated enclosures: Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING.
- B. Preparation and finish painting and identification of piping systems: Section 09900, PAINTING.
- C. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- D. Pipe Insulation: Section 15250, INSULATION.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Piping.
 - 2. Valves.
 - 3. Floor Sinks.
 - 4. Roof Drains.
 - 5. Cleanouts.
 - 6. All items listed in Part 2 - Products.
- C. Detailed shop drawing of clamping device and extensions when required in connection with the waterproofing membrane or the floor drain.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
 - L-T-1512A.....Tape, Pressure Sensitive Adhesive, Pipe Wrapping
 - A-A-1427C.....Sodium Hypochlorite Solution
 - A-A-59617.....Unions, Brass or Bronze Threaded, Pipe Connections and Solder-Joint Tube Connections
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME): (Copyrighted Society)
 - A112.1.1M-91.....Floor Drains ANSI/ASME
 - A13.1-96.....Scheme for Identification of Piping Systems
 - B16.3-98.....Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings ANSI/ASME

- B16.4-98.....Cast Iron Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ANSI/ASME
- B16.9-01.....Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
ANSI/ASME
- B16.11-01.....Forged Steel Fittings, Socket-Welding and
Threaded ANSI/ASME
- B16.12-98.....Cast Iron Threaded Drainage Fittings ANSI/ASME
- B16.15-85(R 1994).....Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings ANSI/ASME
- B16.18-01.....Cast Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure
Fittings ANSI/ASME
- B16.22-01.....Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint
Pressure Fittings ANSI/ASME
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A47-99.....Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings Revision 1989
- A53-02.....Pipe, Steel, Black And Hot-Dipped, Zinc-coated
Welded and Seamless
- A74-03.....Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
- A183-83(R1998).....Carbon Steel Track Bolts and Nuts
- A312-03.....Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel
Pipe
- A536-84(R1999) E1.....Ductile Iron Castings
- A733-03.....Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic
Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples
- B32-03.....Solder Metal
- B62-02.....Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
- B75-99(Rev A).....Seamless Copper Tube
- B88-03.....Seamless Copper Water Tube
- B306-02.....Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
- B584-00.....Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General
Applications Revision A
- B687-99.....Brass, Copper, and Chromium-Plated Pipe Nipples
- C564-03.....Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and
Fittings
- D2000-01.....Rubber Products in Automotive Applications
- D4101-03b.....Propylene Plastic Injection and Extrusion
Materials
- D2447-93.....Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Schedule 40 and
80, Based on Outside Diameter

- D2564-94.....Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC)
Plastic Pipe and Fittings
- D2665-94 Revision A.....Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain,
Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
- D4101-03b.....Propylene Plastic Injection and Extrusion
Materials
- E1120.....Standard Specification For Liquid Chlorine
- E1229.....Standard Specification For Calcium Hypochlorite
- E. American Water Works Association (AWWA):
 - C110-03/ A21.10-03.....Ductile Iron and Gray Iron Fittings - 75 mm
thru 1200 mm (3 inch thru 48 inches) for Water
and other liquids AWWA/ ANSI
 - C151-00/ A21.51-02.....Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast in Metal
Molds or Sand-Lined Molds, for Water or Other
Liquids AWWA/ ANSI
 - C203-02.....Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for
Steel Water Pipelines - Enamel and Tape - Hot
Applied AWWA/ ANSI
 - C651-99.....Disinfecting Water Mains
 - C701-02.....Cold Water Meters-Turbine Type, for Customer
Service AWWA/ ANSI
- F. American Welding Society (AWS):
 - A5.8-92.....Filler Metals for Brazing
- G. National Association of Plumbing - Heating - Cooling Contractors
(PHCC):
 - National Standard Plumbing Code - 1996
- H. Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI):
 - 301-04.....Hubless Cast Iron Soil and Fittings
- I. International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO):
 - Uniform Plumbing Code - 2000
 - IS6-93.....Installation Standard
- J. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings
Industry, Inc. (MSS):
 - SP-67-02.....Butterfly Valve of the Single flange Type (Lug
Wafer)
 - SP-70-98.....Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded
Ends.

SP-72-99.....Ball Valves With Flanged or Butt Welding For
General Purpose

SP-80-03.....Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves.

SP-110-96.....Ball Valve Threaded, Socket Welding, Solder
Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends

K. American Society of Sanitary Engineers (ASSE):

1001-02.....Pipe Applied Atmospheric Type Vacuum Breakers

1013-99.....Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers

1015-99.....Double Check Backflow Prevention Assembly

1018-01.....Performance for trap seal primer valve-water
supply fed

1020-04.....Vacuum Breakers, Anti-Siphon, Pressure Type

L. Factory Mutual (FM):

a. Coupling Used in Hubless Cast Iron Systems for Drains, Waste and
Vent Systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SANITARY, WASTE, STORM WATER DRAIN AND VENT PIPING

A. Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings: Used for pipe buried in or in contact
with earth and for extension of pipe to a distance of approximately
1500 mm (5 feet) outside of building walls and interior waste and vent
piping above grade. Pipe shall be bell and spigot, modified hub, or
plain end (no-hub) as required by selected jointing method:

1. Material, (Pipe and Fittings): ASTM A74, C1SP1-301, Service Class.

2. Joints: Provide any one of the following types to suit pipe
furnished.

a. Lead and oakum and caulked by hand.

b. Double seal, compression-type molded neoprene gasket. Gaskets
shall suit class of pipe being jointed.

c. Mechanical: Meet the requirements and criteria for pressure,
leak, deflection and shear tests as outlined in Factory Mutual
No. 1680 for Class 1 couplings.

1) Stainless steel clamp type coupling of elastomeric sealing
sleeve, ASTM C564 and a Series 300 stainless steel shield and
clamp assembly. Sealing sleeve with center-stop to prevent
contact between pipes/fittings being joined shall be marked
ASTM C564.

2) Cast Iron coupling with neoprene gasket and stainless steel
bolts and nuts.

- d. Mechanical Grooved Couplings: Shall consist of ductile iron (ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12), or malleable iron (ASTM A47, Grade 32510) housings, a pressure responsive elastomeric gasket (ASTM D2000), and steel track head bolts. Shall be for use on pipe and fittings grooved to the manufacturer's specifications. Couplings and fittings to be of the same manufacturer.
- e. Adapters: Where service weight pipe is connected to extra heavy pipe and extra heavy fittings of chair carriers, provide adapters or similar system to make tight, leakproof joints.
- B. Steel Pipe and Fittings: May be used for vent piping and storm water piping above grade.
 - 1. Pipe Galvanized: ASTM A53, standard weight.
 - 2. Fittings:
 - a. Soil, Waste and Drain Piping: Cast iron, ANSI B16.12, threaded, galvanized.
 - b. Sanitary and Exhaust Vent Piping: Malleable iron, ANSI B16.3, or cast iron, ANSI B16.4. All piping shall be of the same kind. Couplings of vent piping may be standard couplings furnished with pipe.
 - c. Unions: Tucker connection or equivalent type throughout.
 - d. Mechanical Grooved Couplings: Shall consist of ductile iron (ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12), or malleable iron (ASTM A47, Grade 32510) housings, a pressure responsive elastomeric gasket (ASTM D2000), and steel track head bolts. Shall be for use on pipe and fittings grooved to the manufacturer's specifications. Couplings and fittings to be of the same manufacturer.

2.2 INTERIOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

- A. Pipe: Copper tube, ASTM B88, Type K or L, drawn. For pipe 150 mm (6 inches) and larger, stainless, steel ASTM A312, schedule 10 may be used.
- B. Fittings for Copper Tube:
 - 1. Wrought copper or bronze castings conforming to ANSI B16.18 and B16.22. Unions shall be bronze, MSS SP72 & SP 110, Solder or braze joints.
 - 2. Grooved fittings, 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inch) wrought copper ASTM B75 C12200, 125 to 150 mm (5 to 6 inch) bronze casting ASTM B584, CDA 844. Mechanical grooved couplings, ductile iron, ASTM A536 (Grade 65-45-12), or malleable iron, ASTM A47 (Grade 32510) housing, with

EPDM gasket, steel track head bolts, ASTM A183, coated with copper colored alkyd enamel.

3. Mechanically formed tee connection: Form mechanically extracted collars in a continuous operation by drilling pilot hole and drawing out tube surface to form collar, having a height of not less than three times the thickness of tube wall. Adjustable collaring device shall insure proper tolerance and complete uniformity of the joint. Notch and dimple joining branch tube in a single process to provide free flow where the branch tube penetrates the fitting. Braze joints.

C. Fittings for Stainless Steel:

1. Stainless steel butt-welded fittings, Type 316, Schedule 10, conforming to ANSI B16.9.
2. Grooved fittings, stainless steel, Type 316, Schedule 10, conforming to ASTM A403. Segmentally fabricated fittings are not allowed. Mechanical grooved couplings, ductile iron, ASTM A536 (Grade 65-45-12), or Malleable iron, ASTM A47 (Grade 32510) housing, with EPDM gasket, steel track head bolts, ASTM A183, coated with copper colored alkyd enamel.

D. Adapters: Provide adapters for joining screwed pipe to copper tubing.

E. Solder: ASTM B32 Composition Sb5 HA or HB. Provide non-corrosive flux.

F. Brazing alloy: AWS A5.8, Classification BCuP.

G. Reagent Grade Water Piping and Dialysis Water Piping:

1. Polypropylene, ASTM D4101, Schedule 80 pressure pipe with dimensions in conformance with ASTM D2447, but without additions of modifiers, plasticizers, colorants, stabilizers or lubricants. This virgin un-plasticized pipe and fittings shall transport 10 megohm water with no loss of purity. Provide socket fusion joints.
2. Polyethylene, food and medical grade, capable of transporting 10 megohm water with no loss of purity. Processed by continuous compression molding without the addition of fillers, polymer modifiers or processing aids. Uniform color with no cracks, flaws, blisters or other imperfections in appearance. Provide heat fusion butt welded joints. In accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, provide continuous channel support under all horizontal piping.

2.3 TRAP PRIMER WATER PIPING:

- A. Pipe: Copper tube, ASTM B88, type K, hard drawn.

B. Fittings: Bronze castings conforming to ANSI B16.18 Solder joints.

C. Solder: ASTM B32 composition Sb5. Provide non-corrosive flux.

2.4 VALVES

A. Asbestos packing is prohibited.

B. Shut-off:

1. Cold Water:

a. Fifty millimeter (2 inches) and smaller:

1) Ball, MSS SP-72, SP-110, Type II, Class 125, Style 1, three piece or double union end construction, full ported, full flow, with solder end connections, 2750 kPa (400 psi) WOG, MSS-SP-67.

b. Less than 100 mm (4 inches): Butterfly, iron body, aluminum bronze disc, 416 stainless steel stem, EPDM seat, wafer design, lever operator to six 150 mm (6 inch)size, , 1375 kPa (200 pound) WOG, Fed. Spec WW-V-1967.

c. One hundred millimeters (4 inches) and larger:

1) Gate, MSS-SP-70, wedge disc, class 125, cast iron body with bronze trim, flanged, gear operated and crank for 200 mm (8 inches) and above.

2) Grooved end butterfly valves with ductile iron body and disc core ASTM A536. Disc rubber coated with compatible material for intended service, maximum working pressure 2050 kPa (300 pounds psi) grooved ends for connection with mechanical grooved couplings.

C. Globe:

1. Eighty millimeters (3 inches) or smaller: Bronze body and bonnet, MSS-SP-80, 850 kPa (125 pound) WSP. Disk shall be free to swivel on the stem. Composition seating surface disk construction may be substituted for all metal disk construction. Packing shall be a woven non-asbestos material, impregnated with not less than 25 percent, by weight, tetrafluoroethylene resin.

2. Larger than 80 mm (3 inches): Similar to above, except with cast iron body and bronze trim.

2.5 CLEANOUTS

A. Same size as the pipe, up to 100 mm (4 inches); not less than 100 mm (4 inches) for larger pipe. Cleanouts for chemical waste drain pipe shall be of same material as the pipe. Cleanouts shall be easily accessible and shall be gastight and watertight. Provide a minimum clearance of 600 mm (24 inches) for the rodding.

- B. In Floors: Floor cleanouts shall have cast iron body and frame with square adjustable scoriated secured nickel bronze top. Unit shall be vertically adjustable for a minimum of 50 mm (2 inches). When a waterproof membrane is used in the floor system, provide clamping collars on the cleanouts. Cleanouts shall consist of "Y" fittings and 3 mm (1/8 inch) bends with brass or bronze screw plugs. Cleanouts in the resilient tile floors, quarry tile and ceramic tile floors shall be provided with square top covers recessed for tile insertion. In the carpeted areas, provide carpet cleanout markers. Provide two way cleanouts where indicated on drawings.
- C. Provide cleanouts at or near the base of the vertical stacks with the cleanout plug located approximately 600 mm (24 inches) above the floor. If there are no fixtures installed on the lowest floor, the cleanout shall be installed at the base of the stack. Extend the cleanouts to the wall access cover. Cleanout shall consist of sanitary tees. Furnish nickel-bronze square frame and stainless steel cover with minimum opening of 150 by 150 mm (6 by 6 inches) at each wall cleanout. Where the piping is concealed, a fixture trap or a fixture with integral trap, readily removable without disturbing concealed roughing work, shall be accepted as a cleanout equivalent providing the opening to be used as a cleanout opening is the size required by the NPHCC National Standard Plumbing Code.
- D. In horizontal runs above grade, cleanouts shall consist of cast brass tapered screw plug in fitting or caulked/no hub cast iron ferrule. Plain end (no-hub) piping in interstitial space or above ceiling may use plain end (no-hub) blind plug and clamp.

2.6 FLOOR SINKS

- A. 12 inch square x 10 inch deep sanitary floor sink. Provide with white porcelain enamel coated interior, loose set porcelain enamel coated cast iron grate, dome bottom strainer and no hub outlet.

2.7 ROOF DRAINS AND CONNECTIONS

- A. Roof Drains: Cast iron with clamping device for making watertight connection. Free openings through strainer shall be twice area of drain outlet. For roof drains not installed in connection with a waterproof membrane, provide a soft copper membrane 300 mm (12 inches) in diameter greater than outside diameter of drain collar. Provide an integral gravel stop for drains installed on roofs having built-up roofing covered with gravel or slag. Provide integral no-hub, soil pipe gasket or threaded outlet connection.

1. Flat Roofs: Beehive or dome shaped strainer with integral flange not less than 300 mm (12 inches) in diameter. For insulated roofs, provide a roof drain with an adjustable drainage collar, which can be raised or lowered to meet required insulation heights, sump receiver and deck clamp. Bottom section shall serve as roof drain during construction before insulation is installed.
2. Protective Roof Membrane Insulation Assembly: Perforated stainless steel extension filter, non-puncturing clamp ring, large sump with extra wide roof flange and deck clamp.
 - a. Non-pedestrian Roofs: Large polypropylene or aluminum locking dome.
 - b. Pedestrian Roof: Bronze promenade top 350 mm (14 inches) square, set in square secured frame support collar.
- B. Expansion Joints: Heavy cast iron with cast brass or copper expansion sleeve having smooth bearing surface working freely against a packing ring held in place and under pressure of a bolted gland ring, forming a water and air tight flexible joint. Asbestos packing is prohibited.
- C. Interior Downspouts: Provide an expansion joint, specified above, at top of run on straight, vertical runs of downspout piping 12 m (40 feet) long or more.
- D. Downspout Nozzle: The nozzle fitting shall be of brass, unfinished, with internal pipe thread for connection to downspout.

2.8 TRAPS

Provide on all sanitary branch waste connections from fixtures or equipment not provided with traps. Exposed brass shall be polished brass chromium plated with nipple and set screw escutcheons. Concealed traps may be rough cast brass or same material as pipe connected to. Slip joints not permitted on sewer side of trap. Traps shall correspond to fittings on cast iron soil pipe or steel pipe respectively, and size shall be as required by connected service or fixture.

2.9 WATERPROOFING

- A. Provide at points where pipes pass through membrane waterproofed floors or walls in contact with earth.
- B. Floors: Provide cast iron stack sleeve with flashing device and a underdeck clamp. After stack is passed through sleeve, provide a waterproofed caulked joint at top hub.
- C. Walls: See detail shown on drawings.

2.10 STRAINERS

- A. Provide on high pressure side of pressure reducing valves, on suction side of pumps, on inlet side of indicating and control instruments and equipment subject to sediment damage and where shown on drawings. Strainer element shall be removable without disconnection of piping.
- B. Gas Lines: "Y" type with removable mesh lined brass strainer sleeve.
- C. Water: Basket or "Y" type with easily removable cover and brass strainer basket.
- D. Body: Smaller than 80 mm (3 inches), brass or bronze; 80 mm (3 inches) and larger, cast iron or semi-steel.

2.11 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

Provide dielectric couplings or unions between ferrous and non-ferrous pipe.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the PHCC National Standard Plumbing Code and the following:
 - 1. Install branch piping for water and waste from the respective piping systems and connect to all fixtures, valves, outlets, and equipment, including those furnished by the Government or specified in other sections.
 - 2. Pipe shall be round and straight. Cutting shall be done with proper tools. Pipe, except for plastic and glass, shall be reamed to full size after cutting.
 - 3. All pipe runs shall be laid out to avoid interference with other work.
 - 4. Install valves with stem in horizontal position whenever possible. All valves shall be easily accessible. Install valve in each water connection to fixture.
 - 5. Install union and shut-off valve on pressure piping at connections to equipment.
 - 6. All gravity waste drain lines inside the building with vertical drops over 6 m (20 feet) shall be provided with joint restraint on the vertical drop and horizontal offset or branch below the vertical drop. Joint restraint shall be accomplished by threaded, soldered, lead and oakum or grooved joints or a combination of pipe clamps and tie-rods as detailed in NFPA 24. Vertical joint restraint shall be provided from the fitting at the bottom of the vertical drop through every joint up to the riser clamp at the floor penetration of the

floor above. Horizontal joint restraint shall be provided from the same fitting at the bottom of the vertical drop through every joint on the horizontal offset or branch for a minimum of 18 m (60 feet) or to anchoring point from the building structure. Joint restraint below ground shall be accomplished by thrust blocks detailed in NFPA 24.

7. Pipe Hangers, Supports And Accessories:

1. All piping shall be supported per of the National Standard Plumbing Code, Chapter No. 8.
2. Shop Painting and Plating: Hangers, supports, rods, inserts and accessories used for Pipe supports shall be shop coated with red lead or zinc Chromate primer paint. Electroplated copper hanger rods, hangers and accessories may be used with copper tubing.
3. Floor, Wall and Ceiling Plates, Supports, Hangers:
 - a. Solid or split unplated cast iron.
 - b. All plates shall be provided with set screws.
 - c. Pipe Hangers: Height adjustable clevis type.
 - d. Adjustable Floor Rests and Base Flanges: Steel.
 - e. Concrete Inserts: "Universal" or continuous slotted type.
 - f. Hanger Rods: Mild, low carbon steel, fully threaded or Threaded at each end with two removable nuts at each end for positioning rod and hanger and locking each in place.
 - g. Riser Clamps: Malleable iron or steel.
 - h. Rollers: Cast iron.
 - i. Self-drilling type expansion shields shall be "Phillips" type, with case hardened steel expander plugs.
 - j. Hangers and supports utilized with insulated pipe and tubing shall have 180 degree (min.) metal protection shield Centered on and welded to the hanger and support. The shield shall be 4 inches in length and be 16 gauge steel. The shield shall be sized for the insulation.
 - k. Miscellaneous Materials: As specified, required, directed or as noted on the drawings for proper installation of hangers, supports and accessories. If the vertical distance exceeds 6 m (20 feet) for cast iron pipe additional support shall be provided in the center of that span. Provide all necessary auxiliary steel to provide that support.

8. Install cast escutcheon with set screw at each wall, floor and ceiling penetration in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
9. Penetrations:
 - a. Fire Stopping: Where pipes pass through fire partitions, fire walls, smoke partitions, or floors, install a fire stop that provides an effective barrier against the spread of fire, smoke and gases as specified in Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING. Completely fill and seal clearances between raceways and openings with the fire stopping materials.
 - b. Waterproofing: At floor penetrations, completely seal clearances around the pipe and make watertight with sealant as specified in Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- B. Piping shall conform to the following:
 1. Waste, Storm Water Drain and Vent Drain to main stacks:

Pipe Size	Minimum Pitch
80 mm (3 inches) and smaller	1 : 50 (1/4" to the foot).
80 mm (4 inches) and larger	1 : 100 (1/8" to the foot).

2. Exhaust Vent: Extend separately through roof. Sanitary vents shall not connect to exhaust vents.
3. Domestic Water:
 - a. Where possible, grade all lines to facilitate drainage. Provide drain valves at bottom of risers. All unnecessary traps in circulating lines shall be avoided.
 - b. Connect branch lines at bottom of main serving fixtures below and pitch down so that main may be drained through fixture. Connect branch lines to top of main serving only fixtures located on floor above.

3.2 TESTS

- A. General: Test system either in its entirety or in sections.
- B. Soil, Waste, Storm Water Drain and Vent: Conduct before trenches are backfilled or fixtures are connected. Conduct water test or air test, as directed.
 1. Water Test: If entire system is tested, tightly close all openings in pipes except highest opening, and fill system with water to point

- of overflow. If system is tested in sections, tightly plug each opening except highest opening of section under test, fill each section with water and test with at least a 3 m (10 foot) head of water. In testing successive sections, test at least upper 3 m (10 feet) of next preceding section so that each joint or pipe except upper most 3 m (10 feet) of system has been submitted to a test of at least a 3 m (10 foot) head of water. Keep water in system, or in portion under test, for at least 15 minutes before inspection starts. System shall then be tight at all joints.
2. Air Test: Maintain air pressure of 35 kPa (5 psi) gage for at least 15 minutes without leakage. Use force pump and mercury column gage.
 3. Final Tests: Either one of the following tests may be used.
 - a. Smoke Test: After fixtures are permanently connected and traps are filled with water, fill entire drainage and vent systems with smoke under pressure of 1.3 kPa (one inch of water) with a smoke machine. Chemical smoke is prohibited.
 - b. Peppermint Test: Introduce (two ounces) of peppermint into each line or stack.
 - C. Potable Water System: Test after installation of piping and domestic water heaters, but before piping is concealed, before covering is applied, and before plumbing fixtures are connected. Fill systems with water and maintain hydrostatic pressure of 690 kPa (100 psi) gage for two hours. No decrease in pressure is allowed. Provide a pressure gage with a shutoff and bleeder valve at the highest point of the piping being tested.
 - D. All Other Piping Tests: Test new installed piping under 1 1/2 times actual operating conditions and prove tight.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 15606
LIQUID FUEL STORAGE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL:

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

- A. Diesel fuel oil and burner fuel oil tanks, piping, and accessories located outside; aboveground as shown.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Sealing of pipe penetrations: Section 07920, SEALANT AND CAULKING.
- B. Primer and finish painting: Section 09900, PAINTING.
- C. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Approval by Contracting Officer is required of products or services of proposed manufacturers, suppliers and installers, and will be based on Contractor's certification that:
 - 1. Manufacturers regularly and currently manufacturer piping accessories.
- B. Label of Conformance (definition): Labels of accredited testing laboratories showing conformance to the standards specified.
- C. Equipment and materials installed shall be compatible in all respects with other items being furnished and with existing items so that the result will be a safe, complete and fully operational system which conforms to contract requirements and in which no item is subject to conditions beyond its design capabilities.
- D. Piping installation contractor shall be certified as acceptable by local and state pollution control authorities.
- E. Entire installation shall conform to requirements of local and state pollution control authorities.
- F. Apply and install materials, equipment and specialties in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Immediately refer conflicts between the manufacturer's instructions and the contract drawings and specifications to the Resident Engineer (RE)/Contracting Officers Technical Representative (COTR) for resolution.
- G. Field Welding of Piping: Conform to requirements of ASME B31.1. Welders shall show evidence of qualification. Welders shall utilize a stamp to identify their work. Unqualified personnel will be rejected.
- H. Assembly of Glass Fiber Reinforced Plastic Piping: Installation personnel shall have been trained, tested and certified under a procedure approved by the manufacturer of the piping. Proof of certification, in writing, shall be provided to the RE/COTR.

I. Where specified codes or standards conflict, consult the RE/COTR.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Fuel Piping:
 - 1. ASTM and UL compliance.
 - 2. Grade, class or type, schedule number.
 - 3. Manufacturer.
- C. Pipe Fittings, Unions, Flanges:
 - 1. ASTM and UL compliance.
 - 2. ASTM standards number.
 - 3. Catalog cuts.
 - 4. Pressure and temperature rating.
- D. Check Valves:
 - 1. Catalog cuts showing design and construction.
 - 2. Pressure and temperature ratings.
 - 3. Pressure loss and flow rate data.
 - 4. Materials of construction.
 - 5. Accessories.
- E. Tank and Piping Accessories: Design, construction, and dimensions of vent caps, fill boxes, fill caps, spill containers and other accessories.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Protection of Equipment:
 - 1. Material placed on the job site shall remain in the custody of the Contractor until phased acceptance, whether or not the Government has reimbursed the Contractor for the equipment and material. The Contractor is solely responsible for the protection of such equipment and material against any damage.
 - 2. Place damaged equipment in first class, new operating condition; or, replace same as determined and directed by the RE/COTR. Such repair or replacement shall be at no additional cost to the Government.
 - 3. Protect new piping systems against entry of foreign matter on the inside. Clean both inside and outside before painting or placing equipment in operation.
 - 4. Existing equipment and piping being worked on by the Contractor shall be under the custody and responsibility of the Contractor and shall be protected as required for new work.
 - 5. Protect plastic piping and tanks from ultraviolet light (sunlight).

B. Cleanliness of Piping:

1. Exercise care in storage and handling of piping material to be incorporated in the work. Remove debris arising from cutting, threading and welding of piping.
2. Piping systems shall be flushed, blown or pigged as necessary to provide clean systems.
3. Contractor shall be fully responsible for all costs, damages and delay arising from failure to provide clean systems.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.

B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):

A-A-60005.....Frames, Covers, Grating, Steps, Sump and Catch Basin, Manhole

C. ASTM International (ASTM):

A53/A53M-05.....Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

A106/A106M-06.....Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High Temperature Service

A126-04.....Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges and Pipe Fittings

A234/A234M-05a.....Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service

B62-02.....Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings

D2996-01.....Filament-Wound "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced-Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe

D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):

B16.5-03.....Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings (NPS ½-24).

B16.11-01.....Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

B31.1-04.....Code for Pressure Piping, Power Piping with Current Amendments

E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

30-03.....Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code

F. American Petroleum Institute (API):

PART - 2 PRODUCTS:

2.1 TANK AND PIPING ACCESSORIES:

A. Vent Caps: Galvanized cast iron or cast aluminum with brass or bronze screens, arranged to permit full venting and to prevent entry of foreign material into the vent line. Same pipe size as vent pipe.

2.2 PIPING, VALVES, FITTINGS:

- A. Fuel supply and return and vents.
- B. Steel Pipe and Fittings:
 - 1. Piping: Steel, seamless or electric resistance welded (ERW), ASTM A53 Grade B or ASTM A106 Grade B, Schedule 40. Aboveground piping shall be painted. Refer to Section 09900, PAINTING.
 - 2. Joints: Socket or butt-welded. Threaded joints not permitted except at valves, unions and tank connections.
 - 3. Fittings:
 - a. Butt-welded joints: Steel, ASTM A234, Grade B, ASME B16.9, same schedule as adjoining pipe.
 - b. Socket-welded joints: Forged steel, ASME B16.11, 13 700 kPa (2000 psi) class.
 - 4. Unions: Malleable iron, 2050 kPa (300 psi) class.
 - 5. Companion flanges: Flanges and bolting, ASME B16.5.
 - 6. Welding flanges: Weld neck, ASME B16.5, forged steel ASTM A105, 1025 kPa (150 psi).
- C. Check Valves - Fuel Pump Suction.
 - 1. Pipe Sizes 50 mm (2 inches) and under: Rated for 1375 kPa (200 psi) water-oil-gas, swing-type, threaded ends, ASTM B62 bronze body. Provide union adjacent to valve.
 - 2. Pipe Sizes 65 mm (2 1/2 inches) and above: Rated for 1375 kPa (200 psi) water-oil-gas, swing-type, 850 kPa (125 pounds) ASME flanged ends, ASTM A126 class B cast iron body.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 15650
REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT (HVAC)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Centrifugal water-cooled chillers, complete with accessories.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- B. Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- C. Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- D. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.
- E. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- F. Section 15140, PUMPS (HVAC).
- G. Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.
- H. Section 15651, REFRIGERANT PIPING.
- I. Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS.
- J. Section 15840, DUCT WORK AND ACCESSORIES.
- K. Section 16150, MOTORS.
- L. Section 16155, MOTOR STARTERS.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Engineering Control Center (ECC): The centralized control point for the intelligent control network. The ECC comprises of personal computer and connected devices to form a single workstation.
- B. BACNET: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE Standard 135.
- C. Ethernet: A trademark for a system for exchanging messages between computers on a local area network using coaxial, fiber optic, or twisted-pair cables.
- D. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
- E. LonMark: An association comprising of suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. The Association provides guidelines for the implementation of the LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through Standard implementation.
- F. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication.
- G. LonWorks: Network technology developed by the Echelon Corporation.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to Paragraph, QUALITY ASSURANCE, in Section, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL), and comply with the following.

- B. Refer to PART 3 herein after and Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS for test performance.
- C. Comply with ARI requirements for testing and certification of the chillers.
- D. Refer to paragraph, WARRANTY, Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS, except as noted below:
 - 1. A 5-year motor/transmission/compressor warranty shall be provided based upon the RPM of the compressor as follows:

Compressor RPM	Warranty Term
0-5000	1 year from start up
5001-10,000	5 years from start up
10,001 and above	5 years plus annual oil analysis
 - 2. A 5-year parts and labor warranty shall be provided on any reciprocating compressor.
- E. Refer to OSHA 29 CFR 1910.95(a) and (b) for Occupational Noise Exposure Standard.
- F. Refer to ASHRAE Standard 15, Safety Standard for Refrigeration System, for refrigerant vapor detectors and monitor.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Refrigeration Institute (ARI):
 - 495-99.....Refrigerant Liquid Receivers
 - 550/590-03.....Standard for Water Chilling Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle
 - 575-94.....Methods for Measuring Machinery Sound within Equipment Space
- C. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE):
 - 15-02.....Safety Standard for Mechanical Refrigeration Systems
 - 3-96.....Guidelines for Reducing Emission of Halogenated Refrigerants in Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Equipment and Systems
- D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
 - 1998ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, "Rules for Constructive Pressure Vessels"
- E. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM):
 - C 534-03.....Preformed, Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form

- C 612-04.....Mineral-fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
- F. National Electrical Manufacturing Association (NEMA):
 - 250-03.....Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-05.....National Electrical Code
- H. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 1995-99..... Heating and Cooling Equipment

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Specification Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data.
 - 1. Centrifugal water chillers, including variable frequency drives, control panels, and vibration isolators, and data shall include the following:
 - a. Rated capacity.
 - b. Pressure drop.
 - c. Efficiency at full load and part load without applying any tolerance indicated in the ARI 550/590/Standard.
 - d. Refrigerant
 - e. Accessories.
 - f. Installation instructions.
 - g. Start up procedures.
 - h. Wiring diagrams, including factor-installed and field-installed wiring.
 - i. Noise data report. Manufacturer shall provide noise ratings. Noise warning labels shall be posted on equipment.
 - j. Refrigerant vapor detectors and monitors.
- C. Maintenance and operating manuals for each piece of equipment in accordance with Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- D. Run test report for all chillers.
- E. Product Certificate: Signed by chiller manufacturer certifying that chillers furnished comply with ARI requirements. The test report shall include calibrated curves, calibration records, and data sheets for the instrumentation used in factory tests.
- F. Provide seismic restraints for refrigeration equipment to withstand seismic forces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL AND ROTARY WATER CHILLERS

- A. General: Chiller shall be factor-assembled and-tested, complete with evaporator, condenser, marine water box for condenser, compressor, motor, VFD, oil heater and cooler, economizer or intercooler, purge system (if required), refrigerant piping, instrumentation and control piping, operating and safety controls mounted on the chiller, and other auxiliaries necessary for safe and proper operation of the unit. Chiller operation shall be fully automatic. Provide the capacity as shown on the drawings. Part load and full load efficiency ratings of the chiller shall not exceed those shown on the drawings.
- B. Applicable Standard: Chillers shall be rated and certified in accordance with ARI Standard 550/590. Chillers with ARI certification program shall be ARI stamped.
- C. Hermetic: Chillers shall be hermetically sealed, using refrigerants HCFC-123.
- D. Compressor (Centrifugal Type): Single or multistage, having statically and dynamically balanced impeller, either direct or gear driven. Impeller shaft shall be heat-treated carbon steel of sufficient rigidity to prevent whip or vibration at operating speed. Shaft main bearings shall be of journal type with bronze or babbitt line steel cartridge, aluminum alloy one-piece insert type, or rolling element type with an AFBMA L 10 life of a minimum of 200,000 hours. Rolling element bearings shall be rated in accordance with AFBMA 9 or AFBMA 11 as applicable. Casing shall be cast iron or steel plate with split sections gasketed and bolted together. Lubrication System shall be forced-feed type and shall provide oil at proper temperature to all parts requiring lubrication. Make provisions to insure lubrication of bearings prior to starting and of shaft seal both on stopping and starting, or bearings and shaft seal shall be submerged in oil. On units providing for forced-feed lubrication prior to starting, a differential oil pressure cutout interlocked with compressor starting equipment shall allow compressor to operate only when required oil pressure is provided to bearings.
- E. Capacity control shall be by means of variable inlet guide vanes in the compressor suction to modulate the chiller capacity from 100 to 10 percent of full unit rated capacity without unstable compressor operation. The inlet guide vanes shall be electrically or pneumatically operated upon the actuation of temperature or pressure sensor.
- F. Evaporator: Shell-and-tube type, constructed and tested and stamped in accordance with Section VIII D1 of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where applicable for working pressure produced by refrigerant used and water system installed, but not less than 1035 kPa (150 psig) waterside

working pressure. Shell shall be fabricated of carbon steel and shall have carbon steel tube sheets; drilled and reamed to accommodate the tubes. Tubes shall be externally and internally enhanced individually replaceable and shall be expanded full diameter into tube sheets, providing a leak proof seal. Intermediate tube support sheets shall be provided as recommended by the manufacturer to minimize tube vibration, stress, and wear. Performance shall be based on a water velocity not less than 1 m/s (3 fps) nor more than 4 m/s (12 fps), and fouling factor of 0.0000176 m² degrees C (0.0001 hr. sq. ft. degrees F/Btu). Removable standard water box shall be constructed of steel. Design working pressure shall be 1035 kPa (150 psig; pressure tested at 150 percent of working pressure. Water nozzle connections shall be grooved mechanical-joint coupling.

- G. Condenser: Shell-and-tube type, constructed, tested, and stamped in accordance with applicable portions of Section VIII D1 of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, where applicable for working pressure produced by the refrigerant used and water system installed, but not less than 1035 kPa (150 psig). Shell shall be fabricated of carbon steel and shall have carbon steel tube sheets; drilled and reamed to accommodate the tubes. Tubes shall be nonferrous metal, externally enhanced, and internally enhanced except where automatic tube cleaning system is specified, the condenser tubes shall be smooth bore type, individually replaceable, and shall be expanded full diameter into tube sheets, providing a leak proof seal. Intermediate tube support sheets shall be provided as recommended by the manufacturer to minimize tube vibration, stress and wear. Tubes shall fit tightly in the supports to prevent chafing due to vibration or pulsation. Performance of condenser shall be based on a water velocity not less than 1 m/s (3 fps) nor more than 4 m/s (12 fps), and a fouling factor of 0.000044 m² degrees C (0.00025 hr. sq. ft.) degrees F/Btu. Removable marine water box shall be constructed of steel. Design working pressure shall be 1035 kPa (150 psig); pressure tested at 150 percent of working pressure. Water nozzle connections shall be grooved mechanical-joint coupling.
- H. Insulation: Evaporator, suction piping, compressor, and all other parts subject to condensation shall be insulated with 40 mm (1.5 inch) minimum thickness of flexible-elastomeric thermal insulation, complying with ASTM C534.
- I. Economizer: Provide if required by manufacturer. Flash gas shall be piped from economizer to inlet of intermediate stage impeller wheel. In case of rotary compressor flash gas shall be piped from economizer to the intermediate compressor point. Provide a refrigerant flow control

system (float valve or multiple orifice system) to automatically regulate flow of liquid refrigerant through economizer. If external-type economizer is used, such economizer shall be constructed and tested in accordance with Section 8 of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for working pressures produced by refrigerant used, unless exempt by Section U-1 of the code.

- J. Motor Load Limiter: Provide a sensing and control system, which will limit maximum load current of compressor motor to a manually selectable percentage of 40 percent to 100 percent of full load current. System shall sense compressor motor current and limit it by modulating inlet guide vanes at the compressor, overriding other controls in their ability to increase loading, but not overriding their ability to reduce loading.
- K. Purge System: Required for refrigerants with vapor pressure less than 100 kPa (14.7 psig). Factory-mounted purge unit, complete with necessary, piping, operating and safety controls and refrigerant service valves to isolate the unit from the chilling unit. Purge unit shall be air, water, or refrigerant cooled. When in operation, purge system shall function automatically to remove, water vapor, and condensable gases from refrigeration system and to condense, separate, and return to system any refrigerant present therein. Purge system shall be manually or automatically started and stopped, and shall be assembled as a compact unit. As an option, a fully automatic purge system that operates continuously while main unit is operating may be furnished. Such purge system shall provide a means to signal operator of occurrence of excessive purging indicating abnormal air leakage into unit. The purge system shall be of high efficiency in recapturing the refrigerant at all load and head conditions and with capability to operate when the chiller is off. The purge unit shall be UL listed.
- L. Isolation Pads: Manufacturers standard.
- M. Refrigerant and Oil:
 - 1. Provide sufficient volume of dehydrated refrigerant and lubricating oil to permit maximum unit capacity operation before and during tests. Refrigerant charge lost during the warranty period due to equipment failure shall be replaced without cost to the Government.
 - 2. The manufacturer shall certify that chiller components, such as seals, o-ring, motor windings, etc, are fully compatible with the specified refrigerants.
- N. Chillers utilizing HCFC-123 shall be supplied with a vacuum prevention system to maintain the chiller at positive pressure during non-operational cycles.

- O. Chillers utilizing HCFC-123 shall be supplied with all metal, non-fragmented with reverse buckling design rupture disc and a safety relief valve downstream of the rupture disc.
- P. Service valves shall be provided to facilitate refrigerant reclaim/removal required during maintenance.
- Q. Controls: Chiller shall be furnished with unit mounted, stand-alone, microprocessor-based controls in NEMA 1 enclosure, hinged and lockable, factory wired with a single point power connection and separate control circuit. The control panel provide chiller operation, including monitoring of sensors and actuators, and shall be furnished with light emitting diodes or liquid-crystal display keypad.
 - 1. Following functions shall display as a minimum:
 - a. Date and Time.
 - b. Outdoor air temperature.
 - c. Operating set point temperature and pressure.
 - d. Operating hours.
 - e. Operating or alarm status.
 - f. Chilled water temperature-entering and leaving.
 - g. Condenser water temperature-entering and leaving.
 - h. Refrigerant pressure-condenser and evaporator.
 - i. Low oil pump pressure.
 - j. High oil supply pressure.
 - k. Chiller diagnostic codes.
 - l. Current limit set point.
 - m. Number of compressor starts.
 - n. Purge suction temperature.
 - o. Purge elapsed time.
 - 2. Control Functions:
 - a. Manual or automatic startup and shutdown time schedule.
 - b. Control set points for entering and leaving chilled temperatures.
 - c. Condenser water temperature.
 - d. Current/demand limit.
 - e. Motor load limit.
 - 3. Safety Controls: Following conditions shall shut down the chiller and require manual reset to start:
 - a. High condenser pressure.
 - b. High oil temperature.
 - c. High or low oil pressure.
 - d. Loss of flow-condenser or chilled water.
 - e. Low chilled water temperature.
 - f. Low evaporator refrigerant temperature.

- g. Sensor malfunction.
 - h. Power fault.
 - i. Extended compressor surge.
 - j. Communication loss between the chiller and its control panel. A signal must be transmitted to Energy Control Center, if provided, for this communication loss and for any abnormal.
4. The chiller control panel shall provide a relay output to initiate system changeover to free cooling. This relay shall be energized upon initiation of free cooling at the chiller control panel.
 5. Leaving chilled water temperature reset shall be based on return water temperature 4-20 MA or 0-10 VDC signal from a building automation system.
 6. Chillers shall be pre-wired to terminal strips for interlocked to other equipment.
 7. Provide contacts for remote start/stop, alarm for abnormal operation or shut down, and for Engineering Control Center (ECC) interface.
 8. Chiller control panel shall match existing.
 9. Auxiliary hydronic system and the chiller(s) shall be electronically interlocked to provide time delay and starting sequence as indicated on control drawings.
 10. The chiller control panel shall utilize the following components to automatically take action to prevent unit shutdown due to abnormal operating conditions which will perform as follows.
 - a. High pressure switch that is set to 20 psig (adjustable setting) lower than factory pressure switch that will automatically unload the compressor to help prevent a high pressure condenser control trip. One switch is required for each compressor and indicating light shall also be provided.
 - b. Motor surge pressure that is set at 95% of compressor RLA that will automatically unload the compressor to prevent an over current trip. One protector is required for each compressor and indicating light shall also be provided.
 - c. Low pressure switch that is set at 5 PSIG above the factory low pressure switch that will automatically unload the compressor to help prevent a low evaporator temperature trip. One switch is required for each compressor and indicating light shall also be provided.
 - d. In all the above cases, the chiller will continue to run, in an unloaded state and will continue to produce some chilled water in an attempt to meet the cooling load. However, if the chiller reaches the trip-out limits, the chiller controls will take the

chiller off line for protection, and a manual reset is required.

Once the "near trip" condition is corrected, the chiller will

return to normal operation and can then produce full load cooling.

11. With variation of +/-10% of design flow per minute, chiller shall be able to maintain +/-0.5 degrees F leaving water temperature control. The chiller must be able to withstand a +/- 30% change in flow rate per minute without unit trip. Variations in the primary flow allow for optimal system efficiency, but the chiller must be able to maintain temperature control to help ensure occupant comfort.
 12. The chiller control panel shall provide +/-0.5 degrees F leaving water temperature control during normal operation. The chiller shall provide multiple steps leaving chilled water temperature controller to minimize part load energy use and optimize leaving chilled water temperature control. If manufacturer is unable to provide at least several steps of unloading, hot gas bypass shall be required to minimize loss of leaving water temperature control.
 13. The chiller control panel shall provide a 2-minute stop-to-start and 5 minute start-to-start solid state timer. If the anti-recycle timers are longer than 5 minutes, then hot-gas bypass shall be provided to limit loss of leaving chilled water temperature control in low-load conditions.
- T. Motor: Refer to Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL). Compressor motor furnished with the chiller shall be in accordance with the chiller manufacturer and the electrical specification Section 16150, MOTORS. Starting torque of the motor shall be suitable for the driven chiller machine.
- U. Motor Starter: Refer to Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL). Provide a starter for each centrifugal chiller in NEMA I enclosure, designed for unit mounting. For floor mounted starter provide wiring from starter to chiller. Provide starter with the following features in addition to the ones specified in Electrical Specification Section 16155, MOTOR STARTER.
1. Starter shall include incoming line provision for the number and size cables shown on the drawings. Incoming line lugs shall be copper mechanical type.
 2. Terminals connection pads shall be provided to which customers supply lugs can be attached.
 3. Starters shall be coordinated with chiller packages(s) making certain all terminals are properly marked according to the chiller manufacturer's wiring diagram.

4. Contactors shall be sized properly to the chillers for full load currents.
5. Ammeter(s) shall be provided, capable of displaying current to all three phases. Ammeter shall be calibrated so that inrush current can be indicated.
6. Chiller starter shall include an advanced motor protection system incorporating electronic three phase overloads and current transformers. This electronic motor protection system shall monitor and protect against the following conditions:
 - a. Three phase loss with under and over voltage protection.
 - b. Phase imbalance.
 - c. Phase reversal.
 - d. Motor overload.
 - e. Motor overload protection incorrectly set.
 - f. Momentary power loss protection with auto restart consisting of three phase current sensing device that monitor the status of the current.
 - g. Starter contactor fault protection.
 - h. Starter transition failure.
 - i. Distribution fault protection.
7. When a motor driven oil pump is furnished, provide a 120- volt control circuit, mounted within starter enclosure. When an oil pump starter is provided at the refrigeration machine, provide fused disconnect in star delta starter for oil pump.
8. The starter shall be equipped with pilot relays to initiate the start sequence of compressor. These relays shall be a self-monitoring safety circuit, which shall indicate improper operation (slow operation, welding of contacts, etc) and shall cause the chiller unit to be shut down and a fault trip indicator be displayed. The "starter circuit fault" indicator shall be located in the door of the enclosure and shall require manual reset.
9. A lockout transition safety circuit shall be provided to prevent damage from prolonged energization due to malfunction of the transistor contactor. Malfunction shall cause the chiller unit to shut down and the "starter circuit fault" indicator be displayed.
10. A permanent nameplate shall be provided and mounted on the starter panel. It shall identify the manufacturer, serial or model number identifying the date of manufacturing and component replacement parts, and all current and voltage rating, and as built wiring schematic showing all items provided.
11. // Non-fused main power disconnect switch // circuit breaker //.

2.2 REFRIGERANT MONITORING AND SAFETY EQUIPMENT

- A. General: Provide refrigerant monitoring sensor/alarm system and safety equipment as required to connect to existing systems. Refrigerant sensor and alarm system shall comply with ASHRAE Standard 15.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping and electrical to verify actual locations and sizes before chiller installation and other conditions that might effect chiller performance, maintenance, and operation.

Equipment locations shown on drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before proceeding with installation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Install chiller on concrete base with isolation pads or vibration isolators.
1. Concrete base is specified in Section 03300, "CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE."
 2. Vibration isolator types and installation requirements are specified in Section 15200, "NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL."
 3. Anchor chiller to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions and for seismic restraint on vibration isolators.
 4. Charge the chiller with refrigerant, if not factory charged.
 5. Install accessories and any other equipment furnished loose by the manufacturer, including remote starter, remote control panel, and remote flow switches, according to the manufacturer written instructions and electrical requirements.
 6. Chillers shall be installed in a manner as to provide easy access for tube pull and removal of compressor and motors etc.
- B. Install refrigerant monitoring and safety equipment in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 15.
- C. Install refrigerant piping as specified in Section 15651, "REFRIGERANT PIPING" and ASHRAE Standard 15.
- D. Install thermometers and gages as recommended by the manufacturer and/or as shown on drawings.
- E. Piping Connections:
1. Make piping connections to the chiller for chilled water, condenser water, and other connections as necessary for proper operation and maintenance of the equipment.
 2. Make equipment connections with flanges and couplings for easy removal and replacement of equipment from the equipment room.

3. Extend vent piping from the relief valve, rupture disk and purge system to the outside.

3.3 STARTUP AND TESTING

- A. Engage manufacturer's factory-trained representative to perform startup and testing service.
- B. Inspect, equipment installation, including field-assembled components, and piping and electrical connections.
- C. After complete installation startup checks, according to the manufacturers written instructions, do the following to demonstrate to the VA that the equipment operate and perform as intended.
 1. Check refrigerant charge is sufficient and chiller has been tested for refrigerant leak.
 2. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.
 3. Verify proper motor rotation.
 4. Verify pumps associated with chillers are installed and operational.
 5. Verify thermometers and gages are installed.
 6. Verify purge system, if installed, is functional and relief piping is routed outdoor.
 7. Operate chiller for run-in-period in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction and observe its performance.
 8. Check and record refrigerant pressure, water flow, water temperature, and power consumption of the chiller.
 9. Test and adjust all controls and safeties. Replace or correct all malfunctioning controls, safeties and equipment as soon as possible to avoid any delay in the use of the equipment.
 10. Prepare a written report outlining the results of tests and inspections, and submit it to the VA.
- D. Engage manufacturer's certified factory trained representative to provide training for 2 hours for the VA maintenance and operational personnel to adjust, operate and maintain equipment, including self-contained breathing apparatus.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 15705
HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Water piping to connect HVAC equipment, including the following:
 - 1. Chilled water, condenser water, heating hot water and drain piping.
 - 2. Extension of domestic water make-up piping.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 02200, EARTHWORK: Excavation and backfill.
- B. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Seismic restraints for piping.
- C. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL): General mechanical requirements and items, which are common to more than one section of Division 15.
- D. Section 15140, PUMPS (HVAC): Pumps.
- E. Section 15250, INSULATION: Piping insulation.
- F. Section 15740, TERMINAL UNITS: Fan coil units.
- G. Section 15902, CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTATION (DDC): Temperature and pressure sensors and valve operators.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL), which includes welding qualifications.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Pipe and equipment supports. Submit calculations for variable spring and constant support hangers.
 - 2. Pipe and tubing, with specification, class or type, and schedule.
 - 3. Pipe fittings, including miscellaneous adapters and special fittings.
 - 4. Flanges, gaskets and bolting.
 - 5. Valves of all types.
 - 6. Strainers.
 - 7. Flexible connectors for water service.
 - 8. Pipe alignment guides.
 - 9. Flexible ball joints: Catalog sheets, performance charts, schematic drawings, specifications and installation instructions.
 - 10. All specified hydronic system components.

- 11. Gages.
- 12. Thermometers and test wells.
- 13. Seismic bracing details for piping.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
 - B1.20.1-83.....Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
 - B16.1-98.....Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
 - B16.3-98.....Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings
 - B16.4-98.....Gray Iron Threaded Fittings
 - B16.5-03.....Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
 - B16.9-03.....Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings
 - B16.11-05.....Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
 - B16.14-91.....Ferrous Pipe Plugs, Bushings, and Locknuts with
Pipe Threads
 - B16.22-01.....Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint
Pressure Fittings
 - B16.23-02.....Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage
Fittings
 - B16.24-01.....Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged
Fittings, Class 150, 300, 400, 600, 900, 1500
and 2500
 - B16.39-98.....Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions, Classes
150, 250, and 300
 - B16.42-98.....Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings:
Classes 150 and 300
 - B31.1-01.....Power Piping
 - B31.9-04.....Building Services Piping
 - B40.100-05.....Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
 - BPVC-CC-N-04.....Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - A47/A47M-99 (2004).....Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
 - A53/A53M-06.....Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black
and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and
Seamless

- A106/A106M-06.....Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon
Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service
- A126-04.....Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings
- A181/A181M-01.....Standard Specification for Carbon Steel
Forgings, for General-Purpose Piping
- A183-03 Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Track
Bolts and Nuts
- A216/A216M-04 Standard Specification for Steel Castings,
Carbon, Suitable for Fusion Welding, for High
Temperature Service
- A285/A285M-03 Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel
Plates, Carbon Steel, Low-and-Intermediate-
Tensile Strength
- A307-04 Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts
and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength
- A516-06 Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel
Plates, Carbon Steel, for Moderate-and- Lower
Temperature Service
- A536-84 (2004) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
- B32-04 Standard Specification for Solder Metal
- B61-02 Standard Specification for Steam or Valve Bronze
Castings
- B62-02 Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or
Ounce Metal Castings
- B88-03 Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water
Tube
- F439-06 Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly
(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings,
Schedule 80
- F441/F441M-02 Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly
(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules
40 and 80
- D. American Welding Society (AWS):
- A5.8/A5.8M-04.....Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and
Braze Welding

- B2.1-02.....Standard Welding Procedure Specification
- E. Expansion Joint Manufacturer's Association, Inc. (EJMA):
- EMJA-2003.....Expansion Joint Manufacturer's Association
Standards, Eighth Edition
- F. Manufacturers Standardization Society (MSS) of the Valve and Fitting
Industry, Inc.:
- SP-67-02a.....Butterfly Valves
- SP-70-06.....Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded
Ends
- SP-71-05.....Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and
Threaded Ends
- SP-72-99.....Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends
for General Service
- SP-78-05.....Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded
Ends
- SP-80-03.....Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves
- SP-85-02.....Cast Iron Globe and Angle Valves, Flanged and
Threaded Ends
- G. Military Specifications (Mil. Spec.):
- MIL-S-901D-1989.....Shock Tests, H.I. (High Impact) Shipboard
Machinery, Equipment, and Systems
- H. National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors (NB): Relieving
Capacities of Safety Valves and Relief Valves
- I. Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association: TEMA 8th Edition, 2000

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS, PIPE SLEEVES, AND WALL AND CEILING PLATES

Provide in accordance with Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND
REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

2.2 PIPE AND TUBING

- A. Chilled Water, Condenser Water (above ground), Heating Hot Water, and
Vent Piping:
1. Steel: ASTM A53 Grade B, seamless or ERW, Schedule 40.
- B. Cooling Coil Condensate Drain Piping:
1. From fan coil or other terminal units: Copper water tube, ASTM B88,
Type L for runouts and Type M for mains.

2.3 FITTINGS FOR STEEL PIPE

- A. 65 mm (2-1/2 inches) and Larger: Welded or flanged joints. Mechanical
couplings and fittings are optional for water piping only.

1. Butt welding fittings: ASME B16.9 with same wall thickness as connecting piping. Elbows shall be long radius type, unless otherwise noted.
2. Welding flanges and bolting: ASME B16.5:
 - a. Steam service: Weld neck or slip-on, raised face, with non-asbestos gasket. Non-asbestos gasket shall either be stainless steel spiral wound strip with flexible graphite filler or compressed inorganic fiber with nitrile binder rated for saturated and superheated steam service 750 degrees F and 1500 psi.
 - b. Water service: Weld neck or slip-on, plain face, with 6 mm (1/8 inch) thick full face neoprene gasket suitable for 104 degrees C (220 degrees F).
 - 1) Contractor's option: Convoluted, cold formed 150 pound steel flanges, with teflon gaskets, may be used for water service.
 - c. Flange bolting: Carbon steel machine bolts or studs and nuts, ASTM A307, Grade B.
- B. 50 mm (2 inches) and Smaller: Screwed or welded. Mechanical couplings are optional for water piping only.
 1. Butt welding: ASME B16.9 with same wall thickness as connecting piping.
 2. Forged steel, socket welding or threaded: ASME B16.11.
 3. Screwed: 150 pound malleable iron, ASME B16.3. 125 pound cast iron, ASME B16.4, may be used in lieu of malleable iron, except for steam and steam condensate piping. Provide 300 pound malleable iron, ASME B16.3 for steam and steam condensate piping. Cast iron fittings are piping is not acceptable for steam and steam condensate piping. Bushing reduction of a single pipe size, or use of close nipples, is not acceptable.
 4. Unions: ASME B16.39.
 5. Water hose connection adapter: Brass, pipe thread to 20 mm (3/4 inch) garden hose thread, with hose cap nut.
- C. Welded Branch and Tap Connections: Forged steel weldolets, or branchlets and threadolets may be used for branch connections up to one pipe size smaller than the main. Forged steel half-couplings, ASME B16.11 may be used for drain, vent and gage connections.

D. Mechanical Pipe Couplings and Fittings: May be used, with cut or roll grooved pipe, in water service up to 110 degrees C (230 degrees F) in lieu of welded, screwed or flanged connections.

1. Grooved mechanical couplings: Malleable iron, ASTM A47 or ductile iron, ASTM A536, fabricated in two or more parts, securely held together by two or more track-head, square, or oval-neck bolts, ASTM A183.
2. Gaskets: Rubber product recommended by the coupling manufacturer for the intended service.
3. Grooved end fittings: Malleable iron, ASTM A47; ductile iron, ASTM A536; or steel, ASTM A53 or A106, designed to accept grooved mechanical couplings. Tap-in type branch connections are acceptable.

2.4 FITTINGS FOR COPPER TUBING

A. Solder Joint:

1. Joints shall be made up in accordance with recommended practices of the materials applied. Apply 95/5 tin and antimony on all copper piping.
2. Mechanically formed tee connection in water and drain piping: Form mechanically extracted collars in a continuous operation by drilling pilot hole and drawing out tube surface to form collar, having a height of not less than three times the thickness of tube wall. Adjustable collaring device shall insure proper tolerance and complete uniformity of the joint. Notch and dimple joining branch tube in a single process to provide free flow where the branch tube penetrates the fitting.

B. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24.

2.5 FITTINGS FOR PLASTIC PIPING

- A. Schedule 80, socket type for solvent welding.
- B. Polypropylene drain piping: Flame retardant, drainage pattern.
- C. Chemical feed piping for condenser water treatment: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC), Schedule 80, ASTM F439.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Provide where copper tubing and ferrous metal pipe are joined.
- B. 50 mm (2 inches) and Smaller: Threaded dielectric union, ASME B16.39.
- C. 65 mm (2 1/2 inches) and Larger: Flange union with dielectric gasket and bolt sleeves, ASME B16.42.

- D. Temperature Rating, 99 degrees C (210 degrees F) for water systems, 121 degrees C (250 degrees F) for steam condensate and as required for steam service.

2.7 SCREWED JOINTS

- A. Pipe Thread: ANSI B1.20.
- B. Lubricant or Sealant: Oil and graphite or other compound approved for the intended service.

2.8 VALVES

- A. Asbestos packing is not acceptable.
- B. All valves of the same type shall be products of a single manufacturer. Provide gate and globe valves with packing that can be replaced with the valve under full working pressure.
- C. Provide chain operators for valves 100 mm (4 inches) and larger when the centerline is located 2400 mm (8 feet) or more above the floor or operating platform.
- D. Gate Valves:
 - 1. 50 mm (2 inches) and smaller: MSS-SP80, Bronze, 1034 kPa (150 lb.), wedge disc, rising stem, union bonnet.
 - 2. 65 mm (2 1/2 inches) and larger: Flanged, outside screw and yoke.
 - a. High pressure steam 413 kPa (60 psig) and above nominal MPS system): Cast steel body, ASTM A216 grade WCB, 1034 kPa (150 psig) at 260 degrees C (500 degrees F), 11-1/2 to 13 percent chrome stainless steel solid disc and seats. Provide factory installed bypass with globe valve on valves 100 mm (4 inches) and larger.
 - b. All other services: MSS-SP 70, iron body, bronze mounted, 861 kPa (125 psig) wedge disc.
- E. Globe, Angle and Swing Check Valves:
 - 1. 50 mm (2 inches) and smaller: MSS-SP 80, bronze, 1034 kPa (150 lb.) Globe and angle valves shall be union bonnet with metal plug type disc.
 - 2. 65 mm (2 1/2 inches) and larger:
 - a. Globe valves for high pressure steam 413 kPa (60 psig) and above nominal MPS system): Cast steel body, ASTM A216 grade WCB, flanged, OS&Y, 1034 kPa (150 psig) at 260 degrees C (500 degrees F), 11-1/2 to 13 percent chrome stainless steel disc and renewable seat rings.

- b. All other services: 861 kPa (125 psig), flanged, iron body, bronze trim, MSS-SP-85 for globe valves and MSS-SP-71 for check valves.
- F. Non-Slam or Silent Check Valve: Spring loaded double disc swing check or internally guided flat disc lift type check for bubble tight shut-off. Provide where check valves are shown in chilled water and hot water piping. Check valves incorporating a balancing feature may be used.
 - 1. Body: Cast iron, ASTM A126, Class B, or steel, ASTM A216, Class WCB, or ductile iron, ASTM 536, flanged, grooved, or wafer type.
 - 2. Seat, disc and spring: 18-8 stainless steel, or bronze, ASTM B62. Seats may be elastomer material.
- G. Butterfly Valves: May be used in lieu of gate valves in water service except for direct buried pipe. Provide stem extension to allow 50 mm (2 inches) of pipe insulation without interfering with valve operation.
 - 1. MSS-SP 67, flange lug type (for end of line service) or grooved end rated 1205 kPa (175 psig) working pressure at 93 degrees C (200 degrees F).
 - a. Body: Cast iron, ASTM A126, Class B. Malleable iron, ASTM A47 electro-plated, or ductile iron, ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12 electro-plated.
 - b. Trim: Bronze, aluminum bronze, or 300 series stainless steel disc, bronze bearings, 316 stainless steel shaft and manufacturer's recommended resilient seat. Resilient seat shall be field replaceable, and fully line the body to completely isolate the body from the product. A phosphate coated steel shaft or stem is acceptable, if the stem is completely isolated from the product.
 - c. Actuators: Field interchangeable. Valves for balancing service shall have adjustable memory stop to limit open position.
 - 1) Valves 150 mm (6 inches) and smaller: Lever actuator with minimum of seven locking positions, except where chain wheel is required.
 - 2) Valves 200 mm (8 inches) and larger: Enclosed worm gear with handwheel, and where required, chain-wheel operator.
- H. Ball Valves: Brass or bronze body with chrome-plated ball with full port and Teflon seat at 2760 kPa (400 psig) working pressure rating.

Screwed or solder connections. Provide stem extension to allow operation without interfering with pipe insulation.

- I. Water Flow Balancing Valves: For flow regulation and shut-off. Valves shall be line size rather than reduced to control valve size and be one of the following types.
 - 1. Butterfly valve as specified herein with memory stop.
 - 2. Eccentric plug valve: Iron body, bronze or nickel-plated iron plug, bronze bearings, adjustable memory stop, operating lever, rated 861 kPa (125 psig) and 121 degrees C (250 degrees F).
- J. Circuit Setter Valve: A dual purpose flow balancing valve and adjustable flow meter, with bronze or cast iron body, calibrated position pointer, valved pressure taps or quick disconnects with integral check valves and preformed polyurethane insulating enclosure. Provide a readout kit including flow meter, readout probes, hoses, flow charts or calculator, and carrying case.
- K. Automatic Balancing Control Valves: Factory calibrated to maintain constant flow (plus or minus five percent) over system pressure fluctuations of at least 10 times the minimum required for control. Provide standard pressure taps and four sets of capacity charts. Valves shall be line size and be one of the following designs:
 - 1. Gray iron (ASTM A126) or brass body, rated 1205 kPa (175 psig) at 93 degrees C (200 degrees F), with stainless steel piston and spring.
 - 2. Brass or ferrous body designed for 2067 kPa (300 psig) service at 121 degrees C (250 degrees F), with corrosion resistant, tamper proof, self-cleaning piston/spring assembly that is easily removable for inspection or replacement.
 - 3. Combination assemblies containing ball type shut-off valves, unions, flow regulators, strainers with blowdown valves and pressure temperature ports shall be acceptable.
 - 4. Provide a readout kit including flow meter, probes, hoses, flow charts and carrying case.
- L. Manual Radiator/Convactor Valves: Brass, packless, with position indicator.

2.9 STRAINERS

- A. Basket or Y Type. Tee type is acceptable for water service.
- B. Screens: Bronze, monel metal or 18-8 stainless steel, free area not less than 2-1/2 times pipe area, with perforations as follows:

1. 75 mm (3 inches) and smaller: 1.1 mm (0.045 inch) diameter perforations for liquids.
2. 100 mm (4 inches) and larger: 3.2 mm (0.125 inch) diameter perforations for liquids.

E. Suction Diffusers: Specified in Section 15140, PUMPS (HVAC).

2.10 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS FOR WATER SERVICE

A. Flanged Spool Connector:

1. Single arch or multiple arch type. Tube and cover shall be constructed of chlorobutyl elastomer with full faced integral flanges to provide a tight seal without gaskets. Connectors shall be internally reinforced with high strength synthetic fibers impregnated with rubber or synthetic compounds as recommended by connector manufacturer, and steel reinforcing rings.
2. Working pressures and temperatures shall be as follows:
 - a. Connector sizes 50 mm to 100 mm (2 inches to 4 inches), 1137 kPa (165psig) at 121 degrees C (250 degrees F).
 - b. Connector sizes 125 mm to 300 mm (5 inches to 12 inches), 965 kPa (140 psig) at 121 degrees C (250 degrees F).
3. Provide ductile iron retaining rings and control units.

B. Mechanical Pipe Couplings:

See other fittings specified under Part 2, PRODUCTS.

2.11 GAGES, PRESSURE AND COMPOUND

- A. ASME B40.100, Accuracy Grade 1A, (pressure, vacuum, or compound for air, or water), initial mid-scale accuracy 1 percent of scale (Qualify grade), metal or phenolic case, 115 mm (4-1/2 inches) in diameter, 6 mm (1/4 inch) NPT bottom connection, white dial with black graduations and pointer, clear glass or acrylic plastic window, liquid filled gauges suitable for board mounting. Provide red "set hand" to indicate normal working pressure.
- B. Provide brass lever handle union cock. Provide brass/bronze pressure snubber for gages in water service. Provide brass pigtail syphon for steam gages.
- C. Range of Gages: For services not listed provide range equal to at least 130 percent of normal operating range:

Condenser water suction (compound)	-100 kPa (-30 inches Hg) to 700 kPa (15 psig).
------------------------------------	---

2.12 PRESSURE/TEMPERATURE TEST PROVISIONS

- A. Pete's Plug: 6 mm (1/4 inch) MPT by 75 mm (3 inches) long, brass body and cap, with retained safety cap, nordel self-closing valve cores, permanently installed in piping where shown, or in lieu of pressure gage test connections shown on the drawings.
- B. Provide one each of the following test items to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. 6 mm (1/4 inch) FPT by 3 mm (1/8 inch) diameter stainless steel pressure gage adapter probe for extra long test plug. PETE'S 500 XL is an example.
 - 2. 90 mm (3-1/2 inch) diameter, one percent accuracy, compound gage, , --100 kPa (30 inches) Hg to 700 kPa (100 psig) range.
 - 3. 0 - 104 degrees C (220 degrees F) pocket thermometer one-half degree accuracy, 25 mm (one inch) dial, 125 mm (5 inch) long stainless steel stem, plastic case.

2.13 THERMOMETERS

- A. Mercury or organic liquid filled type, red or blue column, clear plastic window, with 150 mm (6 inch) brass stem, straight, fixed or adjustable angle as required for each in reading.
- B. Case: Chrome plated brass or aluminum with enamel finish.
- C. Scale: Not less than 225 mm (9 inches), range as described below, two degree graduations.
- D. Separable Socket (Well): Brass, extension neck type to clear pipe insulation.
- E. Scale ranges may be slightly greater than shown to meet manufacturer's standard. Required ranges in degrees C (F):

Chilled Water and Glycol-Water 0 to 38 degrees C (32-100 degrees F)	Hot Water and Glycol-Water -1 to 116 degrees C (30 to 240 degrees F).
---	---

2.14 FIRESTOPPING MATERIAL

Refer to Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

2.15 ELECTRICAL HEAT TRACING SYSTEMS

- A. Systems shall meet requirements of the National Electrical Code (NEC), Section 427.
- B. Provide tracing for outdoor winterized piping as follows:
 - 1. Condenser water piping for cooling towers.
 - 2. Domestic water lines exposed to weather.

- C. Heating Cable: Flexible, parallel circuit construction consisting of a continuous self-limiting resistance, conductive inner core material between two parallel copper bus wires, designed for cut-to-length at the job site and for wrapping around valves and complex fittings. Self-regulation shall prevent overheating and burnouts even where the cable overlaps itself.
1. Provide end seals at ends of circuits. Wire at the ends of the circuits are not to be tied together.
 2. Provide sufficient cable, as recommended by the manufacturer, to keep the pipe surface at 2.2 degrees C (36 degrees F) minimum during winter outdoor design temperature, but not less than the following:
 - a. 75 mm (3 inch) pipe and smaller with 25 mm (1 inch) thick insulation: 4 watts per foot of pipe.
 - b. 100 mm 300 mm (foot) pipe and larger 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) thick insulation: 8 watts per 300 mm (foot) of pipe.
- D. Electrical Heating Tracing Accessories:
1. Power supply connection fitting and stainless steel mounting brackets. Provide stainless steel worm gear clamp to fasten bracket to pipe.
 2. 13 mm (1/2 inch) wide fiberglass reinforced pressure sensitive cloth tape to fasten cable to pipe at 300 mm (12 inch) intervals.
 3. Pipe surface temperature control thermostat: Cast aluminum, NEMA 4 (watertight) enclosure, 15 mm (1/2 inch) NPT conduit hub, SPST switch rated 20 amps at 480 volts AC, with capillary and copper bulb sensor. Set thermostat to maintain pipe surface temperature at not less than 1.1 degrees C (34 degrees F).
 4. Signs: Manufacturer's standard (NEC Code), stamped "ELECTRIC TRACED" located on the insulation jacket at 3000 mm (10 feet) intervals along the pipe on alternating sides.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. The drawings show the general arrangement of pipe and equipment but do not show all required fittings and offsets that may be necessary to connect pipes to equipment, fan-coils, coils, radiators, etc., and to coordinate with other trades. Provide all necessary fittings, offsets and pipe runs based on field measurements and at no additional cost to the government. Coordinate with other trades for space available and relative location of HVAC equipment and accessories to be connected on

ceiling grid. Pipe location on the drawings shall be altered by contractor where necessary to avoid interferences and clearance difficulties.

- B. Store materials to avoid excessive exposure to weather or foreign materials. Keep inside of piping relatively clean during installation and protect open ends when work is not in progress.
- C. Support piping securely. Refer to PART 3, Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- D. Install piping generally parallel to walls and column center lines, unless shown otherwise on the drawings. Space piping, including insulation, to provide 25 mm (one inch) minimum clearance between adjacent piping or other surface. Unless shown otherwise, slope steam, condensate and drain piping down in the direction of flow not less than 25 mm (one inch) in 12 m (40 feet). Provide eccentric reducers to keep bottom of sloped piping flat.
- E. Locate and orient valves to permit proper operation and access for maintenance of packing, seat and disc. Generally locate valve stems in overhead piping in horizontal position. Provide a union adjacent to one end of all threaded end valves. Control valves usually require reducers to connect to pipe sizes shown on the drawing. Install butterfly valves with the valve open as recommended by the manufacturer to prevent binding of the disc in the seat.
- F. Offset equipment connections to allow valving off for maintenance and repair with minimal removal of piping. Provide flexibility in equipment connections and branch line take-offs with 3-elbow swing joints where noted on the drawings.
- G. Tee water piping runouts or branches into the side of mains or other branches. Avoid bull-head tees, which are two return lines entering opposite ends of a tee and exiting out the common side.
- H. Provide manual air vent at all piping system high points and drain valves at all low points.
- I. Connect piping to equipment as shown on the drawings. Install components furnished by others such as:
 - 1. Flow elements (orifice unions), control valve bodies, flow switches, pressure taps with valve, and wells for sensors.
- J. Thermometer Wells: In pipes 65 mm (2-1/2 inches) and smaller increase the pipe size to provide free area equal to the upstream pipe area.

- K. Firestopping: Fill openings around uninsulated piping penetrating floors or fire walls, with firestop material. For firestopping insulated piping refer to Section 15250, INSULATION.
- L. Where copper piping is connected to steel piping, provide dielectric connections.

3.2 PIPE JOINTS

- A. Welded: Beveling, spacing and other details shall conform to ASME B31.1 and AWS B2.1. See Welder's qualification requirements under "Quality Assurance" in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Screwed: Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20; joint compound shall be applied to male threads only and joints made up so no more than three threads show. Coat exposed threads on steel pipe with joint compound, or red lead paint for corrosion protection.
- C. Mechanical Joint: Pipe grooving shall be in accordance with joint manufacturer's specifications. Lubricate gasket exterior including lips, pipe ends and housing interiors to prevent pinching the gasket during installation. Lubricant shall be as recommended by coupling manufacturer.
- D. 125 Pound Cast Iron Flange (Plain Face): Mating flange shall have raised face, if any, removed to avoid overstressing the cast iron flange.
- E. Solvent Welded Joints: As recommended by the manufacturer.

3.3 SEISMIC BRACING

Provide in accordance with Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

3.4 LEAK TESTING

- A. Inspect all joints and connections for leaks and workmanship and make corrections as necessary, to the satisfaction of the Resident Engineer. Tests may be either of those below, or a combination, as approved by the Resident Engineer.
- B. An operating test at design pressure, and for hot systems, design maximum temperature.
- C. A hydrostatic test at 1.5 times design pressure. For water systems the design maximum pressure would usually be the static head, or expansion tank maximum pressure, plus pump head. Factory tested equipment (coils, etc.) need not be field tested. Isolate equipment where necessary to avoid excessive pressure on mechanical seals and safety devices.

3.5 FLUSHING AND CLEANING PIPING SYSTEMS

- A. Water Piping: Clean systems as recommended by the suppliers of chemicals specified in Section 15704, WATER TREATMENT (HVAC).
1. Initial flushing: Remove loose dirt, mill scale, metal chips, weld beads, rust, and like deleterious substances without damage to any system component. Provide temporary piping or hose to bypass coils, control valves, exchangers and other factory cleaned equipment unless acceptable means of protection are provided and subsequent inspection of hide-out areas takes place. Isolate or protect clean system components, including pumps and pressure vessels, and remove any component which may be damaged. Open all valves, drains, vents and strainers at all system levels. Remove plugs, caps, spool pieces, and components to facilitate early debris discharge from system. Sectionalize system to obtain debris carrying velocity of 1.8 m/S (6 feet per second), if possible. Connect dead-end supply and return headers as necessary. Flush bottoms of risers. Install temporary strainers where necessary to protect down-stream equipment. Supply and remove flushing water and drainage by various type hose, temporary and permanent piping and Contractor's booster pumps. Flush until clean as approved by the Resident Engineer.
 2. Cleaning: Using products supplied in Section 15704, WATER TREATMENT, (HVAC), circulate systems at normal temperature to remove adherent organic soil, hydrocarbons, flux, pipe mill varnish, pipe joint compounds, iron oxide, and like deleterious substances not removed by flushing, without chemical or mechanical damage to any system component. Removal of tightly adherent mill scale is not required. Keep isolated equipment which is "clean" and where dead-end debris accumulation cannot occur. Sectionalize system if possible, to circulate at velocities not less than 1.8 m/S (6 feet per second). Circulate each section for not less than four hours. Blow-down all strainers, or remove and clean as frequently as necessary. Drain and prepare for final flushing.
 3. Final Flushing: Return systems to conditions required by initial flushing after all cleaning solution has been displaced by clean make-up. Flush all dead ends and isolated clean equipment. Gently operate all valves to dislodge any debris in valve body by throttling velocity. Flush for not less than one hour.

3.6 ELECTRIC HEAT TRACING

- A. Install tracing as recommended by the manufacturer.
- B. Coordinate electrical connections.

3.7 OPERATING AND PERFORMANCE TEST AND INSTRUCTION

- A. Refer to PART 3, Section 15050, BASIC METHOD AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Adjust red set hand on pressure gages to normal working pressure.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 15712
COOLING TOWER, PACKAGED**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

Packaged, induced draft cooling tower complete with fill, fan, louvers and associated accessories and equipment.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. [Section 03300](#), CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE: Requirements for concrete inertia bases.
- B. Seismic Restraint for Equipment: Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.//
- C. [Section 15050](#), BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL): General mechanical requirements and items, which are common to more than one item.
- D. [Section 15200](#), NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL: Requirements for vibration isolation.
- E. [Section 15704](#), WATER TREATMENT: Requirements for condenser water treatment.
- F. Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEM: Requirements for water piping and fittings.
- G. [Section 15840](#), DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES: Requirements for sheet metal ductwork.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to Article, QUALITY ASSURANCE, in specification [Section 15050](#), BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Design Criteria:
 - 1. Design to withstand existing wind load.
 - 2. Free water drift loss shall not be greater than five hundredths of one percent of the water circulated to tower.
- C. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Manufacturer shall certify that performance of cooling towers will meet contract requirements, stating entering air wet bulb temperature, entering and leaving condenser water temperatures, water flow rates, fan kW (horsepower), and pump head at base of tower. Certification shall be made at the time of submittal.
 - 2. Cooling Tower Institute (CTI) Certified Towers: These towers shall have been tested, rated, and certified in accordance with Cooling Tower Institute (CTI) Standard 201, and shall bear the

CTI certification label, and shall be listed in the CTI directory of certified cooling towers.

3. Non-CTI certified Cooling towers: If CTI certification is not available, manufacturer for towers of 700 kW (200 tons) or larger, shall submit curves showing predicted performance as required in ASME PTC-23, or CTI Bulletin ATC-105 for Water Cooling Towers, and CTI Bulletin ATC-105S for Closed Circuit Cooling Towers. These towers shall be tested in the field as specified in Section 3 of this specification.
4. The alignment and balancing of the fans, motors and drive shaft as installed shall operate within the vibration tolerance specified in specification [Section 15200](#), NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with specification [Section 01340](#), SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Shop Drawings
 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 2. Include rated capacities, pressure drop, fan performance and rating curves, dimensions, weights, mounting details, front view, side view, equipment and device arrangement.
 3. Include electrical rating, detail wiring for power, signals and controls.
 4. Sound curves and characteristics of sound attenuators if required to meet the noise criteria.
- C. Certification:
 1. Submit four copies of performance curves, for CTI certified cooling towers, showing compliance with actual conditions specified, to the Resident Engineer two weeks prior to delivery of the equipment.
 2. Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Certification from the manufacturer that the cooling tower(s), accessories, and components will withstand the seismic forces as defined by project location and that the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event at the project site.

- b. Certification by the manufacturer that the cooling towers conform to the requirements of the drawings and specifications.
- c. Certification by the Contractor that the cooling towers have been properly installed, adjusted, and tested.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American National Standard Institute (ANSI):
 - A10.18-83.....Construction and Demolition Operations -
Temporary Floor and Wall Openings, Flat
Roofs, Stairs, Railings, and Toeboards -
Safety E
- C. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
 - PTC 23-R97.....Atmospheric Water Cooling Equipment
Requirements (Performance Test Codes)
- D. American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM):
 - A385-00.....Standard Practice for Providing High-
Quality Zinc Coatings (Hot-Dip)
 - B117-97.....Standard Practice for Salt Spray (Fog)
Testing
 - B209-00.....Standard practice for Aluminum and
Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate
 - E84-Rev A00.....Standard Test methods for Surface Burning
Characteristics of Building Materials
- E. Cooling Tower Institute (CTI):
 - ATC-105-00.....Acceptance Test Code for Water-Cooling
Towers (CTI Code Tower Standard
Specifications)
 - ATC-105S-96.....Acceptance Test Code for Closed Circuit
Cooling Towers (CTI Code Tower Standard
Specifications)
 - 201-96.....Standard for Certification of Water
Cooling Tower Performance (CTI Code Tower
Standard Specifications)
- F. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
 - MG1-98.....Motors and Generators (Revision 1-2000)
 - 250-97.....Enclosure for Electrical Equipment (1000
Volts Maximum)
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

70-02.....National Electrical Code

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INDUCED DRAFT COOLING TOWER:

- A. Casing: Heavy gage galvanized Steel.
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A653/A653M, and having G235 (Z700) coating.
 - 2. Fasteners: Zinc or cadmium coated bolts or tapping screws for assembly. Use stainless steel washers with neoprene backing where required for preventing leaks.
 - 3. Joints: Sealed watertight.
 - 4. Welded connections continuous and watertight.
- B. Framing:
 - 1. Rolled structural steel shapes, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication or structural shapes cold formed from galvanized steel sheets or plates, complying with ASTM A653/A653M, and having G235 (Z700) coating.
- C. Louvers:
 - 1. Minimum splash out type. Material for the louvers shall be similar to the casing or may be PVC if formed integral with the fill material.
 - 2. 25 mm (1 inch) inlet screen, hot dipped galvanized steel or copper stainless steel. Attach the screen securely to air intakes.
- D. Fill:
 - 1. PVC or FRP resistant to rot, decay and biological attack; with a maximum flame spread rating of five per ASTM E84 and fabricated, formed and installed by manufacturer to ensure that water breaks up into droplets.
- E. Drift Eliminators: Same as fill material. Eliminators shall ensure a maximum drift rate of 0.002 percent of recirculated water.
- F. Hot Water Distribution System: Open basin, flume and troughs, or a pipe system with nozzles spaced for even distribution of water over fill material. Provide access door. System shall be self-draining and non-clogging. Spray nozzles, if used, shall be cleanable stainless steel, bronze or high impact plastic, non-clog, removable type properly spaced for even distribution. Provide cover for entire nozzle area or flume/trough area.
- G. Collecting Basin: Material same as the unit casing or concrete in accordance with manufacturer's standard details. Outlet pump may also be of heavy glass-reinforced polyester (GRP) for depressed

side outlet type. Provide a bronze make-up water float valve, overflow, drain not less than 50-mm (2 inches) suction connections, and outlet sump of size and depth to prevent cavitation and air entrainment in pump. Provide the following accessories:

1. Manufacturer's standard bronze make up water float valve with an adjustable linkage or Electric float switch and a solenoid operated make-up valve.
 2. Removable basin strainer, constructed of 304 stainless steel, shall have openings smaller than nozzle orifices.
 3. Make-up water, overflow and drain connections.
 4. Equalizer connection (multiple cooling tower systems).
- H. Fans: Propeller type constructed of hot-dip galvanized steel, cast aluminum or aluminum alloy, glass fiber reinforced polyester or glass reinforced epoxy, statically and dynamically balanced at factory for quiet, and efficient operation. Forced-draft towers shall be centrifugal type only. Fans for induced-draft towers of 350 kW (100 tons) and less, and for forced-draft towers shall be belt driven.
1. For induced draft towers larger than 350 kW (100 tons), fan shall be driven through a gear reducer, or driven by a special V belt.
 2. Gear reducer drive: Specially designed for cooling tower operation, with dynamically balanced drive shaft assembly or shock absorbent flexible coupling requiring no lubrication, cast iron case with readily accessible oil drum and fill, and self-contained oil reservoir sealed against water entrance.
 3. Fan shall be driven by a one-piece, multi-groove, neoprene/polyester belt, where this is the manufacturer's standard.
 4. The alignment and balancing of the fans, motors and drive shaft as installed shall operate within the vibration tolerance specified in specification [Section 15200](#), NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.
 5. Motors and Motor Controllers: Provide variable speed motors and controllers, if shown on drawings for cooling tower fans. See specification [Section 15050](#), BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
 6. In addition to the requirements of Section, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL). The following shall apply:

- a. Motors: Totally enclosed, epoxy encapsulated or totally enclosed fan cooled (TEFC) conforming to NEMA 250.
 - b. Lubrication fittings shall be readily accessible outside the wet air stream. Provide access doors for inspection and cleaning.
 - c. Fans over 1500 mm (60 inches) in diameter include a vibration cutout switch located in a protected position to effectively monitor fan vibration. Vibration switch shall be solid-state with adjustable time delay in NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure. It shall stop fan motor under excessive fan vibration.
- I. Safety: Provide fan guards, ladders, handrails and platform in conformance with the ANSI A10.18 as follows:
- 1. Fan Guard: Removable fan discharge with a rigid framed screen guard, installed over the fan cylinder.
 - 2. Ladders: Vertical hot-dip galvanized steel or aluminum ladder for each tower located outdoors. Ladders higher than 3.6 meters (12 feet) shall have safety cage. Ladders shall extend to within 300 mm (one foot) of the grade or the roof deck surface.
 - 3. Hand Railing: Steel or aluminum hand railings not less than 1070 mm (42 inches) high around perimeter of each fan-deck, or working surface 3.6 meters (12 feet) or more above ground, roof or other supporting construction. Handrails shall meet OSHA Standards.
 - 4. Platform: Galvanized steel with a bar grating floor.
- J. Electric Heat Tracing: Provide in specification [Section 15705,](#) HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cooling tower according to equipment manufacturer's written instruction.
- B. Install cooling towers plumb, level and anchored on structure provided. Coordinate steel structure with cooling tower mounting requirements. If installed on concrete base, refer to Division 3 of specification for concrete materials and installation requirements.
- C. Install vibration controls according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Maintain recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

E. Piping:

1. Install piping, including flanges or union adjacent to cooling towers to allow for service and maintenance.
2. Install flexible pipe connectors at connections to cooling towers mounted on vibration isolators.
3. Install shutoff/balancing valves at cooling tower inlet connections.
4. Connect overflow drain and blow down lines to sanitary sewage system.

F. Seismic Restraints: Provide in accordance with Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

G. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices, components and accessories furnished loose by manufacturer, including remote flow switches and variable frequency drives.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Provide the services of an independent testing and inspection agency to perform the field tests and inspections of non-CTI certified cooling towers, 700 kW (200 tons) and larger, according to ASME PTC-23 "Performance Test Code on Cooling Tower Equipment" Cooling Tower Institute ATC-105 for Cooling Towers. Submit qualification of the independent testing agency to the Resident Engineer two weeks prior to the inspection for approval.
- B. If the cooling tower does not meet the specified performance, the Contractor shall make the tower corrections necessary to bring the tower into compliance with the specified performance including replacing the tower if necessary. Additional tests will be required until the tower meets the specified performance. Costs for the tower corrections or replacement, and tests shall be borne by the Contractor. However, the VA will pay for the initial test, when requested, if the cooling tower of less than 200 tons meets the specified performance.

3.3 STARTUP AND TESTING

- A. Provide the services of a factory-authorized and qualified representative to perform start up service.
- B. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
- C. Obtain and review performance curves and tables.
- D. Perform startup checks, according to manufacturer's written instructions, and as noted below:
 1. Check clearances for airflow and tower servicing.
 2. Check for vibration isolation and structural support.

3. Verify fan rotation for correct direction. Correct rotation if needed.
4. Adjust belts to proper alignment and tension.
5. Lubricate rotating parts.
6. Operate equipment controls and safeties.
7. Verify that tower discharge is high enough and it does not recirculate into air intake. Recommend corrective action.
- E. Adjust water level for proper operating level and balance condenser water flow to each tower inlet.
- F. Check water treatment water system, including blow down for proper operation of the tower.
- G. Start cooling tower, including condenser water pumps and verify the tower operation.
- H. Prepare and submit a written report of startup and inspection service to the Resident Engineer.

3.4 TRAINING:

- A. Furnish the services of a competent, factory-trained engineer or technician for a 2-hour period for instructing VA personnel in operation and maintenance of the equipment, including review of the operation and maintenance manual, on a date requested by the Resident Engineer. Coordinate this training with that of the chiller, if furnished together.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 15740
TERMINAL UNITS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

Fan-coil units.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Seismic restraints for equipment.
- B. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL): General mechanical requirements and items, which are common to more than one section of Division 15.
- C. Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL: Noise requirements.
- D. Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEM: Heating hot water and chilled water piping.
- E. Section 15840, DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES: Ducts and flexible connectors.
- F. Section 15902, CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTATION (DDC): Valve operators.
- G. Section 15980, TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING: Flow rates adjusting and balancing.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Refer to Paragraph, QUALITY ASSURANCE, in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Fan-Coil units.
- C. Certificates:
 - 1. Compliance with paragraph, QUALITY ASSURANCE.
 - 2. Compliance with specified standards.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Submit in accordance with paragraph, INSTRUCTIONS, in Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI):
 - 440-05.....Room Fan Coils

C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

90A-02.....Standard for the Installation of Air
Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

70-05.....National Electrical Code

D. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

181-05.....Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air
Connectors

1995-05.....Heating and Cooling Equipment

1.6 GUARANTY

In accordance with Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOM FAN-COIL UNITS

A. Capacity Certification: ARI 440.

B. Safety Compliance: NEC compliant and UL listed.

C. Noise Levels: Operating at full cooling capacity, sound power level shall not exceed by more than 5 dB the numerical value of sound pressure levels associated with noise criteria specified in Section, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL. Select units at intermediate speed, for compliance with the noise criteria.

D. Chassis: Galvanized steel, acoustically and thermally insulated to attenuate noise and prevent condensation.

E. Cabinet Type: Not lighter than 1.3 mm (18 gage) steel, reinforced and braced. Arrange components and provide adequate space for installation of piping package and control valves. Finish shall be factory-baked enamel color as selected by the architect.

1. Horizontal Unit: Hinged bottom access panel with cam-lock fasteners. Provide stamped integral discharged grilles in front of cabinet.

F. Fans: Centrifugal, direct drive, galvanized steel or polyester resin.

1. Motors: 3-speed permanent split capacitor type with integral thermal overload protection, for operation at not more than 1200 RPM.

2. Provide a fan speed selector switch, with off, low, medium, and high positions. Switch shall have a set of auxiliary contacts which are open when the switch is in the "off" position and closed when the switch in any of the other positions. On horizontal units, switch shall be wall mounted.

G. Cooling and Heating Coils:

1. Hydronic (two separate coils for cooling and heating): Copper tubes, 10 mm (three-eighths inch) minimum inside diameter, not less than

- 4.3 mm (0.017 inch) thick with copper or aluminum fins. Coils shall be pressure tested for bursting and strength in accordance with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for pressure tested coils, and shall be designed to provide adequate heat transfer capacity. Provide manual air vent at high point of each coil and drain at each low point.
- H. Piping Package: Furnished with unit by the manufacturer to fit control valves provided by the controls supplier. Submit manufacturer's detailed drawings of the piping in the end compartments for approval prior to fabrication of the piping packages. Provide ball stop valves on the supply and return pipes and balancing fittings on the return pipes.
- I. Drain pans: Furnish galvanized steel with solderless drain connections and molded polystyrene foam insulating liner:
1. Auxiliary drain pan: Located under control valve and piping to prevent dripping.
- J. Air Filter: Manufacturer's standard throwaway type, not less than two inches thick, supported to be concealed from sight and be tight fitting to prevent air by-pass. Filters shall have slide out frames and be easily replaced without removing enclosure or any part thereof.
- K. Control valves are to be field installed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Work shall be installed as shown and according to the manufacturer's diagrams and recommendations.
- B. Handle and install units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Support units rigidly so they remain stationary at all times. Cross-bracing or other means of stiffening shall be provided as necessary. Method of support shall be such that distortion and malfunction of units cannot occur.

3.2 OPERATIONAL TEST

Refer to Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 15840
DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Ductwork and accessories for HVAC including the following:
 - 1. Supply air, return air, outside air, exhaust, and relief systems.
- B. Definitions:
 - 1. SMACNA Standards as used in this specification means the HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible.
 - 2. Seal or Sealing: Use of liquid or mastic sealant, with or without compatible tape overlay, or gasketing of flanged joints, to keep air leakage at duct joints, seams and connections to an acceptable minimum.
 - 3. Duct Pressure Classification: SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible.
 - 4. Exposed Duct: Exposed to view in a finished room.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Fire Stopping Material: Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING.
- B. Outdoor Louvers: Section 10200, LOUVERS AND WALL VENTS.
- C. Seismic Reinforcing: Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.
- D. General Mechanical Requirements: Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- E. Noise Level Requirements: Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.
- F. Duct Insulation: Section 15250, INSULATION.
- G. Plumbing Connections: Section 15400, PLUMBING SYSTEMS.
- H. Air Filters and Filters' Efficiencies: Section 15885, AIR FILTERS.
- I. Duct Mounted Instrumentation: Section 15902, CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTATION (DDC).
- J. Testing and Balancing of Air Flows: Section 15980, TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING.
- K. Smoke Detectors: Section 13850, FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to article, QUALITY ASSURANCE, in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Fire Safety Code: Comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Duct System Construction and Installation: Referenced SMACNA Standards are the minimum acceptable quality.

- D. Duct Sealing, Air Leakage Criteria, and Air Leakage Tests: Ducts shall be sealed as per duct sealing requirements of SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual for duct pressure classes shown on the drawings.
- E. Duct accessories exposed to the air stream, such as dampers of all types and access openings, shall be of the same material as the duct or provide at least the same level of corrosion resistance.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Rectangular ducts:
 - a. Schedules of duct systems, materials and selected SMACNA construction alternatives for joints, sealing, gage and reinforcement.
 - b. Duct liner.
 - c. Sealants and gaskets.
 - d. Access doors.
 - 2. Round and flat oval duct construction details:
 - a. Manufacturer's details for duct fittings.
 - b. Duct liner.
 - c. Sealants and gaskets.
 - d. Access sections.
 - e. Installation instructions.
 - 3. Volume dampers, back draft dampers.
 - 4. Upper hanger attachments.
 - 5. Fire dampers, fire doors, and smoke dampers with installation instructions.
 - 6. Sound attenuators, including pressure drop and acoustic performance.
 - 7. Flexible ducts and clamps, with manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 8. Flexible connections.
 - 9. Air intake/exhaust hoods.
 - 10. Instrument test fittings.
 - 11. Perforated distribution plates.
 - 12. Diffusers, registers, grilles and accessories.
 - 13. Details and design analysis of alternate or optional duct systems.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Refer to article, SUBMITTALS, in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

B. Air Diffusion Council Test Code:

1062 GRD-84.....Certification, Rating, and Test Manual 4th
Edition

C. Air Moving and Conditioning Association (AMCA):

500D-98.....Laboratory Method of Testing Dampers for Rating

500L-99.....Laboratory Method of Testing Louvers for Rating

D. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):

ASCE7-98.....Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other
Structures

E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

A167-99.....Standard Specification for Stainless and
Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate,
Sheet and Strip

A653-01.....Standard Specification for Steel Sheet,
Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy
coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip process

A1011-02.....Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip
Hot rolled Carbon structural, High-Strength Low-
Alloy and High Strength Low-Alloy with Improved
Formability

B209-01.....Standard Specification for Aluminum and
Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

C1071-00.....Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct
Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing
Material)

E84-01.....Standard Test Method for Surface Burning
Characteristics of Building Materials

F. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

90A-99.....Standard for the Installation of Air
Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

G. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
(SMACNA):

2nd Edition - 1995.....HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and
Flexible

1st Edition, 1985.....HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual

6th Edition - 1992.....Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards

H. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

33-93.....UL Standard for Safety Heat Responsive Links for
Fire Protection Service

181-96.....UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts
and Connectors

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DUCT MATERIALS AND SEALANTS

- A. General: Except for systems specified otherwise, construct ducts, casings, and accessories of galvanized sheet steel, ASTM A527, coating G90; or, aluminum sheet, ASTM B209, alloy 1100, 3003 or 5052.
- B. Specified Corrosion Resistant Systems: Stainless steel sheet, ASTM A167, Class 302 or 304, Condition A (annealed) Finish No. 4 for exposed ducts and Finish No. 2B for concealed duct or ducts located in mechanical rooms.
- C. Joint Sealing: Refer to SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards, paragraph S1.9.
 - 1. Sealant: Elastomeric compound, gun or brush grade, maximum 25 flame spread and 50 smoke developed (dry state) compounded specifically for sealing ductwork as recommended by the manufacturer. Generally provide liquid sealant, with or without compatible tape, for low clearance slip joints and heavy, permanently elastic, mastic type where clearances are larger. Oil base caulking and glazing compounds are not acceptable because they do not retain elasticity and bond.
 - 2. Tape: Use only tape specifically designated by the sealant manufacturer and apply only over wet sealant. Pressure sensitive tape shall not be used on bare metal or on dry sealant.
 - 3. Gaskets in Flanged Joints: Soft neoprene.
- D. Approved factory made joints such as DUCTMATE SYSTEM may be used.

2.2 DUCT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Follow SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.
- B. Duct Pressure Class: 750 Pa, 3 inch W.G.
- C. Seal Class: As shown on the drawings and in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual.
- D. Duct for Negative Pressure Up to 750 Pa (3 inch W.G.).
 - 1. Round Duct: Galvanized steel, spiral lock seam construction with standard slip joints.
 - 2. Rectangular Duct: Galvanized steel, minimum 1.0 mm (20 gage), Pittsburgh lock seam, companion angle joints 32 mm by 3.2 mm (1-1/4 by 1/8 inch) minimum at not more than 2.4 m (8 feet) spacing. DUCTMATE SYSTEM or equal manufactured joints are acceptable in lieu of companion angles.
- K. Round and Flat Oval Ducts: Furnish duct and fittings made by the same manufacturer to insure good fit of slip joints. When submitted and approved in advance, round and flat oval duct, with size converted on the basis of equal pressure drop, may be furnished in lieu of rectangular duct design shown on the drawings.

1. Elbows: Diameters 80 through 200 mm (3 through 8 inches) shall be two sections die stamped, all others shall be gored construction, maximum 18 degree angle, with all seams continuously welded or standing seam. Coat galvanized areas of fittings damaged by welding with corrosion resistant aluminum paint or galvanized repair compound.
2. Provide bell mouth, conical tees or taps, laterals, reducers, and other low loss fittings as shown in SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.
3. Ribbed Duct Option: Lighter gage round/oval duct and fittings may be furnished provided certified tests indicating that the rigidity and performance is equivalent to SMACNA standard gage ducts are submitted.
 - a. Ducts: Manufacturer's published standard gage, G90 coating, spiral lock seam construction with an intermediate standing rib.
 - b. Fittings: May be manufacturer's standard as shown in published catalogs, fabricated by spot welding and bonding with neoprene base cement or machine formed seam in lieu of continuous welded seams.
4. Provide flat side reinforcement of oval ducts as recommended by the manufacturer and SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standard S3.13.
Because of high pressure loss, do not use internal tie-rod reinforcement unless approved by the Resident Engineer.
- L. Casings and Plenums: Construct in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards Section 6, including curbs, access doors, pipe penetrations, eliminators and drain pans. Access doors shall be hollow metal, insulated, with latches and door pulls, 500 mm (20 inches) wide by 1200 - 1350 mm (48 - 54 inches) high. Provide view port in the doors where shown. Provide drain for outside air louver plenum. Outside air plenum shall have exterior insulation. Drain piping shall be routed to the nearest floor drain.
- M. Volume Dampers: Single blade or opposed blade, multi-louver type as detailed in SMACNA Standards. Refer to SMACNA Detail Figure 2-12 for Single Blade and Figure 2.13 for Multi-blade Volume Dampers.
- N. Duct Hangers and Supports: Refer to SMACNA Standards Section IV. Avoid use of trapeze hangers for round duct.

2.3 DUCT ACCESS DOORS, PANELS AND SECTIONS

- A. Provide access doors, sized and located for maintenance work, upstream, in the following locations:
 1. Each duct mounted smoke detector.

B. Openings shall be as large as feasible in small ducts, 300 mm by 300 mm (12 inch by 12 inch) minimum where possible. Access sections in insulated ducts shall be double-wall, insulated. Transparent shatterproof covers are preferred for uninsulated ducts.

1. For rectangular ducts: Refer to SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards (Figure 2-12).
2. For round and flat oval duct: Refer to SMACNA HVAC duct Construction Standards (Figure 2-11).

2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

Refer to Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

2.5 FIRESTOPPING MATERIAL

Refer to Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING.

2.6 SEISMIC RESTRAINT FOR DUCTWORK

Refer to Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

2.7 INSTRUMENT TEST FITTINGS

- A. Manufactured type with a minimum 50 mm (two inch) length for insulated duct, and a minimum 25 mm (one inch) length for duct not insulated. Test hole shall have a flat gasket for rectangular ducts and a concave gasket for round ducts at the base, and a screw cap to prevent air leakage.
- B. Provide instrument test holes at each duct or casing mounted temperature sensor or transmitter, and at entering and leaving side of each heating coil and cooling coil.

2.8 AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

A. Materials:

1. Steel or aluminum. Provide manufacturer's standard gasket.
2. Exposed Fastenings: The same material as the respective inlet or outlet. Fasteners for aluminum may be stainless steel.
3. Contractor shall review all ceiling drawings and details and provide all ceiling mounted devices with appropriate dimensions and trim for the specific locations.

B. Performance Test Data: In accordance with Air Diffusion Council Code 1062GRD. Refer to Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL for NC criteria.

C. Air Supply Outlets:

1. Registers: Double deflection type with horizontal face bars and opposed blade damper with removable key operator.
 - a. Margin: Flat, 30 mm (1-1/4 inches) wide.
 - b. Bar spacing: 20 mm (3/4 inch) maximum.

c. Finish: Off white baked enamel for ceiling mounted units. Wall units shall have a prime coat for field painting, or shall be extruded with manufacturer's standard finish.

2. Grilles: Same as registers but without the opposed blade damper.

2.9 WIRE MESH GRILLE

A. Fabricate grille with 2 x 2 mesh 13 mm (1/2 inch) galvanized steel or aluminum hardware cloth in a spot welded galvanized steel frame with approximately 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) margin.

B. Use grilles where shown in unfinished areas such as mechanical rooms.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with provisions of Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL), particularly regarding coordination with other trades and work in existing buildings.

B. Fabricate and install ductwork and accessories in accordance with referenced SMACNA Standards:

1. Drawings show the general layout of ductwork and accessories but do not show all required fittings and offsets that may be necessary to connect ducts to equipment, boxes, diffusers, grilles, etc., and to coordinate with other trades. Fabricate ductwork based on field measurements. Provide all necessary fittings and offsets at no additional cost to the government. Coordinate with other trades for space available and relative location of HVAC equipment and accessories. Duct sizes on the drawings are inside dimensions which shall be altered by Contractor to other dimensions with the same air handling characteristics where necessary to avoid interferences and clearance difficulties.

2. Provide duct transitions, offsets and connections to dampers, coils, and other equipment in accordance with SMACNA Standards, Section II. Provide streamliner, when an obstruction cannot be avoided and must be taken in by a duct. Repair galvanized areas with galvanizing repair compound.

3. Provide bolted construction and tie-rod reinforcement in accordance with SMACNA Standards.

4. Construct casings, eliminators, and pipe penetrations in accordance with SMACNA Standards, Chapter 6. Design casing access doors to swing against air pressure so that pressure helps to maintain a tight seal.

C. Install duct hangers and supports in accordance with SMACNA Standards, Chapter 4.

D. Seal openings around duct penetrations of floors and fire rated partitions with fire stop material as required by NFPA 90A.

E. Control Damper Installation:

1. Provide necessary blank-off plates required to install dampers that are smaller than duct size. Provide necessary transitions required to install dampers larger than duct size.
2. Assemble multiple sections dampers with required interconnecting linkage and extend required number of shafts through duct for external mounting of damper motors.
3. Provide necessary sheet metal baffle plates to eliminate stratification and provide air volumes specified. Locate baffles by experimentation, and affix and seal permanently in place, only after stratification problem has been eliminated.
4. Install all damper control/adjustment devices on stand-offs to allow complete coverage of insulation.

F. Protection and Cleaning: Adequately protect equipment and materials against physical damage. Place equipment in first class operating condition, or return to source of supply for repair or replacement, as determined by Resident Engineer. Protect equipment and ducts during construction against entry of foreign matter to the inside and clean both inside and outside before operation and painting. When new ducts are connected to existing ductwork, clean both new and existing ductwork by mopping and vacuum cleaning inside and outside before operation.

3.2 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS AND REPAIR

- A. Leak testing company shall be independent of the sheet metal company employed by General Contractor.
- B. Ductwork leak test shall be performed for the entire air distribution supply, return, exhaust system Section by Section including fans, coils and filter Section designated as static pressure class 750 Pa (3 inch W.G.) and above. All supply ductwork less than 500 Pa (3 inch W.G) shall also be tested where there is no air terminal units employed in the system.
- C. Test procedure, apparatus and report shall conform to SMACNA Leakage Test manual. The maximum leakage rate allowed is 4 percent of the design air flow rate.
- D. All ductwork shall be leak tested first before enclosed in a shaft or covered in other inaccessible areas.
- E. All tests shall be performed in the presence of the Resident Engineer and the Test and Balance agency. The Test and Balance agency shall measure and record duct leakage and report to the Resident Engineer and identify leakage source with excessive leakage.

- F. If any portion of the duct system tested fails to meet the permissible leakage level, the Contractor shall rectify sealing of ductwork to bring it into compliance and shall retest it until acceptable leakage is demonstrated to the Resident Engineer.
- G. All tests and necessary repairs shall be completed prior to insulation or concealment of ductwork.
- H. Make sure all openings used for testing flow and temperatures by TAB Contractor are sealed properly.

3.3 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING (TAB)

Refer to Section 15980, TESTING ADJUSTING AND BALANCING for TAB.

3.4 OPERATING AND PERFORMANCE TESTS

Refer to Section 15050; BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL)

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 15902
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTATION (DDC)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. The control system(s) shall be as indicated on the project documents, point list, drawings and described in these specifications. This scope of work shall include a complete and working system including all engineering, programming, controls and installation materials, installation labor, commissioning and start-up, training, final project documentation and warranty.
- B. The Controls Contractor's work shall include all labor, materials, special tools, equipment, enclosures, power supplies, software, software licenses, Project specific software configurations and database entries, interfaces, wiring, tubing, installation, labeling, engineering, calibration, documentation, submittals, testing, verification, training services, permits and licenses, transportation, shipping, handling, administration, supervision, management, insurance, Warranty, specified services and items required by the Contract for the complete and fully functional Controls Systems.
- C. Following control devices and systems shall be used to provide the functional requirements of HVAC equipment and systems.
 - 1. Direct Digital Control (DDC) of HVAC equipment and systems with electric or electronic positioning of valves and dampers.
 - 2. Terminal units including Fan Coil Units and similar units for control of room environment conditions may be equipped with integral controls furnished and installed by the equipment manufacturer or field mounted. Refer to equipment specifications and as indicated in project documents.
- D. Connect the new work to the existing ECC system or operator workstation. The existing CPU/Monitor, printer, and other peripherals are to be used to form a single operator workstation. New system including interface to existing systems and equipment shall operate and function as one complete system including one database of control point objects and global control logic capabilities. Facility operators shall have complete operations and control capability over all systems, new and existing including; monitoring, trending, graphing, scheduling, alarm management, global point sharing, global strategy deployment,

graphical operations interface and custom reporting as specified. Modify the existing ECC, if necessary, to accommodate the additional control points.

- E. The control subcontractor shall supply as required, all necessary hardware equipment and software packages to interface between any existing and new system Network Area Controllers (NAC) as part of this contract. Number of area controllers required is dependent on the type and quantity of devices, hardware and software points provided. Network area controllers are same as remote controller units (RCU).
- F. The control systems shall be designed such that each mechanical system shall operate under stand-alone mode. Temperature Controls contractor shall provide controllers for each mechanical system. In the event of a network communication failure, or the loss of any other controller, the control system shall continue to operate independently. Failure of the ECC shall have no effect on the field controllers, including those involved with global strategies.
- G. The Top End of the NAC shall communicate using American Society of Heating and Refrigerating Engineers/American National Standards Institute (ASHRAE/ANSI) Standard 135(BACnet) protocol. The NAC shall reside on the BACnet/IP Ethernet (ISO 8802-3) local area network, and provide information via standard BACnet object types and application services. The Bottom End of the NAC, the unit level controllers and all other field devices shall reside on the LonTalk FTT-10a network, and provide data using LonMark standard network variable types and configuration properties.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 13850, FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS.
- B. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- C. Section 15500, FIRE PROTECTION.
- D. Section 15650, REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT (HVAC).
- E. Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS.
- F. Section 15740, TERMINAL UNITS.
- G. Section 15840, DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES.
- H. Section 15980, TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING.
- I. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS ELECTRICAL.
- J. Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS.
- K. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW).
- L. Section 16140, WIRING DEVICES.

M. Section 16208, ENGINE GENERATORS.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem; A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for the solution of a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. ACU: Auxiliary Control Unit (ACU) used for controls of air handling units, reports to RCU.
- C. Analog: A continuously varying signal value (e.g., temperature, current, velocity etc.
- D. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE Standard 135.
- E. Baud: It is a signal change in a communication link. One signal change can represent one or more bits of information depending on type of transmission scheme. Simple peripheral communication is normally one bit per Baud. (e.g., Baud rate = 78,000 Baud/sec is 78,000 bits/sec, if one signal change = 1 bit).
- F. Binary: A two-state system where a high signal level represents an "ON" condition and an "OFF" condition is represented by a low signal level.
- G. BMP or bmp: Suffix, computerized image file, used after the period in a DOS-based computer file to show that the file is an image stored as a series of pixels.
- H. Bus Topology: A network topology that physically interconnects workstations and network devices in parallel on a network segment.
- I. Control Unit (CU): Generic term for any controlling unit, stand-alone, microprocessor based, digital controller residing on secondary LAN or Primary LAN, used for local controls or global controls. In this specification, there are three types of control units are used; Unitary Control Unit (UCU), Auxiliary Control Unit (ACU), and Remote Control Unit (RCU).
- J. Deadband: A temperature range over which no heating or cooling is supplied, i.e., 22-25 degrees C (72-78 degrees F), as opposed to a single point change over or overlap).
- K. Diagnostic Program: A software test program, which is used to detect and report system or peripheral malfunctions and failures. Generally, this system is performed at the initial startup of the system.
- L. Direct Digital Control (DDC): Microprocessor based control including Analog/Digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and

processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices in order to achieve a set of predefined conditions.

- M. Distributed Control System: A system in which the processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions can and are made at the subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to the remote subsystems and status is reported back to the Engineering Control Center. Upon the loss of communication with the Engineering Control center, the subsystems shall be capable of operating in a stand-alone mode using the last best available data.
- N. Download: The electronic transfer of programs and data files from a central computer or operation workstation with secondary memory devices to remote computers in a network (distributed) system.
- O. DXF: An AutoCAD 2-D graphics file format. Many CAD systems import and export the DXF format for graphics interchange.
- P. Electrical Control: A control circuit that operates on line or low voltage and uses a mechanical means, such as a temperature sensitive bimetal or bellows, to perform control functions, such as actuating a switch or positioning a potentiometer.
- Q. Electronic Control: A control circuit that operates on low voltage and uses a solid-state components to amplify input signals and perform control functions, such as operating a relay or providing an output signal to position an actuator.
- R. Engineering Control Center (ECC): The centralized control point for the intelligent control network. The ECC comprises of personal computer and connected devices to form a single workstation.
- S. Ethernet: A trademark for a system for exchanging messages between computers on a local area network using coaxial, fiber optic, or twisted-pair cables.
- T. Firmware: Firmware is software programmed into read only memory (ROM) chips. Software may not be changed without physically altering the chip.
- U. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
- V. GIF: Abbreviation of Graphic interchange format.
- W. Graphic Program (GP): Program used to produce images of air handler systems, fans, chillers, pumps, and building spaces. These images can be animated and/or color-coded to indicate operation of the equipment.

- X. Graphic Sequence of Operation: It is a graphical representation of the sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
- Y. I/O Unit: The section of a digital control system through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI, digital input (DI), analog output (AO) and digital output (DO). Analog signals are continuous and represent temperature, pressure, flow rate etc, whereas digital signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values), represent motor status, filter status, on-off equipment etc.
- Z. I/P: Internet Protocol-global network, connecting workstations and other host computers, servers etc. to share the information.
- AA. JPEG: A standardized image compression mechanism stands for Joint Photographic Experts Group, the original name of the committee that wrote the standard.
- BB. Local Area Network (LAN): A communication bus that interconnects operator workstation and digital controllers for peer-to-peer communications, sharing resources and exchanging information.
- CC. LonMark: An association comprising of suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. The Association provides guidelines for the implementation of the LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through Standard implementation.
- DD. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication.
- EE. LonWorks: Network technology developed by the Echelon Corporation.
- FF. Network: A set of computers or other digital devices communicating with each other over a medium such as wire, coax, fiber optics cable etc.
- GG. Network Area Controller: Digital controller, supports a family of auxiliary control units and unitary control units, and communicates with peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
- HH. Network Repeater: A device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts to another network. No routing information is added to the protocol.
- II. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing.
- JJ. Operating system (OS): Software, which controls the execution of computer application programs.
- KK. PCX: File type for an image file. When photographs are scanned onto a personal computer they can be saved as PCX files and viewed or changed by a special application program as Photo Shop.

- LL. Peripheral: Different components that make the control system function as one unit. Peripherals include monitor, printer, and I/O unit.
- MM. Peer-to-Peer: A networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- NN. PICS: Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement.
- OO. UCU: Unitary Control Unit, digital controller, dedicated to a specific piece of equipment, such as VAV boxes, chillers, fan coil units, heat exchangers etc.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Criteria:

1. The Controls and Instrumentation System Contractor shall be a primary equipment manufacturer-owned branch office that is regularly engaged in the engineering, programming, installation and service of total integrated Facility Management Systems of similar size, scope and complexity to the EEC specified in this Contract. Distributors, manufacturer's representatives and wholesalers will not be acceptable.
2. Single Source Responsibility of subcontractor: The Contractor shall obtain hardware and software supplied under this Section and delegates the responsibility to a single source controls installation subcontractor. The controls subcontractor shall be responsible for the complete design, installation, and commissioning of the system. The controls subcontractor shall be in the business of design, installation and service of such building automation control systems similar in size and complexity.
3. Equipment and Materials: Equipment and materials shall be cataloged products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production and installation of HVAC control systems. Products shall be manufacturer's latest standard design and have been tested and proven in actual use.
4. The controls subcontractor shall provide a list of no less than five similar projects which have building control systems as specified in this Section. These projects must be on-line and functional such that the Department of Veterans Affairs (VA) representative would observe the control systems in full operation.
5. The controls subcontractor shall have (minimum of three years) experience in design and installation of building automation systems similar in performance to those specified in this Section. Provide

evidence of experience by submitting resumes of the project manager, the local branch manager, project engineer, the application engineering staff, and the electronic technicians who would be involved with the supervision, the engineering, and the installation of the control systems. Training and experience of these personnel shall not be less than three years. Failure to disclose this information will be a ground for disqualification of the supplier.

6. The controls subcontractor shall have in-place facility within 50 miles with technical staff, spare parts inventory for the next five (5) years, and necessary test and diagnostic equipment to support the control systems.
7. Provide a competent and experienced Project Manager employed by the Controls Contractor. The Project Manager shall be supported as necessary by other Contractor employees in order to provide professional engineering, technical and management service for the work. The Project Manager shall attend scheduled Project Meetings as required and shall be empowered to make technical, scheduling and related decisions on behalf of the Controls Contractor.

B. Codes and Standards:

1. All work shall conform to the applicable Codes and Standards.
2. Electronic equipment shall conform to the requirements of FCC Regulation, Part 15, Governing Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Interference, and be so labeled.
3. Peer-to-peer controllers, unitary controllers shall conform to the requirements of UL 916, Category PAZX.

1.5 PERFORMANCE

A. The system shall conform to the following:

1. Graphic Display: The system shall display up to 4 graphics on a single screen with a minimum of (20) dynamic points per graphic. All current data shall be displayed within (10) seconds of the request.
2. Graphic Refresh: The system shall update all dynamic points with current data within (10) seconds. Data refresh shall be automatic, without operator intervention.
3. Object Command: The maximum time between the command of a binary object by the operator and the reaction by the device shall be (10) seconds. Analog objects shall start to adjust within (3) seconds.
4. Object Scan: All changes of state and change of analog values shall be transmitted over the high-speed network such that any data used

or displayed at a controller or work-station will be current, within the prior (10) seconds.

5. Alarm Response Time: The maximum time from when an object goes into alarm to when it is annunciated at the workstation shall not exceed (10) seconds.
6. Program Execution Frequency: Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every (5) seconds. The Contractor shall be responsible for selecting execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
7. Performance: Programmable Controllers shall be able to execute DDC PID control loops at a selectable frequency from at least once every five (5) seconds. The controller shall scan and update the process value and output generated by this calculation at this same frequency.
8. Reporting Accuracy: Listed below are minimum acceptable reporting accuracies for all values reported by the specified system:

Measured Variable	Reported Accuracy
Space temperature	±0.5 degrees C (±1 degrees F)
Ducted air temperature	±1.0 degrees C [±2 degrees F]
Outdoor air temperature	±1.0 degrees C [±2 degrees F]
Water temperature	±0.5 degrees C [±1 degrees F]
Relative humidity	±2 percent RH
Water flow	±5 percent of full scale
Air flow (terminal)	±10 percent of reading
Air flow (measuring stations)	±5 percent of reading
Air pressure (ducts)	±25 Pa [±0.1 "W.G.]
Air pressure (space)	±3 Pa [±0.001 "W.G.]
Water pressure	±2 percent of full scale *Note 1
Electrical Power	5 percent of reading

Note 1: for both absolute and differential pressure

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Labor and materials for control systems shall be warranted for a period as specified under Warranty in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- B. Control system failures during the warranty period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no cost or reduction in service to the owner.

The system includes all computer equipment, transmission equipment, and all sensors and control devices.

- C. Controls and Instrumentation subcontractor shall be responsible for temporary operations and maintenance of the control systems during the construction period until final commissioning, training of facility operators and acceptance of the project by VA.

1.7 EXTENDED GUARANTEE PERIOD SERVICES

- A. Qualifications: See Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Replacement Parts: See Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- C. Maintenance of ECC and Local Field Panels: The Contractor's Supplier shall inspect, repair, replace, adjust, and calibrate, as required associated peripheral equipment and local data gathering panels. The controls Supplier shall then furnish a report describing the status of the equipment, problem areas (if any) noticed during service work, and description of the corrective action taken. The report shall clearly certify that the software package is in working condition and all sensors are duly calibrated.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Manufacturer's literature and data for all components including the following:
 - 1. A wiring diagram for each type of input device and output device including DDC controllers, modems, repeaters, etc. Diagram shall show how the device is wired and powered, showing typical connections at the digital controllers and each power supply, as well as the device itself. Show for all field connected devices, including but not limited to, control relays, motor starters, electric or electronic actuators, and temperature pressure, flow and humidity sensors and transmitters.
 - 2. A diagram of each terminal strip, including digital controller terminal strips, terminal strip location, termination numbers and the associated point names.
 - 3. Control valves schedule, including the size and pressure drop.
 - 4. Catalog cut sheets of all equipment used. This includes, but is not limited to DDC controllers, panels, peripherals, and auxiliary

control devices such as sensors, actuators, and control dampers.

When manufacturer's cut sheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, the data specifically applicable to the project shall be highlighted. Each submitted piece of literature and drawings should clearly reference the specification and/or drawings that it supposed to represent.

7. Sequence of operations for each HVAC system and the associated control diagrams. Equipment and control labels shall correspond to those shown on the drawings.
8. Color prints of proposed graphics with a list of points for display.
9. Furnish PICS for each BACNET compliant device.

C. Product Certificates: Compliance with Article, QUALITY ASSURANCE.

D. As Built Control Drawings:

1. Furnish three (3) copies of as-built drawings for each control system. The documents shall be submitted for approval prior to final completion.
2. Furnish one (1) stick set of applicable control system prints for each mechanical system for wall mounting. The documents shall be submitted for approval prior to final completion.
3. Furnish one (1) CD-ROM in CAD DWG and/or .DXF format for the drawings noted in subparagraphs above.

E. Operation and Maintenance (O/M) Manuals):

1. Submit in accordance with Article, INSTRUCTIONS, in Specification Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
2. Include the following documentation:
 - a. General description and specifications for all components, including logging on/off, alarm handling, producing trend reports, overriding computer control, and changing set points and other variables.
 - b. Detailed illustrations of all the control systems specified for ease of maintenance and repair/replacement procedures, and complete calibration procedures.
 - c. Complete troubleshooting procedures and guidelines for all systems.
 - d. Complete operating instructions for all systems.
 - e. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for all system components including a schedule of tasks for inspection, cleaning

and calibration. Provide a list of recommended spare parts needed to minimize downtime.

- f. Licenses, guaranty, and other pertaining documents for all equipment and systems.
- g. Training Manuals: Submit the course outline and training material to the Owner for approval three (3) weeks prior to the training to VA facility personnel. These persons will be responsible for maintaining and the operation of the control systems, including programming. The Owner reserves the right to modify any or all of the course outline and training material.

F. Submit Performance Report to Resident Engineer prior to final inspection.

1.9 INSTRUCTIONS

A. Instructions to VA operations personnel: Perform in accordance with Article, INSTRUCTIONS, in Specification Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, and as noted below.

1. First Phase: Formal instructions to the VA facilities personnel for a total of 16 hours, conducted sometime between the completed installation and prior to the performance test period of the control system, at a time mutually agreeable to the Contractor and the VA.
2. Second Phase: This phase of training shall comprise of on the job training during start-up, checkout period, and performance test period. VA facilities personnel will work with the Contractor's installation and test personnel on a daily basis during start-up and checkout period. During the performance test period, controls subcontractor will provide 8 hours of instructions to the VA facilities personnel.
3. The O/M Manuals shall contain approved submittals as outlined in Article 1.7, SUBMITTALS. The Controls subcontractor will review the manual contents with VA facilities personnel during second phase of training.
4. Training by independent or franchised dealers who are not direct employees of the controls supplier will not be acceptable.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS (ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS OF OPERATION)

A. The ECC and peripheral devices and system support equipment shall be designed to operate in ambient condition of 20 to 35 degrees C (65 to

90 degrees F) at a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent non-condensing.

- B. The CUs and associated equipment used in controlled environment shall be mounted in NEMA 1 enclosures for operation at 0 to 50 degrees C (32 to 122 degrees F) at a relative humidity of 10 to 90 percent non-condensing.
- C. The CUs used outdoors shall be mounted in NEMA 4 waterproof enclosures, and shall be rated for operation at -40 to 65 degrees C (-40 to 150 degrees F).
- D. All electronic equipment shall operate properly with power fluctuations of plus 10 percent to minus 15 percent of nominal supply voltage.
- E. Sensors and controlling devices shall be designed to operate in the environment, which they are sensing or controlling.

1.11 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE):
Standard 135-04.....BACNET Building Automation and Control Networks
- C. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
B16.18-01.....Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings.
B16.22-01.....Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings.
BPVC-CC-N-04.....Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code
- D. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM):
B32-04.....Standard Specification for Solder Metal
B88-03.....Standard Specifications for Seamless Copper Water Tube
B88M-05.....Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric)
B280-03.....Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service
D2737-03.....Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing
- E. Federal Communication Commission (FCC):

Rules and Regulations Title 47 Chapter 1-2001 Part 15..Radio Frequency
Devices.

F. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

802.3-05.....Information Technology-Telecommunications and
Information Exchange between Systems-Local and
Metropolitan Area Networks- Specific
Requirements-Part 3: Carrier Sense Multiple
Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD)
Access method and Physical Layer Specifications

G. Instrument Society of America (ISA):

7.0.01-1996.....Quality Standard for Instrument Air

H. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

70-05.....National Electric Code
90A-02.....Standard for Installation of Air-Conditioning
and Ventilation Systems

I. Underwriter Laboratories Inc (UL):

94-06.....Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for
Parts and Devices and Appliances
294-05.....Access Control System Units
486A/486B-04-.....Wire Connectors
916-Rev 2-04.....Energy Management Equipment

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTROLS SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. General

1. The Controls Systems shall consist of multiple Nodes and associated
equipment connected by industry standard digital and communication
network arrangements.

B. The Specifications for the individual elements and component subsystems
shall be minimum requirements and shall be augmented as necessary by
the Contractor to achieve both compliance with all applicable codes,
standards and to meet all requirements of the Contract Documents.

C. Network Architecture (Match Existing)

1. The Controls Systems Application network shall utilize an open
architecture capable of each and all of the following:
a. Utilizing standard Ethernet communications and operate at a
minimum speed of 10/100 Mb/sec.
b. Connecting via BACNET with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135.

- c. LonMark as per ANSI/EIA 709 (LonWorks) to LonMark FTT-10 transceivers.
- 2. The networks shall utilize only copper and optical fiber communication media as appropriate and shall comply with applicable codes, ordinances and regulations. They may also utilize digital wireless technologies if required by the VA.
- 3. All necessary telephone lines, ISDN lines and internet Service Provider services and connections will be provided by the owner.

D. Third Party Interfaces:

- 1. The Controls Systems shall include necessary hardware, equipment and software to allow data communications between the Controls Systems and building systems supplied by other trades.
- 2. The other manufacturers and contractors supplying other associated systems and equipment will provide their necessary hardware, software and start-up at their cost and will cooperate fully with the Controls Contractor in a timely manner and at their cost to ensure complete functional integration.

2.2 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROLLERS

- A. (NAC) Network Area Controllers shall be stand-alone, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time digital processor complete with all hardware, software, and communications interfaces, power supplies. The Controls System shall be designed and implemented entirely for use and operation on the Internet. NACs shall have access to data within the industry standard IT network to the Data Server and other NACs as needed to accomplish required global control strategies.
- 1. NACs shall provide both standalone and networked direct digital control of mechanical and electrical building system controllers as required by the Specifications. The primary NAC shall support a minimum of [5,000] field points together with all associated features, sequences, schedules, applications required for a fully functional distributed processing operation.
- 2. NACs shall monitor and report communication status to the Controls Systems Application. The Controls Systems shall provide a system advisory upon communication failure and restoration.
- 3. All NACs on the network shall be equipped with all software functionality necessary to operate the complete user interface,

- including graphics, via a Browser connected to the Node on the network or directly via a local port on the NAC.
4. All NAC shall be provided with face mounted LED type annunciation to continually display its operational mode, power and communications.
 5. The controllers shall reside on the BACnet Ethernet (ISO 8802-3) local area network and provide Read (Initiate) and Write (Execute) services as defined in Clauses 15.5 and 15.8, respectively of ASHRAE Standard 135, to communicate BACnet objects. Objects supported shall include: Analog input, analog output, analog value, binary input, binary output, binary value, and device.
 6. Each NAC shall be provided with the necessary un-interruptible power facilities to ensure its continued normal operation during periods of line power outages of, at minimum, 1-minute duration. Normal functionality shall include all normal software processing, communication with powered field devices and network communications with other powered Controls Systems NAC, Data Servers and OWS. Each NAC shall report its communication status to the Application. The Application shall provide a system advisory upon communication failure and restoration. Each NAC shall retain program, control algorithms, and setpoint information in non-volatile memory in the event of a power failure, and shall return to normal operation upon restoration of power.
 7. Each NAC shall have sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and program requirements, including the following:
 - a. Device and network management.
 - b. Data sharing.
 - c. Alarm and event management including custom alarm messages for each level alarm for the points noted in the I/O Schedule.
 - d. Energy management.
 - e. Historical trend data for points specified.
 - f. Maintenance report.
 - g. Scheduling.
 - h. Dial up and network communications.
 - i. Manual override monitoring.
 8. Each NAC shall support firmware upgrades without the need to replace hardware and shall have a minimum of 15 percent spare capacity of secondary system controllers, point capacity and programming functions.

9. Each NAC shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis, and provide both local and remote annunciation of any detected component failures, low battery condition; and upon failure shall assume the predetermined failure mode.
 10. Each NAC shall monitor the status of all overrides and inform the operator that automatic control has inhibited, and allow the operator to manually override automatic or centrally executed command.
 11. Provide the capability to generate and modify the Controls Systems Application software-based sequences, database elements, associated operational definition information and user-required revisions to same at any designated Workstation together with the means to download same to the associated System Controllers.
 12. In the event of loss of normal power, there shall be orderly shut down of the controllers to prevent the loss of database or software programming. When power is restored flash memory, battery backup or super capacitor will be automatically loaded into non-volatile flash memory and shall be incorporated for all programming data.
- B. Auxiliary Control Units (ACUs) shall be stand-alone, multi-tasking, multi-user, real time digital processor complete with all hardware, software and communication interfaces, power supplies, and input/output modular devices.
1. ACUs shall either reside on the LonTalk FTT-10a network or provide data using LonMark standard network variable types and configuration properties.
 2. All ACUs shall be provided with LED type annunciation to continually display its operational mode, power and communications.
 3. Each ACU shall have sufficient memory to support its operating system, database including the following:
 - a. Data sharing.
 - b. Device and network management.
 - c. Alarm and event management.
 - d. Scheduling.
 - e. Energy Management.
 4. Each ACU shall support firmware upgrades without the need to replace hardware and shall have a minimum of 15 percent spare capacity of I/O functions. The type of spares shall be in the same proportion as

- the implemented functions on the controller, but in no case there shall be less than one point of each implemented I/O type.
5. Each ACU shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis, and provide both local and remote annunciation of any detected component failures, low battery condition; and upon failure shall assume the predetermined failure mode.
 6. In the event of loss of normal power, there shall be orderly shut down of the controllers to prevent the loss of database or software programming. When power is restored flash memory, battery backup or super capacitor will be automatically loaded into non-volatile flash memory and shall be incorporated for all programming data.
- C. Unitary Control Units (UCUs) shall be microprocessor-based. They shall be capable of stand-alone operation, continuing to provide stable control functions if communication is lost with the rest of the system.
1. Unitary Control Units shall either reside on the LonTalk FTT-10a network or provide data using LonMark standard network variable types and configuration properties.
 2. Each UCU shall have sufficient memory to support its own operating system, including data sharing.
 3. All UCUs shall be provided with LED type annunciation to continually display its operational mode, power and communications.
 4. In the event of loss of normal power, there shall be orderly shut down of the controllers to prevent the loss of database or software programming. When power is restored flash memory, battery backup or super capacitor will be automatically loaded into non-volatile flash memory and shall be incorporated for all programming data.
- D. Provide I/O module that connects sensors and actuators onto the field bus network for use by the direct digital controllers. I/O devices shall support the communication technology specified for each controller.
1. Analog input shall allow the monitoring of low voltage (0-10 VDC), current (4-20 ma), or resistance signals (thermistor, RTD). Analog input shall be compatible with, and field configurable to commonly available sensing devices. Analog output shall provide a modulating signal for these control devices.
 2. Binary inputs shall allow the monitoring of on/off signals from remote devices. Binary inputs shall provide a wetting current of at least 12 milliamps to be compatible with commonly available control

- devices. Binary outputs shall provide on/off operation, or a pulsed low voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Outputs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
3. Binary outputs on remote and auxiliary controllers shall have 3-position (on/off/auto) override switches and status lights. Analog outputs on remote and auxiliary controllers shall have status lights and a 2-position (auto/manual) switch and manually adjustable potentiometer for manual override.
 4. Each output point shall be provided with a light emitting diode (LED) to indicate status of outputs.
- E. Communication Ports:
1. NACs controllers in the DDC systems shall be connected in a system local area network using protocol defined by ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet protocol.
 2. The control supplier shall provide connectors, repeaters, hubs, and routers necessary for inter-network communication.
 3. Minimum baud rate between the peer-to-peer controllers in the system LAN shall be maintained at the rate of 10 Mbps. Minimum baud for the low level controllers between UCUs and ACUs, ACUs and NAC's shall be maintained at the rate of 76 Kbps.
 4. Provide RS-232 port with DB-9 or RJ-11 connector for communication with each controller that will allow direct connection of standard printers, operator terminals, modems, and portable laptop operator's terminal. Controllers shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected modems, printers or terminals.
 5. Database, such as points; status information, reports, system software, custom programs of any one controller shall be readable by any other controller on the network.
- F. Electric Outlet: Provide a single phase, 120 VAC electrical receptacles inside or within 2 meters (6 feet) of the NAC and ACU enclosures for use with test equipment.

2.3 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. Utilize existing control software. Provide all necessary items to interface with existing Building Management System.

2.4 SENSORS (AIR AND WATER)

- A. Temperature and Humidity Sensors:

1. Electronic Sensors: Provide all remote sensors as required for the systems. All sensors shall be vibration and corrosion resistant for wall, and immersion mounting.
 - a. Temperature Sensors: Resistance Temperature Device (RTD) with an integral transmitter type for all other sensors.
 - 1) Duct sensors shall be rigid or averaging type as shown on drawings. Averaging sensor shall be a minimum of 1 linear ft of sensing element for each sq ft of cooling coil face area.
 - 2) Immersion sensors shall be provided with a separable well made of stainless steel, bronze or monel material. Pressure rating of well is to be consistent with the system pressure in which it is to be installed.
 - 3) Space sensors shall be equipped with set-point adjustment, override switch, display, and/or communication port as shown on the drawings. Match room thermostats, locking cover.

B. Water flow sensors:

1. Type: Insertion vortex type with retractable probe assembly and 2 IN full port gate valve.
 - a. Pipe size: 3 to 24 IN.
 - b. Retractor: ASME threaded, non-rising stem type with hand wheel.
 - c. Mounting connection: 2 IN 150 PSI flange.
 - d. Sensor assembly: Design for expected water flow and pipe size.
 - e. Seal: Teflon (PTFE).
2. Controller:
 - a. Integral to unit.
 - b. Locally display flow rate and total.
 - c. Output flow signal to BMCS: Digital pulse type.
3. Performance:
 - a. Accuracy: 1.0% of reading
 - b. Repeatability: 0.15% of reading
 - c. Turndown: 20:1
 - d. Response time: Adjustable from 1 to 100 seconds.
 - e. Power: 24 volt DC
4. Manufacturer: Emco V-Bar 910
5. Install flow meters according to manufacturer's recommendations. Where recommended by manufacturer because of mounting conditions, provide flow rectifier.

C. Water Flow Sensors:

1. Sensor shall be insertion turbine type with turbine element, retractor and preamplifier/transmitter mounted on a two-inch full port isolation valve; assembly easily removed or installed as a single unit under line pressure through the isolation valve without interference with process flow; calibrated scale shall allow precise positioning of the flow element to the required insertion depth within plus or minus 1 mm (0.05 inch); wetted parts shall be constructed of stainless steel. Operating power shall be nominal 24 VDC. Local instantaneous flow indicator shall be LED type in NEMA 4 enclosure with 3-1/2 digit display, for wall or panel mounting.
2. Performance characteristics:
 - a. Ambient conditions: -40 to 60 degrees C (-40 to 140 degrees F), 5 to 100 percent humidity.
 - b. Operating conditions: 850 kPa (125 psig), 0 to 120 degrees C (30 to 250 degrees F), 0.15 to 12 m per second (0.5 to 40 feet per second) velocity.
 - c. Nominal range (turn down ratio): 10 to 1.
 - d. Overall accuracy plus or minus one percent of reading.
 - e. Repeatability: plus or minus 0.25 percent of reading.
 - f. Preamplifier mounted on meter shall provide 4-20 ma divided pulse output or switch closure signal for units of volume or mass per a time base. Signal transmission distance shall be a minimum of 1,800 meters (6,000 feet). // Preamplifier for bi-directional flow measurement shall provide a directional contact closure from a relay mounted in the preamplifier //.
 - g. Pressure Loss: Maximum 1 percent of the line pressure in line sizes above 100 mm (4 inches).
 - h. Ambient temperature effects, less than 0.005 percent calibrated span per degree C (degree F) temperature change.
 - i) RFI effect - flow meter shall not be affected by RFI.
 - j) Power supply effect less than 0.02 percent of span for a variation of plus or minus 10 percent power supply.

D. Flow switches:

1. Shall be either paddle or differential pressure type.
 - a. Paddle-type switches (liquid service only) shall be UL Listed, SPDT snap-acting, adjustable sensitivity with NEMA 4 enclosure.

- b. Differential pressure type switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap acting, NEMA 4 enclosure, with scale range and differential suitable for specified application.
- E. Current Switches: Current operated switches shall be self powered, solid state with adjustable trip current as well as status, power, and relay command status LED indication. The switches shall be selected to match the current of the application and output requirements of the DDC systems.

2.5 CONTROL CABLES

As specified in Division 16.

2.6 FINAL CONTROL ELEMENTS AND OPERATORS

- A. Fail Safe Operation: Control valves and dampers shall provide "fail safe" operation in either the normally open or normally closed position as required for freeze, moisture, and smoke or fire protection.
- B. Spring Ranges: Range as required for system sequencing and to provide tight shut-off.
- C. Power Operated Control Dampers (other than VAV Boxes): Factory fabricated, balanced type dampers. All modulating dampers shall be opposed blade type and gasketed. Blades for two-position, duct-mounted dampers shall be parallel, airfoil (streamlined) type for minimum noise generation and pressure drop.
- D. Operators shall be electric type operating at 140 kPa (20 psig) as required for proper operation.
 - 1. See drawings for required control operation.
 - 2. Metal parts shall be aluminum, mill finish galvanized steel, or zinc plated steel or stainless steel.
 - 3. Maximum air velocity and pressure drop through free area the dampers:
 - a. Duct mounted damper; 600 meter per minute (2000 fpm).
 - b. Maximum static pressure loss, 50 Pascal (0.20 inches water gage).
- E. Control Valves:
 - 1. Valves shall be rated for a minimum of 150 percent of system operating pressure at the valve location but not less than 900 kPa (125 psig).
 - 2. Valves 50 mm (2 inches) and smaller shall be bronze body with threaded or flare connections.
 - 3. Valves 60 mm (2 1/2 inches) and larger shall be bronze or iron body with flanged connections.

4. Brass or bronze seats except for valves controlling media above 100 degrees C (210 degrees F), which shall have stainless steel seats.
5. Flow characteristics:
 - a. Three way valves shall have a linear relation or equal percentage relation of flow versus valve position.
 - b. Two-way valves position versus flow relation shall be linear for steam and equal percentage for water flow control.
6. Maximum pressure drop:
 - a. Two position steam control: 20 percent of inlet gauge pressure.
 - b. Modulating Steam Control: 80 percent of inlet gauge pressure (acoustic velocity limitation).
 - c. Modulating water flow control, greater of 3 meters (10 feet) of water or the pressure drop through the apparatus.
 - d. Two position water valves shall be line size.

F. Damper and Valve Operators and Relays:

1. Electric damper operator shall provide full modulating control of dampers. A linkage and pushrod shall be furnished for mounting the actuator on the damper frame internally in the duct or externally in the duct or externally on the duct wall, or shall be furnished with a direct-coupled design.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Examine project plans for control devices and equipment locations; and report any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions to Resident Engineer for resolution before proceeding for installation.
2. Work Coordination: Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.
3. Install equipment, piping, wiring /conduit parallel to or at right angles to building lines.
4. Install all equipment and piping in readily accessible locations. Do not run tubing and conduit concealed under insulation or inside ducts.
5. Mount control devices, tubing and conduit located on ducts and apparatus with external insulation on standoff support to avoid interference with insulation.
6. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.

7. Run tubing and wire connecting devices on or in control cabinets parallel with the sides of the cabinet neatly racked to permit tracing.

8. Install equipment level and plum.

B. Piping Installation:

1. All piping associated with smoke control shall be hard drawn copper.
2. Tubing passing through or buried in concrete shall be installed in rigid steel conduit of sufficient strength to prevent damage to tubing.
3. Except for short apparatus connections, non-metallic tubing in all exposed locations, including mechanical rooms shall be protected from damage by installing the tubing in electric conduit or raceways. Provide protective grommet where tubing exits conduit.
4. Non-metallic tubing exposed to outdoors shall be protected by a sleeve or larger tubing.
5. In concealed but accessible locations such as above lay-in ceilings, non-metallic tubing may be run without conduit or raceway.
6. All tubing which is not run in conduit or raceway, both metallic and non-metallic, shall be neatly routed and securely fastened to building structure at not more than 36-IN. intervals.
7. Welding shall be performed in accordance with Section 15705, HVAC PIPING SYSTEMS.
8. Label and identify control air piping in accordance with specification Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).

C. Electrical Wiring Installation:

1. Install conduits and wiring in accordance with Specification Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS.
2. Install signal and communication cables in accordance with Specification Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS and BELOW).
3. Install conduit and wiring between operator workstation(s), digital controllers, electrical panels, indicating devices, instrumentation, miscellaneous alarm points, thermostats, and relays as shown on the drawings or as required under this section. All wiring shall be installed in conduits.
4. Install all electrical work required for a fully functional system and not shown on electrical plans or required by electrical

specifications. Where low voltage power is required, provide suitable transformers.

5. Install all system components in accordance with local Building Code and National Electric Code.
 - a. Splices: Splices in shielded and coaxial cables shall consist of terminations and the use of shielded cable couplers. Terminations shall be in accessible locations. Cables shall be harnessed with cable ties.
 - b. Equipment: Fit all equipment contained in cabinets or panels with service loops, each loop being at least 300 mm (12 inches) long. Equipment for fiber optics system shall be rack mounted, as applicable, in ventilated, self-supporting, code gauge steel enclosure. Cables shall be supported for minimum sag.
 - c. Cable Runs: Keep cable runs as short as possible. Allow extra length for connecting to the terminal board. Do not bend flexible coaxial cables in a radius less than ten times the cable outside diameter.
 - d. Use vinyl tape, sleeves, or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners, through walls, panel cabinets, etc.
6. Conceal cables, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduits and piping are exposed.
7. Permanently label or code each point of all field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served. Color-coded cable with cable diagrams may be used to accomplish cable identification.
8. Grounding: ground electrical systems per manufacturer's written requirements for proper and safe operation.

D. Install Sensors and Controls:

1. Temperature Sensors:
 - a. Install all sensors and instrumentation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Temperature sensor locations shall be readily accessible, permitting quick replacement and servicing of them without special skills and tools.
 - b. Calibrate sensors to accuracy specified, if not factory calibrated.
 - c. Use of sensors shall be limited to its duty, e.g., duct sensor shall not be used in lieu of room sensor.

- d. Install room sensors permanently supported on wall frame. They shall be mounted at 1.5 meter (5.0 feet) above the finished floor.
 - e. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for the environment within which the sensor operates.
 - f. Sensors used in mixing plenum, and hot and cold decks shall be of the averaging of type. Averaging sensors shall be installed in a serpentine manner horizontally across duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip.
 - g. All pipe mounted temperature sensors shall be installed in wells.
 - h. All wires attached to sensors shall be air sealed in their conduits or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas affecting sensor reading.
 - i. Permanently mark terminal blocks for identification. Protect all circuits to avoid interruption of service due to short-circuiting or other conditions. Line-protect all wiring that comes from external sources to the site from lightning and static electricity.
2. Pressure Sensors:
- a. Install duct static pressure sensor tips facing directly downstream of airflow.
 - b. Install high-pressure side of the differential switch between the pump discharge and the check valve.
 - c. Install snubbers and isolation valves on steam pressure sensing devices.
3. Actuators:
- a. Mount and link damper and valve actuators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - b. Check operation of damper/actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates damper smoothly throughout stroke to both open and closed position.
 - c. Check operation of valve/actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates valve smoothly in both open and closed position.
4. Flow Switches:
- a. Install flow switch according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- b. Mount flow switch a minimum of 5 pipe diameters up stream and 5 pipe diameters downstream or 600 mm (2 feet) whichever is greater, from fittings and other obstructions.
 - c. Assure correct flow direction and alignment.
 - d. Mount in horizontal piping-flow switch on top of the pipe.
- E. Installation of Network:
- 1. Ethernet:
 - a. The network shall employ Ethernet LAN architecture, as defined by IEEE 802.3. The Network Interface shall be fully Internet Protocol (IP) compliant allowing connection to currently installed IEEE 802.3, Compliant Ethernet Networks.
 - b. The network shall directly support connectivity to a variety of cabling types. As a minimum provide the following connectivity: 10 Base 2 (ThinNet RG-58 A/U Coaxial cabling with BNC connectors), 10 Base T (Twisted-Pair RJ-45 terminated UTP cabling).
 - 2. Echelon:
 - a. The ECC shall employ LonTalk communications FTT-10.
 - b. Echelon LAN (Flat LON): The ECC shall employ a LON LAN that will connect through an Echelon Communication card directly to all controllers on the FTT-10 LAN.
 - 3. Third Party Interfaces: Contractor shall integrate real-time data from building systems by other trades and databases originating from other manufacturers as specified and required to make the system work as one system.
- F. Installation of Digital Controllers and Programming:
- 1. Provide a separate digital control panel for each major piece of equipment, such as chiller, pumping unit etc. Points used for control loop reset could be located on any of the remote control units.
 - 2. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified control sequences and trend logging. There shall be a minimum of 25 percent of available memory free for future use.
 - 3. System point names shall be modular in design, permitting easy operator interface without the use of a written point index.
 - 4. Provide software programming for the applications intended for the systems specified, and adhere to the strategy algorithms provided.

5. Provide graphics for each piece of equipment and floor plan in the building. This includes each chiller, cooling tower, pumping unit etc. These graphics shall show all points dynamically as specified in the point list.

3.2 SYSTEM VALIDATION AND DEMONSTRATION

- A. As part of final system acceptance, a System Demonstration is required (see below). Prior to start of this Demonstration, the contractor is to perform a complete Validation of all aspects of the Controls and Instrumentation System.
- B. Validation
 1. Prepare and submit for approval a Validation Test Plan including Test Procedures for the performance verification tests. Test Plan shall address all specified functions of the Engineering Control Center and all specified sequences of operation. Explain in detail actions and expected results used to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of this specification. Explain the method for simulating the necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance of the system. Test Plan shall include a Test Check List to be used by the Installer's agent to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed. Deliver Test Plan documentation for the performance verification tests to the owner's representative 30 days prior to start of performance verification tests. Provide draft copy of operation and maintenance manual with performance verification test.
 2. After approval of the Validation Test Plan, Installer shall carry out all tests and procedures therein. Installer shall completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to insure that system performs in accordance with approved specifications and sequences of operation submitted. Installer shall complete and submit Test Check List.
- C. DEMONSTRATION
 1. System operation and calibration to be demonstrated by the Installer in the presence of the Architect or Owner's representative on random samples of equipment as dictated by the Owner's representative. Should random sampling indicate improper commissioning, the owner reserves the right to subsequently witness complete calibration of the system at no addition cost to the owner.

2. Demonstrate to authorities that all required safeties and life safety functions are fully functional and complete.
3. Make accessible , personnel to provide necessary adjustments and corrections to systems as directed by balancing agency.
4. The following witnessed demonstrations of field control equipment shall be included:
 - a. Pressure test control air piping at 1.25 times the design pressure. Pressure shall be applied in several stages, allowing time for the system to reach equilibrium. The test pressure shall not exceed the pneumatic test pressure for any pump, valve, or other component in the system under test. Pressure shall not drop more than 5% within 4 hours.
 - b. Observe HVAC systems in shut down condition. Check dampers and valves for normal position.
 - c. Test application software for its ability to communicate with digital controllers, operator workstation, and uploading and downloading of control programs.
 - d. Demonstrate the software ability to edit the control program off-line.
 - e. Demonstrate reporting of alarm conditions for each alarm and ensure that these alarms are received at the assigned location, including operator workstations.
 - f. Demonstrate ability of software program to function for the intended applications-trend reports, change in status etc.
 - g. Demonstrate via graphed trends to show the sequence of operation is executed in correct manner, and that the HVAC systems operate properly through the complete sequence of operation, e.g., seasonal change, occupied/unoccupied mode, and warm-up condition.
 - h. Demonstrate hardware interlocks and safeties functions, and that the control systems perform the correct sequence of operation after power loss and resumption of power loss.
 - i. Prepare and deliver to the VA graphed trends of all control loops to demonstrate that each control loop is stable and the set points are maintained.
 - j. Demonstrate that each control loop responds to set point adjustment and stabilizes within one (1) minute. Control loop trend data shall be instantaneous and the time between data points shall not be greater than one (1) minute.

5. Witnessed validation demonstration of Operator's Terminal functions shall consist of:
- a. Running each specified report.
 - b. Display and demonstrate each data entry to show site specific customizing capability. Demonstrate parameter changes.
 - c. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
 - d. Execute digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
 - e. Demonstrate DDC loop precision and stability via trend logs of inputs and outputs (6 loops minimum).
 - f. Demonstrate EMS performance via trend logs and command trace.
 - g. Demonstrate scan, update, and alarm responsiveness.
 - h. Demonstrate spreadsheet/curve plot software, and its integration with database.
 - i. Demonstrate on-line user guide, and help function and mail facility.
 - j. Demonstrate digital system configuration graphics with interactive upline and downline load, and demonstrate specified diagnostics.
 - k. Demonstrate multitasking by showing dynamic curve plot, and graphic construction operating simultaneously via split screen.
 - l. Demonstrate class programming with point options of beep duration, beep rate, alarm archiving, and color banding.

----- END -----

SECTION 15980
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. Testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) systems. TAB includes the following:

1. Planning systematic TAB procedures.
2. Design Review Report.
3. Systems Inspection report.
4. Duct Air Leakage test report.
5. Systems Readiness Report.
6. Balancing air and water distribution systems; adjustment of total system to provide design performance; and testing performance of equipment and automatic controls.
7. Vibration and sound measurements.
8. Recording and reporting results.

B. Definitions:

1. Basic TAB used in this Section: Chapter 37, "Testing, Adjusting and Balancing" of ASHRAE Handbook, "HVAC Applications".
2. TAB: Testing, Adjusting and Balancing; the process of checking and adjusting HVAC systems to meet design objectives.
3. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
4. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
5. Hydronic Systems: Includes chilled water, condenser water, and heating hot water systems.
6. Air Systems: Includes all outside air, supply air, return air, exhaust air and relief air systems.
7. Flow rate tolerance: The allowable percentage variation, minus to plus, of actual flow rate from values (design) in the contract documents.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL): General Mechanical Requirements.
- B. Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL: Noise and Vibration Requirements.
- C. Section 15250, INSULATION: Piping and Equipment Insulation.

- D. Section 15650, REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT (HVAC): Testing Refrigeration Equipment.
- E. Section 15712, COOLING TOWER PACKAGED: Cooling Tower Performance Testing.
- F. Section 15740, TERMINAL UNITS: Terminal Units Performance.
- G. Section 15840, DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES: Duct Leakage.
- H. Section 15902, CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTATION (DDC): Controls and Instrumentation Settings.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to Articles, Quality Assurance and Submittals, in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
- B. Qualifications:
 - 1. TAB Agency: The TAB agency shall be a subcontractor of the General Contractor and shall report to and be paid by the General Contractor.
 - 2. The TAB agency shall be either a certified member of AABC or certified by the NEBB to perform TAB service for HVAC, water balancing and vibrations and sound testing of equipment. The certification shall be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the agency loses subject certification during this period, the General Contractor shall immediately notify the Resident Engineer and submit another TAB firm for approval. Any agency that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC or the NEBB within the five years preceding Contract Award shall not be eligible to perform any work related to the TAB. All work performed in this Section and in other related Sections by the TAB agency shall be considered invalid if the TAB agency loses its certification prior to Contract completion, and the successor agency's review shows unsatisfactory work performed by the predecessor agency.
 - 3. TAB Specialist: The TAB specialist shall be either a member of AABC or an experienced technician of the Agency certified by NEBB. The certification shall be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, the General Contractor shall immediately notify the Resident Engineer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC or the NEBB within the five

years preceding Contract Award shall not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB specialist shall be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

4. TAB Specialist shall be identified by the General Contractor within 60 days after the notice to proceed. The TAB specialist will be coordinating, scheduling and reporting all TAB work and related activities and will provide necessary information as required by the Resident Engineer. The responsibilities would specifically include:
 - a. Shall directly supervise all TAB work.
 - b. Shall sign the TAB reports that bear the seal of the TAB standard. The reports shall be accompanied by report forms and schematic drawings required by the TAB standard, AABC or NEBB.
 - c. Would follow all TAB work through its satisfactory completion.
 - d. Shall provide final markings of settings of all HVAC adjustment devices.
 - e. Permanently mark location of duct test ports.
 5. All TAB technicians performing actual TAB work shall be experienced and must have done satisfactory work on a minimum of 3 projects comparable in size and complexity to this project. Qualifications must be certified by the TAB agency in writing.
- C. Test Equipment Criteria: The instrumentation shall meet the accuracy/calibration requirements established by AABC National Standards or by NEBB Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems and instrument manufacturer. Provide calibration history of the instruments to be used for test and balance purpose.
- D. Tab Criteria:
1. One or more of the applicable AABC, NEBB or SMACNA publications, supplemented by ASHRAE Handbook "HVAC Applications" Chapter 36, and requirements stated herein shall be the basis for planning, procedures, and reports.
 2. Flow rate tolerance: Following tolerances are allowed. For tolerances not mentioned herein follow ASHRAE Handbook "HVAC Applications", Chapter 36, as a guideline. Air Filter resistance

- during tests, artificially imposed if necessary, shall be at least 90 percent of final values for pre-filters and after-filters.
- a. Air handling unit and all other fans, cubic meters/min (cubic feet per minute): Minus 0 percent to plus 10 percent.
 - b. Minimum outside air: 0 percent to plus 10 percent.
 - c. Individual room air outlets and inlets, and air flow rates not mentioned above: Minus 2 percent to plus 10 percent except if the air to a space is 100 CFM or less the tolerance would be 0 to plus 5 percent.
 - d. Heating hot water coils: Minus 5 percent to plus 5 percent.
 - e. Chilled water and condenser water pumps: 0 percent to plus 5 percent.
 - f. Chilled water coils: 0 percent to plus 5 percent.
3. Systems shall be adjusted for energy efficient operation as described in PART 3.
 4. Typical TAB procedures and results shall be demonstrated to the Resident Engineer for one air distribution system and one hydronic system as follows:
 - a. When field TAB work begins.
 - b. During each partial final inspection and the final inspection for the project if requested by VA.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Submit names and qualifications of TAB agency and TAB specialists within 60 days after the notice to proceed. Submit information on three recently completed projects and a list of proposed test equipment.
- C. For use by the Resident Engineer staff, submit one complete set of applicable AABC or NEBB publications that will be the basis of TAB work.
- D. Submit Following for Review and Approval:
 1. Design Review Report after the system layout on air and water side is completed by the Contractor.
 2. Systems inspection report on equipment and installation for conformance with design.
 3. Duct Air Leakage Test Report.
 4. Systems Readiness Report.
 5. Intermediate and Final TAB reports covering flow balance and adjustments, performance tests, vibration tests and sound tests.

6. Include in final reports uncorrected installation deficiencies noted during TAB and applicable explanatory comments on test results that differ from design requirements.

E. Prior to request for Final or Partial Final inspection, submit completed Test and Balance report for the area.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

A. The following publications form a part of this specification to the extent indicated by the reference thereto. In text the publications are referenced to by the acronym of the organization.

B. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE):
2003.....HVAC Applications ASHRAE Handbook, Chapter 37,
Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing and Chapter
47, Sound and Vibration Control

C. Associated Air Balance Council (AABC):
2002.....AABC National Standards for Total System
Balance

D. National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB):
7th Edition 2005Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting,
Balancing of Environmental Systems
1st Edition 1994Procedural Standards for the Measurement and
Assessment of Sound and Vibration
2nd Edition 1999Procedural Standards for Building Systems
Commissioning

E. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
(SMACNA):
3rd Edition 2002HVAC SYSTEMS-Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLUGS

Provide plastic plugs to seal holes drilled in ductwork for test purposes.

2.2 INSULATION REPAIR MATERIAL

See Section 15250, INSULATION. Provide for repair of insulation removed or damaged for TAB work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Refer to TAB Criteria in Article, Quality Assurance.

- B. Obtain applicable contract documents and copies of approved submittals for HVAC equipment and automatic control systems.

3.2 DESIGN REVIEW REPORT

The TAB Specialist shall review the Contract Plans and specifications and advise the Resident Engineer of any design deficiencies that would prevent the HVAC systems from effectively operating in accordance with the sequence of operation specified or prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system. The TAB Specialist shall provide a report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

3.3 SYSTEMS INSPECTION REPORT

- A. Inspect equipment and installation for conformance with design.
- B. The inspection and report is to be done after air distribution equipment is on site and duct installation has begun, but well in advance of performance testing and balancing work. The purpose of the inspection is to identify and report deviations from design and ensure that systems will be ready for TAB at the appropriate time.
- C. Reports: Follow check list format developed by AABC, NEBB or SMACNA, supplemented by narrative comments, with emphasis on air handling units and fans. Check for conformance with submittals. Verify that diffuser and register sizes are correct. Check air terminal unit installation including their duct sizes and routing.

3.4 DUCT AIR LEAKAGE TEST REPORT

See paragraphs "Duct leakage Tests and Repairs" in Section 15840, DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES for TAB agency's role and responsibilities in witnessing, recording and reporting of deficiencies.

3.5 SYSTEM READINESS REPORT

- A. Inspect each System to ensure that it is complete including installation and operation of controls.
- B. Verify that all items such as ductwork piping, ports, terminals, connectors, etc., that is required for TAB are installed. Provide a report to the Resident Engineer.

3.6 TAB REPORTS

- A. Submit an intermediate report for 50 percent of systems and equipment tested and balanced to establish satisfactory test results.
- B. The TAB contractor shall provide raw data immediately in writing to the Resident Engineer if there is a problem in achieving intended results before submitting a formal report.

- C. If over 20 percent of readings in the intermediate report fall outside the acceptable range, the TAB report shall be considered invalid and all contract TAB work shall be repeated and re-submitted for approval.
- D. Do not proceed with the remaining systems until intermediate report is approved by the Resident Engineer.

3.7 TAB PROCEDURES

- A. Tab shall be performed in accordance with the requirement of the Standard under which TAB agency is certified by either AABC or NEBB.
- B. General: During TAB all related system components shall be in full operation. Fan and pump rotation, motor loads and equipment vibration shall be checked and corrected as necessary before proceeding with TAB. Set controls and/or block off parts of distribution systems to simulate design operation of variable volume air or water systems for test and balance work.
- C. Coordinate TAB procedures with any phased construction completion requirements for the project. Provide TAB reports for each phase of the project prior to partial final inspections of each phase of the project.
- D. Allow sufficient time in construction schedule for TAB and submission of all reports for an organized and timely correction of deficiencies.
- E. Air Balance and Equipment Test: Include fans, fan coil units and room diffusers/outlets/inlets.
 - 1. Artificially load air filters by partial blanking to produce air pressure drop of at least 90 percent of the design final pressure drop.
 - 2. Adjust fan speeds to provide design air flow. V-belt drives, including fixed pitch pulley requirements, are specified in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL).
 - 3. Test and balance systems in all specified modes of operation, including variable volume, economizer, and fire emergency modes. Verify that dampers and other controls function properly.
 - 4. Record final measurements for air handling equipment performance data sheets.
- F. Water Balance and Equipment Test: Include pumps, coils, coolers and condensers:
 - 1. Coordinate water chiller flow balancing with Section 15650, REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT (HVAC).

2. Adjust flow rates for equipment. Set coils and evaporator to values on equipment submittals, if different from values on contract drawings.
3. Primary-secondary (variable volume) systems: Coordinate TAB with Section 15902, CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTATION (DDC). Balance systems at design water flow and then verify that variable flow controls function properly.
4. Record final measurements for hydronic equipment on performance data sheets. Include entering and leaving water temperatures for heating and cooling coils. Include entering and leaving air temperatures (DB/WB for cooling coils) for fan coil units. Make air and water temperature measurements at the same time.

3.8 VIBRATION TESTING

- A. Furnish instruments and perform vibration measurements as specified in Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL. Field vibration balancing is specified in Section 15050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (MECHANICAL). Provide measurements for all rotating HVAC equipment of 373 watts (1/2 horsepower) and larger, including centrifugal/screw compressors, cooling towers, pumps, fans and motors.
- B. Record initial measurements for each unit of equipment on test forms and submit a report to the Resident Engineer. Where vibration readings exceed the allowable tolerance Contractor shall be directed to correct the problem. The TAB agency shall verify that the corrections are done and submit a final report to the Resident Engineer.

3.9 SOUND TESTING

- A. Perform and record required sound measurements in accordance with Paragraph, QUALITY ASSURANCE in Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL.
 1. Take readings in rooms. The Resident Engineer may designate the specific rooms to be tested.
 2. Provide cooling tower sound measurements. Refer to Section 15712, COOLING TOWER.
- B. Take measurements with a calibrated sound level meter and octave band analyzer of the accuracy required by AABC or NEBB.
- C. Sound reference levels, formulas and coefficients shall be according to ASHRAE Handbook, "HVAC Applications", Chapter 46, SOUND AND VIBRATION CONTROL.

D. Determine compliance with specifications as follows:

1. When sound pressure levels are specified, including the NC Criteria in Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL:
 - a. Reduce the background noise as much as possible by shutting off unrelated audible equipment.
 - b. Measure octave band sound pressure levels with specified equipment "off."
 - c. Measure octave band sound pressure levels with specified equipment "on."
 - d. Use the DIFFERENCE in corresponding readings to determine the sound pressure due to equipment.

DIFFERENCE:	0	1	2	3	4	5 to 9	10 or More
FACTOR:	10	7	4	3	2	1	0

Sound pressure level due to equipment equals sound pressure level with equipment "on" minus FACTOR.

- e. Plot octave bands of sound pressure level due to equipment for typical rooms on a graph which also shows noise criteria (NC) curves.
2. When sound power levels are specified:
 - a. Perform steps 1.a. thru 1.d., as above.
 - b. For indoor equipment: Determine room attenuating effect, i.e., difference between sound power level and sound pressure level. Determined sound power level will be the sum of sound pressure level due to equipment plus the room attenuating effect.
 - c. For outdoor equipment: Use directivity factor and distance from noise source to determine distance factor, i.e., difference between sound power level and sound pressure level. Measured sound power level will be the sum of sound pressure level due to equipment plus the distance factor. Use existing criteria for sound level location.
3. Where sound pressure levels are specified in terms of dB(A), as in Section 15712, COOLING TOWER, PACKAGED, measure sound levels using the "A" scale of meter. Single value readings will be used instead of octave band analysis.

- E. Where measured sound levels exceed specified level, the installing contractor or equipment manufacturer shall take remedial action

approved by the Resident Engineer and the necessary sound tests shall be repeated.

3.10 MARKING OF SETTINGS

Following approval of Tab final Report, the setting of all HVAC adjustment devices including valves, splitters and dampers shall be permanently marked by the TAB Specialist so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time. Style and colors used for markings shall be coordinated with the Resident Engineer.

3.11 IDENTIFICATION OF TEST PORTS

The TAB Specialist shall permanently and legibly identify the location points of duct test ports. If the ductwork has exterior insulation, the identification shall be made on the exterior side of the insulation. All penetrations through ductwork and ductwork insulation shall be sealed to prevent air leaks and maintain integrity of vapor barrier.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16050
BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This Section, Basic Methods and Requirements (Electrical) applies to all sections of Division 16.
- B. Furnish and install electrical wiring, systems, equipment and accessories in accordance with the specifications and drawings. Capacities and ratings of motors, transformers, cable, switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, motor control centers, and other items and arrangements for the specified items are shown on drawings.
- C. Wiring ampacities specified or shown on the drawings are based on copper conductors, with the conduit and raceways accordingly sized. Aluminum conductors are prohibited.
- D. All energized electrical work shall be in compliance with VHA Directive 2006-056.

1.2 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

- A. References to the National Electrical Code (NEC), Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) and National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) are minimum installation requirement standards.
- B. Drawings and other specification sections shall govern in those instances where requirements are greater than those specified in the above standards.

1.3 TEST STANDARDS

- A. All materials and equipment shall be listed, labeled or certified by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., standards where test standards have been established. Equipment and materials which are not covered by UL Standards will be accepted provided equipment and material is listed, labeled, certified or otherwise determined to meet safety requirements of a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Equipment of a class which no nationally recognized testing laboratory accepts, certifies, lists, labels, or determines to be safe, will be considered if inspected or tested in accordance with national industrial standards, such as NEMA, or ANSI. Evidence of compliance shall include certified test reports and definitive shop drawings.
- B. Definitions:
 - 1. Listed; equipment or device of a kind mentioned which:
 - a. Is published by a nationally recognized laboratory which makes periodic inspection of production of such equipment.

- b. States that such equipment meets nationally recognized standards or has been tested and found safe for use in a specified manner.
- 2. Labeled; equipment or device is when:
 - a. It embodies a valid label, symbol, or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory such as Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
 - b. The laboratory makes periodic inspections of the production of such equipment.
 - c. The labeling indicates compliance with nationally recognized standards or tests to determine safe use in a specified manner.
- 3. Certified; equipment or product is which:
 - a. Has been tested and found by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to meet nationally recognized standards or to be safe for use in a specified manner.
 - b. Production of equipment or product is periodically inspected by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.
 - c. Bears a label, tag, or other record of certification.
- 4. Nationally recognized testing laboratory; laboratory which is approved, in accordance with OSHA regulations, by the Secretary of Labor.

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS (PRODUCTS AND SERVICES)

- A. Manufacturers Qualifications: The manufacturer shall regularly and presently produce, as one of the manufacturer's principal products, the equipment and material specified for this project, and shall have manufactured the item for at least three years.
- B. Product Qualification:
 - 1. Manufacturer's product shall have been in satisfactory operation, on three installations of similar size and type as this project, for approximately three years.
 - 2. The Government reserves the right to require the Contractor to submit a list of installations where the products have been in operation before approval.
- C. Service Qualifications: There shall be a permanent service organization maintained or trained by the manufacturer which will render satisfactory service to this installation within eight hours of receipt of notification that service is needed. Submit name and address of service organizations.

1.5 MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

- A. Materials and equipment furnished shall be of current production by manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such items, for which replacement parts shall be available.
- B. When more than one unit of the same class of equipment is required, such units shall be the product of a single manufacturer.
- C. New equipment shall match the manufacturer and model of like existing equipment.
- D. Where applicable, equipment shall comply with Energy Star or FEMP designated products.
- E. Equipment Assemblies and Components:
 - 1. Components of an assembled unit need not be products of the same manufacturer.
 - 2. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies, which include components made by others, shall assume complete responsibility for the final assembled unit.
 - 3. Components shall be compatible with each other and with the total assembly for the intended service.
 - 4. Constituent parts which are similar shall be the product of a single manufacturer.
- F. Factory wiring shall be identified on the equipment being furnished and on all wiring diagrams.
- G. When Factory Testing Is Specified:
 - 1. The Government shall have the option of witnessing factory tests. The contractor shall notify the VA through the Resident Engineer a minimum of 15 working days prior to the manufacturers making the factory tests.
 - 2. Four copies of certified test reports containing all test data shall be furnished to the Resident Engineer prior to final inspection and not more than 90 days after completion of the tests.
 - 3. When equipment fails to meet factory test and reinspection is required, the contractor shall be liable for all additional expenses, including expenses of the Government.

1.6 EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

Where variations from the contract requirements are requested in accordance with Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS and Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS, the connecting work and related components shall include, but not be limited to additions or changes to branch circuits, circuit protective devices, conduits, wire, feeders, controls, panels and installation methods.

1.7 EQUIPMENT PROTECTION

- A. Equipment and materials shall be protected during shipment and storage against physical damage, dirt, moisture, cold and rain:
 - 1. During installation, enclosures, equipment, controls, controllers, circuit protective devices, and other like items, shall be protected against entry of foreign matter; and be vacuum cleaned both inside and outside before testing and operating and repainting if required.
 - 2. Damaged equipment shall be, as determined by the Resident Engineer, placed in first class operating condition or be returned to the source of supply for repair or replacement.
 - 3. Painted surfaces shall be protected with factory installed removable heavy kraft paper, sheet vinyl or equal.
 - 4. Damaged paint on equipment and materials shall be refinished with the same quality of paint and workmanship as used by the manufacturer so repaired areas are not obvious.

1.8 WORK PERFORMANCE

- A. All electrical work must comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 (NEC), NFPA 70B, NFPA 70E, OSHA Part 1910 subpart J, OSHA Part 1910 subpart S and OSHA Part 1910 subpart K in addition to other references required by contract.
- B. Job site safety and worker safety is the responsibility of the contractor.
- C. Electrical work shall be accomplished with all affected circuits or equipment de-energized. When an electrical outage cannot be accomplished in this manner for the required work, the following requirements are mandatory:
 - 1. Electricians must use full protective equipment (i.e., certified and tested insulating material to cover exposed energized electrical components, certified and tested insulated tools, etc.) while working on energized systems in accordance with NFPA 70E.
 - 2. Electricians must wear personal protective equipment while working on energized systems in accordance with NFPA 70E.
 - 3. Before initiating any work, a job specific work plan must be developed by the contractor with a peer review conducted and documented by the Resident Engineer and Medical Center staff. The work plan must include procedures to be used on and near the live electrical equipment, barriers to be installed, safety equipment to be used and exit pathways.
 - 4. Work on energized circuits or equipment cannot begin until prior written approval is obtained from the Director of the Medical Center.

- D. For work on existing stations, arrange, phase and perform work to assure electrical service for other buildings at all times. Refer to Article OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS under Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- E. New work shall be installed and connected to existing work neatly and carefully. Disturbed or damaged work shall be replaced or repaired to its prior conditions, as required by Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- F. Coordinate location of equipment and conduit with other trades to minimize interferences. See Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.

1.9 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION AND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Equipment location shall be as close as practical to locations shown on the drawings.
- B. Working spaces shall not be less than specified in the NEC for all voltages specified.
- C. Inaccessible Equipment:
 - 1. Where the Government determines that the Contractor has installed equipment not conveniently accessible for operation and maintenance, the equipment shall be removed and reinstalled as directed at no additional cost to the Government.
 - 2. "Conveniently accessible" is defined as being capable of being reached without the use of ladders, or without climbing or crawling under or over obstacles such as, but not limited to, motors, pumps, belt guards, transformers, piping, ductwork, conduit and raceways.

1.10 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. In addition to the requirements of the NEC, install an identification sign which clearly indicates information required for use and maintenance of items such as panelboards, cabinets, motor controllers (starters), safety switches, separately enclosed circuit breakers, individual breakers and controllers in switchboards, switchgear and motor control assemblies, control devices and other significant equipment.
- B. In addition to the panel name indicated in drawings and panel schedules, the name plate for emergency system shall indicate the emergency branch of life safety, critical or equipment as indicated in panel schedules.
- C. Nameplates shall be laminated black phenolic resin with a white core with engraved lettering, a minimum of 6 mm (1/4 inch) high. Secure nameplates with screws. Nameplates that are furnished by manufacturer as a standard catalog item, or where other method of identification is herein specified, are exceptions.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.

- B. The Government's approval shall be obtained for all equipment and material before delivery to the job site. Delivery, storage or installation of equipment or material which has not had prior approval will not be permitted at the job site.
- C. All submittals shall include adequate descriptive literature, catalog cuts, shop drawings and other data necessary for the Government to ascertain that the proposed equipment and materials comply with specification requirements. Catalog cuts submitted for approval shall be legible and clearly identify equipment being submitted.
- D. Submittals for individual systems and equipment assemblies which consist of more than one item or component shall be made for the system or assembly as a whole. Partial submittals will not be considered for approval.
 - 1. Mark the submittals, "SUBMITTED UNDER SECTION_____".
 - 2. Submittals shall be marked to show specification reference including the section and paragraph numbers.
 - 3. Submit each section separately.
- E. The submittals shall include the following:
 - 1. Information that confirms compliance with contract requirements. Include the manufacturer's name, model or catalog numbers, catalog information, technical data sheets, shop drawings, pictures, nameplate data and test reports as required.
 - 2. Submittals are required for all equipment anchors and supports. Submittals shall include weights, dimensions, center of gravity, standard connections, manufacturer's recommendations and behavior problems (e.g., vibration, thermal expansion,) associated with equipment or piping so that the proposed installation can be properly reviewed.
 - 3. Elementary and interconnection wiring diagrams for communication and signal systems, control system and equipment assemblies. All terminal points and wiring shall be identified on wiring diagrams.
 - 4. Parts list which shall include those replacement parts recommended by the equipment manufacturer, quantity of parts, current price and availability of each part.
- F. Manuals: Submit in accordance with Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
 - 1. Maintenance and Operation Manuals: Submit as required for systems and equipment specified in the technical sections. Furnish four copies, bound in hardback binders, (manufacturer's standard binders) or an approved equivalent. Furnish one complete manual as specified in the technical section but in no case later than prior to performance of

- systems or equipment test, and furnish the remaining manuals prior to contract completion.
2. Inscribe the following identification on the cover: the words "MAINTENANCE AND OPERATION MANUAL," the name and location of the system, equipment, building, name of Contractor, and contract number. Include in the manual the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each subcontractor installing the system or equipment and the local representatives for the system or equipment.
3. Provide a "Table of Contents" and assemble the manual to conform to the table of contents, with tab sheets placed before instructions covering the subject. The instructions shall be legible and easily read, with large sheets of drawings folded in.
4. The manuals shall include:
 - a. Internal and interconnecting wiring and control diagrams with data to explain detailed operation and control of the equipment.
 - b. A control sequence describing start-up, operation, and shutdown.
 - c. Description of the function of each principal item of equipment.
 - d. Installation and maintenance instructions.
 - e. Safety precautions.
 - f. Diagrams and illustrations.
 - g. Testing methods.
 - h. Performance data.
 - i. Lubrication schedule including type, grade, temperature range, and frequency.
 - j. Pictorial "exploded" parts list with part numbers. Emphasis shall be placed on the use of special tools and instruments. The list shall indicate sources of supply, recommended spare parts, and name of servicing organization.
 - k. Appendix; list qualified permanent servicing organizations for support of the equipment, including addresses and certified qualifications.
- G. Approvals will be based on complete submission of manuals together with shop drawings.
- H. After approval and prior to installation, furnish the Resident Engineer with one sample of each of the following:
 1. A 300 mm (12 inch) length of each type and size of wire and cable along with the tag from the coils of reels from which the samples were taken.
 2. Each type of conduit coupling, bushing and termination fitting.
 3. Conduit hangers, clamps and supports.
 4. Duct sealing compound.

5. Each type of receptacle, toggle switch, outlet box, manual motor starter, device plate, engraved nameplate, wire and cable splicing and terminating material and single pole molded case circuit breaker.
6. Each type of light fixture specified in Section 16510 or shown on the drawings.

I. In addition to the requirement of SUBMITTALS, the VA reserves the right to request the manufacturer to arrange for a VA representative to see typical active systems in operation, when there has been no prior experience with the manufacturer or the type of equipment being submitted.

1.12 SINGULAR NUMBER

Where any device or part of equipment is referred to in these specifications in the singular number (e.g., "the switch"), this reference shall be deemed to apply to as many such devices as are required to complete the installation as shown on the drawings.

1.13 TRAINING

- A. Training shall be provided in accordance with Article, INSTRUCTIONS, of Section 01010, GENERAL REQUIRMENTS.
- B. Training shall be provided for the particular equipment or system as required in each associated specification.
- C. A training schedule shall be developed and submitted by the contractor and approved by the Resident Engineer at least 30 days prior to the planned training.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16051
ELECTRICAL SYSTEM PROTECTIVE DEVICE STUDY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies the requirements of the Electrical System Protective Device Study.
- B. A short circuit and coordination study shall be prepared for the electrical over current devices to be installed under this project to assure proper equipment and personnel protection.
- C. The study shall present an organized time-current analysis of each protective device in series from the individual device back to the utility and the on-site generator sources. The study shall reflect the operation of each device during normal and abnormal current conditions.
- D. The results of the coordination study and short circuit study shall be used to create required labels identifying the arc flash hazards present at each major electrical device in the distribution system.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16160, PANELBOARDS: Low voltage panelboards.
- C. Section 16361, SWITCHGEAR, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS): Primary distribution switchgear.
- D. Section 16362, SWITCHES, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS): Primary switches.
- E. Section 16462, DISTRIBUTION SWITCHBOARDS: Low voltage distribution switchboards.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL), submit the following:
- B. Complete short circuit, coordination study and arc flash as described herein.
- C. Protective equipment shop drawings shall be submitted simultaneously with or after the protective device study. Protective equipment shop drawings will not be accepted prior to protective device study.
- D. Certification: Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. Certification by the Contractor that the protective devices have been adjusted and set in accordance with the approved protective device

study and arc flash warning labels have been attached to the equipment.

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

The protective device study shall be prepared by qualified engineers of the high voltage switchgear manufacturer or an approved consultant. The Contractor is responsible for providing all pertinent information required by the preparers to complete the study.

1.5 REQUIREMENTS

- A. The complete study shall include a system one line diagram, short circuit and ground fault analysis, protective coordination plots, protective device settings and arc flash level analysis; both those that are coordinated and those that are not coordinated on an over-current basis.
- B. One Line Diagram:
 - 1. Show, on the one line diagram, all electrical equipment and wiring to be protected by the overcurrent devices installed under this project. Clearly show, on the one line, the schematic wiring of the electrical distribution system.
 - 2. Also show on the one line diagram the following specific information:
 - a. Calculated fault impedance, X/R ratios, short circuit values and arc flash values at each bus.
 - b. Breaker and fuse ratings.
 - c. Generator kW and Transformer kVA and voltage ratings, percent impedance, X/R ratios, and wiring connections.
 - d. Voltage at each bus.
 - e. Identification of each bus.
 - f. Conduit material, feeder sizes, length, and X/R ratios.
- C. Short Circuit Study:
 - 1. Systematically calculate the fault impedance to determine the available short circuit and ground fault currents at each bus. Incorporate the motor contribution in determining the momentary and interrupting ratings of the protective devices.
 - 2. The study shall be calculated by means of a computer program. Pertinent data and the rationale employed in developing the calculations shall be incorporated in the introductory remarks of the study.
 - 3. Present the data determined by the short circuit study in a table format. Include the following:
 - a. Device identification.
 - b. Operating voltage.

- c. Protective device.
- d. Device rating.
- e. Calculated short circuit current.

D. Coordination Curves:

1. Prepare the coordination curves to determine the required settings of protective devices to assure selective coordination. Graphically illustrate on log-log paper that adequate time separation exists between series devices, including the utility company upstream device. Plot the specific time-current characteristics of each protective device in such a manner that all upstream devices will be clearly depicted on one sheet.
2. The following specific information shall also be shown on the coordination curves:
 - a. Device identification.
 - b. Voltage and current ratio for curves.
 - c. 3-phase and 1-phase ANSI damage points for each transformer.
 - d. No-damage, melting, and clearing curves for fuses.
 - e. Cable damage curves.
 - f. Transformer inrush points.
 - g. Maximum short circuit cutoff point.
3. Develop a table to summarize the settings selected for the protective devices. Include the following in the table:
 - a. Device identification.
 - b. Relay CT ratios, tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup.
 - c. Circuit breaker sensor rating, long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings, and time bands.
 - d. Fuse rating and type.
 - e. Ground fault pickup and time delay.
 - f. Resulting Arc Flash energy levels at protected equipment to be included on a warning label and used in determining required Personnel Protective Equipment and extent of exclusion zone.

E. Arc Flash Study

1. Prepare a calculation of the available Arc Flash energy present at all major electrical distribution equipment 400A and above on the system utilizing the results of the Short Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies.
2. The study shall be calculated by means of a computer program. Pertinent data and the rationale employed in developing the calculations shall be incorporated in the introductory remarks of the study.

3. Present the data determined by the Arc Flash study in a table format.
Include the following:
 - a. Device identification.
 - b. Operating voltage.
 - c. Protective device.
 - d. Device rating.
 - e. Calculated arc flash energy level.
4. Provide permanent labeling for attachment to the equipment documenting the arc flash energy levels present.

1.6 ANALYSIS

- A. Analyze the short circuit calculations, and highlight any equipment that is determined to be underrated as specified. Propose approaches to effectively protect the underrated equipment. Provide minor modifications to conform with the study (Examples of minor modifications are trip sizes within the same frame, the time curve characteristics of induction relays, C.T. ranges, etc.).
- B. After developing the coordination curves, highlight areas lacking coordination. Present a technical evaluation with a discussion of the logical compromises for best coordination.
- C. After developing the arc flash energy levels, highlight the various levels of hazard and present a technical evaluation with discussion of the recommended levels of personnel equipment required and working arrangements to mitigate the hazards present.

1.7 ADJUSTMENTS, SETTINGS AND MODIFICATIONS

- A. Necessary final field adjustments, settings and minor modifications shall be made to conform with the protective device study without additional cost to the Government.
- B. All final circuit breaker and relay settings and fuse sizes shall be made in accordance with the recommendations of the protective device study.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16111
CONDUIT SYSTEMS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies the furnishing, installation, and connection of conduit, fittings, and boxes to form complete, coordinated, grounded raceway systems. Raceways are required for all wiring unless shown or specified otherwise.
- B. Definitions: The term conduit, as used in this specification, shall mean any or all of the raceway types specified.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Bedding of conduits: Section 02200, EARTHWORK.
- B. Mounting board for telephone closets: Section 06100, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- C. Sealing around penetrations to maintain the integrity of fire rated construction: Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS.
- D. Fabrications for the deflection of water away from the building envelope at penetrations: Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- E. Sealing around conduit penetrations through the building envelope to prevent moisture migration into the building: Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- F. Identification and painting of conduit and other devices: Section 09900, PAINTING.
- G. General electrical requirements and items that is common to more than one section of DIVISION 16: Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- H. Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents: Section 16450, GROUNDING.
- I. Section 13081, SEISMIC RETRAINTS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

In accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS, furnish the following:

- A. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Size and location of main feeders;
 - 2. Size and location of panels and pull boxes
 - 3. Layout of required conduit penetrations through structural elements.
 - 4. The specific item proposed and its area of application shall be identified on the catalog cuts.
- B. Certification: Prior to final inspection, deliver to the Resident Engineer four copies of the certification that the material is in

accordance with the drawings and specifications and has been properly installed.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-05.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
- C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 1-03.....Flexible Metal Conduit
 - 5-01.....Surface Metal Raceway and Fittings
 - 6-03.....Rigid Metal Conduit
 - 50-03.....Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
 - 360-03.....Liquid-Tight Flexible Steel Conduit
 - 467-01.....Grounding and Bonding Equipment
 - 514A-01.....Metallic Outlet Boxes
 - 514B-02.....Fittings for Cable and Conduit
 - 514C-05.....Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes and Covers
 - 651-02.....Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit
 - 651A-03.....Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit
 - 797-03.....Electrical Metallic Tubing
 - 1242-00.....Intermediate Metal Conduit
- D. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
 - TC-3-04.....PVC Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing
 - FB1-03.....Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing and Cable

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL

- A. Conduit Size: In accordance with the NEC, but not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) unless otherwise shown. Where permitted by the NEC, 13 mm (1/2 inch) flexible conduit may be used for tap connections to recessed lighting fixtures.
- B. Conduit:
 - 1. Rigid galvanized steel: Shall Conform to UL 6, ANSI C80.1.
 - 2. Rigid intermediate steel conduit (IMC): Shall Conform to UL 1242, ANSI C80.6.

3. Electrical metallic tubing (EMT): Shall Conform to UL 797, ANSI C80.3. Maximum size not to exceed 105 mm (4 inch) and shall be permitted only with cable rated 600 volts or less.
4. Flexible galvanized steel conduit: Shall Conform to UL 1.
5. Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit: Shall Conform to UL 360.
6. Direct burial plastic conduit: Shall conform to UL 651 and UL 651A, heavy wall PVC or high density polyethylene (PE).
7. Surface metal raceway: Shall Conform to UL 5.

C. Conduit Fittings:

1. Rigid steel and IMC conduit fittings:
 - a. Fittings shall meet the requirements of UL 514B and ANSI/ NEMA FB1.
 - a. Standard threaded couplings, locknuts, bushings, and elbows: Only steel or malleable iron materials are acceptable. Integral retractable type IMC couplings are also acceptable.
 - b. Locknuts: Bonding type with sharp edges for digging into the metal wall of an enclosure.
 - c. Bushings: Metallic insulating type, consisting of an insulating insert molded or locked into the metallic body of the fitting. Bushings made entirely of metal or nonmetallic material are not permitted.
 - d. Erickson (union-type) and set screw type couplings: Approved for use in concrete are permitted for use to complete a conduit run where conduit is installed in concrete. Use set screws of case hardened steel with hex head and cup point to firmly seat in conduit wall for positive ground. Tightening of set screws with pliers is prohibited.
 - e. Sealing fittings: Threaded cast iron type. Use continuous drain type sealing fittings to prevent passage of water vapor. In concealed work, install fittings in flush steel boxes with blank cover plates having the same finishes as that of other electrical plates in the room.
2. Electrical metallic tubing fittings:
 - a. Fittings shall meet the requirements of UL 514B and ANSI/ NEMA FB1.
 - b. Only steel or malleable iron materials are acceptable.
 - c. Couplings and connectors: Concrete tight and rain tight, with connectors having insulated throats. Use gland and ring compression type couplings and connectors for conduit sizes 50 mm (2 inches) and smaller. Use set screw type couplings with four set screws each for conduit sizes over 50 mm (2 inches). Use set

- screws of case-hardened steel with hex head and cup point to firmly seat in wall of conduit for positive grounding.
- d. Indent type connectors or couplings are prohibited.
- e. Die-cast or pressure-cast zinc-alloy fittings or fittings made of "pot metal" are prohibited.
- 3. Flexible steel conduit fittings:
 - a. Conform to UL 514B. Only steel or malleable iron materials are acceptable.
 - b. Clamp type, with insulated throat.
- 4. Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit fittings:
 - a. Fittings shall meet the requirements of UL 514B and ANSI/ NEMA FB1.
 - b. Only steel or malleable iron materials are acceptable.
 - c. Fittings must incorporate a threaded grounding cone, a steel or plastic compression ring, and a gland for tightening. Connectors shall have insulated throats.
- 5. Direct burial plastic conduit fittings:
 - a. Fittings shall meet the requirements of UL 514C and NEMA TC3.
 - b. As recommended by the conduit manufacturer.
- 6. Expansion and deflection couplings:
 - a. Conform to UL 467 and UL 514B.
 - b. Accommodate, 19 mm (0.75 inch) deflection, expansion, or contraction in any direction, and allow 30 degree angular deflections.
 - c. Include internal flexible metal braid sized to guarantee conduit ground continuity and fault currents in accordance with UL 467, and the NEC code tables for ground conductors.
 - d. Jacket: Flexible, corrosion-resistant, watertight, moisture and heat resistant molded rubber material with stainless steel jacket clamps.
- D. Conduit Supports:
 - 1. Parts and hardware: Zinc-coat or provide equivalent corrosion protection.
 - 2. Individual Conduit Hangers: Designed for the purpose, having a pre-assembled closure bolt and nut, and provisions for receiving a hanger rod.
 - 3. Multiple conduit (trapeze) hangers: Not less than 38 mm by 38 mm (1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inch), 12 gage steel, cold formed, lipped channels; with not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter steel hanger rods.
 - 4. Solid Masonry and Concrete Anchors: Self-drilling expansion shields, or machine bolt expansion.

E. Outlet, Junction, and Pull Boxes:

1. UL-50 and UL-514A.
2. Sheet metal boxes: Galvanized steel, except where otherwise shown.
3. Flush mounted wall or ceiling boxes shall be installed with raised covers so that front face of raised cover is flush with the wall. Surface mounted wall or ceiling boxes shall be installed with surface style flat or raised covers.

F. Wireways: Equip with hinged covers, except where removable covers are shown.

G. Warning Tape: Standard, 4-Mil polyethylene 76 mm (3 inch) wide tape // detectable // non-detectable // type, red with black letters, and imprinted with "CAUTION BURIED ELECTRIC LINE BELOW".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DRAWINGS

- A. Electrical layouts are generally diagrammatic; the drawings do not show off-sets, bends, and special fittings, or junction or pull boxes necessary to meet site conditions. These items shall be provided as required.

3.2 PENETRATIONS

A. Cutting or Holes:

1. Locate holes in advance where they are proposed in the structural sections such as ribs or beams. Obtain the approval of the Resident Engineer prior to drilling through structural sections.
2. Cut holes through concrete and masonry in new and existing structures with a diamond core drill or concrete saw. Pneumatic hammer, impact electric, hand or manual hammer type drills are not allowed, except where permitted by the Resident Engineer as required by limited working space.

- B. Fire Stop: Where conduits, wireways, and other electrical raceways pass through fire partitions, fire walls, smoke partitions, or floors, install a fire stop that provides an effective barrier against the spread of fire, smoke and gases as specified in Section, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS, with rock wool fiber or silicone foam sealant only. Completely fill and seal clearances between raceways and openings with the fire stop material.

- C. Waterproofing: At floor, exterior wall, and roof conduit penetrations, completely seal clearances around the conduit and make watertight as specified in Section, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. In accordance with UL, NEC, as shown, and as hereinafter specified.
- B. Essential (Emergency) raceway systems shall be entirely independent of other raceway systems, except where specifically "accepted" by NEC Article 517.
- C. Install conduit as follows:
 - 1. In complete runs before pulling in cables or wires.
 - 2. Flattened, dented, or deformed conduit is not permitted. Remove and replace the damaged conduits with new undamaged material.
 - 3. Assure conduit installation does not encroach into the ceiling height head room, walkways, or doorways.
 - 4. Cut square with a hacksaw, ream, remove burrs, and draw up tight.
 - 5. Mechanically and electrically continuous.
 - 6. Independently support conduit at 8'.0" on center. Do not use other supports i.e., (suspended ceilings, suspended ceiling supporting members, lighting fixtures, conduits, mechanical piping, or mechanical ducts).
 - 7. Support within 300 mm (1 foot) of changes of direction, and within 300 mm (1 foot) of each enclosure to which connected.
 - 8. Close ends of empty conduit with plugs or caps at the rough-in stage to prevent entry of debris, until wires are pulled in.
 - 9. Conduit installations under fume and vent hoods are prohibited.
 - 10. Secure conduits to cabinets, junction boxes, pull boxes and outlet boxes with bonding type locknuts. For rigid and IMC conduit installations, provide a locknut on the inside of the enclosure, made up wrench tight. Do not make conduit connections to junction box covers.
 - 11. Flashing of penetrations of the roof membrane is specified in Section, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
 - 12. Do not use aluminum conduits in wet locations.
 - 13. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or specified herein, all conduits shall be installed concealed within finished walls, floors and ceilings.
- D. Conduit Bends:
 - 1. Make bends with standard conduit bending machines.
 - 2. Conduit hickey may be used for slight offsets, and for straightening stubbed out conduits.
 - 3. Bending of conduits with a pipe tee or vise is prohibited.
- E. Layout and Homeruns:
 - 1. Install conduit with wiring, including homeruns, as shown.

2. Deviations: Make only where necessary to avoid interferences and only after drawings showing the proposed deviations have been submitted approved by the Resident Engineer.

F. Fire Alarm:

1. Fire alarm conduit shall be painted red (a red "top-coated" conduit from the conduit manufacturer may be used in lieu of painted conduit) in accordance with the requirements of Section 13850-"Fire Alarm Systems"

G. Seismic Areas:

1. Install bracing as required by Section 13081.

3.4 CONCEALED WORK INSTALLATION

A. In Concrete:

1. Conduit: Rigid steel, IMC or EMT. Do not install EMT in concrete slabs that are in contact with soil, gravel or vapor barriers.
2. Align and run conduit in direct lines.
3. Install conduit through concrete beams only when the following occurs:
 - a. Where shown on the structural drawings.
 - b. As approved by the Resident Engineer prior to construction, and after submittal of drawing showing location, size, and position of each penetration.
4. Installation of conduit in concrete that is less than 75 mm (3 inches) thick is prohibited.
 - a. Conduit outside diameter larger than 1/3 of the slab thickness is prohibited.
 - b. Space between conduits in slabs: Approximately six conduit diameters apart, except one conduit diameter at conduit crossings.
 - c. Install conduits approximately in the center of the slab so that there will be a minimum of 19 mm (3/4 inch) of concrete around the conduits.
5. Make couplings and connections watertight. Use thread compounds that are UL approved conductive type to insure low resistance ground continuity through the conduits. Tightening set screws with pliers is prohibited.

B. Furred or Suspended Ceilings and in Walls:

1. Conduit for conductors above 600 volts:
 - a. Rigid steel.
 - b. Aluminum conduit mixed indiscriminately with other types in the same system is prohibited.
2. Conduit for conductors 600 volts and below:

- a. Rigid steel, IMC, or EMT. Different type conduits mixed indiscriminately in the same system is prohibited.
- 3. Align and run conduit parallel or perpendicular to the building lines.
- 4. Connect recessed lighting fixtures to conduit runs with maximum 1800 mm (six feet) of flexible metal conduit extending from a junction box to the fixture.
- 5. Tightening set screws with pliers is prohibited.

3.5 EXPOSED WORK INSTALLATION

- A. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, exposed conduit is only permitted in mechanical and electrical rooms.
- B. Conduit for conductors above 600 volts:
 - 1. Rigid steel.
- C. Conduit for Conductors 600 volts and below:
 - 1. Rigid steel, IMC, or EMT. Different type of conduits mixed indiscriminately in the system is prohibited.
- D. Align and run conduit parallel or perpendicular to the building lines.
- E. Install horizontal runs close to the ceiling or beams and secure with conduit straps.
- F. Support horizontal or vertical runs at not over 2400 mm (eight foot) intervals.
- G. Painting:
 - 1. Paint exposed conduit as specified in Section, PAINTING.
 - 2. Paint all conduits containing cables rated over 600 volts safety orange. Refer to Section, PAINTING for preparation, paint type, and exact color. In addition, paint legends, using 50 mm (two inch) high black numerals and letters, showing the cable voltage rating. Provide legends where conduits pass through walls and floors and at maximum 6000 mm (20 foot) intervals in between.

3.6 WET OR DAMP LOCATIONS

- A. Unless otherwise shown, use conduits of rigid steel or IMC.
- B. Provide sealing fittings, to prevent passage of water vapor, where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, i.e., (refrigerated spaces, constant temperature rooms, air conditioned spaces building exterior walls, roofs) or similar spaces.
- C. Unless otherwise shown, use rigid steel or IMC conduit within 1500 mm (5 feet) of the exterior and below concrete building slabs in contact with soil, gravel, or vapor barriers. Conduit shall include an outer factory coating of .5 mm (20 mil) bonded PVC or field coat with asphaltum before installation. After installation, completely coat damaged areas of coating.

3.7 MOTORS AND VIBRATING EQUIPMENT

- A. Use flexible metal conduit for connections to motors and other electrical equipment subject to movement, vibration, misalignment, cramped quarters, or noise transmission.
- B. Provide liquid-tight flexible metal conduit for installation in exterior locations, moisture or humidity laden atmosphere, corrosive atmosphere, water or spray wash-down operations, inside (air stream) of HVAC units, and locations subject to seepage or dripping of oil, grease or water. Provide a green ground wire with flexible metal conduit.

3.8 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Conduits 75 mm (3 inches) and larger, that are secured to the building structure on opposite sides of a building expansion joint, require expansion and deflection couplings. Install the couplings in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Provide conduits smaller than 75 mm (3 inches) with junction boxes on both sides of the expansion joint. Connect conduits to junction boxes with sufficient slack of flexible conduit to produce 125 mm (5 inch) vertical drop midway between the ends. Flexible conduit shall have a copper green ground bonding jumper installed. In lieu of this flexible conduit, expansion and deflection couplings as specified above for 375 mm (15 inches) and larger conduits are acceptable.
- C. Install expansion and deflection couplings where shown.
- D. Seismic Areas: In seismic areas, provide conduits rigidly secured to the building structure on opposite sides of a building expansion joint with junction boxes on both sides of the joint. Connect conduits to junction boxes with 375 mm (15 inches) of slack flexible conduit. Flexible conduit shall have a copper green ground bonding jumper installed.

3.9 CONDUIT SUPPORTS, INSTALLATION

- A. Safe working load shall not exceed 1/4 of proof test load of fastening devices.
- B. Use pipe straps or individual conduit hangers for supporting individual conduits. Maximum distance between supports is 2.5 m (8 foot) on center.
- C. Support multiple conduit runs with trapeze hangers. Use trapeze hangers that are designed to support a load equal to or greater than the sum of the weights of the conduits, wires, hanger itself, and 90 kg (200 pounds). Attach each conduit with U-bolts or other approved fasteners.
- D. Support conduit independently of junction boxes, pull boxes, fixtures, suspended ceiling T-bars, angle supports, and similar items.
- E. Fasteners and Supports in Solid Masonry and Concrete:
 - 1. New Construction: Use steel or malleable iron concrete inserts set in place prior to placing the concrete.

2. Existing Construction:

- a. Steel expansion anchors not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) bolt size and not less than 28 mm (1-1/8 inch) embedment.
- b. Power set fasteners not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) diameter with depth of penetration not less than 75 mm (3 inches).
- c. Use vibration and shock resistant anchors and fasteners for attaching to concrete ceilings.
- F. Hollow Masonry: Toggle bolts are permitted.
- G. Bolts supported only by plaster or gypsum wallboard are not acceptable.
- H. Metal Structures: Use machine screw fasteners or other devices specifically designed and approved for the application.
- I. Attachment by wood plugs, rawl plug, plastic, lead or soft metal anchors, or wood blocking and bolts supported only by plaster is prohibited.
- J. Chain, wire, or perforated strap shall not be used to support or fasten conduit.
- K. Spring steel type supports or fasteners are prohibited for all uses except: Horizontal and vertical supports/fasteners within walls.
- L. Vertical Supports: Vertical conduit runs shall have riser clamps and supports in accordance with the NEC and as shown. Provide supports for cable and wire with fittings that include internal wedges and retaining collars.

3.10 BOX INSTALLATION

- A. Boxes for Concealed Conduits:
 - 1. Flush mounted.
 - 2. Provide raised covers for boxes to suit the wall or ceiling, construction and finish.
- B. In addition to boxes shown, install additional boxes where needed to prevent damage to cables and wires during pulling in operations.
- C. Remove only knockouts as required and plug unused openings. Use threaded plugs for cast metal boxes and snap-in metal covers for sheet metal boxes.
- D. Outlet boxes in the same wall mounted back-to-back are prohibited. A minimum 600 mm (24 inch), center-to-center lateral spacing shall be maintained between boxes.)
- E. Minimum size of outlet boxes for ground fault interrupter (GFI) receptacles is 100 mm (4 inches) square by 55 mm (2-1/8 inches) deep, with device covers for the wall material and thickness involved.
- F. Stencil or install phenolic nameplates on covers of the boxes identified on riser diagrams; for example "SIG-FA JB No. 1".

- G. On all Branch Circuit junction box covers, identify the circuits with black marker.

3.11 TELEPHONE CONDUIT

- A. Install the telephone raceway system as shown on drawings.
- B. Minimum conduit size of 19 mm (3/4 inch), but not less than the size shown on the drawings.
- C. All conduit ends shall be equipped with insulated bushings.
- D. All 100 mm (four inch) conduits within buildings shall include pull boxes after every two 90 degree bends. Size boxes per the NEC.
- E. Vertical conduits/sleeves through closets floors shall terminate not less than 75 mm (3 inches) below the floor and not less than 75 mm (3 inches) below the ceiling of the floor below.
- F. Terminate conduit runs to/from a telephone backboard in a closet or interstitial space at the top or bottom of the backboard. Conduits shall enter telephone closets next to the wall and be flush with the backboard.
- G. Where drilling is necessary for vertical conduits, locate holes so as not to affect structural sections such as ribs or beams.
- H. All empty conduits located in telephone closets or on telephone backboards shall be sealed with a standard non-hardening duct seal compound to prevent the entrance of moisture and gases and to meet fire resistance requirements.
- I. Conduit runs shall contain no more than four quarter turns (90 degree bends) between pull boxes/backboards. Minimum radius of telephone conduit bends shall be as follows (special long radius):

Sizes of Conduit Trade Size	Radius of Conduit Bends mm, Inches
3/4	150 (6)
1	230 (9)
1-1/4	350 (14)
1-1/2	430 (17)
2	525 (21)
2-1/2	635 (25)
3	775 (31)
3-1/2	900 (36)
4	1125 (45)

- J. Furnish and install 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick fire retardant plywood specified in Section, ROUGH CARPENTRY on the wall of telephone closets

where shown on drawings . Mount the plywood with the bottom edge 300 mm (one foot) above the finished floor.

K. Furnish and pull wire in all empty conduits. (Sleeves through floor are exceptions).

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 16126
CABLES, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of the high voltage cables.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Bedding of conduits: Section 02200, EARTHWORK.
- B. General electrical requirement and items that are common to more than one section of Division 16: Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- C. Conduits for high voltage cables: Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS.
- D. Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents: Section 16450, GROUNDING.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS and Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include splice and termination kit information prior to purchase and installation.
 - 3. Provide cable minimum bend radius, and flammability data.
- C. Samples:
 - 1. After approval and prior to installation, furnish the Resident Engineer with a 300 mm (12 inches) length of each type and size of wire and cable along with the tag from the coils or reels from which the samples were taken. The sample shall contain the manufacturers markings.
- D. Certifications:
 - 1. Factory test reports: Prior to installation of the cables, deliver four copies of the manufacturers certified NEMA WC 71 or WC 74, standard factory test reports to the Resident Engineer. Certified copies of test data shall show conformance with the referenced standards and shall be approved prior to delivery of cable.

2. Field Test Reports: Test Reports on the following shall be in accordance with the paragraph entitled "Field Tests for High Voltage Cables" and include the following tests:

- a. High Potential Tests
- b. Dielectric Absorption Tests
- c. Radiographic Tests

After testing, submit four certified copies of each of the graphs specified under field testing, to the Resident Engineer. Adequate information shall be included identifying the cable locations, types, voltage rating and sizes.

3. Splices and terminations, after having been installed and tested, deliver four copies of a certificate by the Contractor to the Resident Engineer which includes the following:

- a. A statement that the materials, detail drawings and printed instructions used, are those contained in the kits approved for this contract.
- b. A statement that field made splices and terminations conform to the following requirements:
 - 1) Pencil the cable insulation precisely.
 - 2) Connector installations:
 - a) Use tools that are designed for the connectors being installed.
 - b) Round and smooth the installed connectors to minimize localized voltage stressing of the insulating materials.
 - 3) Remove contaminants from all surfaces within the splices and terminations before installing the insulating materials.
 - 4) Solder block throughout stranded grounding wires that will penetrate the splicing and terminating materials.
 - 5) Use mirrors to observe the installation of materials on the backsides of the splices and terminations.
 - 6) Eliminate air voids throughout the splices and terminations.
 - 7) Stretch each layer of tape properly during installation.
- c. List all of the materials purchased and installed for the splices and terminations for this contract including the material descriptions, manufacturer's names, catalog numbers and total quantities.

E. Installer Approval:

1. Employees who install the splices and terminations and test the cables shall have not less than five years of experience splicing and terminating cables which are equal to those being spliced and terminated, including experience with the materials in the kits.
2. Furnish satisfactory proof of such experience for each employee who splices or terminates the cables.

F. Cable Voltage Ratings

1. Medium voltage power cables shall include multiple and single-conductor cable rated as follows:
 - a) 5000 Volts shall be used on 4160 3-phase 60hz distribution systems.
 - b) 15000 volts shall be used on 12,470, 13,200 and 13,800V 3 phase 60hz distribution systems.

G. Shipment

1. Cable shall be shipped on reels such that cable will be protected from mechanical injury. Each end of each length of cable shall be hermetically sealed and securely attached to the reel.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the designation only.

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

B3-2001.....Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed
Copper Wire

B. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE):

386-95 (R2001).....Separable Insulated Connector Systems for Power
Distribution Systems above 600 V

400.2-2005.....Guide for Field Testing of Shielded Power Cable
Systems

404-2000.....Extruded and Laminated Dielectric Shielded
Cable Joints Rated 2500-500,000 Volts

C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

WC 71-1999.....Standard for Non-Shielded Cables Rated 2001-
5000 Volts for Use in the Distribution of
Electrical Energy (ICEA S-96-659)

WC 74-2000.....5-46 KV Shielded Power Cable for Use in the
Transmission and Distribution of Electrical
Energy (ICEA S-93-969)

- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
70-2005.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
- E. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
1072-2006 Medium-Voltage Power Cables

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL HIGH VOLTAGE CABLE

- A. High voltage cable shall be in accordance with the NEC and NEMA WC71, WC74 and UL 1072.
- B. Shall be single conductor stranded copper conforming to ASTM B3.
- C. Insulation:
1. Insulation level shall be 133 percent.
 2. Types of insulation:
 - a. Cable type abbreviation, EPR: Ethylene propylene rubber insulation shall be thermosetting, light and heat stabilized.
 - b. Cable type abbreviation, CCLP: Polyethylene insulation shall be thermosetting, light and heat stabilized, chemically crosslinked.
 - c. In wet locations, anti-tree CCLP or EPR shall be used.
 - d. Cable type abbreviation, XLPE cross-linked polyethylene insulated shielded shall be thermosetting, light and heat stabilized chemically cross-linked.
- D. Conductors and insulation shall be wrapped separately with semiconducting tape.
- E. Insulation shall be wrapped with non-magnetic, metallic shielding.
- F. Heavy duty, overall protective jackets of chlorosulphonated polyethylene, neoprene or polyvinyl chloride shall enclose every cable.
- G. Cable temperature ratings for continuous operation, emergency overload operation and short circuit operation shall be not less than the NEC, NEMA WC71 or NEMA WC74 Standard for the respective cable.
- H. Manufacturer's name and other pertinent information shall be marked or molded clearly on the overall outside surface of the jackets, or incorporated on marker tapes within the cables at reasonable intervals.

2.2 MATERIAL, SPLICES AND TERMINATIONS

- A. The materials shall be compatible with the conductors, insulations and protective jackets on the cables and wires.

- B. The splices shall insulate and protect the conductors not less than the insulation and protective jackets on the cables and wires that protect the conductors. In locations where moisture might be present, the splices shall be watertight. In manholes and handholes the splices shall be submersible.
- C. Splicing and Terminating Fittings: Shall be in accordance with IEEE 386, 404.
 - 1. Shall be heavy duty, pressure type fittings, which will assure satisfactory performance of the connections under conditions of temperature cycling and magnetic forces from available short circuit currents.
 - 2. The fittings shall be suitably designed and the proper size for the cables and wires being spliced and terminated. Terminations to bus shall be with two hole lugs.
 - 3. Where the Government determines that unsatisfactory fittings have been installed, contractor shall replace the unsatisfactory installations with approved fittings at no additional cost to the Government.
- D. Splicing and Terminating Kits:
 - 1. General:
 - a. Shall be assembled by the manufacturer or supplier of the materials and shall be packaged for individual splices and terminations or for groups of splices and terminations.
 - b. Shall consist of materials designed for the cables being spliced and terminated and shall be suitable for the prevailing environmental conditions.
 - c. Shall include detail drawings and printed instructions for each type of splice and termination being installed, as prepared by the manufacturers of the materials in the kits.
 - d. Detail drawings, and printed instructions shall indicate the cable type, voltage rating, manufacturer's name and catalog numbers for the materials indicated.
 - e. Voltage ratings for the splices and terminations shall be not less than the voltage ratings for the cables on which they are being installed.
 - f. Shall include shielding and stress cone materials.
 - 2. Taped splices and terminations with insulating and semi-conducting rubber tapes shall withstand 200 percent elongation without

cracking, rupturing or reducing their electric and self-bonding characteristics by more than 5 percent.

3. Epoxy resin kits shall be as follows:
 - a. Compatible with the cable insulations and jackets and make the splices watertight and submersible.
 - b. Thermosetting and generate its own heat so that external fire or heat will not be required.
 - c. Set solid and cure in approximately 60 minutes in 21 degree C (70 degree F) ambient temperature.
 - d. Not deteriorate when subjected to oil, water, gases, salt water, sewage and fungus.
 - e. Furnished in pre-measured quantities, sized for each splice and each termination, with two resin components in an easy mixing plastic bag which will permit mixing the resin without entrapping air or contaminants. Other methods of packaging and mixing the epoxy resin components will be considered for approval, provided they include adequate safeguards to assure precise proportioning of the resin components and to prevent entrapping air and contaminants.
 - f. Use snap-together, longitudinally-split, interlocking seam, transplant mold bodies or taped frameworks, injection fittings and injection gun or pouring equipment. Completely fill voids within the splices and terminations.

2.3 MATERIAL, FIREPROOFING TAPE

- A. The tape shall consist of a flexible, conformable fabric of organic composition coated one side with flame-retardant elastomer.
- B. The tape shall be self-extinguishing and shall not support combustion. It shall be arc proof and fireproof.
- C. The tape shall not deteriorate when subjected to water, gases, salt water, sewage, or fungus. It shall be resistant to sunlight and ultraviolet light.
- D. The finished application shall withstand a 200 ampere arc for not less than 30 seconds.
- E. Securing tape: Shall be glass cloth electrical tape not less than 0.18 mm (7 mils) thick, and 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide.

2.4 MATERIAL, WARNING TAPE

- A. The tape shall be standard, 76 mm (3 inch) wide, 4-Mil polyethylene detectable type with aluminum backing.
- B. The tape shall be red with black letters indicating "CAUTION BURIED ELECTRIC LINE BELOW".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, HIGH VOLTAGE CABLE

- A. Installation shall be in accordance with the NEC, and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Contractor shall ensure that radii of bends fittings, cable risers, and other conditions are suitable for the cable and conform with the recommendations of the cable manufacturer.
- C. Cable or conductors of a primary distribution system shall be rejected when installed openly in cable trays or openly racked along interior walls; in the same raceway or conduit with AC/DC control circuits or ac power circuits operating at less than 600 volts; or in a manner allowing cable to support its own weight.
- D. Use suitable lubricating compounds on the cables and wires to prevent damage to them during pulling-in. Provide compounds that are not injurious to the cable and wire jackets and do not harden or become adhesive.
- E. In manholes, trenches and vaults install the cables on suitable porcelain insulators with steel cables racks. Ground cable racks in accordance with Section GROUNDING 16450.
- F. In manholes, underground raceways and other outdoors locations:
 - 1. Seal the cable ends prior to pulling them in to prevent the entry of moisture.
 - 2. For ethylene propylene rubber and polyethylene insulated cables, use bags of epoxy resin that are not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) larger in diameter than the overall diameter of the cable. Clean each end of each cable before installing the epoxy resin over it.

3.2 PULLING CABLES IN DUCTS

- A. Medium-voltage cables shall be pulled into ducts with equipment designed for this purpose, including power-driven winch, cable-feeding flexible tube guide, cable grips, and lubricants. A sufficient number of trained personnel and equipment shall be employed to ensure the careful and proper installation of the cable.

- B. Cable reel shall be set up above the duct or hatch level, allowing the cable to enter through the opening without reverse bending. Flexible tube guide shall be installed through the opening in a manner that will prevent the cable from rubbing on the edges of any structural member.
- C. Pulling force for a cable grip on lead-sheathed cable shall not exceed manufacturer's recommendation. A dynamometer shall be used in the pulling line to ensure that the pulling force is not exceeded. Pulling force for a nonmetallic-sheathed cable shall not exceed the smaller of 4400 Newton (1,000 pounds) or a value computed from the following equation:

$$TM = 0.008 \times N \times CM$$

Where: TM = maximum allowable pulling tension in Newton pounds

N = number of conductors in the cable

CM = cross-sectional area of each conductor in square millimeter circular mils.

- D. Cable shall be unreeled from the top of the reel. Payout shall be carefully controlled. Cable to be pulled shall be attached through a swivel to the main pulling wire by means of a suitable cable grip permitted only on cables less than 60 mm (200-feet) long and less than 50 mm (2 inches) in diameter.
- E. Woven-wire cable grips shall be used to grip the cable end when pulling small cables and short straight lengths of heavier cables.
- F. Pulling eyes shall be attached to the cable conductors to prevent damage to the cable structure.
- G. Pulling eyes and cable grips shall be used together for nonmetallic sheathed cables to prevent damage to the cable structure.
- H. Cables shall be liberally coated with a suitable cable-pulling lubricant as it enters the tube guide or duct. Grease and oil lubricants shall be used only on lead-sheathed cables. Nonmetallic sheathed cables shall be covered with wire-pulling compounds when required which have no deleterious effects on the cable. Rollers, sheaves, or tube guides around which the cable is pulled shall conform to the minimum bending radius of the cable.
- I. Cables shall be pulled into ducts at a reasonable speed not in excess of maximum permissible pulling tension specified by the cable manufacturer. Cable pulling using a vehicle shall not be permitted. Pulling operations shall be stopped immediately with any indication of

binding or obstruction and shall not be resumed until such difficulty is corrected. Sufficient slack shall be provided for free movement of cable due to expansion or contraction.

- J. Cables cut in the field shall have the cut ends immediately sealed to prevent entrance of moisture. Nonlead cables shall be sealed with rubber tape wrapped down to 75 mm (3 inches) from the cable end. Rubber tape shall be cover-wrapped with polyvinylchloride tape. Lead-Covered cables shall be sealed with wiping metal making a firm bond with the end of the sheath or with a disk of lead fitted over the end and wiped to the sheath.

3.3 INSTALLATION, SPLICES AND TERMINATIONS

- A. Install the materials as recommended by their manufacturer including special precautions pertaining to air temperature during installation.
- B. Cross-Linked Polyethylene (XLPE), Ethylene Propylene Rubber and Polyethylene Insulated Cables:
 - 1. Cables rated 5000 volts or less: Install epoxy resin splices and terminations, or pre-molded rubber splices and terminations.
 - 2. Cables rated more than 5000 volts: Install taped splices and terminations, or pre-molded rubber splices and terminations.
- C. Installation shall be accomplished by qualified personnel trained to accomplish high voltage equipment installations. All instructions of the manufacturer shall be followed in detail.
- D. Splices shall be made in manholes or tunnels except where cable terminations are specifically indicated. Splicing and terminating of cables shall be expedited to minimize exposure and cable deterioration.

3.4 INSTALLATION, FIREPROOFING

- A. Cover all power cables located in manholes, handholes and junction boxes with arc proof and fireproof tape.
- B. Apply the tape in a single layer, one-half lapped or as recommended by the manufacturer. Install the tape with the coated side towards the cable and extend it not less than 25 mm (one inch) into each duct.
- C. Secure the tape in place by a random wrap of glass cloth tape.

3.5 FEEDER IDENTIFICATION

In each manhole and pullbox install permanent tags on each circuit's cables and wires to clearly designate their circuit identification and voltage. In manholes the tags shall be the embossed brass type and shall also show the cable type and voltage rating. Position the tags so they will be easy to read after the fireproofing is installed.

3.6 FIELD TESTS FOR HIGH VOLTAGE CABLE

A. New Cable:

1. Acceptance tests shall be performed on new and service aged PE XLPE, PVC and paper cables in accordance with IEEE 400.2 and as specified herein.
2. Test new cable after installation, splices, and terminations have been made, but before connection to equipment and existing cable.
3. Test equipment, labor and technical personnel shall be provided as necessary to perform the electrical acceptance tests. Arranges shall be made to have tests witnessed by the Resident Engineer.

B. Service Age Cable:

1. Maintenance tests shall be performed on service-aged cable interconnected to new cable. See test voltages below.
2. After new cable test and connection to an existing cable, test the interconnected cable. Disconnect cable from all equipment that might be damaged by the test voltages.

C. Dielectric Absorption Test: Both new and service aged power cable shall be completely isolated from extraneous electrical connections at cable terminations and joints. Safety precautions shall be observed. Each cable shall be given a full dielectric - absorption test with a 5000v insulation resistance test set. Test shall be applied for a long enough time to charge the cable. Readings shall be recorded every 15 seconds during the first 3 minutes of test and at 1 minute intervals thereafter. Test shall continue until three equal readings 1 minute apart are obtained. Minimum readings shall be 200 megohms at an ambient temperature 20 degrees C (68 degrees F). Readings taken at other temperatures shall be corrected accordingly.

D. High Potential Test: High potential test shall not be applied to the XLPE new or service aged cables. All other cables shall be subjected to the test but only upon successful dielectric absorption test.

1. Leakage current test shall be by high potential dc step voltage method.
2. High potential test shall measure the leakage current from each conductor to the insulation shield. Use corona shields, guard rings, taping, mason jars, or plastic bags to prevent corona current from influencing the readings. Unprepared cable shield ends shall be trimmed back 25 mm (1 inch) or more for each 10 kV of test voltage. Upon the successful completion of the high potential test on new and

service aged PE CCLP, PC PVC cables a second dielectric test will be run on the HV cable system to ensure the cables have not been damaged by the hi-pot test

E. Safety Precautions:

1. Exercise suitable and adequate safety measures prior to, during, and after the high potential tests, including placing warning signs and preventing people and equipment from being exposed to the test voltages.

F. Test Voltages:

1. New shielded EPR and CCLP cable dc test voltages shall be as follows:

Rated Circuit Voltage Phase-to-Phase Volt	Wire Size AWG or MCM	Test Voltage KV
2001-5000	8-1000	25
5001-8000	6-1000	35
8001-15000	2-1000	65
15001-25001	1-1000	100
25001-28000	1-1000	-
28001-35000	1/0-1000	-

2. Existing cable of all types interconnected to a new cable shall be tested at 1.7 times the existing cable rated voltage (maintenance test).

G. High Potential Test Method:

1. Apply voltage in approximately 8 to 10 equal steps.
2. Raise the voltage slowly between steps.
3. At the end of each step, allow the charging currents to decay, and time the interval of decay.
4. Read the leakage current and plot a curve of leakage currents versus test voltage on graph paper as the test progresses. Read the leakage current at the same time interval for each voltage step.
5. Stop the test if leakage currents increase excessively or a "knee" appears in the curve before maximum test voltage is reached.
 - a. For new cable, repair or replace the cable and repeat the test.
 - b. For existing cable interconnected to new cable, notify the Resident Engineer for further instructions.

6. Upon reaching maximum test voltage, hold the voltage for five minutes. Read the leakage current at 30 second intervals and plot a curve of leakage current versus time on the same graph paper as the step voltage curve. Stop the test if leakage current starts to rise, or decreases and again starts to rise. Leakage current should decrease and stabilize for good cable.
7. Terminate test and allow sufficient discharge time before testing the next conductor.
- H. Test Data: Test data shall be recorded and shall include identification of cable and location, megohm readings versus time, leakage current readings versus time, and cable temperature versus time.
- I. Final Acceptance: Final acceptance shall depend upon the satisfactory performance of the cable under test. No cable shall be energized until recorded test data have been approved by the Resident Engineer. Final test reports shall be provided to the Resident Engineer. Reports shall have a cover letter/sheet clearly marked with the System name, Date, and the words "Final Test Report" Forward to the Resident Engineer for inclusion in the Maintenance Database.
- J. Radiographic Tests: Radiographic tests shall be performed on all potheads at the discretion of the Resident Engineer to determine if voids exist in the pothead. Unacceptable terminations shall be reworked at no additional expense to the Government.
- K. The contractor shall furnish the instruments, materials and labor for these tests.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16127
CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies the furnishing, installation, and connection of the low voltage power and lighting wiring.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Excavation and backfill for cables that are installed in conduit: Section 02200, EARTHWORK.
- B. Sealing around penetrations to maintain the integrity of time rated construction: Section 07270, FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS.
- C. General electrical requirements that are common to more than one section in Division 16: Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- D. Conduits for cables and wiring: Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS.
- E. Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents: Section 16450, GROUNDING.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS, furnish the following:
1. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Showing each cable type and rating.
 2. Certificates: Two weeks prior to final inspection, deliver to the Resident Engineer four copies of the certification that the material is in accordance with the drawings and specifications and has been properly installed.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are reference in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Testing Material (ASTM):
D2301-04.....Standard Specification for Vinyl Chloride
Plastic Pressure Sensitive Electrical Insulating
Tape
- C. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
A-A-59544-00.....Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed
Installation)
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
70-05.....National Electrical Code (NEC)

D. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

- 4-01.....Armored Cable
- 44-02.....Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables
- 83-03.....Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables
- 467-01.....Electrical Grounding and Bonding Equipment
- 486A-01.....Wire Connectors and Soldering Lugs for Use with
Copper Conductors
- 486C-02.....Splicing Wire Connectors
- 486D-02.....Insulated Wire Connector Systems for Underground
Use or in Damp or Wet Locations
- 486E-00.....Equipment Wiring Terminals for Use with Aluminum
and/or Copper Conductors
- 493-01.....Thermoplastic-Insulated Underground Feeder and
Branch Circuit Cable
- 514B-02.....Fittings for Cable and Conduit
- 1479-03.....Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 CABLE AND WIRE (POWER AND LIGHTING)**

- A. Cable and Wire shall be in accordance with Fed. Spec. A-A-59544, except as hereinafter specified.
- B. Single Conductor:
 - 1. Shall be annealed copper.
 - 2. Shall be stranded for sizes No. 8 AWG and larger, solid for sizes No. 10 AWG and smaller.
 - 3. Shall be minimum size No. 12 AWG, except where smaller sizes are allowed herein.
- C. Insulation:
 - 1. THW, XHHW, or dual rated THHN-THWN shall be in accordance with UL 44, and 83.
 - 2. Direct burial: UF or USE shall be in accordance with UL 493.
 - 3. Isolated power system wiring: Type XHHW with a dielectric constant of 3.5 or less.
- D. Color Code:
 - 1. Secondary service, feeder and branch circuit conductors shall be color coded as follows:

208/120 volt	Phase	480/277 volt
Black	A	Brown
Red	B	Orange
Blue	C	Yellow

White	Neutral	Gray *
* or white with colored (other than green) tracer.		

- a. The lighting circuit "switch legs" and 3-way switch "traveling wires" shall have color coding unique and distinct (i.e. pink and purple) from the color coding indicated above. The unique color codes shall be solid and in accordance with the NEC. Field coordinate for a final color coding with the Resident Engineer.
2. Use solid color compound or solid color coating for No. 12 AWG and No. 10 AWG branch circuit conductors and neutral sizes.
3. Phase conductors No. 8 AWG and larger shall be color-coded using one of the following methods:
 - a. Solid color compound or solid color coating.
 - b. Stripes, bands, or hash marks of color specified above.
 - c. Color as specified using 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide tape. Apply tape in half overlapping turns for a minimum of 75 mm (three inches) for terminal points, and in junction boxes, pull boxes, troughs, manholes, and handholes. Apply the last two laps of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Where cable markings are covered by tape, apply tags to cable stating size and insulation type.
4. For modifications and additions to existing wiring systems, color coding shall conform to the existing wiring system.
5. Color code for isolated power system wiring shall be in accordance with the NEC.

2.2 SPLICES AND JOINTS

- A. In accordance with UL 486A, C, D, E and NEC.
- B. Branch circuits (No. 10 AWG and smaller):
 1. Connectors: Solderless, screw-on, reusable pressure cable type, 600 volt, 105 degree C with integral insulation, approved for copper and aluminum conductors.
 2. The integral insulator shall have a skirt to completely cover the stripped wires.
 3. The number, size, and combination of conductors, as listed on the manufacturers packaging shall be strictly complied with.
- C. Feeder Circuits:
 1. Connectors shall be indent, hex screw, or bolt clamp-type of high conductivity and corrosion-resistant material.

2. Field installed compression connectors for cable sizes 250 kcmil and larger shall have not less than two clamping elements or compression indents per wire.
3. Insulate splices and joints with materials approved for the particular use, location, voltage, and temperature. Insulate with not less than that of the conductor level that is being joined.
4. Plastic electrical insulating tape: ASTM D2304 shall apply, flame retardant, cold and weather resistant.

2.4 CONTROL WIRING

- A. Unless otherwise specified in other sections of these specifications, control wiring shall be as specified for power and lighting wiring, except the minimum size shall be not less than No. 14 AWG.
- B. Control wiring shall be large enough so that the voltage drop under inrush conditions does not adversely affect operation of the controls.

2.4 COMMUNICATION AND SIGNAL WIRING

- A. Shall conform to the recommendations of the manufacturers of the communication and signal systems; however, not less than what is shown.
- B. Wiring shown is for typical systems. Provide wiring as required for the systems being furnished.
- C. Multi-conductor cables shall have the conductors color coded.

2.5 WIRE LUBRICATING COMPOUND

- A. Suitable for the wire insulation and conduit it is used with, and shall not harden or become adhesive.
- B. Shall not be used on wire for isolated type electrical power systems.

2.6 FIREPROOFING TAPE

- A. The tape shall consist of a flexible, conformable fabric of organic composition coated one side with flame-retardant elastomer.
- B. The tape shall be self-extinguishing and shall not support combustion. It shall be arc-proof and fireproof.
- C. The tape shall not deteriorate when subjected to water, gases, salt water, sewage, or fungus and be resistant to sunlight and ultraviolet light.
- D. The finished application shall withstand a 200-ampere arc for not less than 30 seconds.
- E. Securing tape: Glass cloth electrical tape not less than 0.18 mm (7 mils) thick, and 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide.

2.7 WARNING TAPE

- A. The tape shall be standard, 76 mm (3 inch) wide, 4-Mil polyethylene // detectable // non-detectable // type.

- B. The tape shall be red with black letters indicating "CAUTION BURIED ELECTRIC LINE BELOW".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install in accordance with the NEC, and as specified.
- B. Install all wiring in raceway systems.
- C. Splice cables and wires only in outlet boxes, junction boxes, pull boxes, manholes, or handholes.
- D. Wires of different systems (i.e. 120V, 277V) shall not be installed in the same conduit or junction box system.
- E. For panelboards, cabinets, wireways, switches, and equipment assemblies, neatly form, train, and tie the cables in individual circuits.
- F. Seal cable and wire entering a building from underground, between the wire and conduit where the cable exits the conduit, with a non-hardening approved compound.
- G. Wire Pulling:
 - 1. Provide installation equipment that will prevent the cutting or abrasion of insulation during pulling of cables.
 - 2. Use ropes made of nonmetallic material for pulling feeders.
 - 3. Attach pulling lines for feeders by means of either woven basket grips or pulling eyes attached directly to the conductors, as approved by the Resident Engineer.
 - 4. Pull in multiple cables together in a single conduit.
- H. No more than (3) single-phase branch circuits shall be installed in any one conduit.
- I. The wires shall be derated in accordance with NEC Article 310. Neutral wires, under conditions defined by the NEC, shall be considered current-carrying conductors.

3.2 SPLICE INSTALLATION

- A. Splices and terminations shall be mechanically and electrically secure.
- B. Where the Government determines that unsatisfactory splices or terminations have been installed, remove the devices and install approved devices at no additional cost to the Government.

3.3 CONTROL, COMMUNICATION AND SIGNAL WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Unless otherwise specified in other sections, install wiring and connect to equipment/devices to perform the required functions as shown and specified.
- B. Except where otherwise required, install a separate power supply circuit for each system so that malfunctions in any system will not affect other systems.

- C. Where separate power supply circuits are not shown, connect the systems to the nearest panelboards of suitable voltages, which are intended to supply such systems and have suitable spare circuit breakers or space for installation.
- D. Install a red warning indicator on the handle of the branch circuit breaker for the power supply circuit for each system to prevent accidental de-energizing of the systems.
- E. System voltages shall be 120 volts or lower where shown on the drawings or as required by the NEC.

3.4 CONTROL, COMMUNICATION AND SIGNAL SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install a permanent wire marker on each wire at each termination.
- B. Identifying numbers and letters on the wire markers shall correspond to those on the wiring diagrams used for installing the systems.
- C. Wire markers shall retain their markings after cleaning.
- D. In each manhole and handhole, install embossed brass tags to identify the system served and function.

3.5 FEEDER IDENTIFICATION

- A. In each interior pulbox and junction box, install metal tags on each circuit cables and wires to clearly designate their circuit identification and voltage.
- B. In each manhole and handhole, provide tags of the embossed brass type, showing the cable type and voltage rating. Attach the tags to the cables

3.6 EXISTING WIRING

Unless specifically indicated on the plans, existing wiring shall not be reused for the new installation. Only wiring that conforms to the specifications and applicable codes may be reused. If existing wiring does not meet these requirements, existing wiring may not be reused and new wires shall be installed.

3.7 FIELD TESTING

- A. Feeders and branch circuits shall have their insulation tested after installation and before connection to utilization devices such as fixtures, motors, or appliances.
- B. Tests shall be performed by megger and conductors shall test free from short-circuits and grounds.
- C. Test conductor phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground.
- D. The Contractor shall furnish the instruments, materials, and labor for these tests.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16140
WIRING DEVICES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of wiring devices.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS: Conduits and outlets boxes.
- C. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Cables and wiring.
- D. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path to ground for possible ground fault currents.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL), submit the following:
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting details, construction materials, grade and termination information.
- C. Manuals: Two weeks prior to final inspection, deliver four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer: Technical data sheets and information for ordering replacement units.
- D. Certifications: Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer: Certification by the Contractor that the devices comply with the drawings and specifications, and have been properly installed, aligned, and tested.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
- C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
 - WD 1-99.....General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices

WD 6-02Wiring Devices - Dimensional Requirements

D. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

5-96.....Surface Metal Raceways and Fittings

20-00.....General-Use Snap Switches

231-98.....Power Outlets

467-93.....Grounding and Bonding Equipment

498-01.....Attachment Plugs and Receptacles

943-03.....Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECEPTACLES

A. General: All receptacles shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., as hospital grade (green dot identification) and conform to NEMA WD 1. (EXCEPTION - Receptacle types which have no listing as hospital grade but are listed by UL in their respective categories or receptacles indicated on the drawings as "not hospital grade").

1. Mounting straps shall be plated steel, with break-off plaster ears and shall include a self-grounding feature. Terminal screws shall be brass, brass plated or a copper alloy metal.
2. Receptacles shall have provisions for back wiring with separate metal clamp type terminals (four min.) and side wiring from four captively held binding screws.

B. Duplex receptacles shall be single phase, 20 ampere, 120 volts, 2-pole, 3-wire, and conform to the NEMA 5-20R configuration in NEMA WD 6. The duplex type shall have break-off feature for two-circuit operation. The ungrounded pole of each receptacle shall be provided with a separate terminal.

1. Bodies shall be ivory in color, or as selected by architect.
2. Switched duplex receptacles shall be wired so that only the top receptacle is switched. The remaining receptacle shall be unswitched.
3. Duplex Receptacles on Emergency Circuit:
 - a. Bodies shall be red in color. Wall plates shall be red with the word "EMERGENCY" engraved in 6 mm, (1/4 inch) white letters.
4. Ground Fault Interrupter Duplex Receptacles: Shall be an integral unit suitable for mounting in a standard outlet box.
 - a. Ground fault interrupter shall be hospital grade and consist of a differential current transformer, solid state sensing circuitry and a circuit interrupter switch. It shall be rated for operation on a 60 Hz, 120 volt, 20-ampere branch circuit. Device shall have nominal sensitivity to ground leakage current of five milliamperes and shall function to interrupt the current supply for any value of ground leakage current above five milliamperes (+ or - 1

milliamp) on the load side of the device. Device shall have a minimum nominal tripping time of 1/30th of a second. Devices shall meet UL 943.

5. Duplex Receptacles (not hospital grade): Shall be the same as hospital grade duplex receptacles except for the "hospital grade" listing and as follows.
 - a. Bodies shall be brown phenolic compound supported by a plated steel mounting strap having plaster ears.
 - b. Shall be NEMA WD 1 heavy duty type.
- C. Receptacles; 20, 30 and 50 ampere, 250 volts: Shall be complete with appropriate cord grip plug. Devices shall meet UL 231.
- D. Weatherproof Receptacles: Shall consist of a duplex receptacle, mounted in box with a gasketed, weatherproof, cast metal cover plate and cap over each receptacle opening. The cap shall be permanently attached to the cover plate by a spring-hinged flap. The weatherproof integrity shall not be affected when heavy duty specification or hospital grade attachment plug caps are inserted. Cover plates on outlet boxes mounted flush in the wall shall be gasketed to the wall in a watertight manner.

2.2 TOGGLE SWITCHES

- A. Toggle switches shall be totally enclosed tumbler type with bodies of phenolic compound. Toggle handles shall be ivory in color unless otherwise specified. The rocker type switch is not acceptable and will not be approved.
 1. Switches installed in hazardous areas shall be explosion proof type in accordance with the NEC and as shown on the drawings.
 2. Shall be single unit toggle, butt contact, quiet AC type, heavy-duty general-purpose use with an integral self grounding mounting strap with break-off plaster ears and provisions for back wiring with separate metal wiring clamps and side wiring with captively held binding screws.
 3. Shall be color coded for current rating, listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., and meet the requirements of NEMA WD 1, Heavy-Duty and UL 20.
 4. Ratings:
 - a. 120 volt circuits: 20 amperes at 120-277 volts AC.
 - b. 277 volt circuits: 20 amperes at 120-277 volts AC.
 5. The switches shall be mounted on the striker plate side of doors.
 6. Incorporate barriers between switches with multigang outlet boxes where required by the NEC.
 7. Switches connected to isolated type electrical power systems shall be double pole.

8. All toggle switches shall be of the same manufacturer.

2.3 WALL PLATES

- A. Wall plates for switches and receptacles shall be type smooth nylon. Oversize plates are not acceptable.
- B. Color shall be ivory unless otherwise specified.
- C. Standard NEMA design, so that products of different manufacturers will be interchangeable. Dimensions for openings in wall plates shall be accordance with NEMA WD1.
- D. For receptacles or switches mounted adjacent to each other, wall plates shall be common for each group of receptacles or switches.
- E. Wall plates for data, telephone or other communication outlets shall be as specified in the associated specification.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be in accordance with the NEC and as shown as on the drawings.
- B. Ground terminal of each receptacle shall be bonded to the outlet box with an approved green bonding jumper, and also connected to the green equipment grounding conductor.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16150
MOTORS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of motors.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements that are common to more than one Section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16155, MOTOR STARTERS: Starters, control and protection for motors.
- C. Other sections specifying motor driven equipment in Divisions 14 and 15.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

- A. In accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL), submit the following:
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting details, materials, horsepower, RPM, enclosure, starting characteristics, torque characteristics, code letter, full load and locked rotor current, service factor, and lubrication method.
- C. Manuals:
 - 1. Submit simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals, including technical data sheets and application data.
- D. Certification: Two weeks prior to final inspection, unless otherwise noted, submit four copies of the following certification to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. Certification that the motors have been properly applied, installed, adjusted, lubricated, and tested.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by designation only.
- B. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
 - MG 1-98.....Motors and Generators

MG 2-01.....Safety Standard and Guide for Selection,
Installation and Use of Electric Motors and
Generators

C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MOTORS:

- A. For alternating current, fractional and integral horsepower motors, NEMA Publications MG 1 and MG 2 shall apply.
- B. Voltage ratings shall be as follows:
 - 1. Single phase:
 - a. Motors connected to 120-volt systems: 115 volts.
 - b. Motors connected to 208-volt systems: 200 volts.
 - c. Motors connected to 240 volt or 480 volt systems: 230/460 volts, dual connection.
 - 2. Three phase:
 - a. Motors connected to 208-volt systems: 200 volts.
 - b. Motors, less than 74.6 kW (100 HP), connected to 240 volt or 480 volt systems: 230/460 volts, dual connection.
 - c. Motors, 74.6 kW (100 HP) or larger, connected to 240-volt systems: 230 volts.
 - d. Motors, 74.6 kW (100 HP) or larger, connected to 480-volt systems: 460 volts.
- C. Horsepower ratings shall be adequate for operating the connected loads continuously in the prevailing ambient temperatures in areas where the motors are installed, without exceeding the NEMA standard temperature rises for the motor insulation.
- D. Motor designs, as indicated by the NEMA code letters, shall be coordinated with the connected loads to assure adequate starting and running torque.
- E. Motor Enclosures:
 - 1. Shall be the NEMA types shown on the drawings for the motors.
 - 2. Where the types of motor enclosures are not shown on the drawings, they shall be the NEMA types, which are most suitable for the environmental conditions where the motors are being installed.
 - 3. Enclosures shall be primed and finish coated at the factory with manufacturer's prime coat and standard finish.
- F. Additional requirements for specific motors, as indicated in other sections, shall also apply.
- G. Energy-Efficient Motors (Motor Efficiencies): All permanently wired polyphase motors of 746 Watts or more shall meet the minimum full-load

efficiencies as indicated in the following table, and as specified in this specification. Motors of 746 Watts or more with open, drip-proof or totally enclosed fan-cooled enclosures shall be NEMA premium efficiency type, unless otherwise indicated. Motors provided as an integral part of motor driven equipment are excluded from this requirement if a minimum seasonal or overall efficiency requirement is indicated for that equipment by the provisions of another section.

Minimum Efficiencies Open Drip-Proof				Minimum Efficiencies Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled			
Rating kW (HP)	1200 RPM	1800 RPM	3600 RPM	Rating kW (HP)	1200 RPM	1800 RPM	3600 RPM
0.746 (1)	82.5%	85.5%	77.0%	0.746 (1)	82.5%	85.5%	77.0%
1.12 (1.5)	86.5%	86.5%	84.0%	1.12 (1.5)	87.5%	86.5%	84.0%
1.49 (2)	87.5%	86.5%	85.5%	1.49 (2)	88.5%	86.5%	85.5%
2.24 (3)	88.5%	89.5%	85.5%	2.24 (3)	89.5%	89.5%	86.5%
3.73 (5)	89.5%	89.5%	86.5%	3.73 (5)	89.5%	89.5%	88.5%
5.60 (7.5)	90.2%	91.0%	88.5%	5.60 (7.5)	91.0%	91.7%	89.5%
7.46 (10)	91.7%	91.7%	89.5%	7.46 (10)	91.0%	91.7%	90.2%
11.2 (15)	91.7%	93.0%	90.2%	11.2 (15)	91.7%	92.4%	91.0%
14.9 (20)	92.4%	93.0%	91.0%	14.9 (20)	91.7%	93.0%	91.0%
18.7 (25)	93.0%	93.6%	91.7%	18.7 (25)	93.0%	93.6%	91.7%
22.4 (30)	93.6%	94.1%	91.7%	22.4 (30)	93.0%	93.6%	91.7%
29.8 (40)	94.1%	94.1%	92.4%	29.8 (40)	94.1%	94.1%	92.4%
37.3 (50)	94.1%	94.5%	93.0%	37.3 (50)	94.1%	94.5%	93.0%
44.8 (60)	94.5%	95.0%	93.6%	44.8 (60)	94.5%	95.0%	93.6%
56.9 (75)	94.5%	95.0%	93.6%	56.9 (75)	94.5%	95.4%	93.6%
74.6 (100)	95.0%	95.4%	93.6%	74.6 (100)	95.0%	95.4%	94.1%
93.3 (125)	95.0%	95.4%	94.1%	93.3 (125)	95.0%	95.4%	95.0%
112 (150)	95.4%	95.8%	94.1%	112 (150)	95.8%	95.8%	95.0%
149.2 (200)	95.4%	95.8%	95.0%	149.2 (200)	95.8%	96.2%	95.4%

H. Minimum Power Factor at Full Load and Rated Voltage: 90 percent at 1200 RPM, 1800 RPM and 3600 RPM.

I. Premium efficiency motors shall be used where energy cost/kW x (hours use/year) > 50.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION:

Install motors in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, the NEC, NEMA, as shown on the drawings and/or as required by other sections of these specifications.

3.2 FIELD TESTS

Megger all motors after installation, before start-up. All shall test free from grounds.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16155
MOTOR STARTERS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

All motor starters and motor control stations including installation and connection (whether furnished with the equipment specified in other Divisions or otherwise) shall meet these specifications.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Other sections which specify motor driven equipment.
- B. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one Section of Division 16.
- C. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Submit in accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL):

- A. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, weights, mounting details, materials, running over current protection, size of enclosure, over current protection, wiring diagrams, starting characteristics, interlocking and accessories.
- B. Manuals:
 - 1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals, including technical data sheets, wiring diagrams and information for ordering replacement parts.
 - a. Wiring diagrams shall have their terminals identified to facilitate installation, maintenance and operation.
 - b. Wiring diagrams shall indicate internal wiring for each item of equipment and interconnections between the items of equipment.
 - c. Elementary schematic diagrams shall be provided for clarity of operation.
 - 2. Two weeks prior to the project final inspection, submit four copies of the final updated maintenance and operating manual to the Resident Engineer. (Update manual to include any information necessitated by shop drawing approval).

C. Certification: Two weeks prior to final inspection, unless otherwise noted, submit four copies of the following certifications to the Resident Engineer:

1. Certification by the manufacturer that the controllers have passed the factory 24-hour operational test. (This certification must be furnished to the Resident Engineer prior to shipping the controller to the job site.)
2. Certification by the manufacturer that high voltage motor controller(s) conforms to the requirements of the drawings and specifications. (This certification must be furnished to the Resident Engineer prior to shipping the controller to the job site.).
3. Certification that the equipment has been properly installed, adjusted, and tested.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.

B. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

519-92.....Recommended Practices and Requirements for
Harmonic Control in Electrical Power Systems

C37.90.1-02.....Standard Surge Withstand Capability (SWC) Tests
for Protective Relays and Relay Systems

C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

ICS 1-00.....Industrial Control and Systems General
Requirements

ICS 1.1-03.....Safety Guidelines for the Application,
Installation and Maintenance of Solid State
Control

ICS 2-00.....Industrial Control and Systems, Controllers,
Contactors and Overload Relays Rated 600 Volts
DC

ICS 6-01.....Industrial Control and Systems Enclosures

ICS 7-00.....Industrial Control and Systems Adjustable-Speed
Drives

ICS 7.1-00.....Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for
Selection, Installation and Operation of
Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems

D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC)

E. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):

508-99.....Industrial Control Equipment

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MOTOR STARTERS, GENERAL

- A. Motor starters shall be in accordance with the requirements of the IEEE, NEC, NEMA (ICS 1, ICS 1.1, ICS 2, ICS 6, ICS 7 and ICS 7.1) and UL.
- B. Shall have the following features:
 - 1. Separately enclosed unless part of another assembly.
 - 2. Circuit breakers and safety switches within the motor controller enclosures shall have external operating handles with lock-open padlocking provisions and shall indicate the ON and OFF positions.
 - 3. Motor control circuits:
 - a. Shall operate at not more than 120 volts.
 - b. Shall be grounded except as follows:
 - 1) Where isolated control circuits are shown.
 - 2) Where manufacturers of equipment assemblies recommend that the control circuits be isolated.
 - c. Incorporate a separate, heavy duty, control transformer within each motor controller enclosure to provide the control voltage for each motor operating over 120 volts.
 - d. Incorporate over current protection for both primary and secondary windings of the control power transformers in accordance with the NEC.
 - 4. Overload current protective devices:
 - a. One for each pole.
 - b. Manual reset on the door of each motor controller enclosure.
 - e. Correctly sized for the associated motor's rated full load current.
 - c. Check every motor controller after installation and verify that correct sizes of protective devices have been installed.
 - d. Deliver four copies of a summarized list to the Resident Engineer, which indicates and adequately identifies every motor controller installed. Include the catalog numbers for the correct sizes of protective devices for the motor controllers.
 - 5. Hand-Off-Automatic (H-O-A) switch is required unless specifically stated on the drawings as not required for a particular starter. H-O-A switch is not required for manual motor starters.
 - 6. Incorporate into each control circuit a 120-volt, solid state time delay relay (ON delay), minimum adjustable range from 0.3 to 10 minutes, with transient protection. Time delay relay is not required where H-O-A switch is not required.

7. Auxiliary contacts, pilot lights, pushbuttons and other devices and accessories as shown on the drawings or otherwise required.
8. Enclosures:
 - a. Shall be the NEMA types shown on the drawings for the motor controllers.
 - b. Shall be the NEMA types which are the most suitable for the environmental conditions where the motor controllers are being installed.
 - c. Doors mechanically interlocked to prevent opening unless the breaker or switch within the enclosure is open. Provision for padlock must be provided.
 - d. Enclosures shall be primed and finish coated at the factory with the manufacturer's prime coat and standard finish.
- C. Motor controllers incorporated with equipment assemblies shall also be designed for the specific requirements of the assemblies.
- D. For motor controllers being installed in existing motor control centers or panelboards, coordinate with the existing centers or panelboards.
- E. Additional requirements for specific motor controllers, as indicated in other sections, shall also apply.
- F. Provide a disconnecting means or safety switch near and within sight of each motor. Provide all wiring and conduit required to facilitate a complete and code complied installation.
- G. Refer to paragraph, MOTOR CONTROL STATIONS, in this section for additional requirements.

2.2 MANUAL MOTOR STARTERS

- A. Shall be in accordance with applicable requirements of 2.1 above.
- B. Manual motor starters.
 1. Starters shall be AC, general-purpose Class A, manually operated type with full voltage controller for induction motors, rated in horsepower.
 2. Units shall include overload protection, red pilot light, NC auxiliary contact and toggle operator.
- C. Fractional horsepower manual motor starters.
 1. Starters shall be AC, general-purpose Class A, manually operated with full voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors.
 2. Units shall include thermal overload protection, red pilot light and toggle operator.
- D. Motor starting switches.
 1. Switches shall be AC, general-purpose Class A, manually operated type with full voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors.

2. Units shall include thermal overload protection, red pilot light NC auxiliary contact and toggle operator.

2.3 MAGNETIC MOTOR STARTERS

- A. Shall be in accordance with applicable requirements of 2.1 above.
- B. Starters shall be AC, general-purpose, Class A magnetic controllers for induction motors rated in horsepower. Minimum size 0.
- C. Where combination motor starters are used, combine starter with protective or disconnect device in a common enclosure.
- D. Provide phase loss protection for each starter, with contacts to de-energize the starter upon loss of any phase.

2.4 REDUCED VOLTAGE MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Shall be in accordance with applicable portions of 2.1 above.
- B. Shall be installed where shown for motors on the contract drawings.
- C. Shall be the type shown on the drawings or included in Section 15650 of these specifications.
- D. Shall have closed circuit transition for the types which can incorporate such transition.
- E. Shall limit inrush currents to not more than 70 percent of the locked rotor currents.
- F. Provide phase loss protection for each starter, with contacts to de-energize the starter upon loss of any phase.

2.5 VARIABLE SPEED MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Shall be in accordance with applicable portions of 2.1 above.
- B. Shall be solid state, micro processor-based with adjustable frequency and voltage, three phase output capable of driving standard NEMA B design, three phase alternating current induction motors at full rated speed. The drives shall utilize a full wave bridge design incorporating diode rectifier circuitry with pulse width modulation (PWM). Other control techniques are not acceptable. Silicon controlled rectifiers (SCR) shall not be used in the rectifying circuitry. The drives shall be designed to be used on variable torque loads and shall be capable of providing sufficient torque to allow the motor to break away from rest upon first application of power.
- C. Shall be rated for input power of 460 and 480 volts, three phase, 60 Hz. Unit shall be capable of operating within voltage parameters of plus 10 to minus 10 percent of line voltage, and be suitably rated for the full load amps of the maximum watts (HP) within its class.
- D. Each controller shall be factory tested at maximum watts (HP), rated full load current and at an ambient temperature of 40 degrees C for a period of not less than 24 hours. If a component fails, it shall be replaced and the test restarted for the full time period. A certified

copy of the factory Test Report shall be furnished to the Resident Engineer prior to shipping the controller to the job site.

E. Controllers shall have the following features:

1. Isolated power for control circuits.
2. Manually re-settable motor overload protection for each phase.
3. Adjustable current limiting circuitry to provide soft motor starting. Maximum starting current shall not exceed 200 percent of motor full load current.
4. Independent acceleration and deceleration time adjustment, manually adjustable from 2 to 30 seconds. (Set timers to the equipment manufacturer's recommended time in the above range.)
5. Provide 4 to 20 ma current follower circuitry for interface with mechanical sensor devices.
6. Automatic frequency adjustment from 20 Hz to 60 Hz.
7. Provide circuitry to initiate an orderly shutdown when any of the conditions listed below occur. The controller shall not be damaged by any of these electrical disturbances and shall automatically restart when the conditions are corrected:
 - a. Incorrect phase sequence.
 - b. Single phasing.
 - c. Over voltage in excess of 10 percent.
 - d. Under voltage in excess of 10 percent.
 - e. Running over current above 110 percent (shall not automatically reset for this condition.)
 - f. Instantaneous overcurrent above 150 percent (shall not automatically reset for this condition).
 - g. Surge voltage in excess of 1000 volts.
 - h. Short duration power outages of 12 cycles or less (i.e., distribution line switching, generator testing, and automatic transfer switch operations.)
8. Provide automatic shutdown on receipt of a power transfer warning signal from an automatic transfer switch. Controller shall automatically restart motor after the power transfer.

F. Minimum efficiency shall be 95 percent at 100 percent speed and 85percent at 50 percent speed.

G. The displacement power factor of the controller shall not be less than 95 percent under any speed or load condition.

H. Controllers shall include a door interlocked fused safety disconnect switch or door interlocked circuit breaker switch which will disconnect all input power.

- I. Include a by-pass starter with circuitry to protect and isolate the variable speed controller. When the variable speed controller is in the by-pass mode, the solid-state components shall be isolated from the power supply on both the line and motor side.
- J. The following accessories are to be door mounted:
 1. AC Power on light.
 2. Ammeter (RMS motor current).
 3. HAND-OFF-AUTOMATIC switch.
 4. Manual speed control in HAND mode.
 5. System protection lights indicating that the system has shutdown and will not automatically restart.
 6. System protection light indicating that the system has shutdown but will restart when conditions return to normal.
 7. Manual variable speed controller by-pass switch.
 8. Diagnostic shutdown indicator lights for each shutdown condition.
 9. Provide two N.O. and two N.C. dry contacts rated 120 volts, 10 amperes, 60 HZ for remote indication of the following:
 - a. System shutdown with auto restart.
 - b. System shutdown without auto restart.
 - c. System running.
 10. Incorporate into each control circuit a 120-volt, time delay relay (ON delay), adjustable from 0.3-10 minutes, with transient protection. Provide transformer/s for the control circuit/s.
 11. Controller shall not add any current or voltage transients to the input AC power distribution system nor shall transients from other devices on the AC power distribution system affect the controller. Controllers shall be protected to comply with IEEE C37.90.1 and UL-508. Line noise and harmonic voltage distortion shall not exceed the values allowed by IEEE 519. Include Harmonic filter within the enclosure of the VFD.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install motor control equipment in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, the NEC, NEMA and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Install Variable Speed Motor Controllers in accordance with manufacturers recommendations, the NEC, as shown on the drawings and in accordance with NEMA ICS 7.1.C.
- C. Furnish and install heater elements in motor starters to match the installed motor characteristics.

3.2 SPARE PARTS

Two weeks prior to the final inspection, provide one complete set of spare fuses (including heater elements) for each starter/controller installed on this project.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16160
PANELBOARDS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of panelboards.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 09900, PAINTING: Identification and painting of panelboards.
- B. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Requirements for seismic restraint of nonstructural components.
- C. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one Section of Division 16.
- D. Section 16051, ELECTRICAL SYSTEM PROTECTIVE DEVICE STUDY: Requirements for the over current protective devices to be installed to ensure proper equipment and personnel protection.
- E. Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS: Conduits and outlet boxes.
- F. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Cables and wiring.
- G. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting details, materials, wiring diagrams accessories and weights of equipment. Complete nameplate data including manufacturer's name and catalog number.
- C. Certification: Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. Certification that the material is in accordance with the drawings and specifications has been properly installed, and that the loads are balanced.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent

referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

- A. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
 - PB-1-2006.....Panelboards
 - AB-1-2002.....Molded Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case
Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-2005National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - 70E-2004.....Standard for Electrical Life Safety in the
Workplace
- C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 50-2003.....Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
 - 67-2003.....Panel boards
 - 489-2006.....Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Circuit
Breaker Enclosures

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards shall be in accordance with UL, NEMA, NEC, and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Panelboards shall be standard manufactured products. All components of the panelboards shall be the product and assembly of the same manufacturer. All similar units of all panelboards to be of the same manufacturer.
- C. All panelboards shall be hinged "door in door" type with:
 - 1. Interior hinged door with hand operated latch or latches as required to provide access to circuit breaker operating handles only, not to energized ports.
 - 2. Outer hinged door shall be securely mounted to the panelboard box with factory bolts, screws, clips or other fasteners requiring a tool for entry, hand operated latches are not acceptable.
 - 3. Push inner and outer doors shall open left to right.
- D. All panelboards shall be completely factory assembled with molded case circuit breakers. Include one-piece removable, inner dead front cover independent of the panelboard cover.
- E. Panelboards shall have main breaker or main lugs, bus size, voltage, phase, top or bottom feed, and flush or surface mounting as scheduled on the drawings.

F. Panelboards shall conform to NEMA PB-1, NEMA AB-1 and UL 67 and have the following features:

1. Nonreduced size copper or aluminum bus bars, complete with current ratings as shown on the panel schedules connection straps bolted together and rigidly supported on molded insulators.
2. Bus bar connections to the branch circuit breakers shall be the "distributed phase" or "phase sequence" type. Single-phase, three-wire panelboard busing shall be such that when any two adjacent single-pole breakers are connected to opposite phases, two-pole breakers can be installed in any location. Three-phase, four-wire busing shall be such that when any three adjacent single-pole breakers are individually connected to each of the three different phases, two-or three-pole breakers can be installed at any location. Current-carrying parts of the bus assembly shall be plated. Mains ratings shall be as shown.
3. Mechanical lugs furnished with panelboards shall be cast, stamped or machined metal alloys of sizes suitable for the conductors indicated to be connected thereto.
4. Neutral bus shall be 100% rated, mounted on insulated supports.
5. Grounding bus bar equipped with screws or lugs for the connection of grounding wires.
6. Buses braced for the available short circuit current, but not less than 22,000 amperes symmetrical for 120/208 volt and 120/240 volt panelboards, and 14,000 amperes symmetrical for 277/480-volt panelboards.
7. Branch circuit panels shall have buses fabricated for bolt-on type circuit breakers.
8. Protective devices shall be designed so that they can be easily replaced.
9. Where designated on panel schedule "spaces", include all necessary bussing, device support and connections. Provide blank cover for each space.
10. Series rated panelboards are not permitted.

2.2 CABINETS AND TRIMS

A. Cabinets:

1. Provide galvanized steel cabinets to house panelboards. Cabinets for outdoor panels shall be factory primed and suitably treated with a corrosion-resisting paint finish meeting UL 50 and UL 67.

2. Cabinet enclosure shall not have ventilating openings.
3. Cabinets for panelboards may be of one-piece formed steel or of formed sheet steel with end and side panels welded, riveted, or bolted as required.

2.3 MOLDED CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Breakers shall be UL 489 listed and labeled, in accordance with the NEC, as shown on the drawings, and as specified.
- B. Circuit breakers in panelboards shall be bolt on type on phase bus bar or branch circuit bar.
 1. Molded case circuit breakers for lighting and appliance branch circuit panelboards shall have minimum interrupting rating as indicated but not less than:
 - a. 120/208 Volt Panelboard: 22,000 amperes symmetrical.
 - b. 277/480 Volt Panelboard: 14,000 amperes symmetrical.
 2. Molded case circuit breakers shall have automatic, trip free, non-adjustable, inverse time, and instantaneous magnetic trips for 100-ampere frame or less. Magnetic trip shall be adjustable from 3X to 10X for breakers with 250 ampere frames and higher. Factory setting shall be HI, unless otherwise noted.
- C. Breaker features shall be as follows:
 1. A rugged, integral housing of molded insulating material.
 2. Silver alloy contacts.
 3. Arc quenchers and phase barriers for each pole.
 4. Quick-make, quick-break, operating mechanisms.
 5. A trip element for each pole, thermal magnetic type with long time delay and instantaneous characteristics, a common trip bar for all poles and a single operator.
 6. Electrically and mechanically trip free.
 7. An operating handle which indicates ON, TRIPPED, and OFF positions.
 - a. Line connections shall be bolted.
 - b. Interrupting rating shall not be less than the maximum short circuit current available at the line terminals as indicated on the drawings or as shown on the electrical system protective device study as required in Section 16051.
 8. An overload on one pole of a multipole breaker shall automatically cause all the poles of the breaker to open.
 9. Shunt trips shall be provided where indicated

10. For circuit breakers being added to existing panelboards, coordinate the breaker type with existing panelboards. Modify the panel directory.

2.4 SEPARATELY ENCLOSED MOLDED CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Where separately enclosed molded case circuit breakers are shown on the drawings, provide circuit breakers in accordance with the applicable requirements of those specified for panelboards.
- B. Enclosures are to be of the NEMA types shown on the drawings. Where the types are not shown, they are to be the NEMA type most suitable for the environmental conditions where the breakers are being installed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be in accordance with the Manufacturer's instructions, the NEC, as shown on the drawings, and as specified.
- B. Locate panelboards so that the present and future conduits can be conveniently connected. Coordinate the sizes of cabinets with designated closet space.
- C. In accordance with section PAINTING, paint the panelboard system voltage, and feeder sizes as shown on the riser diagram in 1 inch block lettering on the inside cover of the cabinet door. Paint the words "LIFE SAFETY BRANCH", "CRITICAL BRANCH", or "EQUIPMENT SYSTEM" as applicable and the panel designation in one inch block letters on the outside of the cabinet doors.
- D. Install a typewritten schedule of circuits in each panelboard after being submitted to and approved by the Resident Engineer. Schedules, after approval, shall be typed on the panel directory cards and installed in the appropriate panelboards, incorporating all applicable contract changes pertaining to that schedule. Include the room numbers and items served on the cards.
- E. Mount the panelboard fully aligned and such that the maximum height of the top circuit breaker above finished floor shall not exceed 1980 mm (78 inches). For panelboards that are too high, mount panelboard so that the bottom of the cabinets will not be less than 150 mm (6 inches) above the finished floor.
- F. For panelboards located in areas accessible to the public, paint the exposed surfaces of the trims, doors, and boxes with finishes to match surrounding surfaces after the panelboards have been installed.

- G. Directory-card information shall be typewritten to indicate outlets, lights, devices, and equipment controlled and final room numbers served by each circuit and shall be mounted in holders behind protective covering.
- H. Provide ARC flash identification per NFPA 70E.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16170
DISCONNECT SWITCHES (MOTOR AND CIRCUIT)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of low voltage disconnect switches.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. General electrical requirements and items that is common to more than one section of Division 16: Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Conduits for cables and wiring: Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS.
- C. Cables and wiring: Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW).
- D. Motor rated toggle switches: Section 16155, MOTOR STARTER.
- E. Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground faults: Section 16450, GROUNDING.
- F. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINTS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include sufficient information, clearly presented to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting details, materials, enclosure types, fuse type and class.
 - 3. Show the specific switch and fuse proposed for each specific piece of equipment or circuit.
- C. Manuals:
 - 1. Provide complete maintenance and operating manuals for disconnect switches, including technical data sheets, wiring diagrams, and information for ordering replacement parts. Deliver four copies to the Resident Engineer two weeks prior to final inspection.
 - 2. Identify terminals on wiring diagrams to facilitate maintenance and operation.
 - 3. Wiring diagrams shall indicate internal wiring and any interlocking.
- D. Certification: Two weeks prior to final inspection, deliver to the Resident Engineer four copies of the certification that the equipment has been properly installed, adjusted, and tested.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
KS 1-01.....Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution
Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum)
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
70-05.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
- D. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
98-98.....Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches
198C-89.....High-Interrupting-Capacity Fuses, Current
Limiting Types
198E-94.....Class R Fuses
977-99.....Fused Power-Circuit Devices

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LOW VOLTAGE FUSIBLE SWITCHES RATED 600 AMPERES AND LESS

- A. Shall be quick-make, quick-break type in accordance with UL 98, NEMA KS 1 and NEC.
- B. Shall have a minimum duty rating, NEMA classification General Duty (GD) for 240 volts and NEMA classification Heavy Duty (HD) for 277/480 volts.
- C. Shall be horsepower rated.
- D. Shall have the following features:
 - 1. Switch mechanism shall be the quick-make, quick-break type.
 - 2. Copper blades, visible in the OFF position.
 - 3. An arc chute for each pole.
 - 4. External operating handle shall indicate ON and OFF position and shall have lock-open padlocking provisions.
 - 5. Mechanical interlock shall permit opening of the door only when the switch is in the OFF position, defeatable by a special tool to permit inspection.
 - 6. Fuse holders for the sizes and types of fuses specified.
 - 7. Solid neutral for each switch being installed in a circuit which includes a neutral conductor.
 - 8. Ground Lugs: One for each ground conductor.
 - 9. Enclosures:
 - a. Shall be the NEMA types shown on the drawings for the switches.
 - b. Where the types of switch enclosures are not shown, they shall be the NEMA types which are most suitable for the environmental conditions where the switches are being installed. Unless

otherwise indicated on the plans, all outdoor switches shall be NEMA 3R.

- c. Shall be finished with manufacturer's standard gray baked enamel paint over pretreated steel (for the type of enclosure required).

2.2 LOW VOLTAGE UNFUSED SWITCHES RATED 600 AMPERES AND LESS

Shall be the same as Low Voltage Fusible Switches Rated 600 Amperes and Less, but no fuses.

2.3 LOW VOLTAGE FUSIBLE SWITCHES RATED OVER 600 AMPERES TO 1200 AMPERES

Shall be the same as Low Voltage Fusible Switches Rated 600 Amperes and Less, except for the minimum duty rating which shall be NEMA classification Heavy Duty (HD). These switches shall also be horsepower rated.

2.4 MOTOR RATED TOGGLE SWITCHES

Refer to Section 16155 for motor rated toggle switches.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Install nameplate identification signs on each disconnect switch to identify the equipment controlled.
- B. Nameplates shall be laminated black phenolic resin with a white core, with engraved lettering, a minimum of 6 mm (1/4-inch) high. Secure nameplates with screws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install disconnect switches in accordance with the NEC and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Fusible disconnect switches shall be furnished complete with fuses.

3.2 SPARE PARTS

Two weeks prior to the final inspection, furnish one complete set of spare fuses for each fusible disconnect switch installed on the project. Deliver the spare fuses to the Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16208
ENGINE GENERATORS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies the furnishing, complete installation, connection and testing of the engine generator system. This includes: air filtration, starting system, generator controls, existing paralleling switchgear modifications, instrumentation, lubrication, fuel system, remote cooling system, exhaust system, and control interconnect wiring.
- B. The engine generator system shall be fully automatic and shall constitute a unified and coordinated system ready for operation.
- C. The engine generator system shall include, but not be limited to the following:
 - 1. Diesel Engine.
 - 2. Lubrication Oil System.
 - 3. Fuel Oil System.
 - 4. Cooling System.
 - 5. Remote Radiator and Appurtenances.
 - 6. Intake and Exhaust Air Systems.
 - 7. Starting System.
 - 8. Generator with Neutral Grounding Resistor.
 - 9. Controls, Supervision and Distribution.
 - 10. Spare Parts.
 - 11. Day Tank.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Seismic requirements for non-structural equipment.
- B. Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL: Requirements for pipe and equipment support and noise control.
- C. Section 15250, INSULATION: Requirements for hot piping and equipment insulation.
- D. Section 15606, LIQUID FUEL STORAGE SYSTEM: Fuel supply and storage requirements.
- E. Section 15400, PLUMBING SYSTEMS: Fuel supply piping and cooling water-piping requirements.
- F. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- G. Section 16126, CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS).

- H. Section 16127, CABLE, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Cables and Wiring.
- I. Section 16160, PANELBOARDS: Requirements for panelboards supplying unit cooling loads from generator set auxiliary transformers.
- J. Section 16251, AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES: Requirements for automatic transfer switches.
- K. Section 16312, UNIT SUBSTATION SECONDARY: Required for generator auxiliary transformers - supply as totally enclosed non-ventilated dry-type.
- L. Section 16362, SWITCHES, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS): Required for generator auxiliary transformer primary disconnect switch.
- M. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The supplier of the diesel-engine generator set shall be responsible for satisfactory total operation of the system and its certification. This supplier shall have had experience with three or more installations of systems of comparable size and complexity in regards to coordinating, engineering, testing and supervising. Each of these installations shall have been in successful operation for three or more years. Prior to review of submittals, the Department of Veterans Affairs reserves the right to:
 - 1. Have the manufacturer submit a list of locations of similar installations.
 - 2. Inspect any of these installations and operations of engine-generator set, and question the user concerning the installations without the presence of the supplier.
- B. Factory authorized representative shall be capable of providing emergency maintenance and repairs at the project site within 24 hours maximum of notification.
- C. Engine generator and auxiliary components shall be supplied from a single manufacturer and match existing system.
- D. Noise level developed by the generator set shall be as herein specified.
- E. Factory Test: The Government shall have the option of witnessing the following tests at the factory. The Government will pay all expenses for the Government representative's trip to witness these tests. Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer 15 days prior to date of testing. Manufacturer shall furnish load banks, testing instruments and all other equipment as necessary to perform these tests.
 - 1. Load Test: Shall include six hours of continuous operation; four hours while the set is delivering 100 percent of the specified KW and

two hours while delivering 110 percent of the specified KW. During this test record the following data at 20-minute intervals:

Time	Engine RPM	Oil Temperature Out
KW	Water Temperature In	Fuel Pressure
Voltage	Water Temperature Out	Oil Pressure
Amperes	Oil Temperature In	Ambient Temperature

2. Quick Start Test: Record time required for the engine generator set to develop specified voltage, frequency and KW load from a standstill condition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 2. Data shall be submitted in the following form:
 - a. Technical data sheets (TDS): These include published performance, rating and derating curves, published ratings, catalog cuts, pictures, manufacturer's specifications, material composition, and gauge thickness.
 - b. Description of operation (DO): Manufacturer's literatures and, if suitable, diagrams.
 - c. Calculations (CALC): Detailed engineering calculations with all equations, graphs, assumptions, and approximations shown, and data sources referenced.
 - d. Certification (CERT): Written confirmation as to the document's accuracy, and genuineness.
 - e. Shop Drawings (SD): Scaled drawings showing plan views, side views, elevations and cross sections.
 - f. Diagrams (DGM): These include control system diagrams, elementary diagrams, control sequence diagrams or table, wiring diagrams, interconnections diagrams (between local control cubicles, remote annunciator panels, remote derangement panels, remote monitoring panels, remote exercising panel and underground fuel storage tanks), wireless connection diagrams, illustrative diagrams, flow diagrams, and other like items.

3. Prior to fabrication, submit for approval the following data for each engine-generator set, transfer device and control and supervisory equipment:
 - a. Engine generator set: TDS, SD including subtransient reactance and short-circuit current capacity.
 - b. Engine jacket water heaters: TDS
 - c. Muffler assembly: TDS, SD
 - d. Motor-operated damper assembly: TDS
 - e. Day tank and pumps or integral sub-base fuel tank: TDS, CALC
 - f. Batteries, racks and charger: TDS, CALC
 - g. Torsional Vibration: CERT
 - h. Control and Supervisory Equipment: TDS, DGM, DO, SD
 - i. Performance:
 - 1) Voltage regulating equipment: TDS
 - 2) Frequency regulating equipment: TDS
 - 3) Voltage and frequency dips and recovery times due to specified motor loading: CALC
 - 4) Antifreeze derating: TDS
 - 5) Ambient derating: TDS
 - j. Remote radiator: TDS SD
 - k. Fuel oil system: DGM
 - l. Cooling system: DGM
 - m. Vibration isolators: TDS, CALC
 - n. Vibration isolation system performance data from no-load to full-load. This must include seismic qualification of the engine-generator mounting, base and vibration isolation.

C. Manuals:

1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals of the engine generator set and auxiliaries including technical data sheets, wiring diagrams, and information, such as telephone number, fax number, and web sites, for ordering replacement parts.
2. Two weeks prior to the final inspection, submit four copies of the updated maintenance and operating manual to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Include complete "As installed" diagrams, which indicate all items of equipment and their interconnecting wiring.
 - b. Include complete diagrams of the internal wiring for each of the items of equipment, including "As installed" revisions of the diagrams.
 - c. The wiring diagrams shall identify the terminals to facilitate installation, maintenance, operation and testing.

- d. Complete lists of spare parts and special tools recommended for two years of normal operation of the complete system.
- D. Certifications:
 1. Prior to fabrication of the engine-generator set, submit the following for approval, to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. A certification in writing that a diesel engine of the same model and configuration, with the same bore, stroke, number of cylinders, and equal or higher BMEP and RPM ratings as the proposed diesel engine has been operating satisfactorily, with connected loads of not less than 75 percent of the specified KW/KVA rating, for not less than 2,000 hours without any failure of a crankshaft, camshaft, piston, valve, injector or governor system.
 - b. A certification in writing that devices and circuits will be incorporated to protect the voltage regulator and other components of the auxiliary electrical power system during operation of the diesel engine-generator set at speeds other than the rated RPM while performing maintenance. Include thorough descriptions with submittal of any precautions, which will be necessary to protect the voltage regulator and other components of the system during operation of the diesel engine-generator set at speeds other than the rated RPM.
 2. Prior to installation of the engine-generator set at the job site, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Certified test data, alternator temperature rise test and strip chart recordings, and photographs showing test setup and equipment.
 3. Two weeks prior to the final inspection, submit four copies of the following, to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Certified test report by the manufacturer of the engine-generator set that the auxiliary electrical power system conforms to the requirements of the drawings and specifications.
 - b. Certified report of field tests from the contractor that the engine-generator set and major auxiliaries have been properly installed, adjusted and tested.
 - c. A certificate by the manufacturer that the engine-generator set, accessories, and components will withstand the seismic forces ($Z=0.624$) and that the set will be fully operational after the seismic event at the project site.

1.5 STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Equipment shall withstand the mechanical stresses caused by rough handling during shipment in addition to the electrical and mechanical stresses, which occur during operation of the system. Protect radiator core with wood sheet.
- B. Store the equipment in a location approved by the Resident Engineer.

1.6 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Shall conform to the arrangements and details shown on the drawings. The dimensions, enclosures and arrangements of the engine-generator set shall permit the operating personnel to safely and conveniently operate and maintain the system in the space designated for installation.
- B. Unless specified otherwise, each component of the engine-generator system shall be capable of operating as specified herein at 670 meters (2200 feet) above sea level in a ventilated room which will have average ambient air temperatures ranging from a minimum of 2.8 degrees C (37 degrees F) in winter to maximum of 50 degrees C (122 degrees F) in summer.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
C37.50-00.....Low-Voltage AC Power Circuit Breakers used In
Enclosures-Test Procedures
- C. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM):
A53/A53M-04.....Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black,
and Hot-Dipped, Zinc Coated Welded and Seamless.
B88-03.....Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
B88M-03.....Specification for Seamless Copper water Tube
(Metric)
- D. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):
C37.13-95.....Low Voltage AC Power Circuit Breakers Used In
Enclosures
C37.90.1-02.....Surge Withstand Capability (SWC) Tests for
Relays and Relay Systems Associated with
Electric Power Apparatus
- E. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
AB 1-02.....Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Molded Case
Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures
ICS 6-01.....Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
ICS 4-05.....Terminal Blocks,

- MG 1-04.....Motor and Generators
- MG 2-01.....Safety Standard and Guide for Selection, Installation
and use of Electric Motors and Generators
- PB 2-01.....Dead-Front Distribution Switchboards
- SG 3-95.....Low Voltage Power Circuit Breakers-Power
Switching Equipment
- SG 5-95.....Power Switchgear Assemblies
- 250-03.....Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts
Maximum)
- F. National Electrical Testing Association (NETA):
 - ATS-95.....Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and
Systems
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 30-03.....Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code.
 - 37-02.....Installations and Use of Stationary Combustion
Engine and Gas Turbines
 - 70-05.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - 99-05.....Health Care Facilities
 - 110-05.....Standard for Emergency and Standby Power
Systems.
- H. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 50-03.....Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
 - 142-02.....Steel Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and
Combustible liquids
 - 2085-95.....Insulated Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and
Combustible Liquids
 - 2200-04.....Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies
 - 1236-02.....Battery Charges for Charging Engine-Starter
Batteries
 - 467-04.....Grounding and Bonding Equipment.
 - 489-04.....Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case
Switches and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures
 - 508-05.....Industrial Control Equipment
 - 891-03.....Dead-Front Switchboards

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIESEL ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

- A. The engine generator system shall be in accordance with NFPA, UL, NEMA and ANSI, and as specified and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Provide a factory-assembled, wired, (except for the field connections), complete, fully automatic diesel engine-generator system to match

existing system. New components shall be fully integrated into existing system.

C. Published Rating:

1. Shall be not less than 2000/2500KW/KVA at 12,470volts, 3-phase, 4-wire, 60 Hz and 0.80 power factor.
2. Shall be capable of operating continuously for two consecutive hours within any 24-hour period of operation at 110 percent of its specified rating without damage.

D. Assemble, connect and wire the equipment at the factory so that only the external connections need to be made at the construction site.

E. Unit shall be factory painted with manufacturer's primer and standard finishes.

F. Coordinate the components of the system and their arrangements, electrically and mechanically.

G. Connections between components of the system shall conform to the recommendations of the manufacturer of the diesel engine-generator set.

H. Couplings, shafts, and other moving parts shall be enclosed and guarded. Guards shall be metal, ruggedly constructed, rigidly fastened and readily removable for convenient servicing of the equipment without disassembling any pipes and fittings.

I. Generator set and cooling system shall be furnished with extended life antifreeze solution to protect the system from freezing at all times.

J. Generator set shall have the following features:

1. Factory-mounted on a common, rigid, welded, structural steel base.
2. The maximum engine-generator set vibration in the horizontal, vertical, and axial directions shall be limited to 0.15mm with an overall velocity limit of 24 mm/sec RMS, for all speeds.
3. The isolators shall be constrained with restraints capable of withstanding static forces in any direction equal to twice the weight of the supported equipment.
4. Automatic start, accelerate to the specified RPM and deliver the specified KW/KVA output at 60 Hz within 10 seconds after a single pole contact closes in a remote device.
5. Recover rapidly from instantaneous changes between no load and the specified KW/KVA rating, and the reverse changes of load, without damage.
6. Shall be capable of operating satisfactorily as specified for not less than 10,000 hours between major overhauls.
7. Engine-generator set shall be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory in order to comply with the maximum vibration velocity specified in paragraph 3.1.B.

2.2 DIESEL ENGINE

- A. Coupled directly to a generator.
- B. Minimum 4-cylinders.
- C. Operating speed shall be 1800 RPM.
- D. BMEP for the diesel engine, while the engine-generator set is delivering 100 percent of its specified output, shall not exceed the following maximum limits:
- E. The minimum cubic inch displacement of the engine shall not be less than the value calculated from the following equation:

$$\text{Displacement} = \frac{\text{BHP} \times \text{K}}{\text{BMEP} \times \text{RPM}}$$

$$\text{Where BHP} = \frac{\text{Specified KW} + \text{R}}{0.746 \times \text{G}}$$

K = 396,000 for 2-cycle engines

K = 792,000 for 4-cycle engines

BMEP = Values specified above

RPM = 1800

G = generator efficiency expressed as a decimal

R = horsepower of radiator fan

R = 0, when electric motor driven radiator fan is herein specified

- F. The engine shall be able to start in a 4.5 degrees C (40 degrees F) ambient temperature while using No. 2 diesel fuel oil without the use of starting aids such as glow plugs and ether injections.
- G. Fuel oil consumption of the engine shall not exceed 0.40 pounds of fuel oil per BHP per hour when it delivers 100 percent of its specified KW/KVA rating.
- H. Equipped with electric heaters for maintaining the engine's coolant temperature in the range of 32-38 degrees C (90-100 degrees F) as recommended by the manufacturer.
 - 1. Install thermostatic controls, contactors, and circuit breaker protected circuits for the heaters.
 - 2. The heaters shall operate continuously except while the engine is operating or the water temperature is at the predetermined level.

2.3 GOVERNOR

- A. Isochronous; electronic or hydraulic type.
- B. Steady-state speed band at 60 Hz shall not exceed plus or minus 1/3 of one percent.

- C. At 60 Hz, when load changes equal to 25 percent of the specified KW/KVA rating, frequency change shall not exceed two percent and it shall recover to 60 Hz within three seconds.
- D. At 60 Hz, when load changes equal to 100 percent of the specified KW/KVA rating, frequency change shall not exceed eight percent and it shall recover to 60 Hz within five seconds.
- E. While the engine is running, manual speed adjustments may be made.

2.4 LUBRICATION OIL SYSTEM

- A. Pressurized type.
- B. Positive-displacement pump driven by engine crankshaft.
- C. Full-flow strainer and full-flow or by-pass filters.
- D. Filters shall be cleanable or replaceable type and shall remove particles as small as 3 microns without removing the additives in the oil. For by-pass filters, flow shall be diverted without flow interruption.
- E. Extend lube oil sump drain line passing out through the skid base and terminate it with a drain valve and plug.

2.5 FUEL OIL SYSTEM

- A. Shall comply with NFPA 37 and NFPA 30, and have the following features:
 - 1. Injection pump(s) and nozzles.
 - 2. Plungers shall be carefully lapped for precision fit and shall not require any packing.
 - 3. Filters or screens, which require cleaning or replacement, will not be permitted in the injection system assemblies.
 - 4. Return surplus oil from the injectors to the main storage tank by gravity or a pump.
 - 5. Filter System:
 - a. Dual primary filters shall be located between the main fuel oil storage and day tank.
 - b. Secondary filters (engine mounted) shall be located so the oil will be thoroughly filtered before it reaches the injection system assemblies.
 - c. Filters shall be cleanable or replaceable type and shall entrap and remove water from oil as recommended by the engine manufacturer.
- B. Day Tank:
 - 1. Capacity of the day tank shall be not less than:
 - a. 4 hours fuel consumption based on 100% load for generator sets specified over 300 KW.
 - 2. Shall be welded steel, UL approved, with monitored secondary containment volume.

3. Secure, pipe and connect the tank adequately for maximum protection from fire hazards, including oil leaks.
 4. Incorporate a vent, drain cock, shutoff cocks and gauge glass. Terminate the vent piping outdoors with mushroom vent cap.
 5. Incorporate a float switch on the day tank to control the fuel oil transfer pump and to actuate an alarm in the engine generator control cubicle when the oil level in the tank drops below the level at which the transfer pump should start to refill the tank.
 - a. The float switch contacts, which control the fuel oil transfer pump, shall be set to energize the pump when the liquid level in the tank reaches 1/3 of the total volume of the tank.
 - b. The float switch contacts, which actuate the low fuel oil day tank alarm device, shall be set to alarm and energize the second fuel transfer pump when the liquid level in the tank reaches 1/4 of the total volume of the tank.
 - c. The float switch contacts, which actuate the high fuel oil day tank alarm, shall be set to alarm when the liquid level in the tank reads 105% of the working volume of the tank.
 6. Day tank and engine supply line elevations shall be below the elevation of the injector return outlet on the engine.
- C. Fuel Oil Transfer Pump-Main Storage Tank to Day Tank(s).
1. Electric motor-driven, duplex arrangement, close-coupled, single-stage, positive-displacement type with built-in pressure relief valves. When the fuel is used for cooling components of the fuel injection system, the engine's fuel return line shall be returned to the main storage tank, rather than the day tank.
 2. Include a heavy-duty automatic alternator and H-0-A switch to alternate sequence of pumps and allow maintenance. Pumps shall be controlled with the float switch on the day tank and H-0-A selector switch so the day tank will be refilled automatically when the oil level lowers to the low limit for the float switch. The H-0-A selector switches shall enable the pumps to be operated manually at any time.
 3. For all engines, each transfer pump and its electrical and plumbing connections shall be sized to provide a flow rate of at least four times the engines' fuel pumping rate.
 4. Provide a manually operated, rotary-type, transfer pump connected in parallel with the electric motor-driven transfer pumps so that oil can be pumped to the day tank while the electric motor-driven pumps are inoperative.

- D. Piping System: Black steel, standard weight, ASTM A-53 pipe and necessary valves and pressure gages between:
 - 1. The engine and the day tank as shown on the drawings.
 - 2. The day tank and the supply and return connections at the underground storage tank as shown on the drawings. Connections at the engine shall be made with flexible piping suitable for the fuel furnished.
 - 3. See fuel oil piping diagram on the drawings.

2.6 ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM

- A. Liquid-cooled, closed loop, with remote radiator and integral engine driven circulating pump as shown on the drawings.
- B. Cooling capacity shall not be less than the cooling requirements of the engine-generator set and its lubricating oil while operating continuously at 110 percent of its specified rating.
- C. Water circulating pumps shall be the centrifugal type driven by engine. Incorporate pressure relief devices, where required, to prevent excessive pressure increase after the engine stops.
- D. Coolant shall be extended life antifreeze solution, 50 percent ethylene and 50 percent soft water, with corrosion inhibitor additive as recommended by the manufacturer
- E. Radiator core tubes material shall be as recommended by the engine manufacturer.
- F. Fan shall be driven by totally enclosed electric motor.
- G. Remote Radiator Enclosures:
 - 1. Shall be rugged, tamperproof assemblies framed with steel channels, angles and braces. Provide fan shroud and fixed louvers and bird screens at both air intake and exhaust.
 - 2. Shall be securely bolted together to facilitate future dismantling. Carriage type bolts shall be used with the washers and locknuts on the inside of the enclosures.
 - 3. Door shall be leveled sheet steel attached with concealed or semi-concealed hinges. Include a stop edge around the inside of the door opening and a metal rod stop for 90 degree opening.
 - 4. Anchor the enclosures to concrete bases with bolts, not less than 15-mm (1/2-inch) diameter.
 - 5. Radiator fan motor shall be totally enclosed with guarded V-belt drive and an adjustable mounting base.
 - 6. Coolant piping shall be copper tubing as recommended by the manufacturer.
- H. Coolant hoses shall be flexible per manufacturer's recommendation.

- I. Self-contained thermostatic-control valve shall modulate coolant flow to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by the engine manufacturer.
- J. Motor-Operated Dampers:
1. Dampers, which are provided under Section 15840, DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES, shall be two-position, electric motor-operated.
 2. Dampers shall open simultaneously with the starting of the diesel engine and shall close simultaneously with the stopping of the engine.

2.7 AIR INTAKE AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS

A. Air Intake:

Provide an engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry filter and dirty filter indicator.

B. Exhaust System:

1. Where turbo-charges are required, they shall be engine-mounted, driven by the engine gases, securely braced against vibration and adequately lubricated by the engine's filtered lubrication system.
2. Exhaust Muffler:
 - a. Shall be Critical grade type and capable of the following noise attenuation:

Octave Band Hertz (Mid Frequency)	Minimum db Attenuation (.0002 Microbar Reference)
31	5
63	10
125	27
500	37
1000	31
2000	26
4000	25
8000	26

3. Pressure drop in the complete exhaust system shall be small enough for satisfactory operation of the engine-generator set while it is delivering 110 percent of its specified rating.
4. Exhaust pipe size, from the engine to the muffler, shall be as recommended by the engine manufacturer. Pipe size from muffler to air discharge shall be two-pipe sizes larger than engine exhaust pipe.

5. Connections at the engine exhaust outlet shall be made with a flexible exhaust pipe. Provide bolted type pipe flanges welded to each end of the flexible section.
- C. Condensate drain at muffler shall be made with schedule 40 black steel pipe through a petcock.
- D. Exhaust Piping and Supports: Black steel pipe, ASTM A-53 standard weight with welded fittings. Spring type hangers, as specified in Section 15200, NOISE AND VIBRATION CONTROL, shall support the pipe.
- E. Insulation for Exhaust Pipe and Muffler:
 1. Calcium silicate minimum 75 mm (3 inches) thick.
 2. Insulation shall be as specified in Section 15250, INSULATION.
 3. The installed insulation shall be covered with aluminum jacket 0.4 mm (0.016 inch) thick. The jacket is to be held in place by bands of (0.38 mm) (0.015 inch) thick by 15 mm (0.5 inch) wide aluminum.
 4. Insulation and jacket are not required on flexible exhaust sections.
- F. Roof Sleeves: Pipe sleeves (thimble) shall be schedule 40 standard weight steel pipe. Flash exhaust pipe thimble through roof with 16 ounce soft sheet copper, flanged and made watertight under built-up roofing and extended up around pipe thimble. The exhaust pipe shall be positioned within the thimble by four 150 mm (6 inch) wide spiders welded to the exhaust pipe.

2.8 ENGINE STARTING SYSTEM

- A. Shall start the engine at any position of the flywheel.
- B. Electric cranking motor:
 1. Shall be engine-mounted.
 2. Shall crank the engine via a gear drive.
 3. Rating shall be adequate for cranking the cold engine at the voltage provided by the battery system, and at the required RPM during five consecutive starting attempts of 10 seconds cranking each at 10 second intervals, for a total of 50 seconds of actual cranking without damage.
- C. Batteries: 24 volt electric with the following features:
 1. Batteries shall be nickel-cadmium high discharge rate type.
 2. Each battery cell shall have minimum and maximum electrolyte level indicators, and flip top flame arrestor vent cap.
 3. Batteries shall have connector covers for protection against external short circuits.
 4. With the charger disconnected, the batteries shall have sufficient capacity so that the total system voltage does not fall below 85 percent of the nominal system voltage with the following demands:

- a. Five consecutive starting attempts of 10 seconds cranking at 10 second intervals for a total of 50 seconds of actual cranking (the fifth starting attempt will be manually initiated upon failure of a complete engine cranking cycle).
 5. Battery racks shall be metal with an alkali resistant finish and thermal insulation, and secured to the floor with a spoil containment tray having electrolyte absorbing and neutralizing pads/pillows.
 6. Battery shall operate continuously for 12 hours and be able to provide the cranking power described in 2.8.B.3 without charging.
- D. Battery Charger:
1. The charger shall maintain one percent voltage regulation from no load to full load for line voltage variation of 10 percent and frequency variation of ± 3 Hz from 60 Hz.
 2. The charger shall maintain a nominal float voltage of 1.4 vdc and a nominal equalizing voltage of 1.6 vdc.
 3. The charger shall be capable of continuous operation in an ambient temperature of -20 to 60 degrees C (-30 to 140 degrees F) without derating. The charger shall be convection cooled and housed in a NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. The charger shall have a hinged front door and all components shall be accessible from the front.
 4. Provide both AC and DC transient protection. Charger shall be able to recharge a fully discharged battery without tripping AC protective devices. AC circuit breaker shall not trip under any DC load condition including short circuit on output terminals.
 5. The charger shall be capable of recharging the fully discharged battery in 12 hours and simultaneously power the Supervisory and Control panel.
 6. The charger shall have fused AC input and DC output protection, and shall not discharge the batteries when AC power fails.
 7. The charger shall have the following accessories:
 - a. On-Off control switch with pilot light.
 - b. Hand adjustable 0 to 24 hour equalize charge timer.
 - c. AC power failure alarm light.
 - d. High DC voltage alarm light.
 - e. DC voltmeter - 5 percent accuracy.
 - f. DC Ammeter - 5 percent accuracy.

2.9 GENERATOR

- A. Synchronous, amortisseur windings, bracket-bearing, self-venting, rotating-field type connected directly to the engine.

- B. Lifting lugs designed for convenient connection to and removal from the engine at the construction site.
- C. Integral poles and spider, or individual poles dove-tailed to the spider.
- D. Insulation shall be as required for the ambient temperature and other requirements designated in the paragraph, DIESEL ENGINE-GENERATOR SET, in this section.
- E. Designed for sustained short circuit currents in conformance with NEMA Standards.
- F. Designed for sustained operation at 125 percent of the RPM specified for the generator set without damage.
- G. Telephone influence factor shall conform to NEMA Standards.
- H. Furnished with brushless excitation system or static-exciter-regulator assembly.
- I. Nameplates attached to the generator and exciter shall show the manufacturer's name, equipment identification, serial number, voltage ratings, field current ratings, KW/KVA output ratings, power factor rating, time rating, temperature rise ratings, RPM ratings, full load current rating, number of phases and frequency, and date of manufacture.
- J. At full load, the efficiency shall be not less than:
 - 1. 89 percent for sets specified from 60 KW to 175 KW.
 - 2. 92 percent for sets specified over 175 KW.
- K. The neutral shall be electrically isolated from equipment ground and terminated in same junction box as the phase conductors with provisions to allow connection to the vendor supplied neutral grounding resistor as indicated on the drawings.

2.10 EQUIPMENT FOR CONTROLS, SUPERVISION AND DISTRIBUTION

- A. Integrate with existing generator controls. Provide all parts and programming as required for a fully operational system.
 - 1. Incorporate all of the items required to fulfill the requirements in the specifications and on the drawings.
 - 2. Coordinate controls with the automatic transfer devices shown on the drawings, so that the systems will operate as specified.
 - 8. Wiring: Insulated, rated at 600 volts, UL approved.
 - a. Install the wiring in vertical and horizontal runs, neatly harnessed.
 - b. Terminate all external wiring at heavy duty, pressure type, terminal blocks.
 - 4. Clearly and permanently label the equipment, wiring terminals and wires.

5. Laminate or mount under plexiglas appropriate wiring diagrams and mount them within the frame on the inside of the cubicles and panels.
6. The system shall be designed and manufactured employing the most modern technology to insure maximum reliability and longevity. It shall be arranged for automatic and manual starting, and stopping, and paralleling of up to 6 diesel generator sets.
7. All indicating lamps and switches shall be accessible and mounted on the cubicle doors.
8. Electronic governor control panel, voltage regulator, control panel, motorized voltage adjusting potentiometer, and associated components shall be shipped to the generator control switchboard manufacturer for assembly, mounting and/or interwiring in the switchboard. Detailed drawings outlining proper interconnection and physical mounting data shall also be furnished to the generator switchboard manufacturer to facilitate proper design and interfacing. The engine generator set supplier shall furnish these items as soon as possible.
9. All meters shall be solid-state switchboard type, 112 mm (4-1/2 inches), 1 percent accuracy transformer rated for 600 volt service. Ammeters and voltmeters shall be furnished with phase selector switches. Metering shall include necessary current and potential transformers and instrument fuses.
10. The repetitive accuracy of the monitors shall be as stated over an environmental temperature range of 0 to 45 degrees C (32 to 113 degrees F) and voltage range of 70 to 110 percent of nominal. The accuracy shall not exceed the following limits:

Voltage Monitors	+ 2 percent of set point
Current Monitors	+ 3 percent of set point
Frequency Monitors	+ 0.2 Hz.
Power Monitors	+ 3 percent of set point

11. The manufacturer shall coordinate the interfacing of the control systems with all related equipment supplied in accordance with other sections of the project specification.

B. Engine Generator Control Cubicle

1. Starting and Stopping Controls:

- a. A three-position, maintained-contact type selector switch with positions marked "AUTOMATIC", "OFF" and "MANUAL". Provide flashing amber light for "OFF" and "MANUAL" positions.

- b. A momentary contact pushbutton switch with positions marked "MANUAL START" and "MANUAL STOP".
 - c. Selector switch in "AUTOMATIC" position shall cause the engine to start automatically when a single pole contact in a remote device closes. When the generator's output voltage increases to not less than 90 percent of its rated voltage, and its frequency increases to not less than 58 Hz, the remote devices shall transfer the load to the generator. An adjustable time delay relay, 0 to 15 minute range, shall cause the engine generator set to continue operating without any load after completion of the period of operation with load. Upon completion of the additional 0 to 15 minute (adjustable) period, the engine generator set shall stop.
 - d. Selector switch in "OFF" position shall prevent the engine from starting either automatically or manually. Selector switch in "MANUAL" position shall cause the engine to start when the manual start pushbutton is also depressed momentarily.
 - e. With selector switch in "MANUAL" position, depressing the "MANUAL STOP" pushbutton momentarily shall stop the engine after a cool down period.
 - f. A maintained contact, red mushroom head pushbutton switch marked "EMERGENCY STOP" will cause the engine to stop without a cool down period independent of the position of the selector switch.
2. Engine Cranking Controls:
- a. The cranking cycles shall be controlled by timer that will be independent of the battery voltage fluctuations.
 - b. Shall crank the engine through one complete cranking cycle, consisting of four starting attempts of 10 seconds each and 10 seconds between each attempt.
 - c. Total actual cranking time for the complete cranking cycle shall be 40 seconds during a 70 second interval.
 - d. Cranking shall terminate when the engine starts so the starting system will not be damaged. Termination of the cranking shall be controlled by self-contained, speed-sensitive switch. The switch shall prevent re-cranking of the engine until after the engine stops.
 - e. After the engine has stopped the cranking control shall reset.
3. Supervisory Controls:
- a. Overcrank:
 - 1) When the cranking control system completes one cranking cycle, four starting attempts, without starting the engine, the

"OVERCRANK" signal light and the audible alarm shall be energized.

- 2) The cranking control system shall lock-out, and shall require a manual reset.

b. Coolant Temperature:

- 1) When the temperature rises to the predetermined first stage level, the "HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE - FIRST STAGE" signal light and the audible alarm shall be energized.
- 2) When the temperature rises to the predetermined second stage level, which shall be low enough to prevent any damage to the engine and high enough to avoid unnecessary engine shutdowns, the "HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE - SECOND STAGE" signal light and the audible alarm shall be energized and the engine shall stop.
- 3) Difference between the first and second stage temperature settings shall be approximately -12 degrees C (10 degrees F).
- 4) Permanently indicate the temperature settings near the associated signal light.
- 5) When the coolant temperature drops to below 21 degrees C (70 degrees F), the "LOW COOLANT TEMPERATURE" signal light and the audible alarm shall be energized.

- c. Low Coolant Level: When the coolant level falls below the minimum level recommended by the manufacturer, the "LOW COOLANT LEVEL" signal light and audible alarm shall be energized.

d. Lubricating Oil Pressure:

- 1) When the pressure falls to the predetermined first stage level, the "OIL PRESSURE - FIRST STAGE" signal light and the audible alarm shall be energized.
- 2) When the pressure falls to the predetermined second stage level, which shall be high enough to prevent damage to the engine and low enough to avoid unnecessary engine shutdowns, the "OIL PRESSURE - SECOND STAGE" signal light and the audible alarm shall be energized and the engine shall stop.
- 3) Difference between the first and second stage pressure settings shall be approximately 15 percent of the oil pressure.
- 4) Permanently indicate the pressure settings near the associated signal light.
- 5) An adjustable initial time delay of 20 to 60 seconds shall be provided to block the alarm and shutdown functions during engine starting.

e. Overspeed:

- 1) When the engine RPM exceeds the maximum RPM recommended by the manufacturer of the engine, the engine shall stop.
 - 2) Simultaneously, the "OVERSPEED" signal light and the audible alarm shall be energized.
- f. Low Fuel - Day Tank:
- 1) When the fuel oil level in the day tank decreases to less than the level at which the fuel oil transfer pump should start to refill the tank, the "LOW FUEL DAY TANK" light and the audible alarm shall be energized.
- g. High Fuel - Day Tank:
- 1) When the fuel oil level in the day tank increases to more than 105% of the normal full level, the "High Fuel Day Tank" light and the audible alarm shall be energized.
- h. Low Fuel - Main Storage Tank:
- 1) When the fuel oil level in the storage tank decreases to less than 1/3 of total tank capacity, the "LOW FUEL-MAIN STORAGE TANK" signal light and audible alarm shall be energized.
- i. Reset Alarms and Signals: Overcrank, Coolant Temperature, Coolant Level, Oil Pressure, Overspeed, and Low Fuel signal lights and the associated audible alarms shall require manual reset. A momentary-contact silencing switch and pushbutton shall silence the audible alarm by using relays of solid state devices to seal-in the audible alarm in the de-energized condition. Elimination of the alarm condition shall automatically release the sealed-in circuit for the audible so that it will be automatically energized again when the next alarm condition occurs. The signal lights shall require manual reset after elimination of the condition, which caused them to be energized. Install the audible alarm just outside the generator room in a location as directed by the Resident Engineer. The audible alarm shall be rated for 85 dB at 3 meter (10 feet).
- j. Generator Breaker Signal Light:
- 1) Molded case circuit breaker and contactor: A flashing green light shall be energized when the generator circuit breaker is in either the "OPEN" or "TRIPPED" position.
 - 2) Power circuit breaker: A flashing green light shall be energized when the generator circuit breaker is in the "OPEN" or "TRIPPED" position.
 - 3) Simultaneously, the audible alarm shall be energized.
4. Monitoring Devices:

- a. Electric type gauges for the cooling water temperatures and lubricating oil pressures. These gauges may be engine mounted with proper vibration isolation.
 - b. A running time indicator, totalizing not less than a 9,999 hour, heavy duty and an electric type tachometer.
 - c. Voltmeter, ammeter, and their selector switches, frequency meter, kilowatt meter, manual adjusting knob for the output voltage and the other items shown on the drawings shall be mounted on the front of the generator control panels.
 - d. Install potential and current transformers as required.
 - e. Individual signal lights:
 - 1) OVER-CRANK
 - 2) HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE - FIRST STAGE
 - 3) HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE - SECOND STAGE
 - 4) LOW COOLANT TEMPERATURE
 - 5) OIL PRESSURE - FIRST STAGE
 - 6) OIL PRESSURE - SECOND STAGE
 - 7) LOW COOLANT LEVEL
 - 8) GENERATOR BREAKER
 - 9) OVERSPEED
 - 10) LOW FUEL - DAY TANK
 - 11) HIGH FUEL - DAY TANK
 - 12) LOW FUEL - MAIN STORAGE TANK
 - f. Lamp Test: "Lamp Test" momentary contact switch shall momentarily actuate the alarm buzzer and all the indicating lamps.
5. Power switching and overcurrent protection shall be accomplished with power circuit breakers.
- a. Power Circuit Breakers shall have the following features:
 - 1) Shall be low voltage, airbreak, AC power type, dead front, 100 percent rated, stored energy, with solid-state trip devices. Arcing contacts shall be renewable.
 - 2) Shall be in accordance with Section 16464, SWITCHGEAR, LOW VOLTAGE.
6. Automatic Voltage Regulator:
- a. Shall maintain the generator's output voltage within plus or minus one percent for load variations between no load and full load.
 - b. Shall correct voltage fluctuations rapidly and restore the output voltage to the predetermined level with a minimum amount of hunting.
 - c. Shall include voltage level rheostat located inside the control cubicle.

- d. Provide a 3-phase automatic voltage regulator immune to waveform distortion.
7. Governor: Specified herein before in Article 2.3 "GOVERNOR".
8. The voltage regulator and other components of the auxiliary electrical power system shall be protected during operation of the diesel engine-generator set at speeds other than the rated RPM while performing maintenance by a power monitoring system which monitors single phase and three phase faults. A time-delay relay shall shut down the engine when the alternator thermal capacity is exceeded.
9. Reverse Power Monitors: Solid-state reverse power monitors shall be furnished to sense motorizing of a failing engine-generator set. Upon detection of a reverse power flow, the monitor shall signal the alarm circuit for immediate power disconnect of the generator and actuation of load dumping circuits, and energize the audible and visual alarm signals. Monitors shall automatically reset open generator disconnect from the bus. An induction disc type reverse power relay with equivalent performance may be submitted for approval. The monitor shall have the following features:
 - a. Accurate operation at power factors down to 0.2 lagging or leading.
 - b. Minimum 10 amperes output contacts rated at 480 volts.
 - c. Circuitry arranged to continually sense the output power of the generator for magnitude and direction.
 - d. Operate accurately over voltage range of 70 percent to 110 percent of rated voltage.
 - e. Adjustable dial for trip power range.
 - f. Test switch to simulate reverse power for periodic testing. Switch shall be arranged to cause sensing circuitry to measure a reverse power.
10. Synchronizing Monitors: A solid-state generator-synchronizing monitor shall sense voltage, frequency and phase angle of the unit to be paralleled. The monitor shall compare the voltage of the bus with that of the unit to be paralleled and initiate corrective action to cause the voltage difference to be reduced to less than 5 percent of nominal. Voltage adjustment shall be achieved by a motorized voltage adjusting potentiometer, as furnished by generator set manufacturer. The monitor shall compare the frequency of the bus with that of the unit to be paralleled, and shall control the governor to cause the frequency of the unit to be paralleled to match within 0.2 Hz. The monitor shall also compare the phase angle of the bus with that of the unit to be paralleled and reduce the phase angle of the unit to

be paralleled to a maximum of five electrical degrees at the instant the connection is made to the bus. Upon achievement of the appropriate phase angle the generator circuit breaker shall close to parallel the unit. The monitor shall be mounted remotely in the control cabinet. Solid-state circuitry shall be used for all sensing and control functions. Interface circuits for control of voltage adjustment and circuit breaker closing shall be through enclosed electromagnetic relays

2.11 PARALLELING OPERATION [REFERENCE ONLY]

A. Emergency Mode:

1. Upon initiation of the automatic sequence, all engine generator sets shall start. The first engine generator set to achieve 90 percent of nominal voltage and frequency shall be connected to the emergency bus. All first priority loads shall be transferred to the emergency bus upon sensing availability of emergency power on the bus. As the remaining engine generator sets start, their respective synchronizers shall initiate control of voltage and frequency of the oncoming set with the bus. Upon achieving synchronism with the bus, the oncoming set shall be paralleled on the bus. Each time an additional generator set is added to the emergency bus, the remaining loads shall be transferred in priority sequence, until all emergency loads are connected to the bus. Circuitry shall prevent the automatic transfer of emergency loads to the emergency bus until there is sufficient capacity to carry these loads. Provision shall be made to manually override the load addition circuits for supervised operation.
2. Load demand sensing shall be furnished to insure that sufficient generating capacity is connected to the bus to carry the load. In addition, it shall insure that not more than the required capacity plus a limited reserve is connected to the bus at any time. The system in conjunction with the load demand shall insure maximum efficiency in the utilization of generator sets to insure maximum fuel economy.
3. Load demand sensing shall insure that the on-line reserve capacity does not exceed less than 10 percent or more than 110 percent of a single generator set. Upon sensing if the connected load exceeds the present limit for an established period of time, the next generator set will be started and paralleled. And if upon sensing the connected load is less than the preset limit for an established period of time, the last generator set to be paralleled will be disconnected and shutdown. Its controls will be automatically reset so that the generator set will be ready for next operation.

4. While one generator set is connected to the bus, and if the connected load exceeds the capacity of the bus resulting in a decrease in system frequency to 58 Hz or less, emergency load dumping will be initiated to reduce the connected load within the capacity of the bus. Similarly with increased loading the remaining generator set will be signaled to start and be paralleled to the generator already connected to the bus, and the load dump signal will be automatically cancelled. Upon restoration of the normal source of power supply, as defined in the automatic transfer switches for an adjustable period of 0 to 15 minutes, the emergency loads shall be transferred back to the normal power source. Subsequently, the emergency generator set shall be disconnected from the emergency bus, run for an adjustable period of time up to 15 minutes maximum for cool down and then shutdown. All controls associated with operation of the generator set shall automatically reset for the next automatic operation.
 5. Fire pump shall be first priority load should it come online in the energy center.
- B. Utility Peak Demand Reduction Operation: The system shall include provisions for future addition of control equipment, which will operate future installed peak reduction transfer switches in the following way:
1. Upon initiation of an automatic sequence for utility peak demand reduction operation, all engines shall be started. The first engine generator set to achieve 90 percent of nominal voltage and frequency shall be connected to the emergency bus. The first peak reduction transfer switch shall then be signaled to transfer its load to the emergency bus. As the remaining engine generator sets start to achieve 90 percent of nominal voltage and frequency, their individual automatic synchronizers shall initiate control of voltage and frequency to bring the oncoming sets in synchronism with the bus. Upon achieving synchronism, the oncoming sets shall be paralleled. As these oncoming sets are paralleled, the system shall signal additional peak reduction transfer switches to connect their loads to the emergency bus.
 2. The system shall prevent load transfer to the emergency bus until there is sufficient capacity to carry the additional loads. Provisions shall be included to manually override the load addition circuits for supervised operation.
 3. Upon termination of the utility peak demand reduction operation, the loads shall be retransferred to the normal power source. The engine generator sets shall be disconnected from the bus, run for a cool down period as specified in paragraph 2.10.B.1.c.

4. If while operating in the utility peak demand reduction mode of operation, a normal source of failure occurs at any essential load automatic transfer switch, then the peak reduction operation shall be terminated. Upon receipt of signal that the normal source has failed, all peak loads shall be shed and the system shall return to its emergency mode.

C. Manual Mode: The entire generating plant can be operated as a manual station.

D. Exercising Mode: Incorporate controls so as to allow testing of each remotely located transfer switch //.

2.12 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR PANEL

A. Remote annunciator panel shall be installed at the Engineering Control Center. This function may be achieved by providing facilities to allow communication with the Engineering Control Center Main Control System.

B. The annunciator shall indicate alarm conditions of the emergency or auxiliary power source as follows:

1. Individual visual signals shall indicate:
 - a. Which generator is operating to supply power to load?
 - b. Which battery charger is malfunctioning?
 - c. When main storage tank is low.
2. Individual visual signals plus a common audible alarm shall warn of the following:
 - a. "LOW LUBRICATING OIL PRESSURE - FIRST STAGE."
 - b. "LOW COOLANT."
 - c. "EXCESSIVE COOLANT TEMPERATURE - FIRST STAGE."
 - d. LOW FUEL - DAY TANK."
 - e. "OVERCRANK" (failure to start).
 - f. "OVERSPEED."

C. The annunciator shall also have the following features:

1. One pushbutton momentary contact switch. Label switch "LAMP - TEST". Initiating this switch shall momentarily actuate the alarm buzzer and all the indicating lamps.
2. Audible Alarm: There shall be an audible alarm, rated for 85 dB at 10 feet, which shall become actuated whenever an alarm condition occurs. A momentary-contact acknowledge pushbutton shall silence the audible alarm, but not clear the alarm lamp. Elimination of the alarm condition shall automatically release the seal-in circuit for the audible alarm and extinguish the alarm lamp.

2.13 REMOTE DERANGEMENT PANEL

A. Incorporate an engine running light (red), trouble light (amber), generator breaker open or tripped (green flashing) and buzzer with a

momentary-contact silencing switch or pushbutton on a suitable NEMA Standard metal enclosure. This panel may be incorporated into the Engineering Control Center Master Control System by providing communication facilities to allow the systems to share information and control.

- B. Install circuits between this remote panel and the Local Engine-Generator Control Cubicle.
- C. The light and buzzer shall be energized whenever a trouble light and audible alarm is energized at the Engine-Generator Control cubicle.
- D. Install the panel in the specific location as requested by the Resident Engineer.
- E. Permanently attach an identification sign to the enclosure. The sign "AUXILIARY ELECTRICAL POWER SYSTEM" shall be laminated black phenolic resin with a white core and engraved lettering not less than 4.7 mm (3/16 in high) //.

2.14 SPARE PARTS

- A. For each engine-generator set:
 - 1. Six lubricating oil filters.
 - 2. Six primary fuel oil filters.
 - 3. Six secondary fuel oil filters.
 - 4. Six intake air filters.
- B. For each battery charger:
 - 1. Three complete sets of fuses.
 - 2. One complete set of indicating lamps.
- C. For each control and supervisory panel:
 - 1. Three complete sets of fuses.
 - 2. One complete set of indicating lamps.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install concrete bases of dimensions shown on the drawings for packaged engine-generator sets.
- B. Installation of the engine generator set shall comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with NFPA 110.
- C. Mounting
 - 1. Support the base of engine-generator set on vibration isolators, each isolator bolted to the floor (pad), generator base bolted to isolator.
 - 2. Install sufficient number of isolators so that the floor (pad) bearing pressure under each isolator is within the floor (pad) loading specification.

3. Install equal number of isolators on each side of the engine-generator set's base.
4. Locate isolators for approximately equal load distribution and deflection per isolator. Base of the engine-generator set shall be drilled at the factory for the isolator bolts.
5. Isolators shall be shipped loose with the engine-generator set.
6. All connections between the engine-generator set and exterior systems, such as fuel lines, electrical connections, and engine exhaust system and air exhaust shroud, shall be flexible.

D. Balance:

1. The vibration velocity in the horizontal, vertical, and axial directions shall not exceed 16.25 mm (0.65 inch) per second peak at any specific frequency. These limits apply to main structural components such as the engine block and the generator frame at the bearings.
2. Balance the engine-generator set statically and dynamically at the factory in order to comply with the maximum specified vibration velocity.

E. Connect all components of the essential electrical power system so that they will continue to be energized by the auxiliary electrical power system during failures of the normal electrical power supply system.

F. Install piping between diesel engine and remote components of cooling, fuel and exhaust systems.

G. Flexible connection between radiator and exhaust shroud at the wall damper:

1. Install noncombustible flexible connections made of 20-ounce neoprene-coated fiberglass fabric approximately 150 mm (six inches) wide.
2. Crimp and fasten the fabric to the sheet metal with screws 50 mm (two inch) on center. The fabric shall not be stressed, except by the air pressure.

H. Exhaust System Insulation:

1. Adhesive and insulation materials shall be applied on clean, dry surfaces from which loose scale, and construction debris has been removed by wire brushing.
2. Fill all cracks, voids and joints of applied insulation material with high temperature 1093 degrees C (2000 degrees F) insulating cement before applying the outer covering.
3. The installation shall be neat, thermally and structurally tight without sag, neatly finished at all hangers or other penetrations and shall provide a smooth finish surface.

4. Insulation and jacket shall terminate hard and tight at all anchor points.
5. Insulate completely from engine exhaust flexible connection through roof or wall construction, including muffler.

3.2 START UP AND TESTING

- A. Provide the services of a factory-authorized, factory-trained representative of the diesel engine-generator set manufacturer to inspect field-assembled components, and equipment installation and supervise the field tests
- B. When the complete auxiliary electrical power system has been installed and prior to the final inspection, tests all components of the system in the presence of the Resident Engineer for proper operation of the individual components and the complete system and to eliminate electrical and mechanical defects.
- C. Furnish fuel oil, lubricating oil, anti-freeze liquid, water treatment and rust inhibitor and load bank for testing of the diesel engine-generator set.
- D. Field Tests for the Diesel Engine-Generator Set:
 1. Test the engine generator set for eight hours of continuous operation as follows:
 - a. First six hours while the set is delivering 100 percent of its specified KW rating.
 - b. Last two hours while the set is delivering 110 percent of its specified KW rating.
 - c. If during the 8-hour continuous test a failure occurs, either the diesel engine shuts down or the full KW rating of the load bank is not achieved, the test is null and void. The test(s) shall be repeated until the satisfactory results are attained at no additional cost to the government.
 2. Record the following test data at 30-minute intervals:
 - a. Time of day, also reading of running time indicator.
 - b. KW.
 - c. Voltage on each phase.
 - d. Amperes on each phase.
 - e. Engine RPM.
 - f. Frequency.
 - g. Engine water temperature.
 - h. Fuel pressure
 - i. Oil pressure.
 - j. Outdoor temperature
 - k. Average ambient temperature in the vicinity of the diesel engine.

1. Average ambient temperature in the vicinity of the starting batteries.
3. Demonstrate that the generator set will attain proper voltage, frequency and will accept 100 percent block load within 10 seconds from a cold start after the closing of a single contact.
4. Furnish a resistance type load for the testing of the generator:
 - a. When approved in writing by the Resident Engineer prior to the testing, the Contractor may use connected loads in the building (resistant plus other types) as part of the test load provided the Contractor assumes complete responsibility for the use of the connected loads, including personnel injuries and property damage.
 - b. Test loads shall always include adequate resistance to assure stability of the loads and equipment during all of the testing operations. The test load KW rating:
 - 1) Shall not be less than 110 percent of the specified KW rating of the largest generator set.
 - 2) Shall not be less than 35 percent of the sum of the specified KW ratings of the all generator sets in a paralleling system.
- E. Battery and Starting System Test:
 1. Demonstrate that the batteries and cranking motor are capable of 5 starting attempts of 10 second cranking each at 10 second intervals with the battery charger turned off.
- F. Test local and remote panels: Simulate engine failures while checking for proper operation of each indicating lamp, alarm device and reset button. (It is recommended that one VA inspector be located in the generator room and another at the site of remote panels. By means of telephone or walkie-talkies, the inspectors should be assured of proper operation and coordination of these panels.)
- G. At the completion of the field tests, fill the underground storage tank with fuel of grade and quality as recommended by the manufacturer of the engine.
- H. When any defects are detected during the tests, correct all the deficiencies and repeat all or part of the 8-hour continuous test as requested by the Resident Engineer, at no additional cost to the Government.
- I. Provide test and inspection results in writing to the Resident Engineer.

3.3 INSTRUCTIONS AND FINAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Laminate or mount under Plexiglas a set of operating instructions for the system and install instructions within a frame mounted on the wall near the diesel engine-generator set as requested by the Resident Engineer.

- B. At the final inspection in the presence of a VA representative, demonstrate that the complete auxiliary electrical power system operates properly in every respect.
- C. Furnish the services of a competent, factory-trained engineer or technician for five, 4-hour periods for instructions to VA personnel in operation and maintenance of the equipment, on the dates requested by the Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 16251
AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, complete installation, and connection of automatic transfer switches.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT FOR NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Seismic requirements for non-structural equipment.
- B. Section 14210, ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS: Requirements for elevator operation.
- C. Section 14240, HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS: Requirements for elevator operation.
- D. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that is common to more than one section of Division 16.
- E. Section 16051, ELECTRICAL SYSTEM PROTECTION DEVICE STUDY: Requirements for coordinated electrical system.
- F. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 Volts and Below): Cables and Wiring.
- G. Section 16208, ENGINE GENERATORS: Requirements for emergency power generation.
- H. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personal safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Factory authorized representative shall maintain a service center capable of providing emergency maintenance and repair services at the project site within 4 hour maximum response time.
- B. Automatic transfer switch, bypass/isolation switch and annunciation control panels shall be products of same manufacturer.
- C. Comply with OSHA - 29 CFR 1910.7 for the qualifications of the testing agency.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings (including withstand), dimensions, weights, mounting details, conduit entry provisions front view, side

view, equipment and device arrangement, elementary and interconnection wiring diagrams, and accessories.

3. Complete nameplate data, including manufacturer's name and catalog number.
4. A copy of the markings that are to appear on the transfer switches when installed.

C. Manuals:

1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating and maintenance manuals including technical data sheets, wiring diagrams and information, such as telephone number, fax number and web sites, for ordering replacement parts.
2. Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of a final updated maintenance and operating manual to the Resident Engineer.
 - a. Include complete "As installed" diagrams, which indicate all items of equipment and their interconnecting wiring.
 - b. Include complete diagrams of the internal wiring for each of the items of equipment, including "As installed" revisions of the diagrams.
 - c. The wiring diagrams shall identify the terminals to facilitate installation, maintenance, operation and testing.

D. Certifications:

1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, a certified test report from a recognized independent testing laboratory that a representative sample has passed UL 1008 (Prototype testing).
2. Additionally when transfer switches are used with power air circuit breakers having short-time trip elements without instantaneous trip elements provide a certified test report showing that the sample has passed the additional withstand requirements of this specification. Method of test shall be in accordance with UL 1008. Main contact separation as measured by an oscillograph voltage trace across the contacts will not be allowed during this test. Welding or burning of contacts is unacceptable.
3. Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Certification that no design changes have been made to the switch or its components since last certified by UL or as tested by an independent laboratory.
 - b. Certification by the manufacturer that the equipment conforms to the requirements of the drawings and specifications.
 - c. Certification by the Contractor that the equipment has been properly installed, adjusted, and tested.

- d. A certified test report from an independent laboratory that a representative sample has passed the ANSI surges withstand test for transfer switches which incorporate solid-state components.
- e. Certification from the manufacturer that the automatic transfer switch(s), accessories, and components will withstand the seismic forces and that the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event at the project site.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by designation only:
- B. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):
 - 446-95.....Recommended Practice for Design and Maintenance of Emergency and Standby Power Systems
 - C37.90.1-02.....IEEE Surge Withstand Capability (SWC) Tests for Protective Relays and Relay Systems
- C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
 - 250-03.....Enclosure for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
 - ICS 6-01.....Industrial Control and Systems Enclosures
 - IC3 4.....Industrial Control and Systems: Terminal Blocks
 - MG 1-03.....Motors and Generators, Revision 1
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-05.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - 99-05.....Health Care Facilities
 - 110.....Emergency and Standby Power Systems
- E. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 50-03.....Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
 - 508-02.....Industrial Control Equipment
 - 891-03.....Dead-Front Switchboards
 - 1008-03.....Transfer Switch Equipment

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with UL, NEMA, NEC, ANSI and NFPA.
 - 2. Automatic transfer switches are to be electrically operated, mechanically held open contact type, without integral overcurrent protection. Transfer switches utilizing automatic or non-automatic molded case circuit breakers as switching mechanisms are not acceptable. Match existing manufacturer.

3. The unit shall be completely factory-assembled and wired so that only external circuit connections are required in the field. The unit shall include, but not be limited to, operating mechanism, main contacts, auxiliary contacts, timers, pilot lights, switches, and auxiliary sensing devices.
4. Each transfer switch shall be equipped with bypass/ isolation switch. The switch shall be part of the transfer switch.

B. Ratings, Markings and Tests:

1. Ratings:

- a. Phase, voltage, ampere rating, number of poles, withstand rating shall be as shown on the drawings. The ampere rating shall be for 100 percent continuous load current.
- b. Transfer switches are to be rated for total system transfer on emergency systems.
- c. Ratings shall be with non-welding of contacts during the performance of withstand and closing tests.
- d. Maximum automatic transfer switch rating: 800 amperes

2. Markings:

- a. Markings shall be in accordance with UL 1008.
- b. Markings for the additional withstand test hereinafter specified shall be included in the nameplate data.

3. Tests:

- a. Transfer switches shall be tested in accordance with UL 1008. The contacts of the transfer switch shall not weld during the performance of withstand and closing tests when used with the upstream overcurrent device.
- b. Where used with molded case circuit breakers or power air circuit breakers with long-time and instantaneous trip, transfer switch withstand and closing rating shall equal or exceed the available short circuit current shown on the drawings, but shall not be less than the following:

Switch Rating (Amperes)	Withstanding Amperes (RMS Symmetrical)	Circuit Power Factor
Up to 100	42,000	Per UL
101 to 260	42,000	Per UL
261 to 400	42,000	Per UL
401 to 800	65,000	Per UL
801 to 1200	85,000	Per UL
1201 to 4000	100,000	Per UL

4. Additional Withstand Test:

- a. See paragraph 1.4.D.1 for certification of "Withstand Test."
- b. Where used with power air circuit breakers with long-time and short-time trips without instantaneous trip, transfer switch withstand rating shall be based on the available short circuit current (RMS symmetrical) for a duration of ten cycles.

5. Surge Withstand Test:

- a. Transfer switches utilizing solid-state devices in sensing, relaying, operating, or communication equipment or circuits shall comply with ANSI C37.90.1.

C. Housing:

- 1. Enclose transfer switches in steel cabinets in accordance with UL 508, or in a switchboard assembly in accordance with UL 891, as shown on the drawings. NEMA ICS 6 Type as indicated on the drawings.
- 2. Doors: Shall have three-point latching mechanism.
- 3. Padlocking Provisions: Provide chain for attaching a padlock. Attach chain to the cabinet by welding or riveting.
- 4. Finish: Cabinets shall be given a phosphate treatment, painted with rust inhibiting primer, and finish painted with the manufacturer's standard enamel or lacquer finish.

2.2 FEATURES

A. Transfer switches shall include the following features:

1. Operating Mechanism:

- a. Actuated by an electrical operator.
- b. Electrically and mechanically interlocked so that the main contact cannot be closed simultaneously in both normal and emergency position.
- c. Normal and emergency main contacts shall be mechanically locked in position by the operating linkage upon completion of transfer. Release of the locking mechanism shall be possible only by normal operating action.
- d. Shall not include a neutral position.
- e. Contact transfer time shall not exceed six cycles.
- f. Do not use as a current carrying part. Components and mechanical interlocks shall be insulated or grounded.

2. Contacts:

- a. For switches 400 amperes and larger, protect main contacts by separate arcing contacts and magnetic blowouts for each pole. Arc quenching provisions equivalent to magnetic blowouts will be considered acceptable.

- b. Current carrying capacity of arcing contacts shall not be used in the determination of the transfer switch rating, and shall be separate from the main contacts.
- c. Main and arcing contacts shall be visible for inspection with cabinet door open and barrier covers removed.
- 3. Manual Operator:
 - a. Capable of operation in either direction under no load.
 - b. Capable of operation by one person.
 - c. Provide a warning sign to caution against operation when energized.
- 4. Replaceable Parts:
 - a. Include the main and arcing contact individually or as units, relays, and control devices.
 - b. Switch contacts and accessories are to be replaceable from the front without removing the switch from the cabinet and without removing main conductors.
- 5. Sensing Relays:
 - a. Provide voltage-sensing relays in each phase of the normal power supply.
 - b. Provide adjustable voltage and frequency sensing relays in one phase of the auxiliary power supply.
- 6. Controls:
 - a. Control module shall provide indication of switch status - emergency, normal, and be equipped with alarm diagnostic circuitry.
 - b. Control module shall control operation of the transfer switch. The sensing and the logic shall be controlled by a microprocessor equipped with digital communication and battery backup. The control shall comply with IEEE 472. The control shall have provisions for interfacing with the balance of the emergency power distribution system and have the switch operation interlocked for operating mode and priority operation.
 - c. All transfer switch automatic operation, including priority status switching, shall be monitored and controlled by communication to the Emergency Power Master Controller PLC located in the Master Control Cubicle of the Emergency Power Synchronizing Switchgear. The communications between Transfer Switches not located in the immediate vicinity of the Master Controller PLC shall be via dedicated fiber optic highway separate from the Medical Center data and communications fiber optic network. The fiber optic network shall consist of dedicated fiber optic cable runs from remote N-TRON Ethernet Switches (style 900B) each with the

capability to control up to sixteen (16) Automatic Transfer Bypass Isolation Switches so as to provide ATS Positions, Normal and Emergency, Power Available, Normal and Emergency, and ATS Isolated Position. The fiber optic cable shall have a minimum of six (6) cores between each N-TRON Switch and the Master Controller and shall otherwise meet the requirements of the data system fiber optic cable given in Section 16742. The cables shall be run in interdict through the identified duct bank system so as to facilitate future repair on replacement. The remote N-TRON Ethernet Switches shall have a 24VDC Power Source provided by the Station Battery System located at the Energy Center.

- d. Provide serial communication capability, with hardware to interface with site fiber optics system to communicate with the emergency power paralleling gear located in Energy Center. Refer to Section 16742 for fiber optic cable and its installation.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Transfer switches shall include the following accessories:
 - 1. Indicating Lights of different colors:
 - a. Green Signal light for normal source position.
 - b. Red Signal light for emergency source position.
 - 2. Laminated black phenolic nameplates with white letters to indicate transfer switch position.
- B. Manual Test Switch for simulating normal source failure.
- C. Engine starting contacts.
- D. Time delay relay to accomplish the function as specified.
- E. Auxiliary Contacts:
 - 1. Provide contacts for connection to elevator controllers, one closed when transfer switch is connected to normal, and one closed when transfer switch is connected to emergency.
 - 2. Provide additional contacts as necessary to accomplish the functions shown on the drawings, specified, and designated in other sections of these specifications and one spare normally open and normally closed contact.
 - 3. Contacts shall have a minimum rating of ten amperes and be positive acting on pickup and dropout.
- F. Remote Indicators:
 - 1. Provide remote pilot lamps to show transfer switch position.
 - 2. Provide remote manual test switch to simulate normal source failure.
 - 3. Provide remote contact to bypass retransfer time delay to normal source.

- G. In-Phase Band Monitor: Monitor shall control the operation of the transfer switch. It shall monitor the voltage and frequency of the normal and emergency voltage.
- H. Auxiliary Relay: Provide an auxiliary pre-signal relay on all automatic transfer switches, which will feed elevator loads for use as elevator control.

2.4 TRANSFER SWITCH OPERATION

- A. Engine Start: A voltage decrease, at any transfer switch, in one or more phases of the normal power source to less than 70 percent of normal shall start the engine-generator unit after a time delay of two to three seconds. The time delay shall be field adjustable from zero to fifteen seconds.
- B. Transfer to Emergency (Emergency System Loads): Transfer switches for emergency system loads shall transfer their loads from normal to emergency source when frequency and voltage of the engine-generator unit have attained 90 percent of rated value. Only those switches with deficient normal source voltage shall transfer as supervised by the emergency power system master controller.
- C. Transfer to Emergency (Equipment System Loads): Transfer switches for equipment system loads shall transfer their loads to the generator on a time delayed staggered basis, after the emergency system switches have transferred. Total delayed transfer time of an equipment system switches shall not exceed two minutes. Time-delay relays shall be field adjustable zero to two minutes and shall be capable of being bypassed by the emergency power system master controller as required.
- D. Retransfer to Normal (All Loads): Transfer switch shall retransfer the load from emergency to normal source upon restoration of normal supply in all phases to 90 percent or more of normal voltage, and after a time delay. The time delay shall be field adjustable from five to twenty-five minutes (preset for twenty-five minutes). Should the emergency source fail during this time, the transfer switch shall immediately transfer to the normal source whenever it becomes available. Time delay shall be capable of being bypassed by the emergency power system master controller as conditions permit, even allowing closed-transition transfers to avoid additional load interruptions.
- E. Exercise Mode: Transfer to emergency power source shall be accomplished by remote manual test switches from the emergency power system master controller on a selective basis. This transfer shall be controlled by the emergency power system master controller and should be capable of being executed in closed-transition mode in both directions if so commanded.

2.5 BYPASS/ISOLATION SWITCHES (BP/IS)(WITH CLOSED TRANSITION FUNCTIONS)

- A. Provide two-way bypass/isolation manual type switches on transfer switched rated 800 amps or smaller. The BP/IS shall permit load by-pass to either normal or emergency power source and complete isolation of the transfer switch, independent of transfer switch position. The switches shall conveniently and electrically bypass and isolate automatic transfer switches, which could not otherwise be safely maintained without disruption of critical loads. Bypass and isolation shall be possible under all conditions including where the automatic transfer switch may be removed from service. Bypass/Isolation switches shall comply with NFPA 110, and shall be factory tested.
- B. Operation: The bypass/isolation switch shall have provisions for operation by one person through the movement of a maximum of two handles at a common dead front panel in no more than 15 seconds or less. Provide a lock, which must energize to unlock the bypass switch, to prevent bypassing to a dead source. Provide means to prevent simultaneous connection between normal and emergency sources.
 - 1. Bypass to normal (or emergency): Operation of bypass handle shall allow direct connection of the load to the normal (or emergency) source, without load interruption or by using a break-before-make design, or provide separate load interrupter contacts to momentarily interrupt the load.
 - a. Assure continuity of auxiliary circuits necessary for proper operation of the system.
 - b. A red indicating lamp shall light when the automatic transfer switch is bypassed.
 - c. Bypassing source to source: If the power source is lost while in the bypass position, bypass to the alternate source shall be achievable without re-energization of the automatic transfer switch service and load connections.
 - 2. Isolation: Operation of the isolating handle shall isolate all live power conductors to the automatic transfer switch without interruption of the load.
 - a. Interlocking: Provide interlocking as part of the bypass/isolation switch to eliminate personnel-controlled sequence of operation, and to prevent operation to the isolation position until the bypass function has been completed.
 - b. Padlocking: Include provisions to padlock the isolating handle in the isolated position.
 - c. Visual verification: The isolation blades shall be visible in the isolated position.

3. Testing: It shall be possible to test (normal electrical operation) the automatic transfer switch and engine generator with the isolation contacts closed, and the load bypassed without interruption of power to the load.

- C. Ratings: The electrical capabilities and ratings of the bypass/isolation switch shall be compatible with those of the associated automatic transfer switch, including any required additional withstand tests.
- D. Enclosure Construction: Enclosure construction shall be in accordance with UL standards. The bypass/isolation switch shall be mounted in a separate enclosure or separate compartment from the automatic transfer switch. NEMA ICS 6 enclosure rating shall match automatic transfer switch.
- E. Diagrams: The manufacturer shall provide specific information on the interconnection and installation of the bypass/isolation switch and automatic transfer switch.
- F. The bypass/isolation switch shall also meet all the requirements as specified for an automatic transfer switch.

2.6. SPARE PARTS

- A. Provide six control fuses for each automatic transfer switch of different rating.
- B. Provide six pilot lamps of each type used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install automatic transfer switch(s) in accordance with the NFPA and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Level and anchor the automatic transfer(s) switch to floor or wall. In seismic areas provide bracing as required by Section 13081.
- C. Ground equipment as shown on the drawings and as required by NFPA 70.

3.2 START UP AND TESTING

- A. After the complete system has been installed, and before energizing the system, check all components of the system, including insulation resistance, phase to phase and phase to ground, complete electrical circuitry and safety features according to the manufacturer's written instructions
- B. After energizing circuits, test the interlocking sequence and operation of the complete system, including time delays of transfer from normal source to emergency and back to normal source, pick-up and voltage drop, and function of bypass/isolation switch in the presence of the Resident Engineer prior to the final inspection.

C. When any defects are detected, correct the defects and repeat the test as requested by the Resident Engineer, at no additional cost to the Government.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

At the final inspection in the presence of a VA representative, demonstrate that the complete auxiliary electrical power system operates properly in every respect. Coordinate this demonstration with the demonstration of the engine-generator set.

3.4 TRAINING

Furnish the services of a competent, factory-trained engineer or technician for one four-hour period for instructing VA personnel in operation and maintenance of the equipment, including review of the operation and maintenance manual, on a date requested by the Resident Engineer. Coordinate this training with that of the generator training.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 16312
UNIT SUBSTATION, SECONDARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies the furnishing, installation, and connection of the secondary unit substation, complete and ready for operation.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16051, ELECTRICAL SYSTEM PROTECTION DEVICE STUDY: Electrical coordination study of overcurrent protection devices.
- C. Section 16111, CONDUITS SYSTEMS: Conduits and outlet boxes.
- D. Section 16126, CABLES, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS): High voltage cables.
- E. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Cable and wiring.
- F. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.
- G. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINTS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

1.3 FACTORY TESTING:

Substations shall be thoroughly tested at the factory to assure that there are no electrical or mechanical defects. Tests shall be conducted as per UL and ANSI Standards. Factory tests shall be certified.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

Submit in accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL):

- A. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include sufficient information, clearly presented, to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting details, winding materials, required clearances, terminations, fuses (if required), safety features, weight, decibel rating, temperature rise, nominal impedance, regulation, no load and full load losses, wiring and connection diagrams, front, side and rear elevations, sectional views, coordination curves, accessories and nameplate data.
- B. Manuals:
 - 1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals including technical data sheets, wiring diagrams, and information for ordering replacement

- parts. It shall also include installation, operating instructions, maintenance, trouble shooting and repair procedures and technical literature pertaining to all components or instruments provided.
2. Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the final up-dated maintenance and operating manuals to the Resident Engineer.
- C. Certificates:
1. Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Certification by the Contractor that the substations have been properly installed, adjusted, and tested, including final circuit breaker settings.
 - b. Certified copies of all of the factory design and production tests, field test data sheets and reports for the substations.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that the switchgear, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces at location being installed. Include the following:
1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit remain in place without separation of any parts from the equipment when subjected to the seismic forces as per specification Section 13081, and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event".
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata), form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

ACI 318-02.....Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

D3487-00.....Standard Specification for Mineral Insulating Oil Used in Electrical Apparatus.
- D. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

C62.11-99.....Metal Oxide Surge Arresters for AC Power Circuits

- C62.41-95.....Surge Voltage in Low Voltage AC Power circuits
E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC):

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Unit substations shall be in accordance with ASTM, ANSI, IEEE, NEC, and as shown on the drawings. Match existing manufacturer.
- B. The substations shall be complete, fully rated, grounded, continuous-duty, unitized integral assembly, metal clad, dead-front, dead-rear types, with liquid-immersed transformers.
- C. Ratings shall be not less than required by the NEC and not less than shown on the drawings. Short circuit current ratings shall be not less than the maximum short circuit currents available, where the substation is being installed, as shown on the drawings.
- D. Provide substations that conform to the arrangements and details shown on the drawings and to the space designated for installation.
- E. Coordinate the components of the substations and their arrangements electrically and mechanically. Coordinate all circuit entrances into the substations, including methods of entrance and connections.
- F. The substation equipment shall have the capability to withstand and interrupt fault currents supplied by the utility.
- G. Incorporate interlocking as shown on the drawings and as required for the safe operation of the substations.
- H. The substation shall be assembled and prewired by the manufacturer at the factory.
- I. Substation shall be thoroughly cleaned, phosphate treated and painted at the factory with rust-inhibiting paint and baked enamel or lacquer light gray finish.
- J. Coordinate the high and low voltage sections with their associated transformers. Sections shall be fabricated by a single manufacturer.
- K. Bolts, nuts and washers shall be rustproof metal, corrosion resistant (zinc chrome plated).

2.2 HIGH VOLTAGE SECTION:

- A. Housing shall be of indoor type.
- B. Preformed Terminations:
 - 1. May be used for cables.
 - 2. Shall conform to the requirements in Section 16126, CABLES, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS).
 - 3. Independently support each cable by a clamp to a structural support within 152.4 mm (6 inches) of the termination to relieve any strain imposed by cable weight or movement.

2.3 DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION AND POWER TRANSFORMERS:

- A. Description: NEMA TP-1, IEEE C57.12.01, ANSI C57.12.50, ANSI C57.12.51, UL 1562 listed and labeled, dry-type, 2-winding transformers.
 - 1. Indoor, ventilated, vacuum-pressure impregnated (VPI) and with insulation system rated at 220 deg C with an 150 deg C average winding temperature rise above a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
- B. Primary Connection: Air terminal compartment with removable door. Tin-plated copper bar for incoming line termination, predrilled to accept terminals for indicated conductors.
- C. Secondary Connection: Air terminal compartment with removable door. Tin-plated copper bar for incoming line termination, predrilled to accept terminals for indicated conductors.
- D. Insulation Temperature Rise: 150 deg C., maximum rise above 40 deg C.
- E. Insulation Materials: IEEE C57.12.01, rated at 220 deg C.
- F. Basic Impulse Level: 95 kV.
- G. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated primary voltage.
- H. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps below rated primary voltage.
- I. Cooling System: Class AA/FA, self-cooled, and with forced-air-cooled, complying with IEEE C57.12.01.
 - 1. Automatic forced-air cooling system controls, including thermal sensors, fans, control wiring, temperature controller with test switch, power panel with current-limiting fuses, indicating lights, alarm, and alarm silencing relay.
 - 2. Include mounting provision for fans.
 - 3. The fan cooled FA rating shall be 33% minimum of the base KVA ratings.
- J. Sound level per IEEE standards for dry-type transformers, without fans operating. Provide low sound cores where indicated on drawings.
- K. Impedance: 5.75 percent.
- L. High-Temperature Alarm: Sensor at transformer with local audible and visual alarm and contacts for remote alarm.
- M. Vibration Control: Per section 260548.

2.4 AUXILIARIES:

Install additional components as shown on the drawings or otherwise required for the substations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION:

- A. Install the equipment in accordance with the NEC, as shown on the drawings and as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. In seismic areas, substation shall be adequately anchored and braced to withstand the seismic forces at the location where installed.

3.2 INSTRUCTIONS:

Furnish the services of a competent instructor for two, 4 hour periods for instructing personnel in the operation and maintenance of the substation, on the date requested by the Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 16362
SWITCHES, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of high voltage switches.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 09050, INTERIOR/EXTERIOR FINISHES, MATERIALS, AND FINISH SCHEDULE: Switch finishes.
- B. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- C. Section 16051, ELECTRICAL SYSTEM PROTECTIVE DEVICE STUDY: Short circuit and coordination study.
- D. Section 16126, CABLES, HIGH VOLTAGE (ABOVE 600 VOLTS): High voltage cables and splices.
- E. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path to ground for possible ground fault currents.
- F. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINTS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL), submit the following:
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Provide detailed drawings with sufficient information, clearly presented, to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Provide information such as complete electrical ratings, dimensions and approximate design weights, mounting details, materials, required clearances, cable terminations, fuse sizes and class, interrupting ratings, wiring and connection diagrams, front, side and rear elevations, sectional views, safety features, accessories and nameplate data.
- C. Manuals:
 - 1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals including technical data sheets, wiring diagrams and information for ordering replacement parts.
 - 2. Two weeks prior to the project final inspection, submit four copies of the final updated maintenance and operating manuals to the

Resident Engineer. (Update the manuals to include any revisions necessitated by shop drawing approval).

D. Certifications:

1. Two weeks prior to the project final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer.
 - a. Certification by the Contractor that the equipment has been properly installed, adjusted and tested.
 - b. Certified copies of all factory test reports and any field test data sheets and reports.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by designation only.

B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

C37.47-00.....High Voltage Current-Limiting Type Distribution
Class Fuses and Fuse Disconnect Switches

C37.58-90.....Conformance Test Procedures for Indoor AC
Medium-Voltage Switches for Use in Metal-
Enclosed Switchgear

C. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE):

C37.20.3-01.....Metal-Enclosed Interrupter Switchgear

C37.48-97.....Guide for Application, Operation and Maintenance
of High Voltage Fuses, Distribution Enclosed
Single Pole Air Switches, Fuse Disconnecting
Switches and Accessories

D. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

C37.22-97.....Preferred Ratings and Required Capabilities for
Indoor AC Medium-Voltage Switches Used in Metal-
Enclosed Switchgear

SG 6-00.....Power Switching Equipment

D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HIGH VOLTAGE OUTDOOR AIR BREAK SWITCHES, SEPARATELY ENCLOSED

A. Shall be in accordance with ANSI, IEEE, NEMA, NFPA, as shown on the drawings, match existing manufacturer and have the following features:

1. Air break, three-pole gang-operated, rated load interrupter type.
2. Copper blades.
3. A separate door for the fuse section. A mechanical interlock shall prevent opening the door unless the switch blades are open, and closing the switch if the door is open.

4. Phase barriers for the full length of the blades and fuses for each pole.
5. Protective shield to cover the cable connections on the line terminals.
6. Quick-make, quick-break, stored energy type operation mechanism.
7. External manual operating handle with lock-open padlocking provisions.
8. When the switches are open, the fuses shall be de-energized.
9. Current limiting, power type fuses.
10. Anti-condensing space heaters.
11. Enclosures:
 - a. NEMA type shown on the drawings for the switches. Where the types of switch enclosures are not shown, they shall be the NEMA types which are most suitable for the environmental conditions where the switches are being installed.
 - b. Doors:
 - 1) Concealed or semi-concealed hinges shall be used to attach doors. Weld hinges to the enclosure and door.
 - 2) Mechanically interlocked to prevent opening unless the switch blades are open.
 - 3) Three point door locking mechanism, suitable handles and padlocking provisions.
 - 4) Safety-glass window for viewing the switch blades.
 - 5) Door stops for the open position.
 - c. Finish:
 - 1) All metal surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned, phosphatized, primed and painted at the factory.
 - 2) Final finish shall be enamel, lacquer or powder coating. Enamel and powder coatings shall be oven baked. Color shall be light gray.
- B. Minimum switch fault close and momentary current rating shall be 60 kA with a 2 second current rating of 38 kA.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install the switches in accordance with the NEC, manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Anchor the units with rustproof bolts, nuts and washers not less than 13 mm (1/2-inch) diameter.

3.2 SPARE PARTS

Two weeks prior to the final inspection, provide one (1) set of spare fuses for each fused switch installed on this project.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16450
GROUNDING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies general grounding and bonding requirements of electrical and telecommunication installations for personnel safety, equipment operations and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.
- B. "Grounding electrode system" refers to all electrodes required by NEC, as well as including made, supplementary, lightning protection system and telecommunications system grounding electrodes.
- C. The terms "connect" and "bond" are used interchangeably in this specification and have the same meaning.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Low Voltage power and lighting wiring.
- C. Section 16670, LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM: Requirements for a lightning protection system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include the location of system grounding electrode connections and the routing of aboveground and underground grounding electrode conductors.
- C. Test Reports: Provide certified test reports of ground resistance.
- D. Certifications: Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. Certification that the materials and installation is in accordance with the drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Certification, by the Contractor, that the complete installation has been properly installed and tested.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - B1-2001.....Standard Specification for Hard-Drawn Copper Wire
 - B8-2004.....Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft
- B. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE):
 - 81-1983.....IEEE Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-2005.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - 99-2005.....Health Care Facilities
- D. Telecommunications Industry Association, (TIA)
 - J-STO-607-A-2002.....Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications
- E. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 44-2005Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables
 - 83-2003Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables
 - 467-2004Grounding and Bonding Equipment
 - 486A-486B-2003Wire Connectors

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS**

- A. Equipment grounding conductors shall be UL 83 insulated stranded copper, except that sizes 6 mm² (10 AWG) and smaller shall be solid copper. Insulation color shall be continuous green for all equipment grounding conductors, except that wire sizes 25 mm² (4 AWG) and larger shall be permitted to be identified per NEC.
- B. Bonding conductors shall be ASTM B8 bare stranded copper, except that sizes 6 mm² (10 AWG) and smaller shall be ASTM B1 solid bare copper wire.
- C. Isolated Power System: Type XHHW-2 insulation with a dielectric constant of 3.5 or less.

- D. Telecom System Grounding Riser Conductor: Telecommunications Grounding Riser shall be in accordance with J STO-607A. Use a minimum 50mm² (1/0 AWG) insulated stranded copper grounding conductor unless indicated otherwise.
- E. Electrical System Grounding: Conductor sizes shall not be less than what is shown on the drawings and not less than required by the NEC, whichever is greater.

2.2 GROUND RODS

- A. Copper clad steel, 19 mm (3/4-inch) diameter by 3000 mm (10 feet) long, conforming to UL 467.
- B. Quantity of rods shall be as required to obtain the specified ground resistance.

2.3 SPLICES AND TERMINATION COMPONENTS

Components shall meet or exceed UL 467 and be clearly marked with the manufacturer, catalog number, and permitted conductor size(s).

2.4 GROUND CONNECTIONS

- A. Below Grade: Exothermic-welded type connectors.
- B. Above Grade:
 - 1. Bonding Jumpers: compression type connectors, using zinc-plated fasteners and external tooth lockwashers.
 - 2. Ground Busbars: Two-hole compression type lugs using tin-plated copper or copper alloy bolts and nuts.
- C. Cable Shields: Make ground connections to multipair communications cables with metallic shields using shield bonding connectors with screw stud connection.

2.5 GROUND TERMINAL BLOCKS

At any equipment mounting location (e.g. backboards and hinged cover enclosures) where rack-type ground bars cannot be mounted, provide screw lug-type terminal blocks.

2.6 SPLICE CASE GROUND ACCESSORIES

Splice case grounding and bonding accessories shall be supplied by the splice case manufacturer when available. Otherwise, use 16 mm² (6 AWG) insulated ground wire with shield bonding connectors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Ground in accordance with the NEC, as shown on drawings, and as hereinafter specified.
- B. System Grounding:

1. Secondary service neutrals: Ground at the supply side of the secondary disconnecting means and at the related transformers.
 2. Separately derived systems (transformers downstream from the service entrance): Ground the secondary neutral.
 3. Isolation transformers and isolated power systems shall not be system grounded.
- C. Equipment Grounding: Metallic structures (including ductwork and building steel), enclosures, raceways, junction boxes, outlet boxes, cabinets, machine frames, and other conductive items in close proximity with electrical circuits shall be bonded and grounded.

3.2 INACCESSIBLE GROUNDING CONNECTIONS

Make grounding connections, which are buried or otherwise normally inaccessible (except connections for which periodic testing access is required) by exothermic weld.

3.3 MEDIUM-VOLTAGE EQUIPMENT AND CIRCUITS

- A. Switchgear: Provide a bare grounding electrode conductor from the switchgear ground bus to the grounding electrode system.
- B. Duct Banks and Manholes: Provide an insulated equipment grounding conductor in each duct containing medium or high voltage conductors, sized per NEC except that minimum size shall be 25 mm² (2 AWG). Bond the equipment grounding conductors to the switchgear ground bus, to all manhole hardware and ground rods, to the cable shielding grounding provisions of medium or high voltage cable splices and terminations, and equipment enclosures.
- C. Pad Mounted Transformers:
 1. Provide a driven ground rod and bond with a grounding electrode conductor to the transformer grounding pad metal steel.
 2. Ground the secondary neutral.
- D. Lightning Arresters: Connect lightning arresters to the equipment ground bus or ground rods as applicable.
- E. Outdoor Metallic Fences Around Electrical Equipment: Fences shall be grounded with a ground rod at each fixed gate post and at each corner post. Drive ground rods until the top is 300 mm (12 inches) below grade. Attach a 25 mm² (4 AWG) copper conductor, by exothermic weld to the ground rods and extend underground to the immediate vicinity of fence post. Lace the conductor vertically into 300 mm (12 inches) of fence mesh and fasten by two approved bronze compression fittings, one

to bond wire to post and the other to bond wire to fence. Each gate section shall be bonded to its gatepost by a 3 by 25 mm (1/8 by one inch) flexible braided copper strap and ground post clamps. Clamps shall be of the anti-electrolysis type.

- F. **Metallic Conduit:** Metallic conduits which terminate without mechanical connection to an electrical equipment housing by means of locknut and bushings or adapters, shall be provided with grounding bushings. Connect bushings with a bare grounding conductor to the equipment ground bus.

3.4 SECONDARY EQUIPMENT AND CIRCUITS

- A. **Main Bonding Jumper:** Bond the secondary service neutral to the ground bus in the service equipment.
- B. **Metallic Piping, Building Steel, and Supplemental Electrode(s):**
1. Provide a grounding electrode conductor sized per NEC between the service equipment ground bus and all metallic water and gas pipe systems, building steel, and supplemental or made electrodes. Jumper insulating joints in the metallic piping. All connections to electrodes shall be made with fittings that conform to UL 467.
 2. Provide a supplemental ground electrode and bond to the grounding electrode system.
- C. **Switchgear, Switchboards, Unit Substations, and Motor Control Centers:**
1. Connect the various feeder equipment grounding conductors to the ground bus in the enclosure with suitable pressure connectors.
 2. Connect metallic conduits, which terminate without mechanical connection to the housing, by grounding bushings and grounding conductor to the equipment ground bus.
- D. **Transformers:**
1. **Exterior:** Exterior transformers supplying interior service equipment shall have the neutral grounded at the transformer secondary. Provide a grounding electrode at the transformer.
 2. **Separately derived systems (transformers downstream from service equipment):** Ground the secondary neutral at the transformer. Provide a grounding electrode conductor from the transformer to the nearest component of the grounding electrode system.
- E. **Conduit Systems:**
1. Ground all metallic conduit systems. All metallic conduit systems shall contain an equipment grounding conductor.

2. Non-metallic conduit systems shall contain an equipment grounding conductor, except that non-metallic feeder conduits which carry a grounded conductor from exterior transformers to interior or building-mounted service entrance equipment need not contain an equipment grounding conductor.
 3. Conduit containing only a grounding conductor, and which is provided for mechanical protection of the conductor, shall be bonded to that conductor at the entrance and exit from the conduit.
- F. Feeders and Branch Circuits: Install equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and power and lighting branch circuits.
- G. Boxes, Cabinets, Enclosures, and Panelboards:
1. Bond the equipment grounding conductor to each pullbox, junction box, outlet box, device box, cabinets, and other enclosures through which the conductor passes (except for special grounding systems for intensive care units and other critical units shown).
 2. Provide lugs in each box and enclosure for equipment grounding conductor termination.
 3. Provide ground bars in panelboards, bolted to the housing, with sufficient lugs to terminate the equipment grounding conductors.
- H. Motors and Starters: Provide lugs in motor terminal box and starter housing or motor control center compartment to terminate equipment grounding conductors.
- I. Receptacles shall not be grounded through their mounting screws. Ground with a jumper from the receptacle green ground terminal to the device box ground screw and the branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- K. Ground lighting fixtures to the equipment grounding conductor of the wiring system when the green ground is provided; otherwise, ground the fixtures through the conduit systems. Fixtures connected with flexible conduit shall have a green ground wire included with the power wires from the fixture through the flexible conduit to the first outlet box.
- K. Fixed electrical appliances and equipment shall be provided with a ground lug for termination of the equipment grounding conductor.
- L. Panelboard Bonding: The equipment grounding terminal buses of the normal and essential branch circuit panelboards serving the same individual patient vicinity shall be bonded together with an insulated continuous copper conductor not less than 16 mm² (10 AWG). These conductors shall be installed in rigid metal conduit.

3.5 CORROSION INHIBITORS

When making ground and ground bonding connections, apply a corrosion inhibitor to all contact surfaces. Use corrosion inhibitor appropriate for protecting a connection between the metals used.

3.6 CONDUCTIVE PIPING

- A. Bond all conductive piping systems, interior and exterior, to the building to the grounding electrode system. Bonding connections shall be made as close as practical to the equipment ground bus.
- B. In operating rooms and at intensive care and coronary care type beds, bond the gases and suction piping, at the outlets, directly to the room or patient ground bus.

3.7 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

- A. Provide ground paths that are permanent and continuous with a resistance of 1 ohm or less from raceway, cable tray, and equipment connections to the building grounding electrode. The resistance across individual bonding connections shall be 10 milli ohms or less.
- B. Above-Grade Grounding Connections: When making bolted or screwed connections to attach bonding jumpers, remove paint to expose the entire contact surface by grinding where necessary; thoroughly clean all connector, plate and other contact surfaces; and apply an appropriate corrosion inhibitor to all surfaces before joining.
- C. Bonding Jumpers:
 - 1. Use insulated ground wire of the size and type shown on the Drawings or use a minimum of 16 mm² (6 AWG) insulated copper wire.
 - 2. Assemble bonding jumpers using insulated ground wire terminated with compression connectors.
 - 3. Use compression connectors of proper size for conductors specified. Use connector manufacturer's compression tool.
- D. Bonding Jumper Fasteners:
 - 1. Conduit: Fasten bonding jumpers using screw lugs on grounding bushings or conduit strut clamps, or the clamp pads on push-type conduit fasteners. When screw lug connection to a conduit strut clamp is not possible, fasten the plain end of a bonding jumper wire by slipping the plain end under the conduit strut clamp pad; tighten the clamp screw firmly. Where appropriate, use zinc-plated external tooth lockwashers.

2. Ground Plates and Busbars: Fasten bonding jumpers using two-hole compression lugs. Use tin-plated copper or copper alloy bolts, external tooth lockwashers, and nuts.
3. Unistrut and Raised Floor Stringers: Fasten bonding jumpers using zinc-plated, self-drill screws and external tooth lockwashers.

3.8 COMMUNICATIONS CABLE GROUNDING

- A. Bond all metallic cable sheaths in multipair communications cables together at each splicing and/or terminating location to provide 100 percent metallic sheath continuity throughout the communications distribution system.
 1. At terminal points, install a cable shield bonding connector provide a screw stud connection for ground wire. Use a bonding jumper to connect the cable shield connector to an appropriate ground source like the rack or cabinet ground bar.
 2. Bond all metallic cable shields together within splice closures using cable shield bonding connectors or the splice case grounding and bonding accessories provided by the splice case manufacturer. When an external ground connection is provided as part of splice closure, connect to an approved ground source and all other metallic components and equipment at that location.

3.9 COMMUNICATIONS RACEWAY GROUNDING

- A. Conduit: Use insulated 16 mm² (6 AWG) bonding jumpers to ground metallic conduit at each end and to bond at all intermediate metallic enclosures.
- B. Wireway: use insulated 16 mm² (6 AWG) bonding jumpers to ground or bond metallic wireway at each end at all intermediate metallic enclosures and across all section junctions.

3.10 GROUND RESISTANCE

- A. Grounding system resistance to ground shall not exceed 5 ohms. Make necessary modifications or additions to the grounding electrode system for compliance without additional cost to the Government. Final tests shall assure that this requirement is met.
- B. Resistance of the grounding electrode system shall be measured using a four-terminal fall-of-potential method as defined in IEEE 81. Ground resistance measurements shall be made before the electrical distribution system is energized and shall be made in normally dry conditions not less than 48 hours after the last rainfall. Resistance measurements of separate grounding electrode systems shall be made

before the systems are bonded together below grade. The combined resistance of separate systems may be used to meet the required resistance, but the specified number of electrodes must still be provided.

- C. Services at power company interface points shall comply with the power company ground resistance requirements.
- D. Below-grade connections shall be visually inspected by the Resident Engineer prior to backfilling. The Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer 24 hours before the connections are ready for inspection.

3.11 GROUND ROD INSTALLATION

- A. Drive each rod vertically in the earth, not less than 3000 mm (10 feet) in depth.
- B. Where permanently concealed ground connections are required, make the connections by the exothermic process to form solid metal joints. Make accessible ground connections with mechanical pressure type ground connectors.
- C. Where rock prevents the driving of vertical ground rods, install angled ground rods or grounding electrodes in horizontal trenches to achieve the specified resistance.

3.12 GROUNDING FOR RF/EMI CONTROL

- A. Install bonding jumpers to bond all conduit, cable trays, sleeves and equipment for low voltage signaling and data communications circuits. Bonding jumpers shall consist of 100 mm (4 inches) wide copper strip or two 6 mm² (10 AWG) copper conductors spaced minimum 100 mm (4 inches) apart. Use 16 mm² (6 AWG) copper where exposed and subject to damage.
- B. Comply with the following when shielded cable is used for data circuits.
 - 1. Shields shall be continuous throughout each circuit.
 - 2. Connect shield drain wires together at each circuit connection point and insulate from ground. Do not ground the shield.
 - 3. Do not connect shields from different circuits together.
 - 4. Shield shall be connected at one end only. Connect shield to signal reference at the origin of the circuit. Consult with equipment manufacturer to determine signal reference.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16460
TRANSFORMERS (GENERAL PURPOSE)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of the dry type general-purpose transformers.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Requirements for seismic restraint of nonstructural components.
- B. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- C. Section 16111, CONDUITS: Conduits and outlet boxes.
- D. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Cables and wiring.
- E. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL), submit the following:
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, impedance, dimensions, weight, mounting details, decibel rating, terminations, temperature rise, no load and full load losses, and connection diagrams.
 - 3. Complete nameplate data including manufacturer's name and catalog number.
- C. Manuals:
 - 1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals including technical data sheets and wiring diagrams.
 - 2. If changes have been made to the originally submitted maintenance and operating manuals, then two weeks prior to final inspection submit four copies of updated maintenance and operating manuals to the Resident Engineer.
- D. Certifications: Two weeks prior to the final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. Certification by the manufacturer that the transformers conform to the requirements of the drawings and specifications.

2. Certification that the equipment has been properly installed and tested.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by designation only.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
70-05.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
- C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
ST 20-97.....Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL PURPOSE DRY TYPE TRANSFORMERS

- A. Unless otherwise specified, dry type transformers shall be in accordance with NEMA, NEC and as shown on the drawings. Transformers shall be UL listed or labeled. Match existing manufacturer.
- B. Dry type transformers shall have the following features:
 1. Self-cooled by natural convection, isolating windings, indoor, dry type. Autotransformers will not be accepted.
 2. Rating and winding connections shall be as shown on the drawings.
 3. Transformers shall have copper windings.
 4. Ratings shown on the drawings are for continuous-duty without the use of cooling fans.
 5. Insulation systems:
 - a. Transformers 30 KVA and larger: UL rated 220 degrees C system having an average maximum rise by resistance of 150 degrees C in a maximum ambient of 40 degrees C.
 - b. Transformers below 30 KVA: Same as for 30 KVA and larger or UL rated 185 degrees C system having an average maximum rise by resistance of 115 degrees C in a maximum ambient of 40 degrees C.
 6. Core and coil assemblies:
 - a. Rigidly braced to withstand the stresses caused by short circuit currents and rough handling during shipment.
 - b. Cores shall be grain oriented, non-aging, and silicon steel.
 - c. Coils shall be continuous windings without splices except for taps.
 - d. Coil loss and core loss shall be minimum for efficient operation.
 - e. Primary and secondary tap connections shall be brazed or pressure type.
 - f. Coil windings shall have end fillers or tie downs for maximum strength.

7. Certified sound levels determined in accordance with NEMA, shall not exceed the following:

Transformer Rating	Sound Level Rating
0 - 9 KVA	40 dB
10 - 50 KVA	45 dB
51 - 150 KVA	50 dB
151 - 300 KVA	55 dB
301 - 500 KVA	60 dB

8. Nominal impedance shall be as shown on the drawings. If not shown on drawings, nominal impedance shall be as permitted by NEMA.
9. Single phase transformers rated 15 KVA through 25 KVA shall have two, 5 percent full capacity taps below normal rated primary voltage. All transformers rated 30 KVA and larger shall have two, 2-1/2 percent full capacity taps above, and four, 2-1/2 percent full capacity taps below normal rated primary voltage.
10. Core assemblies shall be grounded to their enclosures by adequate flexible ground straps.
11. Enclosures:
- Not less than code gage steel.
 - Outdoor enclosures shall be NEMA 3R.
 - Temperature rise at hottest spot shall conform to NEMA Standards, and shall not bake and peel off the enclosure paint after the transformer has been placed in service.
 - Ventilation openings shall prevent accidental access to live components.
 - Thoroughly clean and paint enclosure at the factory with manufacturer's prime coat and standard finish.
12. Standard NEMA features and accessories including ground pad, lifting provisions and nameplate with the wiring diagram and sound level indicated on it.
13. Dimensions and configurations shall conform to the spaces designated for their installations.
14. Transformers shall meet the minimum energy efficiency values per NEMA TP1 as listed below:

kVA Rating	Output efficiency (%)
15	97
30	97.5

45	97.7
75	98
112.5	98.2
150	98.3
225	98.5
300	98.6
500	98.7
750	98.8

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of transformers shall be in accordance with the NEC, as recommended by the equipment manufacturer and as shown on the drawings.
- B. Install the transformers with adequate clearance at a minimum of 100 mm (4 inches) from wall and adjacent equipment for air circulation to remove the heat produced by transformers.
- C. Install transformers on vibration pads designed to suppress transformer noise and vibrations.
- D. Use flexible metal conduit to enclose the conductors from the transformer to the raceway systems.

3.2 SPARE PARTS

- A. Deliver the following spare parts for the project to the Resident Engineer two weeks prior to final inspection:
 - 1. Six stand-off insulators.
 - 2. Six insulated protective caps.
 - 3. One spare set of high voltage fuses for each size fuse used in the project.

3.3 TRAINING

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems. Refer to Division 1 Section 01010 "GENERAL REQUIREMENTS (WAGE DETERMINATION DECISION)."
- 1. Train Owner's management and maintenance personnel in interpreting and using monitoring displays and in configuring and using software and reports. Include troubleshooting, servicing, adjusting, and maintaining equipment. Provide a minimum of 8 hours' training.
- 2. Training Aid: Use approved final versions of software and maintenance manuals as training aids.
- 3. Test and troubleshoot the system.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16462
DISTRIBUTION SWITCHBOARDS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

This section specifies the furnishing, installation, and connection of the distribution switchboards.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS: Requirements for Seismic Restraint for Nonstructural Components.
- B. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- C. Section 16051, ELECTRICAL SYSTEM PROTECTIVE DEVICE STUDY: Coordination study of overcurrent protection devices.
- D. Section 16111, CONDUITS: Conduits and outlet boxes.
- E. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW: Cables and wiring.
- F. Section 16312, UNIT SUBSTATION, SECONDARY: Unit secondary substation.
- G. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for Personnel Safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible fault currents.

1.3 FACTORY TESTS:

- A. Design Tests: Design tests shall have been performed on a type or style of switchboard similar to that being furnished for this project. Tests shall be in accordance with NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.
- B. Production Tests: Dielectric, mechanical operation, grounding of instrument transformer cases, electrical operation and control wiring, and ground fault sensing equipment tests shall be performed on the switchboards provided for this project. Tests shall be in accordance with NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

Submit in accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL):

- A. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting details, materials, required clearances, terminations, weight, temperature rise, wiring and connection diagrams, plan, front, side, and rear elevations, sectional views, bus work, circuit breaker frame sizes, trip and short-circuit rating, long-time, short-time, instantaneous and ground

fault settings, coordinated breaker and fuse curves, accessories, and device nameplate data.

3. Show the size, ampere-rating, number of bars per phase and neutral in each bus run (horizontal and vertical), bus spacing, equipment ground bus, and bus material.

B. Manuals:

1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings, companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals including technical data sheets, wiring diagrams, and information for ordering replacement parts.
 - a. Wiring diagrams shall have their terminals identified to facilitate installation, maintenance, and operation.
 - b. Wiring diagrams shall indicate internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between the items of equipment.
 - c. Provide a clear and concise description of operation, which gives, in detail, the information required to properly operate the equipment.
 - d. Approvals will be based on complete submissions of manuals together with shop drawings.
2. Two weeks prior to final inspection, deliver four copies of the final updated maintenance and operating manuals to the Resident Engineer.
 - a. The manuals shall be updated to include any information necessitated by shop drawing approval.
 - b. Complete "As Installed" wiring and schematic diagrams shall be included which show all items of equipment and their interconnecting wiring.
 - c. Show all terminal identification.
 - d. Include information for testing, repair, trouble shooting, assembly, disassembly, and recommended maintenance intervals.
 - e. Provide a replacement parts list with current prices. Include a list of recommended spare parts, tools, and instruments for testing and maintenance purposes.
 - f. Furnish manuals in loose-leaf binder or manufacturer's standard binder.

C. Certifications:

1. Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Certification by the Contractor that the assemblies have been properly installed, adjusted and tested, including circuit breakers settings.

- b. Certified copies of all of the factory design and production tests, field test data sheets and reports for the assemblies.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that the switchgear, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces at location being installed. Include the following:
 - 1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the equipment when subjected to the seismic forces as per specification Section 13081, and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.

- A. Institute of Engineering and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):
 - C37.13-95.....Low Voltage AC Power Circuit Breakers Used in Enclosures
 - C57.13-93.....Instrument Transformers
 - C62.41-95.....Surge Voltage in Low Voltage AC Power Circuits
 - C62.45-02.....Surge Testing for Equipment connected to Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits
- B. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA):
 - PB-2-01.....Dead-Front Distribution Switchboards.
 - PB-2.1-02.....Instructions for Proper Handling, Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Switchboards
 - AB-1-02.....Molded Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
- D. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 67-93.....Panelboards
 - 489-02.....Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Circuit Breakers Enclosures
 - 891-98.....Dead-Front Switchboards

1283-98.....Electromagnetic Interference Filters

1449-96.....Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL:

- A. Switchboards shall be in accordance with UL, NEMA, NEC, IEEE, and as shown on the drawings. Match existing distribution equipment manufacturer.
- B. Switchboards shall be provided complete, ready for operation including, but not limited to housing, buses, circuit breakers, instruments and related transformers, fuses, and wiring.
- C. Switchboard dimensions shall not exceed the space provided as shown on the drawings.
- D. Manufacturer's nameplate shall include complete ratings of switchboard in addition to the date of manufacture.

2.2 BASIC ARRANGEMENT:

- A. Switchboard shall be front accessible with the following features:
 - 1. Device mounting:
 - a. Main breaker: Individually mounted and compartmented or group mounted with feeder breakers.
 - b. Feeder breakers: Group mounted.
 - 2. Section alignment: As shown on the drawings.
 - 3. Accessibility:
 - a. Main section line and load terminals: Front and side.
 - b. Distribution section line and load terminals: Front.
 - c. Through bus connections: Front and end.
 - 4. Bolted line and load connections.
 - 5. Full height wiring gutter covers for access to wiring terminals.
 - 6. Short Circuit Current Rating: 65,000 amperes rms symmetrical, minimum, or as shown on the drawings, whichever is higher.

2.3 HOUSING:

- A. Provide a completely enclosed, free standing, steel enclosure not less than the gage required by the ANSI and UL standards. The enclosure is to consist of the required number of vertical sections bolted together to form one metal enclosed rigid switchboard. The sides, top and rear shall be covered with removable screw on sheet steel plates.
- B. Provide ventilating louvers where required to limit the temperature rise of current carrying parts. All openings shall be protected against entrance of falling dirt, water, or foreign matter.

- C. Enclosure shall be thoroughly cleaned, phosphate treated, and primed with rust-inhibiting paint. Final finish coat to be the manufacturers standard gray. Provide a quart of finish paint for touch-up purposes.

2.4 BUSES:

- A. General: Buses shall be arranged for 3 phase, 4 wire distribution. Main phase buses (through bus), full size neutral bus, and ground bus shall be full capacity the entire length of the switchboard. Provide for future extensions by means of bolt holes or other approved method. Brace the bus to withstand the available short circuit current at the particular location and as shown on the drawings. No magnetic material shall be used between buses to form a magnetic loop.
- B. Material and Size: Buses and connections shall be hard drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity. Bus temperature rise shall not exceed 65 degrees C (149 degrees F). Section busing shall be sized based on UL and NEMA Switchboard Standards.
- C. Bus Connections: All contact surfaces shall be copper. Provide a minimum of two plated bolts per splice. Where physical bus size permits only one bolt, provide a means other than friction to prevent turning, twisting or bending. Torque bolts to the manufacturer's recommended values.
- D. Neutral Bus: Provide bare or plated bus and mount on insulated bus supports. Provide neutral disconnect link to permit isolation of neutral bus from the common ground bus and service entrance conductors.
- E. Ground Bus: Provide an uninsulated 6 mm by 50 mm (1/4 inch by 2 inch) copper equipment ground bus bar sized per UL 891 the length of the switchboard and secure at each section.
- F. Main Bonding Jumper: Connect an uninsulated 6 mm by 50 mm (1/4 inch by 2 inch) copper bus between the neutral and ground buses to establish the system common ground point.

2.5 NAMEPLATES AND MIMIC BUS:

- A. Nameplates: Provide laminated black phenolic resin with white core with 6 mm (1/4 inch) high engraved lettered nameplates for each circuit breaker (switch) to indicate the feeder, panelboards and equipment served. Mount, with plated screws, on front of the breaker.
- B. Mimic Bus: Provide an approved mimic bus on the front of the switchboard. Color to be blue (480Y/277 volt) or black (208Y/120 volt), either factory painted, plastic, or metal strips. Plastic tape shall not be used. Use symbols similar to a one line diagram. (Refer to drawings). Plastic or metal strips shall be mounted with plated screws.

SPEC WRITER NOTE: Provide metering at the main service entrance equipment only.

2.6 PROVISION FOR FUTURE:

Where "provision for", "future", or "space" is noted on drawings, the space shall be equipped with bus connections to the future overcurrent device with suitable insulation and bracing to maintain proper short circuit rating and physical clearance. Provide buses for the ampere rating as shown for the future device.

2.7 MAIN CIRCUIT BREAKERS:

- A. Provide UL listed and labeled molded case circuit breakers in accordance with NEC and as shown on the drawings. Circuit breakers shall be the solid state adjustable trip type.
 - 1. Trip units shall have field adjustable tripping characteristics as follows:
 - a. Ampere setting (continuous).
 - b. Long time band.
 - c. Short time trip point.
 - d. Short time delay.
 - e. Instantaneous trip point.
 - 2. Trip settings shall be as indicated on the drawings. Final settings shall be as shown on the electrical system protective device study.
 - 3. Breakers, which have same rating, shall be interchangeable with each other.

2.8 FEEDER CIRCUIT BREAKERS:

- A. Provide UL listed and labeled molded case circuit breakers, in accordance with the NEC, as shown on the drawings, and as herein specified.
- B. Non-adjustable Trip Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
 - 1. Molded case circuit breakers shall have automatic, trip free, non-adjustable, inverse time, and instantaneous magnetic trips for 100 ampere frame size or less. Magnetic trip shall be adjustable from 3X to 10X for breakers with 600 ampere frame size and higher. Factory setting shall be LOW unless otherwise noted.
 - 2. Breaker features shall be as follows:
 - a. A rugged, integral housing of molded insulating material.
 - b. Silver alloy contacts.
 - c. Arc quenchers and phase barriers for each pole.
 - d. Quick-make, quick-break, operating mechanisms.
 - e. A trip element for each pole, thermal magnetic type with long time delay and instantaneous characteristics, a common trip bar for all poles and a single operator.
 - f. Electrically and mechanically trip free.
 - g. An operating handle which indicates ON, TRIPPED and OFF positions.

- h. Line and load connections shall be bolted.
- i. Interrupting rating shall not be less than the maximum short circuit current available at the line.
- j. An overload on one pole of a multipole breaker shall automatically cause all the poles of the breaker to open. //

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION:

- A. Install switchboards in accordance with the NEC as shown on the drawings and as recommended by the manufacturer.
- B. Anchor switchboards to the floor with plated with 12.5 mm (1/2 inch) minimum anchor bolts as recommended by the manufacturer. Anchor the switchboards on two 100 mm (4 inch) minimum channel iron sills with plated 12.5 mm (1/2 inch) bolts. Furnish sills to suit the switchboards. Coordinate installation of sills with concrete pour of floor. Sills shall be level and grouted flush with floor.
- C. Seismic bracing for switchgear shall be in accordance with the details shown on the drawings.

3.2 INSTRUCTIONS

Furnish the services of a competent instructor for one 4 hour period for instructing personnel in the operation and maintenance of the switchboard on the date requested by the Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16510
BUILDING LIGHTING, INTERIOR**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation and connection of the interior lighting systems.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General requirements that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Cables and wiring.
- C. Section 16140, WIRING DEVICES: Wiring devices used as part of the lighting systems.
- D. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path to ground for possible ground fault currents.
- E. Section 13081, SEISMIC RESTRAINT FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to Paragraph, QUALIFICATIONS, in Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Refer to Paragraph, GUARANTY, in Section 01001, GENERAL CONDITIONS.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL), submit the following:
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting details, materials, required clearances, terminations, wiring and connection diagrams, photometric data, ballasts, lenses, louvers, lamps, and controls.
 - 3. When catalog data and/or shop drawings for fluorescent fixtures are submitted for approval, photometric data from an independent testing laboratory shall be included with the submittal, indicating average brightness and efficiency of the fixture, as specified in specification or as shown on the drawings. Coefficient of utilization data will not be considered a suitable substitute.
- C. Samples:
 - 1. Simultaneously with the shop drawing and catalog cut submittal, deliver to the Resident Engineer a sample of each lighting fixture type for approval. The approved samples shall be installed in the

location directed by the Resident Engineer and shall be removed, repackaged and turned over to the Resident Engineer after final inspection.

D. Manuals:

1. Submit, simultaneously with the shop drawings companion copies of complete maintenance and operating manuals including technical data sheets, and information for ordering replacement parts.
2. Two weeks prior to the final inspection, submit four copies of the final updated maintenance and operating manuals, including any changes, to the Resident Engineer.

E. Certifications:

1. Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following certifications to the Resident Engineer:
 - a. Certification by the Contractor that the equipment has been properly installed, adjusted, and tested.
 - b. Include with shop drawings, certification from the manufacturers that all electronic high-frequency ballasts meet the transient protection required by IEEE C62.41, Cat. A. Include with initial shop drawing submittal.

1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by designation only.

B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

- C78.1-91.....Fluorescent Lamps - Rapid-Start Types -
Dimensional and Electrical Characteristics
- C78.2-91.....Fluorescent Lamps - Preheat-Start Types -
Dimensional and Electrical Characteristics
- C78.3-91.....Fluorescent Lamps - Instart Start and Cold-
Cathode Types - Dimensional and Electrical
Characteristics
- C78.376-91.....Chromaticity of Fluorescent Lamps (ANSI/NEMA
C78/376-96)

C. Certified Ballast Manufacturers Association (CBM):
Requirements for Ballast Certification.

D. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

- C62.41-91.....Recommended Practice on Surge Voltage in Low
Voltage AC Power Circuits

E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

- 70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
- 101-00.....Life Safety Code

- F. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
 - C82.1-97.....Ballasts for Fluorescent Lamps - Specifications
 - C82.2-02.....Method of Measurement of Fluorescent Lamp
Ballasts
 - C82.4-02.....Ballasts for High-Intensity-Discharge and Low-
Pressure Sodium Lamps
 - C82.11-02.....High Frequency Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts
- G. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 - 496-96.....Edison-Base Lampholders
 - 542-99.....Lampholders, Starters, and Starter Holders for
Fluorescent Lamps
 - 844-95.....Electric Lighting Fixtures for Use in Hazardous
(Classified) Locations
 - 924-95.....Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment
 - 935-01.....Fluorescent-Lamp Ballasts
 - 1029-94.....High-Intensity-Discharge Lamp Ballasts
 - 1598-00.....Luminaires
- H. Federal Communications Commission (FCC):
 - Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 47, Part 18

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIGHTING FIXTURES (LUMINAIRES)

- A. Shall be in accordance with NFPA 70, UL 1598 and shall be as shown on drawings and as specified. Match existing manufacturers and types.
- B. Sheet Metal:
 - 1. Shall be formed to prevent warping and sagging. Housing, trim and lens frame shall be true, straight (unless intentionally curved) and parallel to each other as designed.
 - 2. Wireways and fittings shall be free of burrs and sharp edges and shall accommodate internal and branch circuit wiring without damage to the wiring.
 - 3. Where lighting fixtures are detailed with minimum 20 gauge housing, minimum 22 gauge housings will be acceptable provided they have strengthening embossed rib and break formations, which give the equivalent rigidity of a 20 gauge housing.
 - 4. When installed, any exposed fixture housing surface, trim frame, door frame and lens frame shall be free of light leaks; lens doors shall close in a light tight manner.
 - 5. Hinged door closure frames shall operate smoothly without binding when the fixture is in the installed position, and latches shall function easily by finger action without the use of tools.

6. For weatherproof and vapor tight fixture finishes, provide weatherproof enamel, galvanized or epoxy, including hangers.
- C. Ballasts shall be serviceable while the fixture is in its normally installed position, and shall not be mounted to removable reflectors or wireway covers unless so specified.
- D. Lamp Sockets:
 1. Fluorescent: Lampholder contacts shall be the biting edge type or phosphorous-bronze with silver flash contact surface type and shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL 542. Contacts for recessed double contact lampholders and for slimline lampholders shall be silver plated. Lampholders for bi-pin lamps, with the exception of those for "U" type lamps, shall be of the telescoping compression type, or of the single slot entry type requiring a one-quarter turn of the lamp after insertion.
 2. High Intensity Discharge (H.I.D.): Shall have porcelain enclosures.
- E. Fluorescent fixtures with louvers or light transmitting panels shall have hinges, latches and safety catches to facilitate safe, convenient cleaning and relamping. Vapor tight fixtures shall have pressure clamping devices in lieu of the latches.
- F. Mechanical Safety: Lighting fixture closures (lens doors, trim frame, hinged housings, etc.) shall be retained in a secure manner by captive screws, chains, captive hinges or fasteners such that they cannot be accidentally dislodged during normal operation or routine maintenance.
- G. Metal Finishes:
 1. The manufacturer shall apply his standard finish (unless otherwise specified) over a corrosion resistant primer, after cleaning to free the metal surfaces of rust, grease, dirt and other deposits. Edges of pre-finished sheet metal exposed during forming, stamping or shearing processes shall be finished in a similar corrosion resistant manner to match the adjacent surface(s). Fixture finish shall be free of stains or evidence of rusting, blistering, or flaking.
 2. Interior light reflecting finishes shall be white with not less than 85 percent reflectances, except where otherwise shown on the drawing.
 3. Exterior finishes shall be as shown on the drawings.
 4. Unpainted aluminum surfaces shall be satin anodized, except as noted. In indoor locations, finishes shall meet Aluminum Association standards for outdoor coatings.
- H. Provide all lighting fixtures with a specific means for grounding their metallic wireways and housings to an equipment grounding conductor.
- I. Light Transmitting Components for Fluorescent Fixtures:

1. Shall be 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic or water white, annealed, crystal glass.
2. Flat lens panels shall have not less than 3.2 mm (1/8 inch) of average thickness. The average thickness shall be determined by adding the maximum thickness to the minimum unpenetrated thickness and dividing the sum by 2.
3. Unless otherwise specified, lenses, diffusers and louvers shall be retained firmly in a metal frame by clips or clamping ring in such a manner as to allow expansion and contraction of the lens without distortion or cracking.
4. Reflectors and baffles shall be free from macks, labels and blemishes.
5. De-staticize plastic lenses and diffusers.
- J. Compact fluorescent fixtures shall be manufactured specifically for compact fluorescent lamps with ballasts integral to the fixture. Assemblies designed to retrofit incandescent fixtures are prohibited except when specifically indicated for renovation of existing fixtures. Fixtures shall be designed for lamps as specified.

2.2 FLUORESCENT LAMP BALLASTS

- A. Where applicable, fluorescent lamps and ballasts shall comply with the National Energy Policy Act of 1992.
- B. Ballasts shall comply with NEMA 82.1, 82.2 and 82.11, NFPA 70, and UL 935 unless otherwise specified.
- C. All fluorescent fixtures shall be provided with electronic program start ballasts with less than 10% total harmonic distortion unless otherwise noted.
- D. Electronic high-frequency ballasts:
 1. Ballasts shall operate the lamps at a frequency between 20 and 60 KHz from an input frequency of 60Hz.
 2. Ballast package:
 - a. Size: The ballast case shall be sized to be physically interchangeable with standard core-and-coil ballasts and suitable for standard mounting in new or existing lighting fixtures.
 - b. Case marking: Mark the ballast to indicate the required supply voltage, frequency, RMS current, current surge during starting, input watts, and power factor at the design center voltage, open circuit voltage, crest factor and efficacy.
 3. Performance:
 - a. Light output:
 - 1) At the design voltage, the light output shall be at least equal to that obtained by a core-and-coil ballasted system meeting

ANSI, NEMA and CBM standards. The comparison test shall be measured in the same fixture at 25 degrees C (plus or minus one degree) ambient room temperature.

- 2) Tests shall be made in fixtures designed only for the number of lamps being tested.
 - 3) For other applications (higher ambients, etc.) the tests should be operated with equivalent lamp wall temperatures plus or minus 4 degrees C.
- b. Efficacy: The efficacy of the high-frequency, electronically ballasted system shall be at least 15 percent greater than the equivalent CBM core-and-coil ballasted system (see "Light output" above).
- c. Starting: The ballast shall be capable of starting and maintaining operation of lamps at an ambient temperature of 10 degrees C (50 degree F) or more for an input voltage of plus or minus 10 percent about the center design voltage unless otherwise indicated. The ballast shall never be started in the instant start mode at any temperature.
- d. Operation:
- 1) The ballast shall safely and reliably operate in a room ambient temperature from 10 degrees C (50 degree F) to 40 degrees C (105 degree F).
 - 2) The light output shall not vary by more than plus or minus 5 percent for a plus or minus 10 percent variation of the input voltage about the center design voltage. Light output shall remain constant for a plus or minus 5 percent variation of the input voltage.
 - 3) The ballast shall operate the lamps in a manner that will not adversely curtail the normal life of the lamp.
- e. Transient protection: The ballast shall comply with IEEE C62.41, Cat. A.
- f. Flicker: The flicker shall be less than 5 percent and without visible flicker.
- g. Noise: The audible noise levels should be equivalent to or better than the Class A rating of CBM certified ballasts.
- h. Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) and Radio Frequency Interference (RFI): The EMI and RFI limits shall meet the requirements of the Federal Communications Commission Rules and Regulations (CFR 47 Part 18).
- i. Rated life: The ballast shall have a rated life of 10 years or 30,000 hours (based on a 10 hour day).

- j. The two-lamp ballast shall safely operate two F32T8 RS, 32- watt lamps or two F32T8/U lamps. The single lamp ballast shall safely operate one F32T8 RS, 32-watt lamp or one F32T8/U lamp.
- k. Power factor: Not less than 95 percent.
- l. Reliability:
 - 1) Labels: Ballasts must be labeled or listed by UL and CBM/ETL.
 - 2) Submit, simultaneously with shop drawings, a certified test report by an independent testing laboratory showing that the electronic ballasts meet or exceed all the performance requirements in this specification.
- m. Total harmonic distortion (THD) shall be less than 10 percent.
- 4. Ballasts shall be identical within each fixture type. All ballasts within the same luminaire shall be from the same manufacturer.
- 5. Ballasts shall not contain PCB's.
- 6. Ballasts for T-4 and T-5 lamps shall have interrupter for end of life failures.
- E. All ballasts serving straight shall be mounted by four non-turning studs (or captive bolts) equipped with lock washers and nuts or locking type nuts, or by four thread cutting (TC) sheet metal screws which are firmly secured against the fixture body (or wireway) to maximize dissipation of heat and minimize noise. Exception: electronic high-frequency ballasts may be mounted at a minimum of two points, one at each end of unit.
- F. Ballasts shall be serviceable while the fixture is in its normally installed position, and shall not be mounted to removable reflectors or wireway covers unless so specified.
- G. Fixtures identified on the drawings as being emergency lighting service shall include a self-contained high temperature nickel-cadmium battery backup ballast unit capable of supplying at least one fixture tube for a minimum of 90 minutes upon loss of power supply to the fixture. Ballast to be wired so it can be powered from the line side of any controlling devices on the circuit and keep the battery charged until needed.

2.3 BALLASTS FOR HIGH INTENSITY DISCHARGE FIXTURES:

- A. Shall comply with NEMA 82.4 and UL 1029.
- B. Shall have individual overcurrent protection sized in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Shall have integral thermal protection where the fixture is recessed in an interior ceiling.
- D. Shall be the constant wattage, high power factor type or the reactor high power factor type. Capacitors shall not contain PCB (Polychlorinated Biphenyl) fluids or other fluids recognized as hazardous when discharged into the environment.

- E. Ballasts shall be designed with Class 'H' insulation.
- F. Drop out voltage shall be note less than 70 percent of nominal.
- G. For indoor commercial application:
 - 1. Provide NEMA rated 'A' sound rating.
 - 2. Ballast shall comply with Federal Communications Commission Part 18C limits for electromagnetic interference and radio frequency interference.
 - 3. Ballast shall provide transient immunity as specified by ANSI C82-4.
 - 4. Ballast shall have lamp current crest factor of less than 1.8.
 - 5. Total harmonics distortion shall be less than 20%.
- H. For indoor industrial application:
 - 1. Provide NEMA rated 'B' sound rating.
 - 2. Ballasts shall sustain open circuit and short circuit output conditions without damage to ballast.
 - 3. Ballasts shall have lamp crest factor of less than 1.8.
- I. Provide UL listed instant restrike device, solid state potted module suitable for mounting inside of luminaire. Instant restrike device shall be compatible with lamp, ballast, and lamp sockets. Restrike range shall be 105 to 130 VAC. Voltage shall not exceed 250 volts peak or 150 VAC RMS.
- J. Provide UL listed, automatically switched instant on 120 volt quartz lamp for fixtures that shall energize when the luminaire is initially energized and following a momentary power outage and shall remain on until HID lamp reaches approximately 60% of light output. Wiring for quartz lamp shall be internal to the ballast and shall be independent of the incoming line voltage to the ballast. Provide auxiliary instant-on quartz system for fixtures as indicated.

2.4 LAMPS

- A. Fluorescent Lamps:
 - 1. Rapid start fluorescent lamps shall comply with ANSI C78.1; preheat-start type shall comply with ANSI C78.2; and instant-start and cold-cathode lamps shall comply with ANSI C78.3.
 - 2. Chromacity of fluorescent lamps shall comply with ANSI C78.376.
 - 4. Except as indicated below, lamps shall be energy saving type, have a color temperature between 3500 and 4100°K, a Color Rendering Index (CRI) of not less than 75, and an initial lumen output not less than 2800. "U" tube lamps shall have the same color temperature and CRI limits as the above.
 - a. Other areas as indicated on the drawings.
- B. High Intensity Discharge Lamps:

1. Multi-vapor lamps shall be as defined on the detail drawings.
2. High pressure sodium lamps shall be as defined on the detail drawings.

2.5 OCCUPANT SENSOR LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. General: An active or passive sensor shall be utilized to control the "On-Off" actuation of fluorescent or incandescent lighting loads. It shall provide control of an isolated set of contacts on exposure to a perceived change in environmental conditions indicating the presence or absence of one or more persons. It shall maintain the contacts closed in the presence of continued changes (due to human presence) at similar intensity and rate. It shall open the contacts at a nominal time after the changes cease.

2.6 RADIO-INTERFERENCE-FREE FLUORESCENT FIXTURES

- A. Shall be specially designed for suppressing radio-frequency energy produced within the fixtures. The Rules and Regulations of FCC (CFR 47, Part 18) shall apply.
- B. Lenses shall have a light-transparent layer of metal permanently bonded to them, and in positive contact with the steel housing or equal to prevent the radio-frequency interferences from passing through the lenses. The effective light transmittance of the lenses shall be not less than 75 percent.
- C. Install line filters within the body of the fixtures and wired in series with the supply circuit conductors to eliminate the transmission of radio frequency energy into the supply circuit.

2.7 EXIT LIGHT FIXTURES

- A. Exit light fixtures shall meet applicable requirements of NFPA 101 and UL 924.
- B. Housing and Canopy:
 1. Shall be made of cast or extruded aluminum, or rolled steel.
 2. Optional steel housing shall be a minimum 20 gauge thick or equivalent strength aluminum.
 3. Steel housing shall have baked enamel over corrosion resistant, matte black or ivory white primer.
- C. Door frame shall be cast or extruded aluminum, and hinged with latch.
- D. Finish shall be satin or fine-grain brushed aluminum.
- E. There shall be no radioactive material used in the fixtures.
- F. Fixtures:
 1. Inscription panels shall be cast or stamped aluminum a minimum of 2.25 mm (0.090 inch) thick, stenciled with 150 mm (6 inch) high letters, baked with red color stable plastic or fiberglass. Lamps shall be luminous red Light Emitting Diodes (LED) mounted in center

- of letters on red color stable plastic or fiberglass. The LED shall be rated minimum 25 years life; maximum of 3.5 watts for single face and 7 watts for double-faced fixtures that do not use diffuser panels in front of the LEDs. LED exit light fixtures that use diffuser panels shall require a maximum of 1.0 watt per fixture for single or double face fixtures.
2. Double-Faced Fixtures: Provide double-faced fixtures where required or as shown on drawings.
 3. Directional Arrows: Provide directional arrows as part of the inscription panel where required or as shown on drawings. Directional arrows shall be the "chevron-type" of similar size and width as the letters and meet the requirements of NFPA 101.
- G. Voltages: Fixtures shall be wired for 277-volt operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be in accordance with the NEC, manufacturer's instructions and as shown on the drawings or specified.
- B. Align, mount and level the lighting fixtures uniformly.
- C. Avoid interference with and provide clearance for equipment. Where the indicated locations for the lighting fixtures conflict with the locations for equipment, change the locations for the lighting fixtures by the minimum distances necessary as approved by the Resident Engineer.
- D. For suspended lighting fixtures, the mounting heights shall provide the clearances between the bottoms of the fixtures and the finished floors as shown on the drawings.
- F. Lighting Fixture Supports:
 1. Shall provide support for all of the fixtures. Supports may be anchored to channels of the ceiling construction, to the structural slab or to structural members within a partition, or above a suspended ceiling.
 2. Shall maintain the fixture positions after cleaning and relamping.
 3. Shall support the lighting fixtures without causing the ceiling or partition to deflect.
 4. Hardware for recessed lighting fixtures:
 - a. All fixture mounting devices connecting fixtures to the ceiling system or building structure shall have a capacity for a horizontal force of 100 percent of the fixture weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of the fixture weight.
 - b. Mounting devices shall clamp the fixture to the ceiling system structure (main grid runners or fixture framing cross runners) at four points in such a manner as to resist spreading of these

supporting members. Each support point device shall utilize a screw or approved hardware to "lock" the fixture housing to the ceiling system, restraining the fixture from movement in any direction relative to the ceiling. The screw (size No. 10 minimum) or approved hardware shall pass through the ceiling member (T-bar, channel or spline), or it may extend over the inside of the flange of the channel (or spline) that faces away from the fixture, in a manner that prevents any fixture movement.

- c. In addition to the above, the following is required for fixtures exceeding 9 kg (20 pounds) in weight. Note: Ceiling types are defined in ASTM Standard C635-69.
 - 1) Where fixtures mounted in "Intermediate" and "Heavy Duty" ceilings weigh between 9 kg and 25 kg (20 pounds and 56 pounds) provide two 12 gauge safety hangers hung slack between diagonal corners of the fixture and the building structure.
 - 2) Where fixtures weigh over 25 kg (56 pounds) they shall be independently supported from the building structure by approved hangers. Two-way angular bracing of hangers shall be provided to prevent lateral motion.
 - d. Where ceiling cross runners are installed for support of lighting fixtures, they must have a carrying capacity equal to that of the main ceiling runners and be rigidly secured to the main runners.
5. Surface mounted lighting fixtures:
- a. Fixtures shall be bolted against the ceiling independent of the outlet box at four points spaced near the corners of each unit. The bolts (or stud-clips) shall be minimum 6 mm (1/4-20) bolt, secured to main ceiling runners and/or secured to cross runners. Non-turning studs may be attached to the main ceiling runners and cross runners with special non-friction clip devices designed for the purpose, provided they bolt through the runner, or are also secured to the building structure by 12 gauge safety hangers. Studs or bolts securing fixtures weighing in excess of 25 kg (56 pounds) shall be supported directly from the building structure.
 - b. Where ceiling cross runners are installed for support of lighting fixtures they must have a carrying capacity equal to that of the main ceiling runners and be rigidly secured to the main runners.
 - c. Fixtures less than 6.8 kg (15 pounds) in weight and occupying less than 600 mm x 600 mm (two square feet) of ceiling area may, (when designed for the purpose) be supported directly from the outlet box when all the following conditions are met.

- 1) Screws attaching the fixture to the outlet box pass through round holes (not key-hole slots) in the fixture body.
- 2) The outlet box is attached to a main ceiling runner (or cross runner) with approved hardware.
- 3) The outlet box is supported vertically from the building structure.
- d. Fixtures mounted in open construction shall be secured directly to the building structure with approved bolting and clamping devices.
6. Single or double pendent-mounted lighting fixtures:
 - a. Each stem shall be supported by an approved outlet box, mounted swivel joint and canopy which holds the stem captive and provides spring load (or approved equivalent) dampening of fixture oscillations. Outlet box shall be supported vertically from the building structure.
7. Outlet boxes for support of lighting fixtures (where permitted) shall be secured directly to the building structure with approved devices or supported vertically in a hung ceiling from the building structure with a nine gauge wire hanger, and be secured by an approved device to a main ceiling runner or cross runner to prevent any horizontal movement relative to the ceiling.
- G. Furnish and install the specified lamps for all lighting fixtures installed and all existing lighting fixtures reinstalled under this project.
- H. Coordinate between the electrical and ceiling trades to ascertain that approved lighting fixtures are furnished in the proper sizes and installed with the proper devices (hangers, clips, trim frames, flanges), to match the ceiling system being installed.
- I. Bond lighting fixtures and metal accessories to the grounding system as specified in Section 16450, GROUNDING.
- J. At completion of project, relamp all fixtures which have failed/burned-out lamps. Clean all fixtures, lenses, diffusers and louvers that have accumulated dust/dirt during construction.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16520
SITE LIGHTING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing, installation, and connection of exterior luminaries, controls, poles and supports.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements and items that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS: Conduits, fittings, and boxes for raceway systems.
- C. Section 16127, CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Low voltage power and lighting wiring.
- D. Section 16402, UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL CONSTRUCTION: Underground handholes and conduits.
- E. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sufficient information, clearly presented, shall be included to determine compliance with drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Include electrical ratings, dimensions, mounting, details, materials, required clearances, terminations, wiring and connection diagrams, photometric data, ballasts, poles, luminaries, lamps and controls.
- C. Manuals: Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of operating and maintenance manuals to the Resident Engineer. Include technical data sheets, wiring and connection diagrams, and information for ordering replacement parts.
- D. Certifications: Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. Certification that the materials are in accordance with the drawings and specifications.

2. Certification, by the Contractor, that the complete installation has been properly installed and tested.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

A. Aluminum Association Inc. (AA):

AAH35.1-2006Alloy and Temper Designation Systems for
Aluminum

B. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
(AASHTO):

LTS-4-2003Structural Supports for Highway Signs,
Luminaries and Traffic Signals

C. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

318-2005Building Code Requirements for Structural
Concrete

D. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

C57.12-2000.....General Requirements For Liquid-Immersed
Distribution, Power, and Regulating
Transformers

C81.61-2005Electrical Lamp Bases

E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

A123/A123M-2002Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

A153/A153M-2001.....Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel
Hardware - AASHTO No.: M232

B108-03a -2003Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings

D3487-2000.....Mineral Insulating Oil Used in Electrical
Apparatus

F. Federal Aviation Administration (FAA):

AC 70/7460-IK CHG 1-2000.....Obstruction Lighting and Marking

AC 150/5345-43E-1995....Specification for Obstruction Lighting
Equipment

G. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IESNA)

HB-9-2000.....Lighting Handbook

RP-8-2000 (R-2005).....Roadway Lighting

H. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

- C78.41-2001.....Electric Lamps - Guidelines for Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps
- C78.42-2004Electric Lamps - Guidelines for High-Pressure Sodium Lamps
- C78.43-2005Electric Lamps - Single-Ended Metal-Halide Lamps
- C78.1381-1998.....(R 1997) Electric Lamps - 70-Watt M85 Metal-Halide Lamps
- C82.4-2002Ballasts for High-Intensity-Discharge and Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps (Multiple-Supply Type)
- C136.17-2005Roadway Lighting Equipment - Enclosed Side-Mounted Luminaries for Horizontal-Burning High-Intensity-Discharge Lamps
- ICS 2-2005Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors and Overload Relays Rated 600 Volts
- ICS 6-2001Industrial Control and Systems Enclosures

I. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

- 70-2005National Electrical Code (NEC)

J. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

- 496-2004Edison-Base Lamp holders
- 773-1995.....Plug-in, Locking Type Photo controls, for Use with Area Lighting
- 773A-2006Non-industrial Photoelectric Switches for Lighting Control
- 1029-1994.....High-Intensity-Discharge Lamp Ballasts
- 1598-2004Luminaries

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Poles: Do not store poles on ground. Store poles so they are at least 305 mm (one foot) above ground level and growing vegetation. Do not remove factory-applied pole wrappings until just before installing pole.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Materials and equipment shall be in accordance with NEC, UL, ANSI, and as shown on the drawings and specified. Match existing manufacturers.

2.2 POLES

A. General:

1. Poles shall be as specified on the drawings.
2. The pole and arm assembly shall be designed for wind loading of 161 km/hr (100 miles per hour)//, with an additional 30 percent gust factor, supporting luminaire(s) having the effective projected areas indicated. The effective projected area of the pole shall be applied at the height of the pole base as shown on the drawings.
3. Poles shall be embedded anchor-bolt type designed for use with underground supply conductors. Poles shall have oval-shaped handhole having a minimum clear opening of 65 by 125 mm (2.5 by 5 inches). Handhole cover shall be secured by stainless steel captive screws.
4. Provide a steel-grounding stud opposite hand hole openings.
5. Provide a base cover matching the pole in material and color to conceal the mounting hardware pole-base welds and anchor bolts.
6. Hardware: All necessary hardware shall be 300 series stainless steel.

2.3 FOUNDATIONS FOR POLES

- A. Foundations shall be cast-in-place concrete.
- B. Foundations shall support the effective projected area of the specified pole, arm(s), and luminaire(s) under wind conditions previously specified in this section.
- C. Place concrete in spirally wrapped treated paper forms for round foundations, and construct forms for square foundations.
- D. Rub-finish and round all above-grade concrete edges to approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) radius.
- E. Concrete shall have 3000 psi minimum 28 day compressive strength.
- F. Anchor bolt assemblies and reinforcing of concrete foundations shall be as shown on the drawings and meet ACI 318. Anchor bolts shall be in a welded cage or properly positioned by the tie wire to stirrups.
- G. Prior to concrete pour, install a copperclad steel ground rod, not less than 19 mm (3/4-inch) diameter by 3000 mm (10 feet) long, below each foundation. Drive the rod vertically under the foundation so not less than 1800 mm (6 feet) of rod is in contact with the earth. Remainder of rod may be in the concrete pour. Where rock or layered rock is present, drill a hole not less than 50 mm (2 inches) in diameter and 1800 mm (6 feet) deep, backfill with tamped fine sand and drive the rod into the hole. Bond the rod to the pole with not less than number 6 AWG bare copper wires. The method of bonding shall be approved for the purpose.

2.4 LUMINAIRES

- A. UL 1598 and NEMA C136.17. Luminaries shall be weatherproof, heavy duty, outdoor types designed for efficient light utilization, adequate dissipation of lamp and ballast heat and safe cleaning and relamping.
- B. Incorporate ballasts in the luminaire housing except where otherwise shown on the drawings.
- C. Lenses shall be frame-mounted heat-resistant, borosilicate glass, prismatic refractors. Attach the frame to the luminaire housing by hinges or chain. Use heat and aging resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminary doors.
- D. Lamp sockets for high intensity discharge (H.I.D) fixture shall have locking type porcelain enclosures in conformance to the applicable requirements of ANSI C81.61 and UL 496.
- E. Pre-wire internal components to terminal strips at the factory.
- F. Bracket mounted luminaries shall have leveling provisions and clamp type adjustable slip-fitters with locking screws.
- G. Materials shall be rustproof. Latches and fittings shall be non-ferrous metal.

2.5 LAMPS

- A. Install the proper lamps in every luminaire installed and every luminaire relocated or reinstalled.
- B. Lamps to be general-service, outdoor lighting types.
- C. Metal-Halide Lamps: NEMA C78.43 or NEMA C78.1381
- D. Mercury vapor lamps shall not be used.

2.6 HIGH INTENSITY DISCHARGE BALLASTS

- A. For low voltage systems, the ballasts shall be the high efficiency, high power factor, copper-wound constant wattage type and shall meet the requirements of UL 1029 and NEMA C82.4.
 - 1. Ballasts shall operate the discharge lamp of the type, wattage, and voltage shown on the drawings.
 - 2. Ballasts shall have individual overcurrent protection (inline fuse holder) as recommended by the ballast manufacturer.
 - 3. Ballasts shall be capable of providing reliable starting of the lamps at minus 30 degrees C.
 - 4. Open-circuit operation shall not reduce the average life.

2.7 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

NEMA ICS 2, mechanically held contactors. Rate contactors as indicated. Provide in 12 enclosure conforming to NEMA ICS 6. Contactors shall have

silver alloy double-break contacts and coil clearing contacts for mechanically held contactor] and shall require no arcing contacts. Provide contactors with on-off override selector switch.

2.8 EXISTING LIGHTING SYSTEMS

- A. For modifications or additions to existing lighting systems, the new components shall be compatible with the existing systems.
- B. New poles and luminaries shall have approximately the same configurations and dimensions as the existing poles and luminaries except where otherwise shown on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lighting in accordance with the NEC, as shown on the drawings, and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Steel Poles:
 - 1. Provide pole foundations with galvanized steel anchor bolts, threaded at the top end and bent 1.57 rad 90 degrees at the bottom end. Provide galvanized nuts, washers, and ornamental covers for anchor bolts. Thoroughly compact backfill with compacting arranged to prevent pressure between conductor, jacket, or sheath and the end of conduit. Adjust poles as necessary to provide a permanent vertical position with the bracket arm in proper position for luminaire location.
 - 2. After the poles have been installed, shimmed and plumbed, grout the spaces between the pole bases and the concrete base with non-shrink concrete grout material. Provide a plastic or copper tube, of not less than 9 mm (3/8-inch) inside diameter, through the grout tight to the top of the concrete base for moisture weeping.
- C. Foundation Excavation: Depth shall be as indicated. Dig holes large enough to permit the proper use of tampers to the full depth of the hole. Place backfill in the hole in 150 mm (6 inch) maximum layers and thoroughly tamp. Place surplus earth around the pole in a conical shape and pack tightly to drain water away.
- D. Photocell Switch Aiming: Aim switch according to manufacturer's recommendations. Set adjustable window slide for proper footcandles photocell turn-on.

3.2 GROUNDING

Ground noncurrent-carrying parts of equipment including metal poles, luminaries, mounting arms, brackets, and metallic enclosures as

specified in Section 16450, GROUNDING. Where copper grounding conductor is connected to a metal other than copper, provide specially treated or lined connectors suitable and listed for this purpose.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 16670
LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This section specifies the furnishing and installation of a complete master labeled lightning protection system, complying with NFPA 780, UL 96 and UL 96A.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL): General electrical requirements that are common to more than one section of Division 16.
- B. Section 16450, GROUNDING: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path to ground for possible ground faults.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. In accordance with Section 16050, BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS, submit the following:
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Isometric and plan views showing layout and connections to the required metal surfaces.
 - 2. Show the methods of mounting the system to the adjacent construction.
- C. Qualifications: Submit proof that the installer of the lightning protection system has had suitable and adequate experience installing other lightning protection systems, and is capable of installing the system as recommended by the manufacturer of the equipment.
- D. Certification: Two weeks prior to final inspection, submit four copies of the following certifications to the Resident Engineer:
 - 1. Certification that the lightning protection system has been properly installed and tested.
 - 2. Certification that the lightning protection system has been inspected by a UL representative and has been approved by UL without variation.

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by designation only.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 70-02.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - 780-00.....Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

96-94.....Lightning Protection Components

96A-01.....Installation Requirements for Lightning
Protection Systems

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Attach master labels "A" or "B" to each item by its manufacturer as evidence that the materials have been manufactured in conformance with the UL Standards for master label lightning protection materials.
- B. In addition to conformance to UL 96, the component material requirements are as follows:
 - 1. Conductors: Electrical grade copper.
 - 2. Air terminals: Solid copper, not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter, with sharp nickel-plated points.
 - 3. Ground rods: Copper clad steel, not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter by 2400 mm (8 feet) long.
 - 4. Ground plates: Solid copper, not less than 2 mm (1/16 inch) thick.
 - 5. Tubing: Stiff copper or brass.
- C. Anchors and fasteners: Bolt type which are most suitable for the specific anchor and fastener installations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install the conductors as inconspicuously as practical and with the proper bends.
- B. Install the vertical conductors within the concealed cavity of exterior walls. Run the conductors to the exterior at elevations below the finished grade and make the ground connections to the earth outside of the building or stack perimeter.
- C. Make connections of dissimilar metal with bimetallic type fittings to prevent electrolytic action.
- D. Use the exothermic welding type connections that form solid metal joints in the main vertical and horizontal conductors, and for connections that are not exposed in the finish work.
- E. Protect copper conductors with stiff copper or brass tubing, which enclose the conductors from the top to the bottom of the tubing, between 300 mm (one foot) below and 2100 mm (seven feet) above the finished grade.
- F. Sheath copper conductors, which pass over cast stone, cut stone, architectural concrete and masonry surfaces, with not less than a 2 mm

(1/16 inch) thickness of lead to prevent staining of the exterior finish surfaces.

- G. For the earth connections, install ground rods and ground plates, and the conductor connections to them and the main water pipes in the presence of the Resident Engineer. For the conductors located outside of the building or stack, install the conductors not less than 600 mm (two feet) below the finished grade.
- H. For structural steel buildings, connect the steel framework of the buildings to the main water pipe near the water system entrance to the building.
- I. Connect exterior metal surfaces, located within 900 mm (three feet) of the lightning protection system conductors, to the lightning protection system conductors to prevent flashovers.
- J. Grounding: Test the ground resistance to earth by standard methods and conform to the ground resistance requirements specified in Section, GROUNDING.
- K. Where shown, use the structural steel framework or reinforcing steel as the main conductor:
 - 1. Weld or bond the non-electrically-continuous sections together and make them electrically continuous.
 - 2. Verify the electrical continuity by measuring the ground resistances to earth at the ground level, at the top of the building or stack, and at intermediate points with a sensitive ohmmeter. Compare the resistance readings.
 - 3. Connect the air terminals together with an exterior conductor connected to the structural steel framework at not more than 18000 mm (60 foot) intervals.
 - 4. Install ground connections to earth at not more than 18000 mm (60 foot) intervals around the perimeter of the building.
 - 5. Weld or braze bonding plates, not less than 200 mm (eight inches) square, to cleaned sections of the steel and connect the conductors to the plates.
 - 6. Do not pierce the structural steel in any manner. Connections to the structural steel shall conform to UL Publication No. 96A.
- L. When the lightning protection systems have been installed, have the systems inspected by a UL representative. Obtain and install a UL numbered master label "C" for each of the lightning protection systems at the location directed by the UL representative and the Resident Engineer.
- M. Where the drawings show the new lightning protection system connected to an existing lightning protection system without a UL master label, the

new portion of the lightning system still requires inspection and labels
as specified above for new work.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 16741
TELEPHONE EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS, EXTENSION

PART 1 - GENERAL**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies the furnishing, installing, certification, testing, and guaranty of a complete and operating extension of an existing operating Telephone System, and associated equipment (here-in-after referred to as "the System") and associated equipment to be installed in the VA or central plant here-in-after referred to as "the Facility". The System shall include, but not be limited to, equipment cabinets, interface enclosures, and relay racks, stand-by battery(s), necessary combiners, traps, and filters; distribution nodes and/or amplifiers; telephone instruments; auxiliary systems; and necessary passive devices such as: protectors, isolators, splitters, couplers, cable "patch", "punch down", and cross-connector blocks or devices, cable management items, voice and digital cable distribution system, and associated hardware. The System shall additionally include, but not be limited to: telecommunication closets (TC); telecommunications outlets (TCO); copper and fiber optic // , and analog Radio Frequency (RF) coaxial // distribution cables, connectors, "patch" cables, and/or "break out" devices.
- B. The System shall be delivered free of engineering, manufacturing, installation, and operating defects. It shall be designed, engineered and installed for ease of operation, maintenance, and testing.
- C. The term "provide", as used herein, shall be defined as: designed, engineered, furnished, installed, certified, and tested, by the Contractor.
- D. The Telephone System is defined as an Emergency Critical Care Communication System by the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA). Therefore, if the System connects to or extends the telephone system, the System's installation and operation shall adhere to all appropriate National, Government, and/or Local Life Safety and/or Support Codes, which ever are the more stringent for this Facility. At a minimum, the System shall be installed according to NFPA, Section 70, National Electrical Code (NEC), Article 517 and Chapter 7; NFPA, Section 99, Health Care Facilities, Chapter 3-4; NFPA, Section 101, Life Safety Code, Chapters 7, 12, and/or 13; Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organization (JCAHCO), Manual for Health

Care Facilities, all necessary Life Safety and/or Support guidelines; this specification; and the original equipment manufacturer's (OEM) suggested installation design, recommendations, and instructions. The OEM and Contractor shall ensure that all management, sales, engineering, and installation personnel have read and understand the requirements of this specification before the System is designed, engineered, delivered, and provided.

- E. The VA Project Manager (PM) and/or if delegated, Resident Engineer (RE) are the approving authorities for all contractual and mechanical changes to the System. The Contractor is cautioned to obtain in writing, all approvals for system changes relating to the published contract specifications and drawings, from the PM and/or the RE before proceeding with the change.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. SECTION 01340: SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS
- B. SECTION 16050: BASIC METHODS AND REQUIREMENTS (ELECTRICAL)
- C. SECTION 16111: CONDUIT SYSTEMS
- D. SECTION 16127: CABLES, LOW VOLTAGE (600 VOLTS AND BELOW)
- E. SECTION 16140: WIRING DEVICES
- F. SECTION 16450: GROUNDING
- G. SECTION 16670: LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEMS
- H. SECTION 16742: VOICE AND DIGITAL // AND ANALOG // TELECOMMUNICATION DISTRIBUTION CABLE EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS
- I. H-088C3: VA HANDBOOK DESIGN FOR TELEPHONE SYSTEMS
- //J. SECTION 16735: TWO WAY RADIO EQUIPMENT //
- //K. SECTION 16740: TELEPHONE EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS (WITHOUT CABLE DISTRIBUTION PLANT //
- //L. SECTION 16770: PUBLIC ADDRESS (PA) SYSTEM //

1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in text by basic designation only. Except for a specific date given, the issue in effect (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements, and errata) on the date the system's submittal is technically approved by VA, shall be enforced.
- B. Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organization (JCAHO): Comprehensive Accreditation Manual for Hospitals - Volumes One and Two.

C. National and/or Government Life Safety Code(s):The more stringent of each listed code.

D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

No. 70	National Electrical Code (NEC)
No. 75	Protection of Electronic Computer/Data Processing Systems
No. 77	Recommended Practice on Static Electricity
No. 99	Standard for Health Care Facilities
No. 101	Life Safety Code
No. 1221	Emergency Services Communication Systems

E. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

65	Wired Cabinets
96	Lightning Protection Components
96A	Installation Requirements for Lightning Protection Systems
467	Grounding and Bonding Equipment
497/497A/497B	Protectors for Paired Conductors/ Communications Circuits/Data Communications and Fire Alarm Circuits
884	Underfloor Raceways and Fittings

F. ANSI/EIA/TIA PUBLICATIONS:

568B	Commercial Building Telecommunications
569B	COMMERCIAL BUILDING STANDARD FOR TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND SPACES
598C	Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding
606A	Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
607A	Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications in Commercial Buildings
758	Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications in Commercial Buildings

G. Lucent Technologies: Document 900-200-318 "Outside Plant Engineering Handbook".

- H. International Telecommunication Union - Telecommunication Standardization Sector (ITU-T).
- I. Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) Publications.
- J. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Publication: Standards for telephone equipment and systems.
- K. United States Air Force: Technical Order 33K-1-100 - Test Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Interval Reference Guide.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The authorized representative of the System's OEM shall be responsible for the design, satisfactory total operation of the System, and its certification.
- B. The OEM shall meet the minimum requirements identified in Paragraph 2.1.A. Additionally, the Contractor shall have had experience with three or more installations of systems of comparable size and complexity with regard to coordinating, engineering, testing, certifying, supervising, training, and documentation. Each of these installations shall have been in successful operation for a minimum of three years after final acceptance by the user. These installations shall be provided as a part of the submittal identified in Paragraph 1.5.
- C. The System Contractor shall submit certified documentation that they have been an authorized distributor and service organization for the OEM for a minimum of three (3) years. The System Contractor shall be authorized by the OEM to certify and warranty the installed equipment. In addition, the OEM and System Contractor shall accept complete responsibility for the design installation, certification, and physical support for the System. This documentation, along with the System Contractor and OEM certifications must be provided in writing as a part of the Contractor's Technical Submittal.
- D. The Contractor's Telecommunications Technicians assigned to the System shall be fully trained, qualified, and certified by the OEM on the engineering, installation, and testing of the System. The Contractor shall provide formal written evidence of current OEM certification(s) for the installer(s) as a part of the submittal or to the RE before being allowed to commence work on the System.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. On-Site Survey: The Contractor shall provide an on-site telephone equipment location, cable pathway, TC, TCO, and interconnection survey

with the submittal that is accomplished no later than 18 months prior to the expected completion of the facility.

1. The survey will be accomplished by a physical walk through of the facility and existing locations with the contract drawings (including all approved changes) and existing survey performed by the IRM department. Differences in locations between the two surveys shall be clearly identified and shall be provided to the RE in writing within 30 days of the completion of the survey.
- B. Provide submittals in accordance with Specification SECTION 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS. The RE shall retain one copy for review and approval.
1. If the submittal is approved the RE shall retain one copy for Official Records and return three (3) copies to the Contractor.
 2. If the submittal is disapproved, three (3) copies will be returned to the Contractor with a written explanation attached indicating the areas where the submittal deviated from the System Specifications. The RE shall retain one copy for Official Records.
- C. Documents: The submittal shall be separated into sections for each subsystem and shall contain the following:
1. Title page to include:
 - a. VA Medical Center.
 - b. Contractor's name, address, and telephone (including fax) numbers.
 - c. Date of Submittal.
 - d. VA Project No.
 2. List containing a minimum of three (3) locations of installations of similar size and complexity as identified herein. These locations shall contain the following:
 - a. Installation Location and Name.
 - b. Owner's or user's name, address, and telephone numbers (including fax).
 - c. Date of Project Start and Date of Final Acceptance by Owner.
 - d. System Project Number.
 - e. Brief (three paragraphs minimum) description of each system's function, operation, and installation.
 3. Narrative: Description of the System as it is expected to be installed.

4. A list of equipment to be furnished. The quantity, make and model number of each item is required. Select the required equipment items quantities that will satisfy the needs of the System and edit between the // - //. Delete equipment items that are not required, add additional items required, and renumber section as per system design. List format shall be as follows:

The following is the minimum equipment required by the System:

QUANTITY	UNIT
As required	CSU
As required	Back-up Battery Power Supply
As required	AC Power Supply
As required	Equipment Cabinet(s)
As required	Environmental Cabinet
1 ea.	Lightning Protection System
As required	Distribution/Interface Cabinets
As required	Stand Alone Relay Rack
As required	CCS
As required	Audio Alarm Panel
As required	Trouble Annunciator Panel
As required	Wire Management System/Equipment
As required	Telephone Instruments
As required	Cable Distribution System
As required	System Conduits, Cable Duct, and/or Cable Tray
1 ea.	Installation Kit
1 ea.	Separate Spare Part List
As required	Telephone Paging Adapter (one each required for PA, Radio Paging and sub-systems)
As required	Time Out Device (one each required for PA, Radio, and Dial Dictation sub-system)

5. Interface cabinet and each distribution cabinet layout drawing, as each is to be installed.
6. Equipment technical literature detailing the electrical and technical characteristics of each item of equipment to be furnished.
7. Engineering drawings of the System, showing calculated signal levels at the CSU output, each input and output distribution point,

- proposed telephone outlet values, and signal level at each telephone outlet multipin jack.
 8. List of test equipment as per paragraph 1.5.E below.
 9. A letter certifying that the Contractor understands the requirements of the Samples paragraph 1.5.F below.
 10. A letter certifying that the Contractor understands the requirements of Section 3.2 concerning acceptance tests.
- D. Environmental Requirements: Technical submittals shall confirm the environmental specifications for TC areas occupied by the System. These environmental specifications shall identify the requirements for initial and expanded system configurations for:
1. Floor loading for batteries and cabinets.
 2. Minimum floor space and ceiling heights.
 3. Minimum size of doors for equipment passage.
 4. Power requirements: The bidders shall provide the specific voltage, amperage, phases, and quantities of circuits required.
 5. Air conditioning, heating, and humidity requirements. The Contractor shall identify the ambient temperature and relative humidity operating ranges required to prevent equipment damage.
 6. Air conditioning requirements (expressed in BTU per hour, based on adequate dissipation of generated heat to maintain required room and equipment standards).
 7. Main backbone, trunk line, riser, and horizontal cable pathways, cable duct, and conduit requirements between each MTC, TC, and TCO.
- E. Test Equipment List. The Contractor is responsible for furnishing all test equipment required to test the System in accordance with the parameters specified. Unless otherwise stated, the test equipment shall not be considered part of the system. The Contractor shall furnish test equipment of an accuracy better than the parameters to be tested. The test equipment furnished by the Contractor shall have a calibration tag of an acceptable calibration service dated not more than 3 months prior to the test. As part of the proposal, a test equipment list shall be furnished that includes the make and model number of the following type of equipment as a minimum:
1. Spectrum Analyzer.
 2. Signal Level Meter.
 3. Volt-Ohm Meter.
 4. Time Domain Reflectometer (TDR) with strip chart recorder.

5. Bit Error Test Set (BERT).
- F. Samples. A sample of each of the following items shall be furnished to the RE for approval prior to installation. The samples may be returned to the Contractor at the discretion of the RE.
1. TCO Wall Outlet Box 100 mm x 100 mm x 63 mm (4" x 4"x 2.5") with:
 - a. One each telephone (or voice) RJ45 jack installed.
 - b. Two each multi pin data RJ45 jacks installed.
 - c. Cover Plate installed.
 2. Data CCS patch panel, punch block or connection device with RJ 45 connectors installed.
 3. Telephone CCS system with IDC and/or RJ45 connectors and cable terminal equipment installed.
 4. 610 mm (2 ft.) section of each copper cable to be used with cable sweep tags and connectors installed.
- G. Certifications:
1. Submit written certification from the OEM indicating that the proposed supervisor of the installation and the proposed provider of the contract maintenance are authorized representatives of the OEM. Include the individual's exact name and address and OEM credentials in the certification.
 2. Submit written certification from the OEM that the wiring and connection diagrams meet National and/or Local (whichever is the more stringent) Life Safety Guidelines, NFPA, NEC, UL, this specification, and JCAHCO requirements and instructions, requirements, recommendations, and guidance set forth by the OEM for the proper performance of the System as described herein. The VA will not approve any submittal without this certification.
 3. Preacceptance Certification: This certification shall be made in accordance with the test procedure paragraph 3.2.B.
- H. Equipment Manuals: Ten (10) working days prior to the scheduled acceptance test, the Contractor shall deliver four (4) complete sets of commercial operation and maintenance manuals for each item of equipment furnished as part of the System to the RE. The manuals shall detail the theory of operation and shall include narrative descriptions, pictorial illustrations, block and schematic diagrams and parts list.
- I. As-Installed Equipment and Wiring Diagrams. Fifteen (15) working days prior to the scheduled acceptance test, the Contractor shall deliver four complete sets of the Record Wiring Diagrams of the System to the

RE. The diagrams shall show all inputs and outputs of electronic and passive equipment correctly identified according to the markers installed on the interconnecting cables, equipment and room/area locations. The drawings shall show the signal levels of the telephone aural carriers of each telephone channel at the input and output of all electronic equipment, beginning and end of each distribution line, and the telephone outlets. The record wiring diagrams shall be provided in hard copy and two compact disk copies properly formatted to match the Facilities current operating version of Computer Aided Drafting (AUTO CAD) system. The RE shall verify and inform the Contractor of the current version of AutoCAD being used by the Facility. The RE shall submit one hard copy of each as-installed drawing to TSSO-005N2 for review 15 working days prior to the scheduled acceptance test.

- J. Ten (10) days prior to the start of the intermediate test, provide a typewritten detailed description of the System testing plan that meets this specification's performance standards as indicated in paragraph 2.1.C including illustrations and utilizes test equipment specified in paragraph 1.5.C. The test plan will need to be evaluated and approved by the RE before intermediate testing begins.
- K. Provide two copies of an OEM developed training video tape presentation (reference paragraph 3.3.B) for evaluation and approval by the RE.
- L. Provide a typewritten document that details the complete record program in memory for all associated station assignments.
- M. Needs Analysis (required for extension of existing system): The Contractor shall conduct a needs analysis of the existing Facility with representative's from the IRM and various departments to determine the System's requirements. The analysis shall depict System features and capacities, in addition to specific site requirements. The analysis shall be typewritten and contain the following information as a minimum:
 - 1. The CSU shall be compatible with the existing or projected EPBX and will:
 - a. Initially provide:

EQUIPPED ITEM	CAPACITY	WIRED CAPACITY
Main Station Lines:		
a) Single Line		

b) Multi Line (Equipped for DID)		
Two-way DRTL		
Foreign Exchange (FX)		
WATS		
Conference		
Dial Dictation Access		
RADIO PAGING ACCESS		
AUDIO PAGING ACCESS		
Off-Premise Extensions		
CO Trunk By-Pass		
CO Trunk By-Pass		
CRT w/keyboard		
Printers		
Operator Consoles		
T-1 Access Equipment		
Maintenance Console		

- b. Projected Maximum Growth. The Contractor shall identify the projected maximum growth for each item identified in Paragraph 1.5.C.4. as a part of the needs analysis. For this purpose, the following definitions are provided to detail the System's capability:
- 1) All software and hardware required to completely equip the CSU with all items listed under equipped capacity, shall be provided and installed by the contractor 30 days prior to system cut-over.
 - 2) "Wired Capacity" is to include all wiring and equipment listed under wired capacity, with the exception of line, data, and trunk cards, and shall be provided, installed, and tested 30 days prior to system cut-over.
 - 3) The System shall be capable of expansion to the projected maximum growth through the use of printed circuit boards and/or modular cabinets which do not require extensive re-wiring and reprogramming.
2. Cable Distribution System: A design plan for twisted pair cable plant requirements is not included in this document. However, the

Contractor is required to formulate a projected cable count that shall coincide with the Maximum Growth items described herein. It is the Contractors responsibility to provide the systems CCS, cable distribution, and TCO requirements in order to develop a copper distribution requirements plan using the following paragraphs as an example:

a. Twisted Pair Requirements/Column Explanation:

Column	Explanation
From Building	Identifies the building by number or title
Floor	IDENTIFIES THE FLOOR BY NUMBER (I.E. 1ST, 2ND, ETC.)
Room Number	Identifies the room, by number, from which cabling shall be installed
Number of Cable Pair	Identifies the number of cable pair required to be terminated on the floor designated or the number of cable pair (VA Owned) to be retained
Building	Identifies the building by number or title
Room	Identifies room number

2. Telephone Instruments (or Stations). The Contractor shall clearly and fully indicate this category for each telephone instrument and compare the total count to the locations identified above and indicated the projected EPBX port count requirements as a part of the technical submittal. Additionally, the Contractor shall indicate the total number of spares:

Column	Explanation
MSL	Number of Main Station Lines (MSL) to be associated with the instrument.
Instrument and Outlets. All equipment to be installed are assigned the following codes:	
DS	Desk type - single line
WS	Wall type - single line
DM	Desk type - multi-line
WM	Wall type - multi-line
Jack	The type of jack shall be the type identified

	(i.e. wall, single, dual, triplex, etc.).
Notes	Identifies a note number which spells out a requirement for a special feature or function associated with the circuits and equipment on that particular line of the station.
SVC	Identifies the using SERVICE.
Position	Identifies primary user of the instrument by position description or function.

3. Telecommunication Outlets (TCO). The Contractor shall clearly and fully indicate this category for each outlet location and compare the total count to the locations identified and as shown on the drawings as a part of the technical submittal. Additionally, the Contractor shall indicate the total number of spares.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. System Requirements:

1. The System shall extend the following minimum services generated by the existing telephone system. If these services are not generated by an operating existing telephone system, the System shall be fully compatible and capable of providing them in accordance with and supported by an Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM), and as specified herein. The System shall provide continuous inter and/or intra-Facility // , and analog RF // service. The System shall be capacity sized so that loss of connectivity to an external telephone system(s) shall not affect the Facilities operation in specific designated emergency operating locations and instruments. The System shall:
 - a. Inter-operate, connect, and function fully with the existing Local Telephone Exchange (LEC) Network(s), Federal Telephone System (FTS) Inter-city Network(s), Inter-exchange Carriers, Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN), at a minimum.
 - b. Inter operate with current identified voice mail and automatic attendant functions, and are required as specified herein. A universal night answering function from a Facility designated remote locations shall be provided if not currently in operation and/or will not be deviated as a result of the system installation.

- c. Be a voice and data cable distribution system that is based on a physical "Star" Topology.
- d. Be compatible with and able to provide direct digital connection to trunk level equipment including, but, not limited to: directly accessing trunk level equipment including radio paging, audio paging, Federal Information Processing Standards [FIPPS] publications), Industry Standard "T" and/or "DS" carrier protocols and external protocol converters. Additionally, connections to "T" and/or "DS" access/equipment or Customer Service Units (CSU) that are used in FTS and other trunk applications, shall be included in the System design. Additionally T-1 access/equipment (or CSU) shall be used in FTS and other trunk applications as required by system design if these functions are not provided by the existing telephone system and/or will be deactivated by the System. The Contractor shall provide all T-1 equipment necessary to terminate and make operational the quantity of circuits designated. The CSU's shall be connected to the system's emergency battery power supply. The System shall be fully capable of operating in the Industry Standard "DS" protocol and provide that service when required.
- e. Contain attendant and operator consoles, video monitors with keyboards, and printers to provide employee directory access from the Traffic Management System (TMS), as required by system design if not provided by the existing telephone system and/or will be deactivated by the System installation. All additional console positions, video monitors, and keyboards shall have identical capabilities. The System shall accept a mixture of trunk types at each attendant console and extend calls received via these trunks to station users.
- f. Be capable of interfacing and operating with Direct-Incoming-dial (DID) service to stations as identified herein. Assignment to DID shall not affect intra-Facility operation. A DID trunk group, which will operate as a separate trunk group from other Central Office (CO) trunks shall be provided as described herein.
- g. Contain the designated number of telephone instruments, where each instrument (also referred to as "station") shall have the ability to direct dial other Facility telephone stations, the public telephone network, tie-lines, and FTS telephone numbers

without attendant assistance. Each station shall be dual tone multi-frequency (DTMF) for intra-Facility and external-Facility calling. The term DTMF, as used herein, shall be defined as "a dialing operation (e.g., push-button, digit dialing, or tone dialing, other than rotary/pulse dialing).

- 1) Standard digital telephone instruments shall be provided at the designated TCO(s) and as shown on the drawings.
- 2) "Special hands free" digital telephone instruments shall be provided at designated TCO(s) and as shown on the drawings.
- h. Receive the specified telephone signals acquired from the LEC and FTS contracted carrier, shall process and distribute them to the designated telephone stations as determined by Class-of-Service and indicated on the drawings.
- i. The telephone system Contractor shall connect each data multipin jack to a separate data system approved terminating patch panel device in each associated TC. The telephone system Contractor is not to install active data distribution equipment to the System or cross connect the data systems.
- j. Be able to accomplish adjacent channel operation of the existing telephone system's local, long distance, and FTS telephone signals. The System equipment shall be installed and interfaced according to the OEM's schematic diagram for adjacent telephone channel operation. The System shall be provided with testing capability in each equipment rack and test ports that provides access for each telephone channel without the need to disconnect distribution cables or equipment. Each telephone channel shall be processed as a single channel. A means of monitoring the complete system along with appropriate printout and computer disk archiving of each processed and distributed channel.
- k. The System shall be designed to minimize cross talk, background processor noise, inter-modulation, and other signal interference.
2. Refer to Section 1.5 for initial voice sizing requirements.
3. The System shall be capable of interfacing with the existing or future planned EPBX.
4. A system design where "looping" the distribution cables from room to room shall not be permitted.
5. Point of Telephone System Interface:

- a. The telephone signals shall be acquired at the existing telephone EPBX equipment cabinet or as designated in the telephone switch room TC. The Contractor is not responsible for the condition of the telephone signals of the existing telephone system. If the telephone signals at the interface point do not meet the minimum signal level and quality as stated herein, the Contractor shall notify the RE, in writing, detailing the nature of the deficiencies, and the expected effect on the telephone signals in the new extension system. The RE will coordinate with the Facility Engineering Officer so the necessary repairs for the identified deficiencies can be accomplished.

B. General:

1. All equipment to be supplied under this specification shall be new and the current model of a standard product of an OEM of record. An OEM of record shall be defined as a company whose main occupation is the manufacture for sale of the items of equipment supplied and which:
 - a. Maintains a factory production line for the item submitted.
 - b. Maintains a stock of replacement parts for the item submitted.
 - c. Maintains engineering drawings, specifications, and operating manuals for the items submitted.
 - d. Has published and distributed descriptive literature and equipment specifications on the items of equipment submitted at least one year prior to the Invitation for Bid.
2. Specifications of equipment as set forth in this document are minimum requirements, unless otherwise stated, and shall not be construed as limiting the overall quality, quantity, or performance characteristics of items furnished in the System. When the Contractor furnishes an item for which there is a specification contained herein, the item shall meet or exceed the specification for that item of equipment.
3. The Contractor shall produce verification, in writing to the RE at time of installation, that the type of wire/cable actually being provided is recommended and approved by the OEM and will provide a total system free of undesirable effects. The Contractor is responsible for providing the correct protection cable duct and/or conduit and wiring even though the actual installation may be by another subcontractor.

4. The Telephone Contractor is responsible for interfacing the telephone systems with the System. The Contractor shall continually employ interfacing methods that are approved by the OEM and VA. At a minimum, an acceptable interfacing method, requires not only a physical and mechanical connection; but, includes matching of signal, voltage, and processing levels, with regard to signal quality and impedance. Each interface point must adhere to all standards described herein for full separation of the Critical Care, Life Safety, and Emergency systems.
5. The telephone equipment and shall be the interface points for connection from the telephone switch via the System telephone interface unit. The telephone interface unit shall be provided by the Telephone Contractor. // The Telephone Contractor is not allowed to make any connections to the PA, and Radio, Systems. //
6. Active electronic component equipment shall consist of solid state components, be rated for continuous duty service, comply with the FCC standards for telephone equipment, systems, and service.
7. All passive distribution equipment shall meet or exceed -80 dB radiation shielding specifications.
8. All interconnecting twisted pair, fiber optic // or coaxial // cables shall be terminated on equipment terminal boards, punch blocks, breakout boxes, splice blocks, and unused equipment ports/taps shall be terminated according to the OEM's instructions for telephone cable systems without adapters. The Contractor shall not leave unused or spare twisted pair wire, fiber optic //, or coaxial // cable unterminated, unconnected, loose or unsecured.
9. The System shall utilize microprocessor components for all signaling and programming circuits and functions. Program memory shall be non-volatile or protected from erasure from power outages for a minimum of two hours.
10. The System shall provide the continuous electrical supervision of each telephone switch cabinet mounted equipment, interconnecting cabling, distribution cable plant, and back up battery and charger to determine change of status and to assist in trouble shooting System faults.
11. All distribution Voltages, except for the primary AC power to the power supply circuits, shall not exceed 30V AC Root Mean Squared (RMS) or 42V direct current (DC).

12. Color code all distribution wiring to conform to the Telephone Industry standard, ANSI/EIA/TIA, and this document, which ever is the more stringent. At a minimum, all equipment, cable duct and/or conduit, enclosures, wiring, terminals, and cables shall be clearly and permanently labeled according to and using the provided record wiring diagrams, to facilitate installation and maintenance.
13. Connect the System's primary input AC power to the Facility' Critical Branch of the Emergency AC Power Distribution System as shown on the Drawings or if not shown on the drawings consult with the RE regarding a suitable circuit location, prior to bidding.
14. Verify existing UPS system will support the extensions additional load. If adequate capacity is not present, provide the additional equipment required to support the normal operation and functions of the System including the extension (as if there was no AC power failure) in the event of an AC power failure for a minimum of four hours.
15. All equipment shall function and operate normally from the furnished power source, and also, during input power fluctuations or loss of power for a minimum of four hours.
16. Plug-in connectors shall be provided to connect all equipment, with the exception of interface points. Baseband cable systems shall utilize barrier terminal screw type connectors, at a minimum. Crimp type connectors installed with a ratchet type installation tool are and acceptable alternate as long as the cable dress, pairs, shielding, grounding, connections and labeling are provided the same as the barrier terminal strip connectors. Tape of any type, wire nuts, or solder type connections are unacceptable and will not be approved.
17. All equipment faceplates utilized in the System shall be stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or UL approved cycolac plastic that matches the equipment item where it is installed. All faceplates shall be constructed of the same material throughout the Facility.
18. Noise filters and surge protectors shall be provided for each equipment interface cabinet, switch equipment cabinet, control console, local, and remote active equipment locations to ensure protection from input primary AC power surges and noise glitches are not induced into low voltage circuits.

C. Equipment Functional Characteristics:

FUNCTIONS	CHARACTERISTICS
Input Voltage	105 to 130 VAC
Power Line Frequency	60 Hz \pm 2.0 Hz
Operating Temperature	0 to 50 degrees (°) Centigrade (C)
Humidity	80 percent (%) minimum rating

2.2 INSTALLATION KIT

The kit provided shall include, at a minimum, all connectors and terminals, labeling systems, audio spade lugs, barrier strips, punch blocks or wire wrap terminals, heat shrink tubing, cable ties, solder, hangers, clamps, bolts, conduit, cable duct, and/or cable tray, etc., required to accomplish a neat and secure installation. All wires shall terminate in a spade lug and barrier strip, wire wrap terminal or punch block. Unfinished or unlabeled wire connections shall not be allowed. The Contractor shall turn over all unused and partially opened installation kit boxes, coaxial, fiber-optic, and twisted pair cable reels, conduit, cable tray, and/or cable duct bundles, wire rolls, physical installation hardware to the RE. At a minimum, the following installation sub-kits are required:

- A. Wire and Cable: The wire and cable kit shall include all connectors and terminals, audio spade lugs, barrier straps, punch blocks, wire wrap strips, heat shrink tubing, tie wraps, solder, hangers, clamps, labels etc., required to accomplish a neat and orderly installation.
- B. Conduit, Cable Duct, and Cable Tray: The kit shall include all conduit, duct, trays, junction boxes, back boxes, cover plates, feed through nipples, hangers, clamps, other hardware required to accomplish a neat and secure conduit, cable duct, and/or cable tray installation in accordance with the NEC and this document.
- C. Equipment Interface: The equipment kit shall include any item or quantity of equipment, cable, mounting hardware and materials needed to interface the systems with the identified sub-system(s) according to the OEM requirements and this document.
- D. Labels: The labeling kit shall include any item or quantity of labels, tools, stencils, and materials needed to completely and correctly label each subsystem according to the OEM requirements, Record Wiring Diagrams, and this document.

- E. Documentation: The documentation kit shall include any item or quantity of items, computer discs, as installed drawings, equipment, maintenance, and operation manuals, and OEM materials needed to completely and correctly provide the system documentation as required by this document and explained herein.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Product Delivery, Storage and Handling:

1. Delivery: Deliver materials to the job site in OEM's original unopened containers, clearly labeled with the OEM's name and equipment model and serial identification numbers. The RE may inventory the EPBX and related equipment.
2. Storage and Handling: Store and protect equipment in a manner that will preclude damage as directed by the RE.

B. System Installation:

1. After award of contract, and within the time period specified in the contract, the Contractor shall deliver the total system in a manner that fully complies with the requirements of this specification. The Contractor shall make no substitutions or changes in the system without written approval from the RE and PM.
2. The Contractor shall install all equipment and systems in a manner, which complies with, accepted industry standards of good practice, the requirements of this specification and in a manner that does not constitute a safety hazard. The Contractor shall insure that all installation personnel understands and complies with all the requirements of this specification.
3. The Contractor shall install suitable filters, traps, directional couplers, splitters, telephone outlets, and pads for minimizing interference and for balancing the amplifiers and distribution system(s). Items used for balancing and minimizing interference shall be able to pass telephone channels in the frequency bands selected, in the directions specified, with low loss, and high isolation and with minimum delay of specified frequencies and signals. The Contractor shall provide all equipment necessary to meet the requirements of paragraph 2.1.C and the System performance standards.

4. All passive equipment shall be connected according to the OEM's specifications to insure correct termination, isolation, impedance match and signal level balance at each telephone outlet.
5. Where telephone/data outlets are installed adjacent to each other, install one outlet for each instrument.
6. All lines shall be terminated in a suitable manner to facilitate future expansion of the System. There shall be a minimum of one spare 25 pair cable at each distribution point on each floor.
7. All vertical and horizontal copper and fiber optic lines shall be terminated so shall require modifications of the System CSU or signal closet equipment only.
8. Terminating resistors or devices shall be used to terminate all unused branches, outlets, equipment ports of the System, and shall be devices designed for the purpose of terminating fiber optic or twisted pair cables carrying digital and analog signals in telephone systems.
9. Equipment installed outdoors shall be weatherproof or installed in weatherproof enclosures with hinged doors and locks with two keys.
10. Equipment installed indoors shall be installed in metal cabinets with hinged doors and locks with two keys.

C. Equipment Assembly:

1. Installation of the CSU:

a. General:

- 1) The CSU installation shall comply with all laws and codes applying to interconnected telephone installations.
- 2) In the absence of specifications regarding installation details, standard industry practices shall prevail and first quality material and workmanship shall be provided.
- 3) All material, installed by the Contractor, shall be new and thoroughly tested. All installation shall be carried out in a professional manner.
- 4) Installation of all equipment shall be fully coordinated with the RE and Facility staffs. No area shall be left without minimal telephone service as described herein.
- 5) The Contractor shall provide an outlet with triplex modular jack with stainless steel cover plate for each telephone outlet as shown and verified on the drawings. The Contractor shall provide the appropriate modular jack (single or triplex)

with appropriate cover plate for each 'outlet' location identified on the drawings.

- 6) The Contractor shall install all patient and wall telephone instruments on a single modular jack designed for wall telephone instruments and patient wall or PBPU installations.
- 7) All permanent telephone cable and wire shall be installed in conduit or an enclosed duct system or be of the type approved for installation, as determined by VA requirements, without conduit or enclosed duct system. Cable and wire not installed in conduit or an enclosed duct system must be installed in cable tray or mechanically supported and separated from other signal cable systems as described herein.
- 8) Where cable and wire penetrate through fire/smoke partitions, firewalls, or floors, the Contractor shall provide fire/smoke stopping around the outside of any installed conduit/cable tray. The Contractor shall provide and install fire stopping material, type approved by the RE, inside the provided conduit/cable tray after installation is complete.

b. The Contractor Shall:

- 1) Install the equipment in accordance with the specifications for the CSU as specified and recommended by the OEM.
- 2) Provide a full time on-site Project Manager effective with VA issuance of the notice to proceed. The Project Manager shall be responsible for fully coordinating and supervising all contractor/sub-contractor personnel in all phases of the installation, training, inspection, cutover, and final acceptance of the System. The Project Manager shall be provided a complete copy of these specifications to include all amendments prior to the start of installation of the telephone system.
- 3) Coordinate and conduct the CSU data base survey with the RE and a member of the IRM staff. The Contractor is responsible for identifying all programming of features, classes of service, and equipment to be installed by types and physical locations as specified in this document and all attachments thereto. After the survey is completed, a complete list of equipment shall be provided to the RE and the IRM for approval prior to the start of installation.

- 4) Be responsible for the removal and replacement of damaged ceiling tiles during installation and maintenance service of the cable and wire distribution system. The Contractor shall be responsible for restoring to original condition any immediate (approximately one meter (three feet) in diameter) areas that were damaged during the installation and maintenance of the systems.
- 5) Run all cross connects to established circuits during installation and maintenance service for the contract life.
- 6) Remove, on a daily basis, all debris and scrap generated in the conduct of work.
- 7) Provide the RE, for review, coordination and approval, a Proof of Performance Test Plan 90 days prior to activation of the CSU. The plan shall be used for testing and acceptance of the System. It shall include sufficient tests to demonstrate the systems capabilities of providing the services outlined in this document. Test equipment required for demonstration shall be Contractor provided and approved by the RE. A list of test equipment required shall be included with the acceptance test plan. Test equipment shall have undergone calibration certification within six months prior to system activation.
- 8) Provide Contractor personnel (switch technicians, installers, trainers, and the project manager) on premise for seven consecutive days after cut-over to clear any malfunctions which may develop, to assign/reassign any software features/COS, and conduct any additional training as required.
- 9) Ensure that the project manager and sufficient skilled personnel remain on premise until all items on the punch list, developed during inspection, cut-over, and acceptance testing of the System are completed, inspected, and accepted by the RE.
- 10) Be responsible for any and all coordination with the LEC relative to interface with the commercial telephone system. The contractor shall also be responsible for the removal of all voice and/or data equipment and cabling abandoned by the LEC, VA, or other organizations and not retained for exclusive use by VA as a result of this installation.

- 11) Connect all telephone equipment located in the equipment room to the common signal ground buss that is provided. The common signal ground buss shall be located in all telephone closets and the CSU switch room.
 - 12) Provide system ground between CSU and all interfaced systems such as existing telephone system, PA system equipment chassis, radio paging equipment chassis, etc.
 - 13) Ensure that other dedicated telecommunications systems applications within the Facility (i.e., pay stations, electro-writing equipment, facsimile etc.) that require space within switch room/telephone closets, conduits, and cable pair are accommodated. Coordination between applicable parties will be necessary to ensure accommodation of these systems. It shall be the responsibility of the bidders to determine the requirements and include them in their proposal.
 - 14) All portions of the System installation shall conform to local building and fire codes.
 - 15) The Contractor shall not use gasoline, benzene, alcohol, naphtha, carbon tetrachloride, or turpentine for cleaning any part of the equipment. Flammable materials shall be kept in suitable places outside the building. OSHA safety standards and local Facility safety standards shall prevail.
- D. Conduit, Cables and Wiring, Cable Tray, Raceways, Signal Ducts, Etc.:
1. The Contractor shall employ the latest installation practices and materials.
 2. All cables shall be installed in conduit and/or signal ducts. Conduits shall be provided in accordance with SECTION 16111, CONDUIT SYSTEMS.
 3. Ensure that Telephone Systems (as identified by NEC Section 517) are completely separated and protected from all systems.
 4. All cable junctions and taps shall be accessible. Do not install multi-taps or other distribution equipment items inside cable ducts or raceways. As a minimum, use a 200 mm x 200 mm x 100 mm (8" X 8" X 4") junction box attached to the cable duct or raceway for installation of distribution system passive equipment. Ensure all equipment and tap junctions are accessible.

5. Cables shall be installed and fastened without causing sharp bends or rubbing of the cables against sharp edges. Cables shall be fastened with hardware that will not damage or distort them.
6. Cables shall be labeled with permanent markers at the terminals of the electronic and passive equipment and at each junction point in the System. The lettering on the cables shall correspond with the lettering on the record wiring diagrams.
7. Cable shall be grouped and shall not change position throughout the cable run.
8. Completely test all of the cables after installation and replace any defective cables.

3.2 TESTS

A. Interim Inspection:

1. The interim inspection will be conducted in the presence of a Government Representative designated as the VA Contract Coordinator prior to the proof of performance testing. This inspection shall verify that the equipment provided adheres to the installation requirements of this document.
2. The Contractor shall have 50% of the telephone extension system equipment installed to include, but not be limited to: CSU, interface, origination and junction enclosures powered with the permanent AC wiring, outlets, conduit and cables, before the interim inspection can take place.
3. The Contractor shall notify the RE, in writing, of the estimated date the Contractor expects to be ready for in the interim inspection, at least 7 working days before the requested inspection date.
4. Results of the interim inspection shall be provided to the RE and PM. If major or multiple deficiencies are discovered, a second interim inspection may be required before permitting the Contractor the Contractor to continue with the System installation.
5. The RE in conjunction with PE shall determine if an additional inspection is required, or if the Contractor will be allowed to proceed with the installation. In either case, re-inspection of deficiencies noted during the interim inspection(s), will be part of the proof of performance test. The interim inspection shall not affect the systems' completion date. The Contracting Officer shall

- ensure all test documents will become a part of the systems record wiring diagrams documentation.
- B. Pretesting: Upon completing the installation of the System, the Contractor shall align and balance the system. The Contractor shall pretest the entire system.
- C. Pretesting Procedure: During the System pretest, the Contractor shall verify (utilizing the approved spectrum analyzer and test equipment) that the System is fully operational and meets all the System performance requirements of this document. The Contractor shall measure and record the aural carrier levels of each system telephone, at each of the following points in the system:
1. Local Telephone System Inputs.
 2. CSU inputs and outputs.
 3. MDU, BIU, amplifiers, channel processor and converter inputs and outputs.
 4. CSU output S/NR for each telephone channel.
 5. Signal Level at each interface point to the distribution system, the last outlet on each trunk line plus all outlets installed as part of this contract.
 6. A copy of the recorded system pretest measurements shall be submitted, along with the pretest certification, to the RE.
- D. Pretesting Certification. After pretesting the System, the Contractor shall notify the RE, in writing, that the System is ready for proof of performance testing, and that it meets all requirements stated in this document. The Contractor shall accomplish submission of this notification of system readiness, no later than 20 working days prior to the beginning of the scheduled Government proof of performance test. Failure of the Contractor to comply with these pretest requirements, shall be grounds for canceling the scheduled test.
- E. Acceptance Test:
1. After the System has been pretested and the Contractor has submitted the pretest results and certification to the RE, the Contractor shall schedule an acceptance test date and give the RE 20 days advance written notice prior to the date the acceptance test is expected to begin. The System shall be tested in the presence of a Government Representative and an OEM certified representative. The System shall be tested utilizing the approved test equipment to certify proof of performance and Life Safety compliance. The test

shall verify that the total system meets all the requirements of this specification. The notification of the acceptance test shall include the expected length (in time) of the test.

2. The acceptance test shall be performed on a "go-no-go" basis. Only those operator adjustments required to show proof of performance shall be allowed. The test shall demonstrate and verify that the installed system complies with the operational and technical requirements of this specification under operating conditions. The System shall be rated as either acceptable or unacceptable at the conclusion of the test. Failure of any part of the System precludes completion of system testing, and which cannot be repaired in four (4) hours, shall be cause for terminating the acceptance test of the System. Repeated failures that result in a cumulative time of eight (8) hours to effect repairs, shall cause the entire System to be declared unacceptable. Re-testing of the entire System shall be rescheduled at the convenience of the Government.

F. Acceptance Test Procedure:

1. Physical and Mechanical Inspection:

- a. The Government Representative will tour all major areas where the System is and all sub-systems are completely and properly installed to insure they are operationally ready for proof of performance testing. A system inventory including available spare parts will be taken at this time. Each item of installed equipment shall be checked to ensure appropriate UL certification labels are affixed.
- b. The System diagrams, record drawings, equipment manuals, Auto CAD disks, interim inspection and pretest results shall be formally inventoried and reviewed.
- c. Failure of the System to meet the installation requirements of this specification shall be grounds for terminating all testing.

2. Operational Test: After the Physical and Mechanical Inspection, the Contractor shall perform an operational test to verify that all equipment is properly connected, interfaced and is functionally operational to meet the requirements of this specification. If any sub-system is not functionally ready, that sub-system shall be declared unacceptable and all testing shall be terminated. At this point, the Contractor shall be permitted one hour to correct the

- deficiencies. It may be mutually agreed upon, at this time, to wait one hour or to commence testing of the next sub-system.
3. Performance Test: After the functional test, each sub-system shall be checked to verify that all performance requirements and standards are met. The performance requirements shall be verified using the necessary test equipment. A spectrum analyzer, signal level meter and BERT shall be used to verify there are no visible signal distortions, such as inter-modulation, beats, etc. appearing on any received or generated telephone channel.
 4. Total System Test:
 - a. The testing shall proceed until the system and subsystems are functionally tested and accepted. The total system tests shall verify that the requirements have been met for all system signals as described herein.
 - 1) Existing Telephone System Point of Demarcation: The system output(s) shall be checked to verify that all performance requirements are met.
 - 2) CSU: This test shall be conducted within 30 days following successful pre-testing of the CSU. In addition to compliance with the technical characteristics and quantities of equipment specified herein, the Final Acceptance Test shall contain the provision that 30 continuous days uninterrupted telephone service, must be completed prior to the Contractor being deemed to be in compliance with the contract.
 - b. For the purpose of final acceptance, the telephone service shall be considered interrupted when the failure of any Contractor provided telephone equipment including batteries, results in an interruption of service. This includes a failure of more than 20% of any trunk group, 15% of any number group (15 or more stations), operator console, or telephone service to any area determined to be critical by the Facility Director. Response time to restore service shall have no bearing upon the term "interrupted service".
 - c. To facilitate the CSU Acceptance Test and to allow familiarization and training of Facility employees, the Contractor shall activate the CSU, including the operator consoles, stations and equipment a minimum of 30 days prior to the acceptance test date. All installed equipment and circuits

shall be fully tested prior to the acceptance by VA. During this "burn-in" period, the Contractor shall de-bug the CSU. The Contractor shall make the CSU available for in-house communications and demonstrate to the Facility staff the required features. The Facility Director and Contractor will make designated trunks and tie-line circuits available to the CSU during this "burn-in" period for testing.

- d. At the conclusion of the Acceptance Test, the PM, the RE and the Contractor shall jointly agree to the results of the test, and reschedule testing on deficiencies and shortages, if any. When the test show the System performs in accordance with the specifications, the 30 days of uninterrupted service provision shall begin. This provision must be successfully met for contract compliance. If any retests are needed to reach agreement on the results of the tests or to establish compliance with these specifications such retesting will be done at the Contractor's expense.
- 5. Individual Item Test: The Government Representative may select individual items of equipment for detailed proof-of-performance testing. That item shall meet or exceed the minimum requirements of the specification.
- 6. Distribution System:
 - a. To ensure that the System meets all performance requirements, a minimum of 75% of the System outlets shall be checked. Additionally, each distribution system interface, junction and connection point or location will be checked. Each distribution active and passive item of equipment, signal input(s) and output(s) will be tested.

3.3 TRAINING

- A. Furnish the services of an OEM trained and certified engineer or technician for a total of two eight hour classes to instruct designated Facility maintenance personnel. Instruction shall include cross connection, corrective, and preventive maintenance of the System and equipment. Training shall be accomplished before the VA can accept the System. Additionally, training will be scheduled at the convenience of the Facility's, Chief Engineering Service.
- B. Also, furnish the services of an OEM trained and certified engineer or technician, familiar with the functions and operation of the system and

equipment, for two eight hour periods to train designated Facility IRM personnel. Instructions shall be provided for staff personnel in each area where the System is installed under this contract. When multiple areas are involved, classes will be grouped. Periods of training shall be coordinated with the RE or the Facility Contracting Officer. The RE or the Facility Contracting Officer shall coordinate with the Facility to ensure all shifts receive the required training. Each session shall include instructions utilizing "hands-on" operation and functions of the System.

3.4 SYSTEM GUARANTEE

- A. Contractor's Responsibility: The Contractor shall guarantee that all installed material and equipment will be free from defects, workmanship, and will remain so for a period of one year from date of final acceptance of the System by VA. The Contractor shall provide OEM's equipment warranty documents, to the RE and Facility Contracting Officer, certifying that all equipment installed under this document conforms to its published specifications.
- B. The Contractor shall provide a written commitment from the System equipment OEM to the supply of parts and on-site engineering support services for the one year guarantee service (materials and labor) in the event of default or unsatisfactory service by the Contractor.
 - 1. The OEM certification shall describe, in the event of default or unsatisfactory service by the Contractor, the manufacturer or an authorized distributor shall fully support the contract (initial installation, guarantee service for the one year warranty period of the contract).
 - 2. The System equipment OEM's signatory of the certified written commitment must be of an individual who has the full authority to obligate the OEM to this commitment. Names, corporate addresses, and telephone numbers of the individuals who have this authority shall be provided as a part of the commitment.
- C. The Contractor's maintenance personnel shall have the ability to contact the Contractor and OEM's central emergency maintenance and request remote diagnostic testing and assistance in resolving technical problems at any time. This contact capability shall be provided by the Contractor and OEM at no additional cost to the VA.
- D. All Contractor maintenance and supervisor personnel shall be fully qualified by the OEM and must provide two (2) copies of their current

and qualified OEM training certificates and OEM certification upon request.

E. Additionally, the Contractor shall accomplish the following minimum requirements during the one year guarantee period:

1. Response Time:

- a. The RE or the Facility Contracting Officer (if the Facility has taken possession of the building[s]) are the Contractor's reporting and contact officials for the System trouble calls, during the guarantee period.
- b. A standard workweek is considered 8:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M., Monday through Friday exclusive of Federal Holidays.
- c. The Contractor shall respond and correct on-site trouble calls, during the standard work week to:
 - 1) A routine trouble call within one working day of its report. A routine trouble is considered a trouble that causes a sub-system to be inoperable.
 - 2) An emergency trouble call within eight (8) hours of its report. An emergency trouble is considered a trouble that causes a system to be inoperable at anytime.
 - a) An emergency trouble call shall be deemed appropriate when a failure involves more than 20 voice circuits.
 - b) In addition, the failure of a common control unit, power supply, signal generating device or attendant console shall also be deemed as an emergency maintenance call.
 - 3) A catastrophic trouble call within four (4) hours of its report. A catastrophic trouble call is considered a EPBX failure.
 - a) If an EPBX failure cannot be corrected within six (6) hours, the Contractor shall be responsible for providing an alternate CSU equipped for a minimum of 100 station lines, 10 CO trunks, 10 FTS access lines and two operator's consoles.
 - (1) This alternate system shall be operational within 12 hours (time to commence at the end of the six-hour trouble shooting period) and shall provide emergency service to critical areas as determined by the Facility Director.

- (2) The alternate system shall be a programmable system and a pre-written compact disk program shall be provided to the Facility Contracting Officer prior to cut-over of the main telephone system.
- b) Failures affecting operation of critical emergency health care facilities (i.e. cardiac arrest teams, intensive care units, etc.) shall also be deemed catastrophic trouble calls if so determined by the Facility Director. The Facility Contracting Officer shall notify the Contractor of this type of trouble call at the direction of the Facility Director.
- 4) The Contractor shall respond on-site to installation of station or equipment requests or service within:
 - a) Eight (8) hours for emergency installations designated by the Facility Contracting Officer, and
 - b) Three working days for routine installations designated by the Facility Contracting Officer.
- 2. Required On-Site Visits During The One Year Guarantee Period:
 - a. The Contractor shall visit, on-site, for a minimum of eight hours, once every twelve (12) weeks, during the guarantee period, to perform system preventive maintenance, equipment cleaning and operational adjustments to maintain the System according the descriptions identified in this specification.
 - 1) The Contractor shall arrange all Facility visits with the RE or the Facility Contracting Officer prior to performing the required maintenance visits.
 - 2) The Contractor in accordance with the OEM's recommended practice and service intervals shall perform preventive maintenance during non-busy time agreed to by the RE or the Facility Contracting Officer and the Contractor.
 - 3) The preventive maintenance schedule, functions and reports shall be provided to and approved by the RE and Facility Contracting Officer.
 - 4) Provide on-site a stock of replacement spare parts and equipment, plus test equipment, as specified herein, ensuring they meet the OEM's minimum recommended spare parts stock sizing requirements for this specific system.

- b. The Contractor shall provide the RE or the Facility Contracting Officer a type written report itemizing each deficiency found and the corrective action performed during each required visit or official reported trouble call. The Contractor shall provide the RE or the Facility Contracting Officer sample copies of these reports for review and approval at the beginning of the Acceptance Test. The following reports are the minimum required:
 - 1) The Contractor shall provide a monthly summary for all equipment and sub-systems serviced during the guarantee period to the RE or the Facility Contracting Officer by the fifth working day after the end of each month. The report shall clearly and concisely describe the service rendered, parts replaced and repairs performed. The report shall prescribe anticipated future needs of the equipment and systems for preventative and predictive maintenance.
 - 2) The Contractor shall maintain a separate log entry for each item of equipment and each sub-system of the System. The log shall list dates and times of all scheduled, routine, and emergency calls. Each emergency call shall be described with details to the nature and causes and the emergency steps taken to rectify the situation and specific recommendations to avoid such conditions in the future.
- c. The RE or the Facility Contracting Officer shall convey to the Facility Engineering Officer, two (2) copies of actual reports for evaluation.
 - 1) The RE or the Facility Contracting Officer shall ensure a copy of these reports is entered into the System's official acquisition documents.
 - 2) The Facility Chief Engineer shall ensure a copy of these reports is entered into the system's official technical as-installed documents.
3. Government Furnished Equipment (GFE). GFE that was accepted by the Contractor and interfaced and installed in this System shall become part of this System and included in the guarantee requirements.

- - E N D - -